



---

# Junos Space

## Network Application Platform User Guide

Release

12.3R1



---

Modified: 2016-06-09

Juniper Networks, Inc.  
1133 Innovation Way  
Sunnyvale, California 94089  
USA  
408-745-2000  
[www.juniper.net](http://www.juniper.net)

Copyright © 2016, Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.

Juniper Networks, Junos, Steel-Belted Radius, NetScreen, and ScreenOS are registered trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. in the United States and other countries. The Juniper Networks Logo, the Junos logo, and JunosE are trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. All other trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks, or registered service marks are the property of their respective owners.

Juniper Networks assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies in this document. Juniper Networks reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice.

*Junos Space Network Application Platform User Guide*  
12.3R1

Copyright © 2016, Juniper Networks, Inc.  
All rights reserved.

The information in this document is current as of the date on the title page.

#### YEAR 2000 NOTICE

Juniper Networks hardware and software products are Year 2000 compliant. Junos OS has no known time-related limitations through the year 2038. However, the NTP application is known to have some difficulty in the year 2036.

#### END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

The Juniper Networks product that is the subject of this technical documentation consists of (or is intended for use with) Juniper Networks software. Use of such software is subject to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement ("EULA") posted at <http://www.juniper.net/support/eula.html>. By downloading, installing or using such software, you agree to the terms and conditions of that EULA.

# Table of Contents

	About the Documentation . . . . .	xxvii
	Documentation and Release Notes . . . . .	xxvii
	Documentation Conventions . . . . .	xxvii
	Documentation Feedback . . . . .	xxix
	Requesting Technical Support . . . . .	xxx
	Self-Help Online Tools and Resources . . . . .	xxx
	Opening a Case with JTAC . . . . .	xxx
<b>Part 1</b>	<b>Junos Space User Interface</b>	
<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Getting Started . . . . .</b>	<b>3</b>
	Logging In to Junos Space . . . . .	3
	Changing User Passwords . . . . .	4
	Using the Getting Started Assistants . . . . .	5
	Accessing Help . . . . .	6
	Logging Out . . . . .	7
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Understanding the Junos Space User Interface . . . . .</b>	<b>9</b>
	Junos Space User Interface Overview . . . . .	9
	The Main Display . . . . .	9
	Banner . . . . .	10
	Task Tree . . . . .	11
	Main Window . . . . .	12
	Application Dashboard . . . . .	12
	Dashboard Gadgets . . . . .	13
	Task Group (Workspace) Statistics . . . . .	14
	Inventory Page . . . . .	15
	Parts of the Inventory Page . . . . .	15
	Banner Icon Buttons . . . . .	16
	Sorted-by Indicator . . . . .	16
	Show or Hide Columns . . . . .	17
	Filter Submenus . . . . .	17
	Search Field . . . . .	18
	Actions Menu . . . . .	18
	Paging Controls . . . . .	19
	Navigating the Junos Space User Interface . . . . .	20
	Navigating the Task Tree: The Devices Workspace . . . . .	20
	Filtering Inventory Pages . . . . .	22

<b>Part 2</b>	<b>Devices</b>	
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Device Management Overview</b>	<b>31</b>
	Device Management Overview	31
	Viewing Device Statistics	32
	Viewing the Number of Devices by Platform	33
	Viewing Connection Status for Devices	33
	Viewing Devices by Junos OS Release	34
	Device Inventory Management Overview	36
	Viewing Managed Devices	37
	Viewing Devices	37
	Viewing Devices and Logical Systems with QuickView	41
	Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed	
	Devices	42
	Network as System of Record	42
	Junos Space as System of Record	44
	Troubleshooting Devices	44
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Device Configuration</b>	<b>45</b>
	Editing Device Configuration Overview	45
	Selecting the Device and the Configuration Perspective	46
	Editing Device Configuration Options	48
	Viewing Change Requests	52
	Viewing Change Requests	52
	Adding, Modifying, or Deleting a Change Request	52
	Viewing Space Changes	53
	Resolving Out-of-Band Configuration Changes	54
	Viewing the Configuration Change Log	54
	Managing Configuration Changes	55
	Viewing Assigned Shared Objects	56
	Managing Consolidated Configurations	58
	Generating a Consolidated Configuration	59
	Preparing for Consolidated Configuration	62
	Validating a Consolidated Configuration on a Device	63
	Approving a Consolidated Configuration	64
	Rejecting a Consolidated Configuration	65
	Deploying a Consolidated Configuration	65
	Viewing Config Change Log	67
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Device Inventory</b>	<b>69</b>
	Viewing Physical Inventory	69
	Displaying Service Contract and EOL Data in the Physical Inventory Table	70
	Viewing Physical Interfaces	72
	Viewing Logical Interfaces	73
	Viewing and Exporting License Inventory	75
	Viewing and Exporting Software Inventory	78
	Exporting Physical Inventory Information	79
	Viewing Associated Scripts	81
	Viewing Script Execution	81

<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Device Operations</b>	<b>83</b>
	Deleting Devices	83
	Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network	84
	Using Looking Glass	86
	Understanding Logical Systems for SRX Series Services Gateways	87
	Creating a Logical System (LSYS)	88
	Deleting Logical Systems	89
	Viewing the Physical Device for a Logical System	89
	Viewing Logical Systems for a Physical Device	90
	Putting a Device in RMA State and Reactivating Its Replacement	91
	Putting a Device in RMA State	91
	Reactivating a Replacement Device	92
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Device Access</b>	<b>93</b>
	Secure Console Overview	93
	Connecting to a Device From Secure Console	93
	Connecting to a Managed Device	94
	Connecting to an Unmanaged Device	95
	Launching a Device's Web UI	98
	Changing Device Credentials	98
	Key-based Authentication Overview	99
	Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices	100
	Generating Keys	100
	Uploading Keys to Devices for the First Time	100
	Upload Keys on Managed Devices that have Conflicting keys with Junos Space	101
	Verifying Device Key Status	102
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Device Monitoring</b>	<b>103</b>
	Viewing and Acknowledging Alarms	103
	Viewing Alarms	104
	Acknowledging Alarms	105
	Clearing Alarms	105
	Escalating Alarms	106
	Unacknowledging Alarms	106
	Viewing Acknowledged Alarms	106
<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>Discover Devices</b>	<b>107</b>
	Device Discovery Overview	107
	Discovering Devices	108
	Specifying Device Targets	109
	Specifying Probes	111
	Specifying Credentials	112
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>Add Deployed Devices</b>	<b>115</b>
	Adding Deployed Devices	115
	Add Deployed Devices Wizard Overview	117
	Managing Deployed Devices	118
	Viewing the Details of a Task Instance	118
	Viewing the Device Status	118

	Deleting a Task Instance . . . . .	119
	Downloading Management CLI Commands . . . . .	119
	Adding SRX Series Devices Overview . . . . .	119
	Adding Devices . . . . .	121
	Creating a Deployment Instance . . . . .	121
	Adding a Deployment Instance by Importing a CSV File . . . . .	122
	Adding a Deployment Instance Manually . . . . .	123
	Working with Rows and Columns . . . . .	123
	Working with Configlets . . . . .	125
	Deploying Device Instances . . . . .	125
	Viewing the Details of a Deployment Instance . . . . .	126
	Viewing the Device Status . . . . .	126
	Deleting a Deployment Instance . . . . .	126
	Downloading Configlets . . . . .	126
	Searching for a Deployment Instance . . . . .	127
<b>Chapter 11</b>	<b>Add Unmanaged Devices . . . . .</b>	<b>129</b>
	Adding Unmanaged Devices . . . . .	129
<b>Chapter 12</b>	<b>Secure Console . . . . .</b>	<b>133</b>
	Configuring SRX Device Clusters in Junos Space . . . . .	133
	Configuring a Standalone Device from a Single-node Cluster . . . . .	133
	Configuring a Standalone Device from a Two-Node Cluster . . . . .	135
	Configuring a Primary Peer in a Cluster from a Standalone Device . . . . .	136
	Configuring a Secondary Peer in a Cluster from a Standalone Device . . . . .	137
<b>Chapter 13</b>	<b>Manage Device Adapter . . . . .</b>	<b>141</b>
	Worldwide Junos OS Adapter Overview . . . . .	141
	Installing the Worldwide Junos OS Adapter . . . . .	142
	Installing the wwadapter Image . . . . .	142
	Connecting to ww Junos OS Devices . . . . .	143
<b>Chapter 14</b>	<b>Discover Topology . . . . .</b>	<b>145</b>
	Topology Discovery Overview . . . . .	145
	Discovering a Topology . . . . .	148
	Managing Device Targets . . . . .	149
	Managing Probes . . . . .	151
<b>Chapter 15</b>	<b>Upload Keys to Devices . . . . .</b>	<b>155</b>
	Key-based Authentication Overview . . . . .	155
	Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices . . . . .	156
	Generating Keys . . . . .	156
	Uploading Keys to Devices for the First Time . . . . .	156
	Upload Keys on Managed Devices that have Conflicting keys with Junos Space . . . . .	157
	Verifying Device Key Status . . . . .	157

<b>Part 3</b>	<b>Device Templates</b>	
<b>Chapter 16</b>	<b>Overview</b>	<b>161</b>
	Device Templates Overview	161
	Device Templates Overview	162
	Device Templates Workflow	165
	Viewing Statistics for Templates and Definitions	165
	User Privileges in Device Templates	166
	Changing Template Definition States	167
<b>Chapter 17</b>	<b>Template Definitions</b>	<b>169</b>
	Manage Definitions	169
	Managing Template Definitions	169
	Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition	170
	Modifying a Template Definition	171
	Viewing Template Definition Inventory	172
	Cloning a Template Definition	173
	Deleting a Template Definition	173
	Exporting a Template Definition	174
	Create Definition	175
	Creating a Template Definition Overview	175
	Creating a Template Definition	176
	Selecting the Device Family and Naming the Definition	176
	Creating Configuration Pages	177
	Determining Editable Parameters	179
	Filling in the General Tab	180
	Filling in the Description Tab	182
	Filling in the Validation Tab	183
	Filling in the Advanced Tab	184
	Specifying Default Values for Configuration Options	185
	Finding Configuration Options	186
	Specifying Device-Specific Values in Definitions	187
	Working with Rules	190
	Manage CSV Files	191
	Managing CSV Files	191
	Import Definitions	192
	Importing Template Definitions Overview	192
	Importing a Template Definition	193
<b>Chapter 18</b>	<b>Templates</b>	<b>195</b>
	Manage Templates	195
	Managing Templates Overview	195
	Template States	196
	Filtering and Searching Templates	196
	Device Template Detailed Information	196
	Template Actions	197
	Deleting a Template	198
	Deploying a Template	199
	Modifying a Template	200
	Undeploying a Template	201

	Viewing Template Deployment . . . . .	203
	Auditing Template Configuration . . . . .	205
	Assigning a Template to a Device . . . . .	206
	Unassigning a Template From a Device . . . . .	207
	Publishing a Template To CC . . . . .	208
	Unpublishing a Template From CC . . . . .	209
	Creating a Template Overview . . . . .	210
	Creating a Template . . . . .	210
	Selecting a Template Definition . . . . .	210
	Naming and Describing a Template . . . . .	211
	Entering Data and Finishing the Template . . . . .	212
	Deploying the Template . . . . .	213
	Viewing Template Inventory . . . . .	213
	Viewing Template Statistics . . . . .	213
	Create Template . . . . .	214
	Creating a Template Overview . . . . .	214
	Creating a Template . . . . .	215
	Selecting a Template Definition . . . . .	215
	Naming and Describing a Template . . . . .	215
	Entering Data and Finishing the Template . . . . .	216
	Deploying the Template . . . . .	217
<b>Part 4</b>	<b>Images and Scripts</b>	
<b>Chapter 19</b>	<b>Overview . . . . .</b>	<b>221</b>
	Device Images and Scripts Overview . . . . .	221
	User Roles . . . . .	222
<b>Chapter 20</b>	<b>Device Images . . . . .</b>	<b>225</b>
	Device Images Overview . . . . .	225
<b>Chapter 21</b>	<b>Scripts . . . . .</b>	<b>227</b>
	Scripts Overview . . . . .	227
<b>Chapter 22</b>	<b>Operations . . . . .</b>	<b>231</b>
	Operations Overview . . . . .	231
<b>Chapter 23</b>	<b>Script Bundles . . . . .</b>	<b>233</b>
	Script Bundles Overview . . . . .	233
<b>Chapter 24</b>	<b>Configuration: Device Images . . . . .</b>	<b>235</b>
	Uploading Device Images to Junos Space . . . . .	235
	Viewing Device Image Deployment Results . . . . .	236
	Staging Device Images . . . . .	236
	Verifying the Checksum . . . . .	238
	Deploying Device Images . . . . .	239
	Deleting Device Images . . . . .	245
	Modifying Device Image Details . . . . .	245
	Viewing and Deleting MD5 Validation Results . . . . .	246
	Viewing the MD5 Validation Results . . . . .	246
	Deleting the MD5 Validation Results . . . . .	247



<b>Chapter 25</b>	<b>Configuration: Scripts</b>	<b>249</b>
	Modifying a Script	249
	Modifying Script Types	250
	Comparing Script Versions	250
	Deleting Scripts	252
	Staging Scripts on Devices	253
	Viewing Associated Devices	254
	Verifying the Checksum of Scripts on Devices	254
	Enabling Scripts on Devices	256
	Disabling Scripts on Devices	258
	Removing Scripts from Devices	259
	Executing Scripts on Devices	261
	Viewing Execution Results	263
	Importing Scripts	265
<b>Chapter 26</b>	<b>Configuration: Operations</b>	<b>269</b>
	Creating an Operation	269
	Modifying an Operation	271
	Running an Operation	271
	Copying an Operation	272
	Deleting an Operation	273
<b>Chapter 27</b>	<b>Configuration: Script Bundles</b>	<b>275</b>
	Creating a Script Bundle	275
	Modifying a Script Bundle	276
	Deleting Script Bundles	278
	Deploying Script Bundles on Devices	278
	Executing Script Bundles on Devices	279
<b>Chapter 28</b>	<b>Administration: Scripts</b>	<b>281</b>
	Viewing Script Details	281
	Viewing Verification Results	282
	Exporting Scripts in Tar Format	283
<b>Chapter 29</b>	<b>Administration: Operations</b>	<b>285</b>
	Viewing Operations Results	285
<b>Part 5</b>	<b>Network Monitoring</b>	
<b>Chapter 30</b>	<b>Network Monitoring UI</b>	<b>289</b>
	Network Monitoring Workspace Overview	290
	Network Monitoring Reports Overview	292
	Resource Graphs	292
	Key SNMP Customized (KSC) Performance Reports, Node Reports, and Domain Reports	292
	Database Reports	293
	Statistics Reports	293
	Viewing the Node List	293
	Resyncing Nodes	294
	Turning SNMP Data Collection Off and On	295

Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace .....	296
Viewing the Dashboard .....	297
Tracking and Searching for Assets .....	299
Working with Topology .....	300
Viewing the Nodes Without Links .....	301
Filtering Nodes .....	301
Viewing the Topology Map with Different Layouts .....	301
Viewing the Details of a Node .....	301
Pinging a Node .....	302
Viewing the Alarms Associated with the Node .....	303
Viewing the Events Associated with the Node .....	303
Viewing the Resource Graphs Associated with the Node .....	303
Grouping Nodes .....	304
Adding Nodes to a Group .....	304
Removing a Node from a Group .....	305
Viewing the Network Services Across Nodes .....	305
Viewing the Details of the Network Service Across Nodes .....	305
Viewing and Tracking Outages .....	306
Viewing, Querying, and Acknowledging Events .....	306
Events Landing Page .....	307
Advanced Event Search .....	307
Viewing the Events List .....	308
Viewing Event Details .....	308
Viewing and Acknowledging Alarms .....	309
Viewing Alarms .....	310
Acknowledging Alarms .....	312
Clearing Alarms .....	312
Escalating Alarms .....	312
Unacknowledging Alarms .....	312
Viewing Acknowledged Alarms .....	313
Viewing, Configuring, and Searching for Notifications .....	313
Notification Escalation .....	313
Creating Reports .....	314
Creating Key SNMP Customized Performance Reports, Node Reports, Domain Reports .....	314
Creating a New KSC Report from an Existing Report .....	315
Viewing Reports .....	315
Viewing Resource Graphs .....	316
Viewing Key SNMP Customized (KSC) Performance Reports, Node Reports, Domain Reports .....	316
Viewing Database Reports .....	317
Sending Database Reports .....	317
Viewing Pre-run Database Reports .....	318
Viewing Statistics Reports .....	318
Generating a Statistics Report for Export .....	319
Deleting Reports .....	320
Deleting Key SNMP Customized Reports .....	320
Deleting Pre-run Database Reports .....	320
Viewing Charts .....	320

Admin: Configuring Network Monitoring .....	321
Configuring Users, Groups, and Roles .....	321
Adding Users .....	322
Modifying and Deleting Users .....	323
Adding Groups .....	323
Configuring Roles .....	324
Assigning Roles to Groups .....	325
OpenNMS System: System Information .....	325
OpenNMS System: Instrumentation Log Reader .....	326
Notification Status .....	327
Configuring SNMP Community Names by IP .....	327
Configuring SNMP Data Collection per Interface .....	328
Managing and Unmanaging Interfaces and Services .....	329
Managing Thresholds .....	329
Creating Thresholds .....	329
Modifying Thresholds .....	332
Deleting Thresholds .....	333
Selecting and Sending an Event to the Network Management System .....	333
Configuring Notifications .....	334
Configuring Event Notifications .....	334
Configure Destination Paths .....	336
Configure Path Outages .....	337
Configuring Scheduled Outages .....	337
Compiling SNMP MIBs .....	338
Uploading MIBs .....	338
Compiling MIBs .....	339
Viewing MIBs .....	339
Deleting MIBs .....	339
Clearing MIB Console Logs .....	340
Generating Event Configuration .....	340
Generating a Data Collection Configuration .....	341
Managing Events Configuration Files .....	343
Adding New Events Configuration Files .....	343
Deleting Events Configuration Files .....	344
Modifying Events Configuration Files .....	344
Managing SNMP Collections .....	345
Add a New SNMP Collection .....	345
Modify an SNMP Collection .....	346
Managing Data Collection Groups .....	346
Adding New Data Collection Files .....	346
Deleting Data Collection Files .....	347
Modifying Data Collection Files .....	347
Managing Surveillance Categories .....	349
Modifying Surveillance Categories .....	349
Deleting Surveillance Categories .....	349
Adding Surveillance Categories .....	349

<b>Part 6</b>	<b>Configuration Files</b>	
<b>Chapter 31</b>	<b>Manage Config Files</b>	<b>353</b>
	Managing Configuration Files Overview	354
	Viewing Configuration File Statistics and Inventory	355
	Deleting Configuration Files	356
	Restoring Configuration Files	356
	Comparing Configuration Files	358
	Editing Configuration Files	359
	Exporting Configuration Files	361
	User Privileges in Configuration File Management	362
<b>Chapter 32</b>	<b>Backup Config Files</b>	<b>363</b>
	Backing Up Configuration Files	364
<b>Part 7</b>	<b>Jobs</b>	
<b>Chapter 33</b>	<b>Overview</b>	<b>371</b>
	Jobs Overview	371
<b>Chapter 34</b>	<b>Manage Jobs</b>	<b>375</b>
	Viewing Your Jobs	375
	Viewing Scheduled Jobs	376
	The View	376
	Viewing Job Types	376
	Viewing Job Status Indicators	376
	Viewing Job Details, Status, and Results	377
	Performing Manage Jobs Commands	378
	Viewing Statistics for Scheduled Jobs	378
	Viewing the Types of Jobs That Are Run	379
	Viewing the State of Jobs That Have Run	379
	Viewing Average Execution Times for Jobs	379
	Canceling a Job	380
	Viewing Job Recurrence	381
	Retrying a Job on Failed Devices	381
<b>Chapter 35</b>	<b>Archive Jobs</b>	<b>383</b>
	Archiving and Purging Jobs	383
	Archiving Jobs to a Local Server and Purging the Database	383
	Archiving Jobs to a Remote Server and Purging the Database	384
<b>Part 8</b>	<b>Users</b>	
<b>Chapter 36</b>	<b>Manage Users</b>	<b>389</b>
	Creating User Accounts	389
	Creating a New User Account	390
	Disabling and Enabling Users	393
	Viewing Users	394
	Sorting Columns	395
	Displaying or Hiding Columns	395
	Filtering on Columns	396

	Viewing User Details . . . . .	396
	Performing Manage User Commands . . . . .	397
	Modifying a User . . . . .	398
	Deleting Users . . . . .	399
	Changing User Passwords . . . . .	400
	Clearing User Local Passwords . . . . .	401
	Viewing User Statistics . . . . .	402
	Viewing the Number of Users Assigned by Role . . . . .	402
<b>Chapter 37</b>	<b>Manage Roles . . . . .</b>	<b>405</b>
	Role-Based Access Control Overview . . . . .	405
	Authentication . . . . .	405
	RBAC Enforcement . . . . .	405
	Enforcement by Workspace . . . . .	406
	RBAC Enforcement Not Supported for Getting Started Page . . . . .	406
	Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space . . . . .	406
	Predefined Administrator Roles . . . . .	407
	Managing Roles Overview . . . . .	423
	Managing Roles . . . . .	424
	Modifying User-Defined Roles . . . . .	425
	Deleting User-Defined Roles . . . . .	426
<b>Chapter 38</b>	<b>Create Role . . . . .</b>	<b>427</b>
	Creating a User-Defined Role . . . . .	427
<b>Chapter 39</b>	<b>Manage Remote Profiles . . . . .</b>	<b>429</b>
	Creating a Remote Profile . . . . .	429
<b>Chapter 40</b>	<b>User Sessions . . . . .</b>	<b>431</b>
	Terminating User Sessions . . . . .	431
<b>Part 9</b>	<b>Audit Logs</b>	
<b>Chapter 41</b>	<b>View . . . . .</b>	<b>435</b>
	Junos Space Audit Logs Overview . . . . .	435
	Viewing Audit Logs . . . . .	436
	Viewing Audit Log Statistics . . . . .	438
	Converting the Audit Log File UTC Timestamp to Local Time in Microsoft Excel . . . . .	440
<b>Chapter 42</b>	<b>Archive / Purge . . . . .</b>	<b>443</b>
	Archiving and Purging Audit Logs . . . . .	443
	Archiving Audit Logs To a Local Server and Purging the Database . . . . .	443
	Archiving Audit Logs To a Remote Server and Purging the Database . . . . .	444
<b>Chapter 43</b>	<b>Export . . . . .</b>	<b>447</b>
	Exporting Audit Logs . . . . .	447

<b>Part 10</b>	<b>Administration</b>	
<b>Chapter 44</b>	<b>Overview</b>	<b>451</b>
	Junos Space Administrators Overview	451
	Maintenance Mode Overview	452
	Maintenance Mode Access and System Locking	453
	Maintenance Mode User Administration	453
<b>Chapter 45</b>	<b>Fabric</b>	<b>455</b>
	Fabric Management	455
	Fabric Management Overview	455
	Single Node Functionality	456
	Multinode Functionality	457
	Node Function Availability	459
	Adding a Node to an Existing Fabric	459
	Viewing Nodes in the Fabric	461
	Changing Views	461
	Viewing Fabric Node Details	462
	Performing Fabric Node Actions	463
	Configuring Node Network Settings	464
	Network Settings Configuration Guidelines	465
	Changing the VIP Interface in the Same Subnet	465
	Changing the Node Management IP in the Same Subnet	465
	Changing the Default Gateway	465
	Changing the Management IP to a Different Network	466
	Adding the Device Management IP Address	466
	Changing the Device Management IP Address in the Same Subnet	466
	Changing the Device Management IP Address to a Different Network	467
	Deleting a Device Management IP Address	467
	Changing the VIP Interface to a Different Network	467
	Changing the Node Management IP Address of All Nodes in the Fabric to the Same Subnet	468
	Changing the VIP interface of a Multi-Node Fabric to a Different Network	468
	Shutting Down or Rebooting a Node From Junos Space	469
	Deleting a Node	470
	Understanding Overall System Condition and Fabric Load	471
	System Condition	471
	Fabric Load	472
	Monitoring Nodes in the Fabric	473
	Starting and Stopping SNMP Monitoring on a Node	475
	Viewing and Editing SNMP Configuration	476
	Adding or Deleting an External Manager IP Address and a Community String	477
	Adding or Deleting an SNMP v3 Configuration	478
	Creating a System Snapshot	480
	Deleting a System Snapshot	482
	Restoring the System to a Snapshot	482

<b>Chapter 46</b>	<b>Manage Databases</b>	<b>485</b>
	Database Backup and Restore Overview	485
	Backing up a Database	486
	Restoring a Database	486
	Backing Up the Database	487
	Backing Up the Database to a Local Directory	487
	Backing Up the Database to a Remote Host	489
	Restoring the Database from a Remote File	491
	Restoring a Database in the User Interface	492
	Restoring a Local Database	493
	Restoring a Database from a Remote Host	494
	Restoring a Database in Maintenance Mode	495
	Viewing Database Backup Files	497
	Changing Views	497
	Viewing Database Details	497
	Manage Database Commands	498
	Deleting Database Backup Files	498
	Viewing Job Recurrence	499
<b>Chapter 47</b>	<b>Manage Licenses</b>	<b>501</b>
	Generating and Uploading the Junos Space License Key File	501
	Generating the License Key File	501
	Uploading the License Key File Contents	502
	Viewing Licenses	503
	Viewing Manage License Details	504
<b>Chapter 48</b>	<b>Manage Applications</b>	<b>505</b>
	Application Management Overview	505
	Managing Junos Space Applications	506
	Viewing Detailed Application Information	507
	Performing Manage Application Actions	507
	Modifying Application Settings	508
	Modifying Network Application Platform Settings	510
	Configuring Password Settings	512
	Managing Services	515
	Configuring Network Activate Application Settings	518
	Adding a Junos Space Application	518
	Junos Space Software Upgrade Overview	521
	Upgrading a Junos Space Application	521
	Upgrading Junos Space Software	523
	Junos Space 12.1 Release Highlights	523
	Before You Begin	523
	Upgrading Junos Space Release 11.3 or 11.4 to Release 12.1	524
	Upgrading the Network Application Platform	524
	Uninstalling a Junos Space Application	527

<b>Chapter 49</b>	<b>Troubleshoot Space</b> . . . . .	<b>529</b>
	System Status Log File Overview . . . . .	529
	System Status Log File . . . . .	529
	Customizing Status Log File Content . . . . .	530
	Downloading System Log Files For an Appliance . . . . .	530
	Customizing Log Files To Download . . . . .	530
	Customizing Node System Status Log Checking . . . . .	531
	Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File from the UI . . . . .	532
	Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File In Maintenance Mode . . . . .	533
	Downloading Troubleshooting System Log Files Using the CLI . . . . .	534
	Downloading a System Log File Using a USB Device . . . . .	534
	Downloading System Log File Using SCP . . . . .	535
<b>Chapter 50</b>	<b>Manage Auth Servers</b> . . . . .	<b>537</b>
	Remote Authentication Overview . . . . .	537
	Understanding Junos Space Authentication Modes . . . . .	538
	Local Authentication . . . . .	538
	Remote Authentication . . . . .	538
	Remote-Local Authentication . . . . .	538
	Managing Remote Authentication Servers . . . . .	539
	Creating a Remote Authentication Server . . . . .	540
	Modifying Authentication Settings . . . . .	542
	Configuring a RADIUS Server for Authentication and Authorization . . . . .	543
	Configuring TACACS+ for Authentication and Authorization . . . . .	547
	Junos Space Log In Behavior with Remote Authentication Enabled . . . . .	549
<b>Chapter 51</b>	<b>Manage SMTP Servers</b> . . . . .	<b>553</b>
	Managing Platform SMTP Servers . . . . .	553
	Adding a Platform SMTP Server . . . . .	553
<b>Chapter 52</b>	<b>Manage Tags</b> . . . . .	<b>555</b>
	Overview . . . . .	555
	Managing Tags Overview . . . . .	555
	Managing Tags . . . . .	556
	Managing Tags . . . . .	556
	Managing Hierarchical Tags . . . . .	557
	Using the Tag Hierarchy Pane . . . . .	558
	Using the Tabular View Pane . . . . .	561
	Sharing a Tag . . . . .	561
	Renaming Tags . . . . .	562
	Deleting Tags . . . . .	563
	Tagging an Object . . . . .	563
	Viewing Tags . . . . .	564
	Untagging Objects . . . . .	565
	Filtering Inventory Using Tags . . . . .	565
	Creating Tags . . . . .	566
	Creating a Tag . . . . .	566



<b>Chapter 53</b>	<b>Manage Perm Labels . . . . .</b>	<b>567</b>
	Managing Permission Labels Overview . . . . .	567
	Working With Permission Labels . . . . .	569
	Creating Permission Labels . . . . .	570
	Assigning Permission Labels to Users . . . . .	570
	Attaching Permission Labels to Objects . . . . .	571
<b>Chapter 54</b>	<b>Manage DMI Schemas . . . . .</b>	<b>573</b>
	Managing DMI Schemas Overview . . . . .	574
	Updating a DMI Schema . . . . .	576
	Creating a tgz File for Updating a DMI Schema . . . . .	579
	Setting a Default DMI Schema . . . . .	581
	Troubleshooting DMI Schema Management . . . . .	582
<b>Chapter 55</b>	<b>Generate Key . . . . .</b>	<b>585</b>
	Key-based Authentication Overview . . . . .	585
	Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices . . . . .	586
	Generating Keys . . . . .	586
	Uploading Keys to Devices for the First Time . . . . .	586
	Upload Keys on Managed Devices that have Conflicting keys with Junos Space . . . . .	587
	Verifying Device Key Status . . . . .	587
<b>Part 11</b>	<b>Systems of Record and Disaster Recovery</b>	
<b>Chapter 56</b>	<b>Systems of Record and Disaster Recovery . . . . .</b>	<b>591</b>
	Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space . . . . .	591
	Systems of Record . . . . .	591
	Implications . . . . .	592
	Understanding Disaster Recovery . . . . .	592
	Overview . . . . .	593
	Prerequisites . . . . .	593
	Creating the DR Master Cluster . . . . .	594
	1. Configuring the DR Master Cluster . . . . .	595
	2. Starting the Backup for the DR Master Cluster . . . . .	596
	3. Stopping the Backup . . . . .	597
	Creating the DR Slave Cluster . . . . .	597
	1. Configuring the DR Slave Cluster . . . . .	598
	2. Starting to Pull the Backups From the DR Master . . . . .	599
	3. Stopping Pulling the Backups from the DR Master . . . . .	600
	4. Restoring . . . . .	601
	Performing a Reverse Restore . . . . .	602
<b>Part 12</b>	<b>Index</b>	
	Index . . . . .	605



# List of Figures

<b>Part 1</b>	<b>Junos Space User Interface</b>	
<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Getting Started</b>	<b>3</b>
	Figure 1: Junos Space System Login Screen	4
	Figure 2: User Preferences – Change Local Password	5
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Understanding the Junos Space User Interface</b>	<b>9</b>
	Figure 3: Junos Space First Display	10
	Figure 4: Junos Space Banner	10
	Figure 5: Platform Dashboard	13
	Figure 6: Workspace Statistics Pages	14
	Figure 7: Manage Devices Inventory Page	16
	Figure 8: Sorting Tables	17
	Figure 9: Showing or Hiding Columns in Tables	17
	Figure 10: Typical Filter Submenu	18
	Figure 11: Search	18
	Figure 12: Page Information Bar	19
	Figure 13: Typical Submenu for a Date Column	25
	Figure 14: Typical Submenu for a Text Column	25
	Figure 15: Typical Submenu for a Column of Discrete Elements	26
	Figure 16: Typical Submenu for a Column of Numerical Values	26
<b>Part 2</b>	<b>Devices</b>	
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Device Management Overview</b>	<b>31</b>
	Figure 17: Device Count By Platform	33
	Figure 18: Device Status	34
	Figure 19: Device Count by OS	35
	Figure 20: Device Management Table	37
	Figure 21: Resynchronization Process	43
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Device Configuration</b>	<b>45</b>
	Figure 22: Modify Device Configuration	49
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Device Inventory</b>	<b>69</b>
	Figure 23: Device Inventory: Chassis Cluster	70
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Device Access</b>	<b>93</b>
	Figure 24: Verifying the Device Key Fingerprint	94
	Figure 25: Logging Into the Device after Validating the Fingerprint	95
	Figure 26: Validating the Server Key Fingerprint	96
	Figure 27: SSH Connection after Validating Server Key Fingerprint	97

<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>Discover Devices</b> .....	<b>107</b>
	Figure 28: SNMP Settings .....	111
	Figure 29: Device Discovery .....	113
<b>Chapter 12</b>	<b>Secure Console</b> .....	<b>133</b>
	Figure 30: Validating the Server Key Fingerprint .....	134
<b>Chapter 13</b>	<b>Manage Device Adapter</b> .....	<b>141</b>
	Figure 31: Add Device Adaptor Dialog Box .....	142
<b>Chapter 14</b>	<b>Discover Topology</b> .....	<b>145</b>
	Figure 32: Discover Topology .....	146
	Figure 33: Discovery Job Details Report .....	147
	Figure 34: Add Device Target .....	149
<b>Part 3</b>	<b>Device Templates</b>	
<b>Chapter 16</b>	<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>161</b>
	Figure 35: Workflow for Device Template Definition and Template Creation . . .	165
	Figure 36: Device Template Statistics .....	166
<b>Chapter 17</b>	<b>Template Definitions</b> .....	<b>169</b>
	Figure 37: Unpublish Template Definition .....	171
	Figure 38: Template Definition Workflow .....	175
	Figure 39: Create Template Definition .....	177
<b>Part 4</b>	<b>Images and Scripts</b>	
<b>Chapter 25</b>	<b>Configuration: Scripts</b> .....	<b>249</b>
	Figure 40: Compare Scripts .....	251
	Figure 41: View Execution Results Icon .....	263
	Figure 42: View Execution Results Page .....	264
	Figure 43: Script Execution Job Results .....	265
	Figure 44: Import Scripts Box .....	266
	Figure 45: Import Script Failure Notice .....	267
	Figure 46: Script Error Message .....	267
<b>Chapter 27</b>	<b>Configuration: Script Bundles</b> .....	<b>275</b>
	Figure 47: Modify Script Bundle .....	277
	Figure 48: Deploy Script Bundle .....	279
<b>Part 8</b>	<b>Users</b>	
<b>Chapter 36</b>	<b>Manage Users</b> .....	<b>389</b>
	Figure 49: User Preferences - Change Local Password .....	401
<b>Part 9</b>	<b>Audit Logs</b>	
<b>Chapter 41</b>	<b>View</b> .....	<b>435</b>
	Figure 50: Formatting the Local Times Column in Microsoft Excel .....	441

<b>Part 10</b>	<b>Administration</b>	
<b>Chapter 44</b>	<b>Overview</b>	<b>451</b>
	Figure 51: Maintenance Mode Actions Menu	453
<b>Chapter 45</b>	<b>Fabric</b>	<b>455</b>
	Figure 52: Fabric Nodes	456
	Figure 53: Fabric with One Node	457
	Figure 54: Fabric with Two Nodes	458
	Figure 55: Fabric with Three Nodes	458
	Figure 56: Add Fabric Node Dialog Box	460
	Figure 57: Overall System Condition Gauge	472
	Figure 58: Fabric Load History Chart	473
	Figure 59: 6412-monitoring-nodes-netmon-node-list	476
	Figure 60: 62412-snmp-config-editing.gif	477
<b>Chapter 46</b>	<b>Manage Databases</b>	<b>485</b>
	Figure 61: Backup Database Dialog Box	489
	Figure 62: Maintenance Mode Dialog Box	495
	Figure 63: Authentication Required Dialog Box	495
	Figure 64: Maintenance Actions	496
	Figure 65: Selection Box	496
	Figure 66: Confirmation Message	496
<b>Chapter 47</b>	<b>Manage Licenses</b>	<b>501</b>
	Figure 67: Administration: Upload Licence Dialog Box	502
	Figure 68: License Information Upload Success Message	503
	Figure 69: Manage Licenses Inventory Page	503
<b>Chapter 48</b>	<b>Manage Applications</b>	<b>505</b>
	Figure 70: User Preferences - Change Local Password	512
	Figure 71: Modify Network Application Platform Settings	513
<b>Chapter 49</b>	<b>Troubleshoot Space</b>	<b>529</b>
	Figure 72: Troubleshoot SPACE Page	532
	Figure 73: Maintenance Mode Page	533



# List of Tables

	<b>About the Documentation</b> . . . . .	<b>xxvii</b>
	Table 1: Notice Icons . . . . .	xxviii
	Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions . . . . .	xxviii
<b>Part 1</b>	<b>Junos Space User Interface</b>	
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Understanding the Junos Space User Interface</b> . . . . .	<b>9</b>
	Table 3: Global Action Icons . . . . .	10
	Table 4: Task Group (Workspace) Names . . . . .	11
	Table 5: Gadget Mouse-Over and Selection Operations . . . . .	14
	Table 6: Inventory Page Banner Icon Buttons . . . . .	16
	Table 7: Table Paging and Refreshing Controls . . . . .	19
	Table 8: Filter-enabled Tables and Columns . . . . .	23
<b>Part 2</b>	<b>Devices</b>	
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Device Management Overview</b> . . . . .	<b>31</b>
	Table 9: Fields in the Device Management Table . . . . .	38
	Table 10: Device Connection Status Icon . . . . .	39
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Device Configuration</b> . . . . .	<b>45</b>
	Table 11: Configuration Change Log . . . . .	54
	Table 12: Resolving Out-of-Band Changes . . . . .	55
	Table 13: View Assigned Shared Objects Table . . . . .	57
	Table 14: Manage Consolidated Config Page . . . . .	61
	Table 15: View Config Change Log Table . . . . .	67
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Device Inventory</b> . . . . .	<b>69</b>
	Table 16: Physical Interfaces Columns . . . . .	72
	Table 17: Logical Interfaces Columns . . . . .	74
	Table 18: License Usage Summary Fields . . . . .	76
	Table 19: License Feature or SKU Fields . . . . .	77
	Table 20: Additional Fields in CSV Files . . . . .	77
	Table 21: Software Inventory Fields . . . . .	79
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Device Monitoring</b> . . . . .	<b>103</b>
	Table 22: Information Displayed in the Alarms List . . . . .	104
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>Add Deployed Devices</b> . . . . .	<b>115</b>
	Table 23: Icons to View or Download Management CLI Commands . . . . .	116
	Table 24: Icons in the Rapid Deployment dialog box . . . . .	124
	Table 25: Fields Manually Entered in the Rapid Deployment Dialog Box . . . . .	124

<b>Chapter 11</b>	<b>Add Unmanaged Devices</b> . . . . .	<b>129</b>
	Table 26: SNMP V3 Configuration Parameters . . . . .	130
	Table 27: Sample CSV for Importing Unmanaged Devices . . . . .	130
<b>Chapter 14</b>	<b>Discover Topology</b> . . . . .	<b>145</b>
	Table 28: Discover Topology Landing Page Field Name and Descriptions . . . . .	146
	Table 29: Discovery Job Details Field Names and Descriptions . . . . .	147
<b>Part 3</b>	<b>Device Templates</b>	
<b>Chapter 17</b>	<b>Template Definitions</b> . . . . .	<b>169</b>
	Table 30: Data Types and Tabs . . . . .	179
	Table 31: Data Types and Validation Parameters . . . . .	180
	Table 32: CSV File for Interfaces . . . . .	188
<b>Chapter 18</b>	<b>Templates</b> . . . . .	<b>195</b>
	Table 33: Device Template State Icon Indicators . . . . .	196
	Table 34: Descriptive Information . . . . .	196
	Table 35: Review Changes Page . . . . .	201
	Table 36: View Deployment Table . . . . .	203
<b>Part 4</b>	<b>Images and Scripts</b>	
<b>Chapter 19</b>	<b>Overview</b> . . . . .	<b>221</b>
	Table 37: Device Images and Scripts User Roles . . . . .	222
<b>Chapter 20</b>	<b>Device Images</b> . . . . .	<b>225</b>
	Table 38: Manage Images Page . . . . .	225
<b>Chapter 21</b>	<b>Scripts</b> . . . . .	<b>227</b>
	Table 39: Manage Scripts Page Fields Description . . . . .	228
<b>Chapter 24</b>	<b>Configuration: Device Images</b> . . . . .	<b>235</b>
	Table 40: Stage Image On Devices Dialog Box Fields Descriptions . . . . .	238
	Table 41: Routing Platforms and Software Releases Supporting ISSU . . . . .	239
	Table 42: Common Deployment Options Description . . . . .	243
	Table 43: Conventional Deployment Options Description . . . . .	243
	Table 44: ISSU Deployment Options Description . . . . .	243
	Table 45: Advanced Deployment Options Description . . . . .	244
	Table 46: Select Devices Table Field Descriptions . . . . .	244
	Table 47: Validation Results Page Field Descriptions . . . . .	246
<b>Chapter 25</b>	<b>Configuration: Scripts</b> . . . . .	<b>249</b>
	Table 48: View Execution Result Page Fields Description . . . . .	264
<b>Chapter 26</b>	<b>Configuration: Operations</b> . . . . .	<b>269</b>
	Table 49: Create Operation Dialog Box Icon Descriptions . . . . .	270
<b>Chapter 27</b>	<b>Configuration: Script Bundles</b> . . . . .	<b>275</b>
	Table 50: Create Script Bundle Dialog Box Icon Descriptions . . . . .	275
	Table 51: Modify Script Bundle Dialog Box Icon Descriptions . . . . .	277
<b>Chapter 28</b>	<b>Administration: Scripts</b> . . . . .	<b>281</b>



	Table 52: Script Details Dialog Box Fields . . . . .	281
	Table 53: Script Verification Results Page Fields . . . . .	282
<b>Part 5</b>	<b>Network Monitoring</b>	
<b>Chapter 30</b>	<b>Network Monitoring UI . . . . .</b>	<b>289</b>
	Table 54: Alarms Table . . . . .	298
	Table 55: Notifications Table . . . . .	298
	Table 56: Node Status Table . . . . .	299
	Table 57: Resource Graphs Table . . . . .	299
	Table 58: Information Displayed in the Alarms List . . . . .	311
<b>Part 7</b>	<b>Jobs</b>	
<b>Chapter 33</b>	<b>Overview . . . . .</b>	<b>371</b>
	Table 59: Junos Space Job Types Per Application . . . . .	372
<b>Chapter 34</b>	<b>Manage Jobs . . . . .</b>	<b>375</b>
	Table 60: Job Icon Status Indicators . . . . .	376
	Table 61: Job Details and Columns in the Manage Jobs Table . . . . .	377
<b>Part 8</b>	<b>Users</b>	
<b>Chapter 36</b>	<b>Manage Users . . . . .</b>	<b>389</b>
	Table 62: User Detail Summary Page . . . . .	397
<b>Chapter 37</b>	<b>Manage Roles . . . . .</b>	<b>405</b>
	Table 63: Predefined Roles for the Network Application Platform . . . . .	408
	Table 64: Predefined Roles for Network Activate Application . . . . .	415
	Table 65: Predefined Roles for Service Insight Application . . . . .	416
	Table 66: Predefined Roles for Service Now Application . . . . .	418
	Table 67: Predefined Roles for Ethernet Design Application . . . . .	422
<b>Part 9</b>	<b>Audit Logs</b>	
<b>Chapter 41</b>	<b>View . . . . .</b>	<b>435</b>
	Table 68: Detailed Audit Logs Information and View Audit Log Table Columns . . . . .	436
	Table 69: Audit Log Table Details for Recurring and Non-recurring Jobs . . . . .	437
<b>Part 10</b>	<b>Administration</b>	
<b>Chapter 44</b>	<b>Overview . . . . .</b>	<b>451</b>
	Table 70: Junos Space Administrators . . . . .	451
<b>Chapter 45</b>	<b>Fabric . . . . .</b>	<b>455</b>
	Table 71: Fields for the Fabric Monitoring Inventory Page . . . . .	462
	Table 72: Logical Component Monitoring . . . . .	474
<b>Chapter 46</b>	<b>Manage Databases . . . . .</b>	<b>485</b>
	Table 73: Backup Schedule Units and Increments . . . . .	488
	Table 74: Fields in the Manage Databases Table . . . . .	497

<b>Chapter 47</b>	<b>Manage Licenses</b> . . . . .	<b>501</b>
	Table 75: Manage Licenses Details . . . . .	504
<b>Chapter 48</b>	<b>Manage Applications</b> . . . . .	<b>505</b>
	Table 76: Application Information . . . . .	507
	Table 77: Network Application Platform Application Settings . . . . .	510
	Table 78: Password Constraint Parameters . . . . .	513
	Table 79: Starting, Stopping, and Restarting Network Monitoring . . . . .	515
	Table 80: Network Activate Application Settings . . . . .	518
<b>Chapter 49</b>	<b>Troubleshoot Space</b> . . . . .	<b>529</b>
	Table 81: Log Files included in the troubleshoot File . . . . .	530
	Table 82: Data and Log Files in troubleshoot.zip File . . . . .	532
<b>Chapter 50</b>	<b>Manage Auth Servers</b> . . . . .	<b>537</b>
	Table 83: Remote Authentication Server Settings . . . . .	541
	Table 84: TACACS+ Remote Authentication Server Settings . . . . .	547
<b>Chapter 52</b>	<b>Manage Tags</b> . . . . .	<b>555</b>
	Table 85: Tag Information . . . . .	557

# About the Documentation

- Documentation and Release Notes on page xxvii
- Documentation Conventions on page xxvii
- Documentation Feedback on page xxix
- Requesting Technical Support on page xxx

## Documentation and Release Notes

---

To obtain the most current version of all Juniper Networks® technical documentation, see the product documentation page on the Juniper Networks website at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/>.

If the information in the latest release notes differs from the information in the documentation, follow the product Release Notes.

Juniper Networks Books publishes books by Juniper Networks engineers and subject matter experts. These books go beyond the technical documentation to explore the nuances of network architecture, deployment, and administration. The current list can be viewed at <http://www.juniper.net/books>.

## Documentation Conventions

---

Table 1 on page xxviii defines notice icons used in this guide.

Table 1: Notice Icons

Icon	Meaning	Description
	Informational note	Indicates important features or instructions.
	Caution	Indicates a situation that might result in loss of data or hardware damage.
	Warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury or death.
	Laser warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury from a laser.
	Tip	Indicates helpful information.
	Best practice	Alerts you to a recommended use or implementation.

Table 2 on page xxviii defines the text and syntax conventions used in this guide.

Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions

Convention	Description	Examples
<b>Bold text like this</b>	Represents text that you type.	To enter configuration mode, type the <b>configure</b> command:  user@host> <b>configure</b>
Fixed-width text like this	Represents output that appears on the terminal screen.	user@host> <b>show chassis alarms</b>  No alarms currently active
<i>Italic text like this</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Introduces or emphasizes important new terms.</li> <li>Identifies guide names.</li> <li>Identifies RFC and Internet draft titles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A policy <i>term</i> is a named structure that defines match conditions and actions.</li> <li><i>Junos OS CLI User Guide</i></li> <li>RFC 1997, <i>BGP Communities Attribute</i></li> </ul>
<i>Italic text like this</i>	Represents variables (options for which you substitute a value) in commands or configuration statements.	Configure the machine's domain name:  [edit] root@# <b>set system domain-name</b> <i>domain-name</i>

Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions (*continued*)

Convention	Description	Examples
Text like this	Represents names of configuration statements, commands, files, and directories; configuration hierarchy levels; or labels on routing platform components.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>To configure a stub area, include the <b>stub</b> statement at the <b>[edit protocols ospf area area-id]</b> hierarchy level.</li><li>The console port is labeled <b>CONSOLE</b>.</li></ul>
< > (angle brackets)	Encloses optional keywords or variables.	<b>stub &lt;default-metric <i>metric</i>&gt;;</b>
(pipe symbol)	Indicates a choice between the mutually exclusive keywords or variables on either side of the symbol. The set of choices is often enclosed in parentheses for clarity.	<b>broadcast   multicast</b>  <b>(<i>string1</i>   <i>string2</i>   <i>string3</i>)</b>
# (pound sign)	Indicates a comment specified on the same line as the configuration statement to which it applies.	<b>rsvp { # Required for dynamic MPLS only</b>
[ ] (square brackets)	Encloses a variable for which you can substitute one or more values.	<b>community name members [ <i>community-ids</i> ]</b>
Indentation and braces ( { } )	Identifies a level in the configuration hierarchy.	<pre>[edit] routing-options {   static {     route default {       nexthop <i>address</i>;       retain;     }   } }</pre>
;(semicolon)	Identifies a leaf statement at a configuration hierarchy level.	
GUI Conventions		
Bold text like this	Represents graphical user interface (GUI) items you click or select.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>In the Logical Interfaces box, select <b>All Interfaces</b>.</li><li>To cancel the configuration, click <b>Cancel</b>.</li></ul>
> (bold right angle bracket)	Separates levels in a hierarchy of menu selections.	In the configuration editor hierarchy, select <b>Protocols&gt;Ospf</b> .

## Documentation Feedback

We encourage you to provide feedback, comments, and suggestions so that we can improve the documentation. You can provide feedback by using either of the following methods:

- Online feedback rating system—On any page of the Juniper Networks TechLibrary site at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/index.html>, simply click the stars to rate the content, and use the pop-up form to provide us with information about your experience. Alternately, you can use the online feedback form at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/feedback/>.

- E-mail—Send your comments to [techpubs-comments@juniper.net](mailto:techpubs-comments@juniper.net). Include the document or topic name, URL or page number, and software version (if applicable).

## Requesting Technical Support

---

Technical product support is available through the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC). If you are a customer with an active J-Care or Partner Support Service support contract, or are covered under warranty, and need post-sales technical support, you can access our tools and resources online or open a case with JTAC.

- JTAC policies—For a complete understanding of our JTAC procedures and policies, review the *JTAC User Guide* located at <http://www.juniper.net/us/en/local/pdf/resource-guides/7100059-en.pdf>.
- Product warranties—For product warranty information, visit <http://www.juniper.net/support/warranty/>.
- JTAC hours of operation—The JTAC centers have resources available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year.

## Self-Help Online Tools and Resources

For quick and easy problem resolution, Juniper Networks has designed an online self-service portal called the Customer Support Center (CSC) that provides you with the following features:

- Find CSC offerings: <http://www.juniper.net/customers/support/>
- Search for known bugs: <http://www2.juniper.net/kb/>
- Find product documentation: <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/>
- Find solutions and answer questions using our Knowledge Base: <http://kb.juniper.net/>
- Download the latest versions of software and review release notes: <http://www.juniper.net/customers/csc/software/>
- Search technical bulletins for relevant hardware and software notifications: <http://kb.juniper.net/InfoCenter/>
- Join and participate in the Juniper Networks Community Forum: <http://www.juniper.net/company/communities/>
- Open a case online in the CSC Case Management tool: <http://www.juniper.net/cm/>

To verify service entitlement by product serial number, use our Serial Number Entitlement (SNE) Tool: <https://tools.juniper.net/SerialNumberEntitlementSearch/>

## Opening a Case with JTAC

You can open a case with JTAC on the Web or by telephone.

- Use the Case Management tool in the CSC at <http://www.juniper.net/cm/>.
- Call 1-888-314-JTAC (1-888-314-5822 toll-free in the USA, Canada, and Mexico).

For international or direct-dial options in countries without toll-free numbers, see <http://www.juniper.net/support/requesting-support.html>.





## PART 1

# Junos Space User Interface

- [Getting Started on page 3](#)
- [Understanding the Junos Space User Interface on page 9](#)



## CHAPTER 1

# Getting Started

- [Logging In to Junos Space on page 3](#)
- [Changing User Passwords on page 4](#)
- [Using the Getting Started Assistants on page 5](#)
- [Accessing Help on page 6](#)
- [Logging Out on page 7](#)

### Logging In to Junos Space

---

You connect to Junos<sup>®</sup> Space from your Web browser. Internet Explorer versions 8.0 and 9.0, and latest stable versions of Mozilla Firefox and Google Chrome Web browsers are supported.



**WARNING:** To avoid a BEAST TLS 1.0 attack, whenever you log in to Junos Space in a browser tab or window, make sure that tab or window was not previously used to surf a non-https website. Best practice is to close your browser and relaunch it before logging in to Junos Space.



**NOTE:** Before you can log in to the system, your browser must have the Adobe Flash Version 10 or later plug-in installed.



**NOTE:** Install the Chrome Frame plugin if you are using the Topology Discovery feature on Internet Explorer version 8 browser. Topology Discovery feature does not work on the Internet Explorer version 9 browser.

To access and log in to Junos Space:

1. In the address field of your browser window, type  
**https://<1.1.1.1>/mainui/**  
where <1.1.1.1> is the Web IP address for Web access to Junos Space.
2. Press Enter or click **Search**.

The system login screen appears.

**Figure 1: Junos Space System Login Screen**

The image shows a login interface with a dark blue background. It contains two white input fields: the first is labeled 'Username:' and the second is labeled 'Password:'. Below the password field is a blue button with the text 'Log In' in white.

3. Type your username and password. The default username is **super**; the password is **juniper123**. For information about how to change your username, see your system administrator.
4. (Optional) Perform remote authentication with Challenge-Response configured on a server.  
Provide valid responses for the challenge questions you are asked to log in successfully.
5. Click **Log In**.

The Junos Space Platform dashboard appears.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Logging Out on page 7](#)
- [Changing User Passwords on page 4](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)
- [Junos Space Log In Behavior with Remote Authentication Enabled on page 549](#)

---

## Changing User Passwords

Users who are logged in to Junos Space can change their account passwords by going to the User Preferences icon on the Junos Space banner. No particular Junos Space role is required for users to change their passwords.

Beginning with Junos Space Network Application Platform Release 12.1, Junos Space has implemented a default standard for passwords that is compliant with industry standards for security.



**NOTE:** Upgrading to Junos Space Platform 12.1 or later causes the default standard to take effect immediately. All local users will get password expiration messages the first time they log in after the update.



**NOTE:** If you do not have a local password set, you will not be able to set or change it.



**NOTE:** Using User Preferences to change your password only works for local passwords. The change does not affect any passwords that an administrator might have configured for you on a remote authentication server.

To change your user password:

1. Click the User Preferences icon on the upper right, in the Junos Space banner .  
The User Preferences – Change Password dialog box appears.
2. Type your old password.
3. Display the rules for password creation by mousing over the information icon (small blue [i]) next to the password field.

Note that [Figure 2 on page 5](#) shows only sample rules, not necessarily those set for your system.

**Figure 2: User Preferences - Change Local Password**

**User Preferences - Change Local Password**

Old password:

Password:  ⓘ

Confirm password:

**Warning:** Selecting the Change button will log you out of the current session. If you have other sessions running, other sessions are not being affected until their next login.

**Password must:**

- Be at least 6 characters in length
- Must not reuse previous 6 passwords
- Must contain at least one lowercase character
- Must contain at least one number
- Must not repeat the Login ID
- Must not reverse the Login ID
- Must not contain more than three repetitive characters
- Must not contain numbers or special character as the last character

Type your new password.

4. Retype your password to confirm it.
5. Click **Change**.

You are logged out of the system. You have to log in again using your new password. Any open sessions are disabled until you log in again.

#### Related Documentation

- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Logging In to Junos Space on page 3](#)
- [Configuring Password Settings on page 512](#)

## Using the Getting Started Assistants

The Getting Started assistants display steps and help on how to complete common tasks. Getting Started is a section in the sidebar that appears when you log in to the system if the Show Getting Started on Startup check box at the bottom of the section

is selected. If the sidebar is not shown, you can display it by selecting the Help icon in the Junos Space header.

The Getting Started topics are context sensitive per application. Getting Started displays all the steps in a task. From a step in a task, you can jump that point in the user interface to actually complete it.

Some applications implement the Getting Started assistants; others do not.

To use a Getting Started assistant:

1. Select an application in the task tree.
2. If the sidebar is not already displayed, select the **Help** icon at the right side of the Junos Space header. (Mouse over the icons to see their descriptions.)  
The sidebar appears.

3. In the sidebar, expand **Getting Started**.

A main Getting Started topic link appears in the sidebar.

4. Select a main topic.

For example, in the Network Activate application, click **Provision a Service**. A list of required steps appears in the sidebar. Each step contains a task link and a link to the Help.

5. Perform a specific step by clicking the link.

You jump to that point in the user interface. The assistant remains visible in the sidebar to aid navigation to subsequent tasks.

6. Access Help for a specific step by clicking the Help icon next to that step.

#### Related Documentation

- [Accessing Help on page 6](#)

---

## Accessing Help

Junos Space provides complete documentation in a Help system that is context sensitive per workspace. The Help system provides information on each element in the system, including workspaces, dashboards, tasks, inventory pages, and actions. The Help system also provides frequently asked questions (FAQs) and the entire system documentation. Help topics appear as links in the sidebar.

To access online Help:

1. Click the workspace within which you want to work.
2. Click the Help icon.

The sidebar appears, if it is not already displayed, with the Help section open listing specific topics for that workspace and tasks.

3. Click a topic link to view its contents.

The Help topic appears in a separate window.

4. Click the >> button at the top right of the sidebar to hide it.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Using the Getting Started Assistants on page 5](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)

---

## Logging Out

When you complete your administrative tasks in the Junos Space user interface, log out to prevent unauthorized users from intruding.

To log out of the system:

1. Click the Log Out icon in the banner.

The Logout page appears. A user who is idle and has not performed any action, such as keystrokes or mouse clicks, is automatically logged out of Junos Space to the Logout page. This setting conserves server resources and protects the system from unauthorized access. The default setting is 60 minutes. You can change the setting in the Manage Applications inventory page. Select **Network Management Platform** and then select **Modify Application Settings** from the Actions menu.

To log in the system again, click the **Click here to log in again** link.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Logging In to Junos Space on page 3](#)
- [Changing User Passwords on page 4](#)
- [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)





## CHAPTER 2

# Understanding the Junos Space User Interface

- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)
- [Navigating the Junos Space User Interface on page 20](#)
- [Filtering Inventory Pages on page 22](#)

### Junos Space User Interface Overview

---

The Junos Space user interface is designed to look and behave in a familiar way for most users. To familiarize yourself with it quickly, try the example in [“Navigating the Junos Space User Interface” on page 20](#). It will direct you back to this topic for any less-than-obvious details.

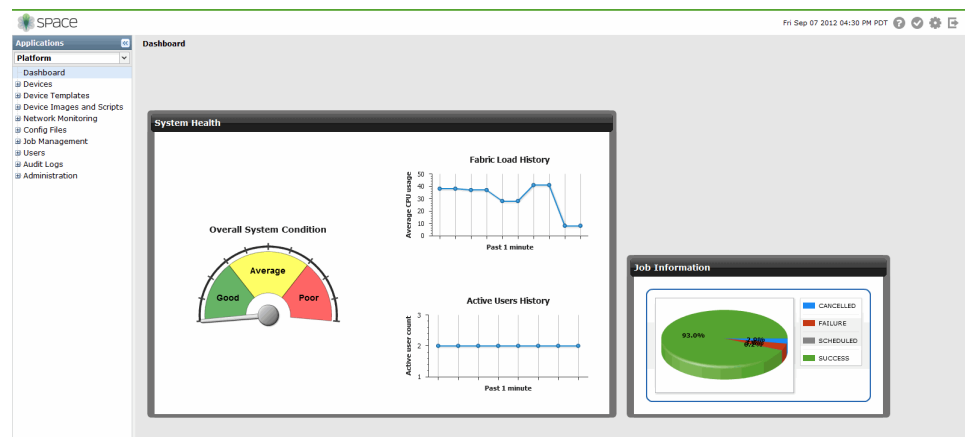
Multiple users can have concurrent access to the user interface via Web browsers. All users have access to the same current information in the same system-wide database. Access to tasks and objects is controlled by permissions assigned to each user.

The examples shown here are from the Network Application Platform (hereafter called the Platform) user interface. Other applications may have design variations.

### The Main Display

When you have logged into Junos Space, the first display you see is shown in [Figure 3 on page 10](#).

Figure 3: Junos Space First Display



This display has three main parts: a task tree on the left side, which is always available; a main window on the right, whose content changes as you select items from the task tree; and a banner across the top, which offers the date and time and several icon buttons for frequently used actions. These parts are described in the succeeding sections.

- [Banner on page 10](#)
- [Task Tree on page 11](#)
- [Main Window on page 12](#)

### Banner

The banner displays the date and server time in the active time zone and the global actions icons.

Figure 4: Junos Space Banner



This banner is always present. [Table 3 on page 10](#) describes the global action icons at its right side.

Table 3: Global Action Icons

Global Action Icon	Description
	Displays the application Help. To access workspace context-sensitive Help, click the Help icon after navigating to that workspace. See <a href="#">“Accessing Help” on page 6</a> .
	Displays the My Jobs dialog box, from which you can view the progress and status of current managed jobs. See <a href="#">“Viewing Your Jobs” on page 375</a> .
	Displays the User Preferences dialog box from which you can change user preferences, such as the password. See <a href="#">“Changing User Passwords” on page 4</a> .
	Logs you out of the system. See <a href="#">“Logging Out” on page 7</a> .

## Task Tree

The task tree on the left side of the display is always present and is the navigation center for Junos Space. As shown in [Figure 3 on page 10](#), when you first log in, the box at the top of the tree beneath the Applications banner displays Platform by default. You can drop this list down to see all the other Junos Space applications available on your system. (You can install other applications using the Manage Applications task group, as described in the [“Application Management Overview” on page 505](#).)

You can collapse the task tree to the left using the double left arrows in its header, and re-expand it using the double right arrows.

Below the application name is the word Dashboard, selected by default. It indicates that what you see in the right-hand window is the dashboard for the current application, in this case for the Platform. The dashboard shows several measures of overall system health.

Below the Dashboard item in the tree is a list of the task groups available in the current application. This list forms the top level of the task tree. If you select a different application in the Application box, you will see the task group list change. This topic describes the task groups for the Platform; for the task groups in other applications, see their respective documentation.

The task groups in the Platform are described at a high level in [Table 4 on page 11](#).

**Table 4: Task Group (Workspace) Names**

Task Group Name	Function
Devices	Manage devices, including adding, discovering, importing, and updating them. See <a href="#">“Device Management Overview” on page 31</a> .
Device Templates	Create configuration definitions and templates used to deploy configuration changes on multiple Juniper Networks devices. See <a href="#">“Device Templates Overview” on page 162</a> .
Device Images and Scripts	Download a device image from the Juniper Networks Software download site to your local file system, upload it into Junos Space, and deploy it on one or more devices at once. See <a href="#">“Device Images Overview” on page 225</a> .  Use Junos scripts (configuration and diagnostic automation tools) to deploy, verify, enable, disable, remove, and execute scripts deployed to devices.
Network Monitoring	Assess the performance of your network, not only at a point in time, but also over a period of time. See <a href="#">“Network Monitoring Workspace Overview” on page 290</a> .
Config Files	Maintain copies of device running, candidate, and backup configuration files, providing for device configuration recovery and maintaining consistency across multiple devices. See <a href="#">“Managing Configuration Files Overview” on page 354</a> .

Table 4: Task Group (Workspace) Names (*continued*)

Task Group Name	Function
Job Management	Monitor the progress of ongoing jobs. See <a href="#">“Job Management Overview” on page 371</a> .
Users	Add, manage, and delete users. See <a href="#">“Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space” on page 406</a> .
Audit Logs	View and filter system audit logs, including those for user login/logout, tracking device management tasks, and displaying services that were provisioned on devices.. See <a href="#">“Junos Space Audit Logs Overview” on page 435</a> .
Administration	Add network nodes, backup your database, manage licenses and applications, or troubleshoot. See <a href="#">“Adding a Node to an Existing Fabric” on page 459</a> , <a href="#">“Database Backup and Restore Overview” on page 485</a> , <a href="#">“Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File from the UI” on page 532</a> , <a href="#">“Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File In Maintenance Mode” on page 533</a> , <a href="#">“Application Management Overview” on page 505</a> , <a href="#">“Viewing Tags” on page 564</a> .

You can expand any of these task groups by clicking the expansion symbol to the left of its name. When you do so, the next level of the task tree for that task group opens. Some items at this second level may also be expandable subgroups. The tree does not go deeper than three levels.

You can expand as many task groups as you like: previously expanded ones remain open until you collapse them. The design of the task tree enables you to jump from area to area within an application with the minimum number of selections.

### Main Window

When you log into Junos Space, the main window shows the Platform application dashboard.

When you select a task group name (as opposed to expanding it), the main window changes and displays graphical statistics for that task group. Task groups are also referred to as workspaces, so this display is called Workspace Statistics. It is similar in functionality to the overall system dashboard, but it pertains only to that task group.

Selecting the name of a subtask whose name begins with “Manage” causes the main window to display an inventory of the objects managed in table format.

Each of these tools is discussed in a later section of this topic.

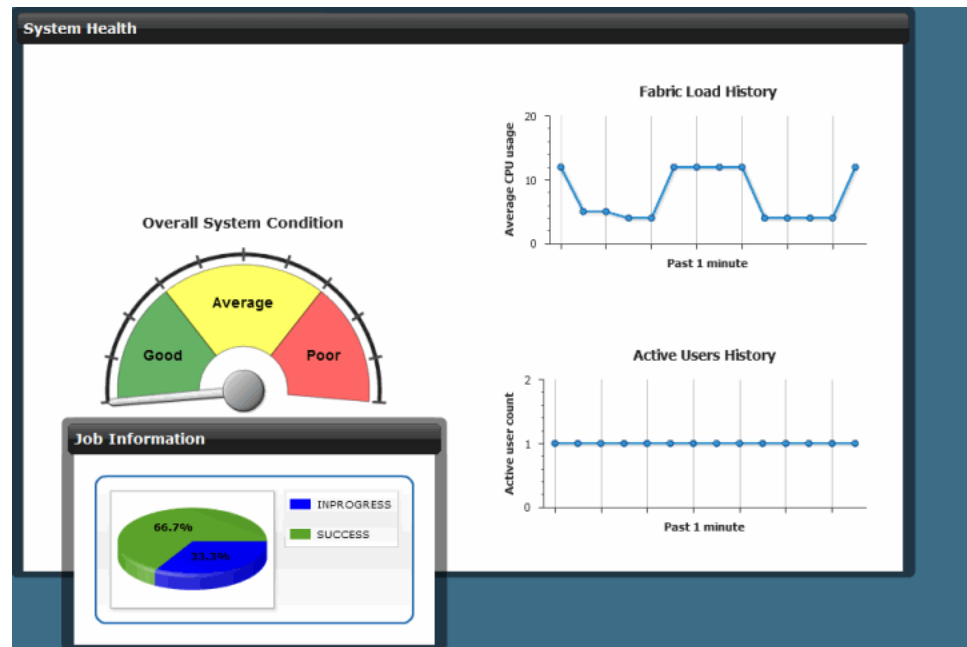
## Application Dashboard

When you select an application in the box above the task tree, a dashboard displays graphical data about devices, jobs, users, administration, and so on.

The dashboard provides a snapshot of the current status of objects managed and operations performed within a Junos Space application. The Platform dashboard, shown

in [Figure 5 on page 13](#), displays the system health of your network and the percentage of jobs run successfully and in progress.

Figure 5: Platform Dashboard



The following sections describe the parts of the Platform Dashboard.

### Dashboard Gadgets

The Platform dashboard contains gadgets (graphs and charts) that display statistics that provide a quick view of system health. They include a gauge for overall system condition and graphs that display the fabric load and active user history. For an explanation of the data shown in these gadgets, see [“Understanding Overall System Condition and Fabric Load” on page 471](#).

You can move and resize gadgets. All dashboard gadgets are visible for all users and are updated in real time. To print or save a graph or chart, right-click on it to bring up a menu.

Select (single click) a gadget or gadget elements to see more detailed information. Typically, selecting a gadget element takes you either to the statistics page of the associated task group, or to an inventory page. Some gadgets let you filter information by selecting a specific segment or bar from a chart, or a specific line of a table. For example, if you select the red segment on the Job Information gadget, you navigate to the Job Management > Manage Jobs inventory page, which in this case displays only failed tasks.

Return to the dashboard by selecting Dashboard in the task tree.



**NOTE:** If you do not have user privileges to view certain application data, you cannot view more detailed information if you select a gadget.

Table 5 on page 14 describes the mouse-over and selection (single click) operations you can perform on dashboard gadgets.

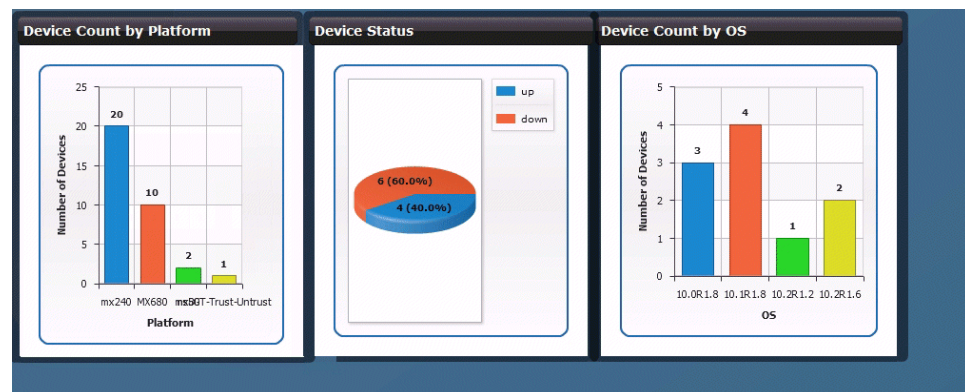
**Table 5: Gadget Mouse-Over and Selection Operations**

Gadget	Mouse-Over Information	Double-Click Navigation
Overall System Condition gauge	N/A	Select the indicator needle to display the Administration > Manage Fabric page. See <a href="#">“Understanding Overall System Condition and Fabric Load” on page 471.</a>
Fabric Load History graph	Mouse over a graph data point to view the CPU Usage (average usage percentage)	Select a graph data point to display the Administration > Manage Fabric page. See <a href="#">“Viewing Nodes in the Fabric” on page 461.</a>
Active User History graph	Mouse over a graph data point to view the Active user (total count)	Select the graph data point display the Users statistics page, filtered by active users. See <a href="#">“Viewing User Statistics” on page 402.</a>
Job information pie chart	Mouse over the pie chart to view the percentage of jobs that have been successful.	Select a segment of the pie chart to display the Job Management > Manage Jobs inventory page, filtered by that segment. To see the list unfiltered, select the red X beside the filter criterion, above the column headings on the left side. See <a href="#">“Viewing Scheduled Jobs” on page 376.</a>

## Task Group (Workspace) Statistics

When you select the name of a task group (workspace) in the task tree, Junos Space displays high-level statistics representing the status of managed objects in that task group. [Figure 6 on page 14](#) shows the statistics page for the Devices workspace.

**Figure 6: Workspace Statistics Pages**



To print or save the statistics, right-click the graphic (bar chart or pie chart).

You can move charts and graphs on the screen or resize them.

If a chart has more data points than can be viewed clearly at once, a scroll bar appears at the bottom or side of the chart.

If you click a bar or pie-chart segment, you navigate to the corresponding inventory page, filtered according to the bar or segment you selected. For example, if you click the MX240 devices bar in the Device Count by Platform bar chart, you navigate to the Platform > Devices > Manage Devices inventory page, which in this case displays all the MX240 devices on the network that are discovered and managed by Junos Space.

If you click the slice in the Device Status pie chart that represents the number of devices that are down, you navigate to the Manage Devices inventory page that displays all of the devices on the network that are down.

## Inventory Page

Throughout the Junos Space user interface, you navigate to an inventory page by selecting an application, expanding an application task group, then selecting a management task, such as Manage Devices, Manage Users, or Manage Jobs. For example, to view the Manage Devices inventory page, select Platform > Devices > Manage Devices.

On the inventory pages, managed objects are displayed in tables. The columns shown vary depending on which Junos Space applications you have installed. For example, in the Manage Devices inventory page, the an application might add a column between two of the columns shown in [Figure 7 on page 16](#).

Each managed object stored in the Junos Space database includes specific data. For example, devices are stored in the database according to device name, interfaces, OS version, platform, IP address, connection, managed status, and several other items of information.

Inventory pages enable you to view and manipulate managed objects individually or collectively. Managed objects include devices, logs, users, jobs, clients, software, licenses, and so forth. You can browse, zoom, filter, tag, and sort objects.

You can manipulate objects in tables by changing the width of columns, sorting columns, and hiding columns.

Select an object or objects by checking the box to the left of each object. You can select one, several, or all objects and perform actions on them using right-click actions or items in the Actions menu on the right side of the inventory page banner. The box to the left in the first column of the column head row selects or deselects all items.



**NOTE:** The function and implementation of individual inventory pages depends on the Junos Space application design.

## Parts of the Inventory Page

[Figure 7 on page 16](#) shows the parts of the Manage Devices inventory page user interface.

Figure 7: Manage Devices Inventory Page

Name	Physical Interf...	Logical Interfa...	OS Version	Platform	Vendor	Schema Version	IP Address	Connection Sta...	Managed Status	Authentic...
Bng-12kona	View	View	12.2R1.8	EX4550-32F	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.204.39.21	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
boston-ex4500	View	View	12.1R2.9	EX4500-40F	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.155.69.77	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
chromis	View	View	12.3-20120901_dev...	T4000	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.216.49.68	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
clinton-ex4200	View	View	11.2R1.2	EX4200-48T	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.155.78.4	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
clinton-ex4200	View	View	11.2R1.2	EX4200-48T	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.155.78.1	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
fortius-f50-p5	View	View	12.2-20120823_eab...	ACX1000	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.216.65.158	Up	Sync Failed	Credentials Based
fortius-g-svl6	View	View	12.2R1.3	ACX2000	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	192.168.183.211	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
fortius-g81-p4	View	View	12.2R1.3	ACX2000	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.216.65.100	Up	Synchronizing	Credentials Based
london	View	View	10.3R1.9	M10I	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.155.69.10	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
milton-ex4200	View	View	12.1R1.9	EX4200-48T	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.155.78.5	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
paris	View	View	10.3R1.9	M10I	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.155.69.11	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
qfabnc-G	View	View	12.210120822...	QFX3000-G	Juniper Networks	11.3X30.10	10.94.198.25	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
qfabnc-M	View	View	12.2X50-D20.3	QFX3000-M	Juniper Networks	11.3X30.10	10.94.197.75	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
sacramento-m10i	View	View	12.1R2.9	M10I	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.155.69.24	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based
sanjose-mx240	View	View	11.2R1.10	MX240	Juniper Networks	11.4R2.14	10.155.69.12	Up	In Sync	Credentials Based

### Banner Icon Buttons

Depending on the nature of the inventory page, its banner may contain any of the icons shown in [Table 6 on page 16](#). Mouse over an icon to see its name.

Table 6: Inventory Page Banner Icon Buttons

Symbol	Name	Function
	Tag	Displays/hides a left-side tag menu that allows you to filter inventory page contents according to tags. See <a href="#">"Filtering Inventory Using Tags" on page 565</a> .
	Display Quick View	Displays/hides a small window summarizing data about the selected object.
	Create <i>Object</i>	Displays a window in which you can create an instance of this type of object.
	Show <i>Object</i> Details	Displays a window containing full details about the selected object: for example, all the permissions of a user.
	Modify <i>Object</i>	Displays a window allowing you to edit the selected object.
	Delete <i>Object</i>	Deletes the selected object.

Return to the inventory page by closing a window, if possible, or by selecting within the breadcrumbs at the top of the page.

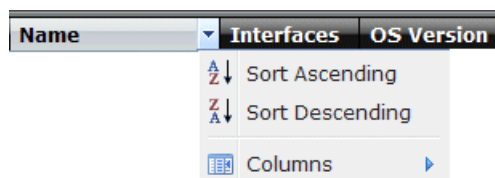
### Sorted-by Indicator

The Sorted-by indicator is a small arrowhead next to a column name. It displays how the objects are sorted in a column. After you have sorted a column, the column name is highlighted and the indicator appears.



You can sort inventory data using the Sort Ascending and Sort Descending commands in the column header drop-down menu. Click the down arrow on a table header to view the sort menu. In [Figure 8 on page 17](#), the device inventory is sorted by the Name column.

**Figure 8: Sorting Tables**

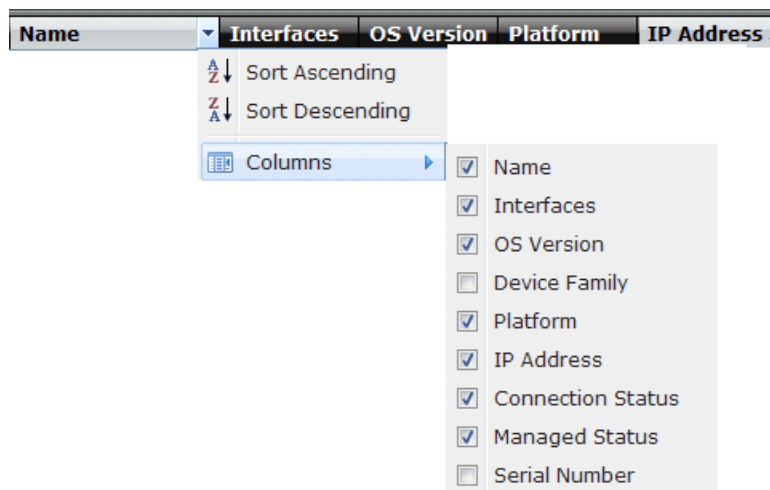


Some columns do not support sorting.

### Show or Hide Columns

Hide table columns by deselecting the column name in the Columns Cascading menu, as shown in [Figure 9 on page 17](#). It is available in any column. Only selected column names appear in the inventory table.

**Figure 9: Showing or Hiding Columns in Tables**



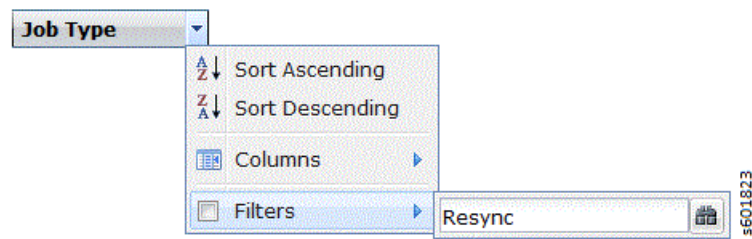
### Filter Submenus

The Filter submenus let you temporarily hide all of the entries in the table that do not match criteria that you are interested in. These features let you quickly find and evaluate the table entries of interest. For details, see [“Filtering Inventory Pages” on page 22](#).

To filter tables on various criteria, right-click the column header and use the Filter submenu. The choices available depend on the nature of the selected column.

Whenever you filter a table, the application displays the filter criteria, including the columns being filtered, above the table. The inventory table also displays a red X to the right of the filter criteria, and the column name is shown in italic font. You can clear the filter and restore the table to its original view by clicking the red X.

Figure 10: Typical Filter Submenu

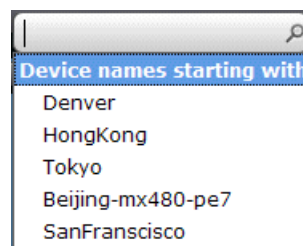


### Search Field

Use the Search text field on the left of the inventory page banner to search for specific objects to display on the inventory page. Typing the first letter of an object displays the available names that start with that letter.

Clicking the magnifying glass at the right in the search field displays a list with the names of inventory objects. When you select a search option in the list, inventory items specific to that search option only are displayed on the page.

Figure 11: Search



You can create tags to categorize objects. For more information about tagging objects to select similar objects, see [“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#).

To display all the inventory objects on the page again, clear the contents in the Search box and press Enter.

### Actions Menu

You can perform actions on one or more selected items on an inventory page by using the Actions menu at the right side of the banner, or by right-clicking items. To use the Actions menu, select one or more objects, select the Actions menu to open it, and select an action or subgroup of actions. (A subgroup has an arrowhead next to its name.) For example, to view the physical interfaces of a device, select that device in the Manage Devices inventory page, open the Actions menu, expand the Device Inventory subgroup, and select View Physical Inventory.

You can also select one or more items in the inventory page, then right-click. The right-click menu appears, providing the same functionality as the Actions menu.



**NOTE:** If you are using Mozilla Firefox, the Advanced JavaScript Settings might disable the right-click menu.

To ensure that you can use the right-click menu:

1. In Mozilla Firefox, choose Tools > Options to display the Options dialog box.
2. In the Options dialog box, click the Content tab.
3. Click Advanced to display the Advanced JavaScript Settings dialog box.
4. Select the Disable or replace context menus option.
5. Click OK in the Advanced JavaScript Settings dialog box.
6. Click OK in the Options dialog box.

### Paging Controls

Figure 12 on page 19 shows the paging controls that appear at the bottom of the inventory page. You can use these controls to browse the inventory when the inventory is too large to fit on one page.

Figure 12: Page Information Bar



The Page box lets you jump to a specific page of managed objects. Type the page number in the Page box and press Enter to jump to that field. The Show box enables you to customize the number of objects displayed per page. Table 7 on page 19 describes other table controls.

Table 7: Table Paging and Refreshing Controls

Page Control	Operation
	Advances to the next page of the table.
	Returns to the previous page of the table.
	Displays the last page of the table.
	Displays the first page of the table.
	Refreshes the table content.

- Related Documentation**
- [Device Management Overview on page 31](#)
  - [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
  - [Filtering Inventory Pages on page 22](#)

## Navigating the Junos Space User Interface

---

This topic takes you on a quick tour of one part of the Junos Space user interface to show you how it works. Navigation is the same throughout the Junos Space Platform. Other applications within Junos Space may show some differences.

In this example, we take a path that you might follow frequently: looking at the list of all devices under management. The role and permissions that you have will govern what commands or actions are available to you.

The entire user interface is described in “[Junos Space User Interface Overview](#)” on page 9.

- [Navigating the Task Tree: The Devices Workspace on page 20](#)

### Navigating the Task Tree: The Devices Workspace

Use the task tree on the left side of the display to navigate application workspaces and tasks. When you select an application, all of the task groups (also called workspaces) are displayed in the task tree.

To navigate this example:

1. In the application menu, select **Platform** if it is not already selected. (It is the default selection when you log in.)

The Platform dashboard appears in the right window. In addition, all of the task groups within Platform are shown collapsed in the task tree.

2. Select **Devices** by clicking on that name.

Graphical summaries about the devices in the network appear.

3. Expand the Devices task group by clicking the expansion symbol to the left of its name.

Tasks related to managing devices are displayed in the expanded portion of the tree. Some (for example, Discover Devices) can be further expanded.

4. Select **Manage Devices**.

A table containing data about all Junos Space devices appears. This kind of table is called an *inventory page*. If you are the first user, it might contain no data at this point. From this window, you can take various actions related to devices. You can see these by selecting the Actions menu at the right end of the upper task bar. (All actions are shown, but only those available to you for a selected device are enabled.)

5. If there are device entries in the table, select one by clicking anywhere in its line. Mouse over the Quick View icon in the task bar to display Quick View (summary) information about the selected device.



**NOTE:** Icons for other tasks such as creating, modifying, and deleting items appear adjacent to the Quick View icon in some other inventory pages. The Users inventory page displays all these icons.

6. To return at any time to the next higher level of the path you have taken, select the level you want in the breadcrumbs at the top left of the window. (Pressing the Back button of your browser takes you back to your starting point, which you may or may not want.)

Notice that you can jump to any other point in the Platform application by expanding a portion of the task tree and selecting the item you want.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)

## Filtering Inventory Pages

---

On many inventory pages, you can use the Filter submenu to temporarily hide all of the entries in the table that do not match criteria that you are interested in. This feature lets you quickly find and evaluate the table entries of interest.

Many of the columns in Junos Space inventory page tables permit filtering. Depending on the table, different columns can be filtered on. [Table 8 on page 23](#) lists the tables that permit filtering.

**Table 8: Filter-enabled Tables and Columns**

Work-space	Page / Table		Columns
Devices	Manage Devices		All columns except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Physical Interfaces</li> <li>Logical Interfaces</li> <li>Connection Type</li> </ul>
	Manage Devices	View Change Requests	All columns except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Creation Time</li> <li>Last Update Time</li> <li>Deployment Status</li> </ul>
		View Space Changes	All columns except Creation Time
		View Physical Interfaces	All columns except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP Address</li> <li>Logical Interfaces</li> </ul>
		View Logical Interfaces	All columns except Encapsulation
		View License Inventory	All columns
		View Software Inventory	
	Add Deployed Devices		
	Add Deployed Devices	View Device Status	All columns except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP Address</li> <li>Connection Status</li> <li>Managed Status</li> </ul>
		Manage Device Adapter	All columns

Table 8: Filter-enabled Tables and Columns (*continued*)

Work-space	Page / Table	Columns
Device Templates	Manage Definitions	All columns except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Device Family</li> <li>• Last Update Time</li> <li>• State</li> </ul>
	Manage Templates	All columns except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Last Update Time</li> <li>• State</li> </ul>
Device Images and Scripts	Manage Images	All columns except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Series</li> </ul>
	Manage Scripts	All columns except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Creation Date</li> <li>• Last Updated Time</li> </ul>
	Manage Operations	All columns except Priority
	Manage Operations      View Operation Results	All columns
	Manage Script Bundles	All columns except: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Creation Date</li> <li>• Last Updated Time</li> </ul>
Config Files	Manage Config Files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Creation Date</li> <li>• Last Updated Time</li> </ul>

To filter tables on various criteria, click the down arrow on a column header and use the Filter submenu. The choices available depend on the nature of the selected column. You can create filters that use criteria from more than one column.

Whenever you filter a table, Junos Space displays the filter criteria, including the columns being filtered, above the table. Junos Space also identifies the columns being filtered by changing their column headers to italic text.

Junos Space displays a red X to the right of the filter criteria above the table. You can clear the filter and restore the table to its original view by clicking the red X.

The following procedures describe how to use the different types of available filters and the different filtering features.

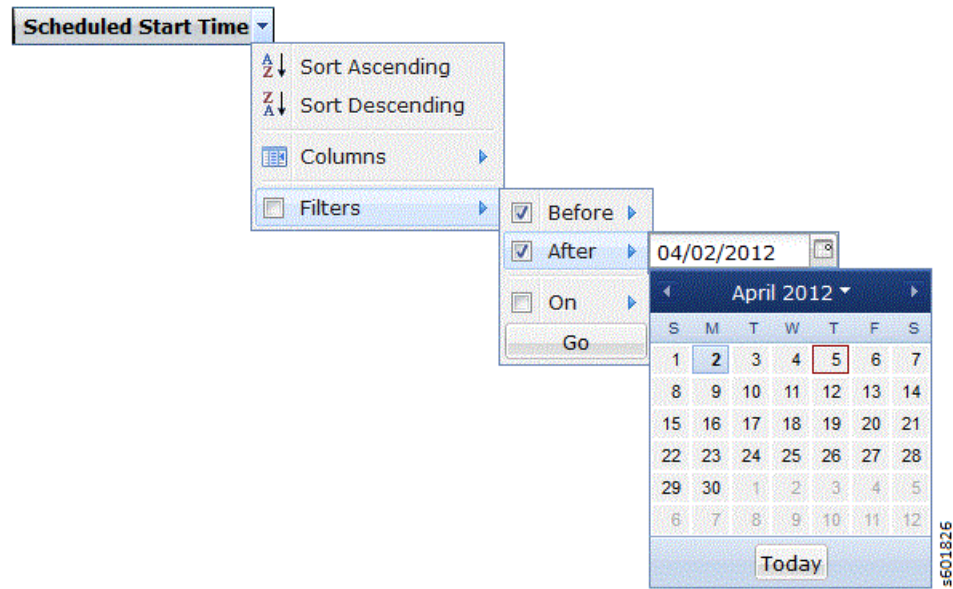
To filter a table on entries in a date column:

1. Click the down arrow on the column header and choose **Filters**.

The Filters submenu shows a list of operators. If the column includes both dates and times, you can also use a wizard to enter the time. [Figure 13 on page 25](#) shows a typical Filter submenu for a date column.



Figure 13: Typical Submenu for a Date Column



2. From the Filter submenu, choose **Before**, **After**, or **On** and click the calendar icon to select the date from the calendar.

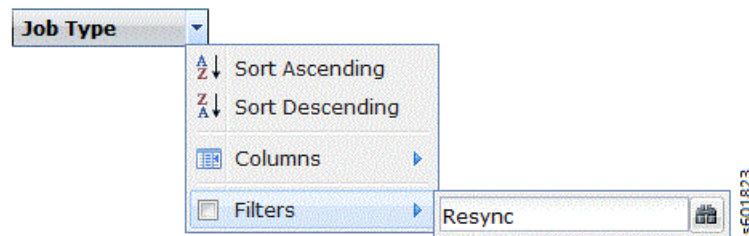
You can choose both Before and After dates and times to filter the column by a specific time period. You can also choose On to view events recorded on a specific date.

To filter a table on entries in a text string column:

1. Click the down arrow on the column header and choose **Filters**.

The Filters submenu opens a text box. [Figure 14 on page 25](#) shows a typical Filter submenu for a text string column.

Figure 14: Typical Submenu for a Text Column



2. In the text box, type the alphanumeric string you want to filter on.

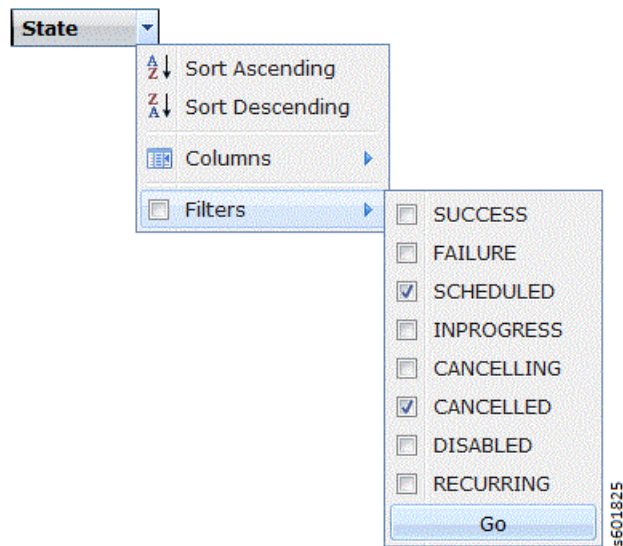
To filter a table on entries in a column of discrete elements (for example, a Status column where the only entries are “Success” and “Failure”):

1. Click the down arrow on the column header and choose **Filters**.

The Filters submenu opens a list of the valid elements for the column.

[Figure 15 on page 26](#) shows a typical Filter submenu for a column of discrete elements.

Figure 15: Typical Submenu for a Column of Discrete Elements



2. On the list of elements, mark the check boxes for one or more elements to filter the table for only those entries.

To filter a table on entries in a column of Boolean ("true" or "false") values:

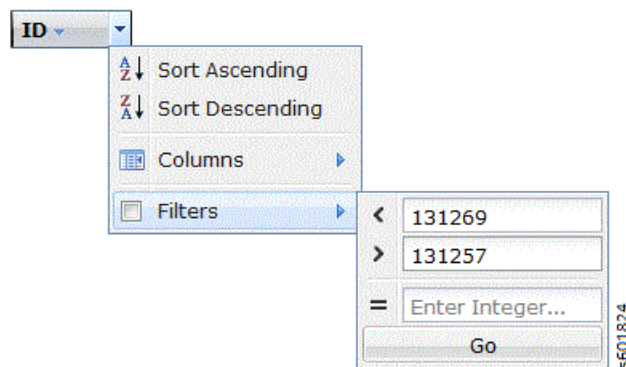
1. Click the down arrow on the column header and choose **Filters**.
2. Choose either **True** or **False** from the Filters submenu.

To filter a table on entries in list of numerical values:

1. Click the down arrow on the column header and choose **Filters**.

The Filters submenu contains text boxes for the operators "<" (greater than), ">" (less than), and "=" (equals). [Figure 16 on page 26](#) shows a typical Filter submenu for a column of numerical values.

Figure 16: Typical Submenu for a Column of Numerical Values



2. Enter values for the different operators.

You can filter a table for entries that match filters for values in multiple columns. For example, you can filter for all events on a certain date whose status was "success." When you use multiple filters, the filters are joined with logical "and."

To use multiple filters:

1. Use the Filters submenu as described previously to filter for criteria in one column.
2. Use the Filters submenu as described previously to filter for criteria in a different column.

To clear all filters and restore the table to its original unfiltered view, click the red X above the table.

To clear only the part of a filter that applies to a single column, click the down arrow on the column header and clear the check box next to Filter.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)



## PART 2

# Devices

- [Device Management Overview on page 31](#)
- [Device Configuration on page 45](#)
- [Device Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Device Operations on page 83](#)
- [Device Access on page 93](#)
- [Device Monitoring on page 103](#)
- [Discover Devices on page 107](#)
- [Add Deployed Devices on page 115](#)
- [Add Unmanaged Devices on page 129](#)
- [Secure Console on page 133](#)
- [Manage Device Adapter on page 141](#)
- [Discover Topology on page 145](#)
- [Upload Keys to Devices on page 155](#)



## CHAPTER 3

# Device Management Overview

- [Device Management Overview on page 31](#)
- [Viewing Device Statistics on page 32](#)
- [Device Inventory Management Overview on page 36](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Viewing Devices and Logical Systems with QuickView on page 41](#)
- [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)
- [Troubleshooting Devices on page 44](#)

## Device Management Overview

---

You can use Junos Space to simplify management of the network devices running Junos OS software.

In addition, Junos Space can record the presence of non-Juniper devices, i.e. unmanaged devices in the network, thereby providing better visibility into the network, simplifying debugging and problem isolation. Junos Space displays the IP address and host name of unmanaged devices. SNMP credentials and device status of unmanaged devices are not displayed; these devices' status in several categories is shown as NA. For instructions on adding unmanaged devices to Junos Space, see [“Adding Unmanaged Devices” on page 129](#)

From the Devices workspace, you use device discovery to discover devices and (if the network is the system of record) synchronize device configurations with the Junos Space database. You can use device discovery to discover one or many devices at a time. After Junos Space discovers your network devices, you can perform the following tasks to monitor and configure devices from Junos Space:

- View statistics about the managed devices in your network, including the number of devices by platform and the number of Junos family devices by release.
- View connection status and configuration status for managed devices.
- View operational and administrator status of the physical interfaces on which devices are running.

- View hardware inventory for a selected device, such as information about power supplies, chassis cards, fans, FPCs, and available PIC slots.
- If the network is the system of record, resynchronize a managed device to update the device configuration in the Junos Space database to reflect that of the physical device. (If Junos Space is the system of record, this capability is not available.)
- Deploy service orders to activate a service on your network devices.
- Troubleshoot devices.

**Related Documentation**

- [Device Discovery Overview on page 107](#)
- [Device Inventory Management Overview on page 36](#)
- [Discovering Devices on page 108](#)
- [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)
- [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Viewing and Exporting License Inventory on page 75](#)
- [Troubleshooting Devices on page 44](#)

---

## Viewing Device Statistics

The Devices statistics page provides three types of data for managed devices:

- Device Count by Platform—The number of Juniper Networks devices organized by type
- Device Status—The connection status of managed devices on the network
- Device Count by OS—The number of devices running a particular Junos OS release

To view device statistics, select **Platform > Devices**.

This topic includes the following tasks:

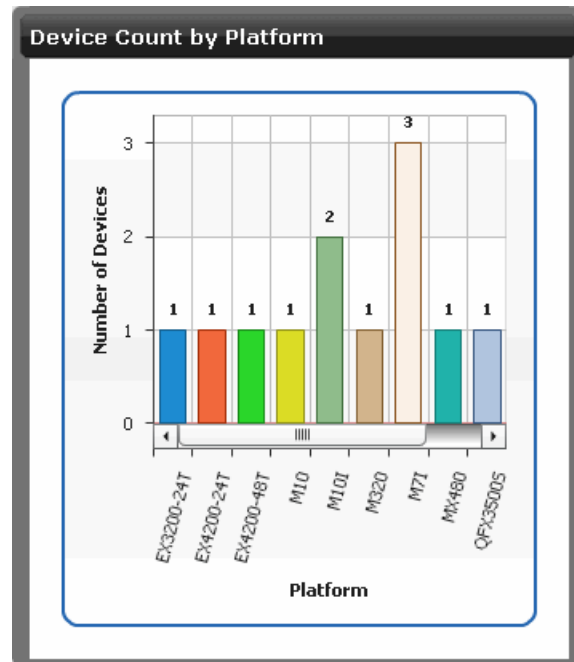
- [Viewing the Number of Devices by Platform on page 33](#)
- [Viewing Connection Status for Devices on page 33](#)
- [Viewing Devices by Junos OS Release on page 34](#)



## Viewing the Number of Devices by Platform

Figure 17 on page 33 shows the Device Count by Platform report. The bar chart shows the number of Juniper Networks devices on the y axis discovered by platform type on the x axis. Each vertical bar in the chart displays the number of managed devices for a platform.

Figure 17: Device Count By Platform



To view more detailed information about devices per platform:

- Click a bar in the bar graph. The Device Management inventory page appears filtered by the device type you selected. See [“Viewing Managed Devices” on page 37](#).

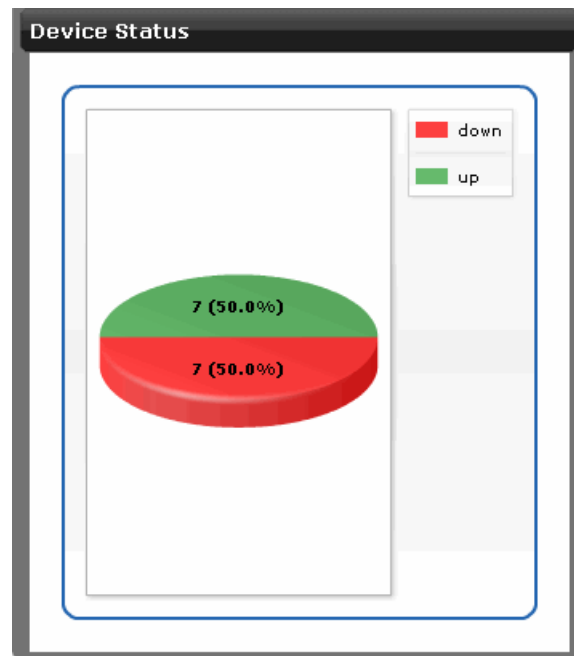
To save the bar chart as an image or to print for presentations or reporting:

- Right-click the bar chart and use the menu to save or print the image.

## Viewing Connection Status for Devices

Figure 18 on page 34 shows the Device Status report. The pie chart displays the percentage and number of devices that are connected and disconnected on the network. The up or down status is expressed as a percentage of the total number of devices.

Figure 18: Device Status



To view more detailed device status information:

- Click a slice in the pie chart. The Device Management inventory page appears filtered by the devices that are up or down. See [“Viewing Managed Devices” on page 37](#).

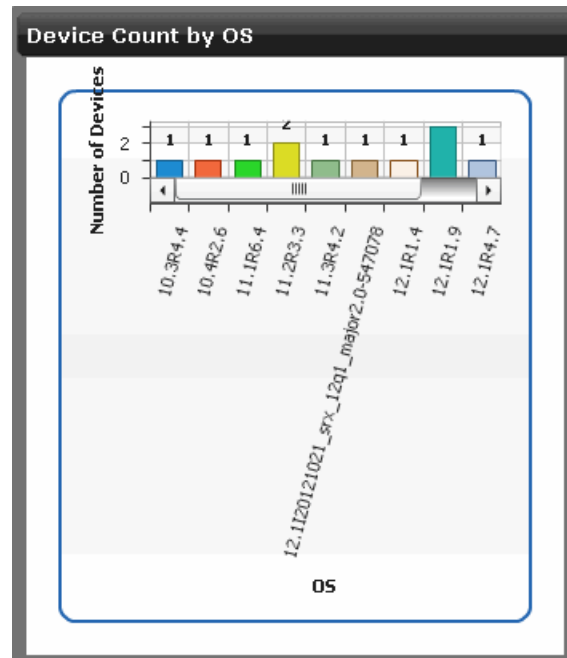
To save the pie chart as an image or to print for presentations or reporting:

- Right-click the bar chart and use the menu to save or print the image.

## Viewing Devices by Junos OS Release

Figure 19 on page 35 shows the Device Count by OS report. The bar chart shows the number of Juniper Networks devices on the network (the y axis) categorized by running a certain Junos OS release (the x axis).

Figure 19: Device Count by OS



To view more detailed information about devices running a particular Junos OS release:

- Click a bar in the chart. The Device Management inventory page appears. See [“Viewing Managed Devices” on page 37](#).

To save the pie chart as an image or to print for presentations or reporting:

- Right-click the bar chart and use the menu to save or print the image.

#### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Discovering Devices on page 108](#)

## Device Inventory Management Overview

---

You manage device inventory through the Device Management application in the Devices workspace. From the Device Management inventory you can perform several functions:

- List the device inventory to view information about the hardware and software components of each device that Junos Space manages.
- View information about the scripts associated with the devices and details of script execution on devices.
- View information about the service contract or end-of-life status for a part.
- View the operational and administrator status for the physical interfaces on which devices are run.
- Change credentials for a device.
- Export the device inventory information for use in other applications, such as those used for asset management.
- Troubleshoot a device.
- If the network is the system of record, resynchronize the network devices managed by Junos Space.

The device inventory in the Junos Space database is generated when the device is first discovered and synchronized in Junos Space. After a device is synchronized, the device inventory in the Junos Space database matches the inventory on the device itself.

If either the physical (hardware) or logical (config) inventory on the device is changed, then the inventory on the device is no longer synchronized with the Junos Space database. However, Junos Space automatically triggers a resync job when a configuration change request commit or out-of-band CLI commit occurs on a managed device.

You can also manually resynchronize the Junos Space database with the physical device by using the **Resynchronize with Network** command from the Devices workspace in the Junos Space user interface.

If Junos Space is the system of record, the database values have precedence over any out-of-band changes to network device configuration, and neither manual nor automatic resynchronization is available.

To reach the device management applications, select **Devices > Device Management**.

### Related Documentation

- [Device Management Overview on page 31](#)
- [Device Discovery Overview on page 107](#)
- [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)
- [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)

- [Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network on page 84](#)
- [Exporting Physical Inventory Information on page 79](#)
- [Viewing and Exporting License Inventory on page 75](#)
- [Troubleshooting Devices on page 44](#)

## Viewing Managed Devices

You can view operating system, platform, IP-address, license, connection status, and several other types of information for all the managed devices in your network. Device information is displayed in a table. Unmanaged devices are also shown, but without status and some other information.

You can also view managed devices from the Network Monitoring workspace, via the Node List (see [“Viewing the Node List” on page 293](#)). If the network is the system of reference, the Network Monitoring workspace also enables you to resync your managed devices (see [“Resyncing Nodes” on page 294](#)).

Neither manual nor automatic resynchronization occurs when Junos Space is the system of reference. See [“Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space” on page 591](#).

- [Viewing Devices on page 37](#)

## Viewing Devices

To view configuration and run-time information for devices:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The device inventory table appears.

**Figure 20: Device Management Table**

Name	Consolidate...	OS Version	Device Fam...	Platform	IP Address	Connection ...	Managed St...
10.205.56.3 1LSYS(s)	NA	12.1I20130...	junos-es	SRX1400	10.205.56.3	up	In Sync
10.205.56.4 1LSYS(s)	NA	12.1I20130...	junos-es	SRX1400	10.205.56.4	up	In Sync
EX4200_10.205.56.2	NA	10.3R4.4	junos-ex	EX4200-24T	10.205.56.2	down	Connecting
Firewall-LSYS1 Node-178	NA	12.2R2.5	junos-es	SRX3400	10.205.50.178	up	In Sync
Firewall-LSYS1 Node-177	NA	12.2R2.5	junos-es	SRX3400	10.205.50.177	up	In Sync
IPS-LSYS1 Node-177	NA	12.2R2.5	junos-es	SRX3400	10.205.50.177	up	In Sync
IPS-LSYS1 Node-178	NA	12.2R2.5	junos-es	SRX3400	10.205.50.178	up	In Sync
Mumbai	Generated	11.2R3.3	junos	M320	10.205.56.5	up	In Sync
NAT-LSYS Node-178	NA	12.2R2.5	junos-es	SRX3400	10.205.50.178	up	In Sync
NAT-LSYS Node-177	NA	12.2R2.5	junos-es	SRX3400	10.205.50.177	up	In Sync
Node-177 4LSYS(s)	NA	12.2R2.5	junos-es	SRX3400	10.205.50.177	up	In Sync
Node-178 4LSYS(s)	NA	12.2R2.5	junos-es	SRX3400	10.205.50.178	up	In Sync
VPN-LSYS1 Node-178	NA	12.2R2.5	junos-es	SRX3400	10.205.50.178	up	In Sync
VPN-LSYS1 Node-177	NA	12.2R2.5	junos-es	SRX3400	10.205.50.177	up	In Sync
editBangalore	NA	11.1R6.4	junos	M7I	10.205.56.9	up	In Sync
lsys1 10.205.56.3	NA	12.1I20130...	junos-es	SRX1400	10.205.56.3	up	In Sync
lsys1 10.205.56.4	Generated	12.1I20130...	junos-es	SRX1400	10.205.56.4	up	In Sync

[Table 9 on page 38](#) describes the fields displayed in the inventory window. In the table, an asterisk indicates that this column is not shown by default.

Table 9: Fields in the Device Management Table

Field	Description
Name	The device configuration name.
Physical Interfaces	Link to the view of physical interfaces for the device. (NA for an unmanaged device.)
Logical Interfaces	Link to the view of logical interfaces for the device. (NA for an unmanaged device.)
OS Version	Operating system firmware version running on the device. (Unknown for an unmanaged device.)
Device Family	Device family of the selected device. (For an unmanaged device, this is the same as the vendor name you have provided. It is shown as Unknown if no vendor name was provided and if SNMP is not used or has failed.)
Platform	Model number of the device. (For an unmanaged device, the platform is discovered through SNMP. If it cannot be discovered it is shown as Unknown.)
Vendor*	The device vendor. (For an unmanaged device, the vendor name is displayed as Unknown if the vendor name was not provided and it cannot be discovered through SNMP.)
Schema Version*	The DMI schema version that Junos Space has for this device. (Unknown for an unmanaged device.) See <a href="#">“Managing DMI Schemas Overview” on page 574</a> .
IP Address	IP address of the device.
Connection Status	<p>Connection status of the device in Junos Space. Values differ between network as system of record (NSOR) and Junos Space as system of record (SSOR).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>up—Device is connected to Junos Space. When connection status is up, in NSOR, the managed status is Out of Sync, Synchronizing, In Sync, or Sync Failed. In SSOR, status is In Sync, Device Changed, Space Changed, Both Changed, or Unknown (which usually means connecting).</li> <li>down—Device is not connected to Junos Space. When Connection status is down, the managed status is None or Connecting.</li> <li>NA—The device is unmanaged.</li> </ul>

Table 9: Fields in the Device Management Table (*continued*)

Field	Description
Managed Status	<p>Current status of the managed device in Junos Space:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connecting—Junos Space has sent connection RPC and is waiting for first connection from device.</li> <li>In Sync—Sync operation has completed successfully, and Junos Space and the device are synchronized.</li> <li>None—Device is discovered, but Junos Space has not yet sent connection RPC.</li> <li>Out of Sync—In NSOR, device has connected to Junos Space, but the sync operation has not been initiated, or an out-of-band configuration change on the device was detected and auto-resync is disabled or has not yet started.</li> <li>Device Changed, Space Changed, Both Changed—In SSOR, Junos Space and the device are not in sync, and the party that has been changed is noted. Neither automatic nor manual resync is available.</li> <li>Synchronizing—Sync operation has started because of device discovery, a manual re-sync operation, or an automatic re-sync operation.</li> <li>Sync Failed—Sync operation failed.</li> <li>Unmanaged—Device is unmanaged.</li> </ul>
Authentication Status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Key Based—Authentication key was successfully uploaded.</li> <li>Credential—Key upload was not attempted; login to this device is by credentials.</li> <li>Key Conflict—Device was not available; key upload was unsuccessful.</li> <li>NA—Device is unmanaged.</li> </ul>
Serial Number*	Serial number of the device chassis. (Unknown for an unmanaged device.)
Connection Type*	Current connection status for the device: Up, Out of Sync, Down, or Unknown. (See <a href="#">Table 10 on page 39</a> ).
AIS Install Package Version*	Version of the script used to install a bundle of applications via the event profile feature of the Service Now application.. ('—' if not used.)
Event Profile*	Name of the event profile installed via the Service Now application. ('—' is none is installed.)

[Table 10 on page 39](#) describes the connection status icons.

Table 10: Device Connection Status Icon





Icon	Description
	<p>Connection is up—The device is connected to Junos Space and is running properly.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Before you can update a device from Junos Space (deploy service orders), the device connection must be up.</p>
	Out of sync—The device is connected to Junos Space but the device configuration in the Junos Space database is out of sync with the physical device.
	Connection is down—The device is not currently connected to Junos Space or an event has occurred, either manually by an administrator or automatically by the flow of a type of traffic, that has stopped the device from running.

Table 10: Device Connection Status Icon (*continued*)

Icon	Description
	The device is unmanaged. Status is not available.

2. Sort the table by mousing over the column header for the data you want to sort by and clicking the down arrow. Select **Sort Ascending** or **Sort Descending**.
3. Show columns not in the default table view, or hide columns, as follows:
  1. Mouse over any column header and click the down arrow.
  2. Select **Columns** from the menu.
  3. Select the check boxes for columns that you want to view. Clear the check boxes for columns that you want to hide.
4. View information about devices as follows:
  - To restrict the display of devices, enter a search criterion of one or more characters in the Search bar and press Enter.  
All devices that match the search criterion are shown in the main display area.
  - To view hardware inventory information for a device, select the row for the device, and select **Device Inventory > View Physical Inventory** from the Actions menu or the right-click menu.
  - To view the physical or logical interfaces for a device, select the View link in the appropriate column and row for the device.

For information about filtering rows to see information about only those devices of interest, see [“Filtering Inventory Pages” on page 22](#). You can filter for unmanaged devices only in those columns that contain resolved values.

#### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Device Statistics on page 32](#)
- [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Viewing and Exporting License Inventory on page 75](#)
- [Viewing Physical Interfaces on page 72](#)
- [Discovering Devices on page 108](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Filtering Inventory Pages on page 22](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)



---

## Viewing Devices and Logical Systems with QuickView

---

The QuickView feature shows you the type and status of a device or logical system using an icon.

To view a device or logical system using Quick View:

1. Navigate to **Devices > Device Management**.
2. Select the Quick View action button on the menu bar.
3. Alternatively, at the right edge of the Platform window, find the sidebar open arrow for the Device Management table.



**NOTE:** Be careful to find the correct sidebar open arrow. There are two; one on the left that opens the Quick View sidebar, and one on the right that opens the Help panel.

4. Click the Quick View sidebar open arrow.

Platform opens the Quick View sidebar. The Quick View shows the status of the device that is currently selected in the table.

You can close the Quick View window in the same way that you opened it.

### Related Documentation

- [Understanding Logical Systems for SRX Series Services Gateways on page 87](#)
- [Viewing the Physical Device for a Logical System on page 89](#)
- [Viewing Logical Systems for a Physical Device on page 90](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)
- [Creating a Logical System \(LSYS\) on page 88](#)
- [Deleting Logical Systems on page 89](#)
- [Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices](#)

## Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices

---

When configuration changes are made on a physical device that Junos Space manages, Junos Space reacts differently depending on whether the network itself is the system of record (NSOR) or Junos Space is the system of record (SSOR).

In the NSOR case, Junos Space receives a syslog message and automatically resynchronizes with the device. This ensures that the device inventory information in the Junos Space database matches the current configuration information on the device.

In the SSOR case, the Junos Space platform receives a syslog message from device after the device change is committed. Managed status for that device changes to out-of-sync, but no resynchronization occurs. The Junos Space administrator has the option of resetting the network device's configuration to the Junos Space database values or not doing so.

This topic covers:

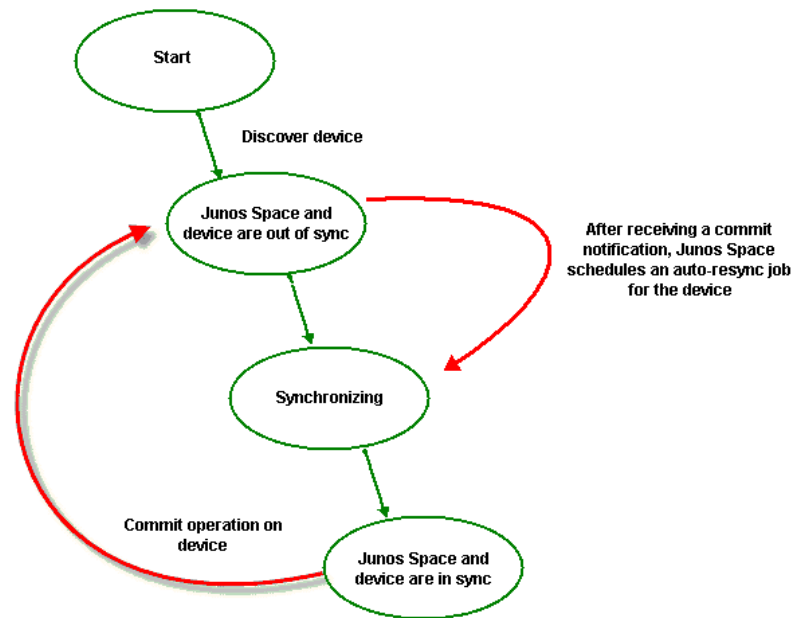
- [Network as System of Record on page 42](#)
- [Junos Space as System of Record on page 44](#)

### Network as System of Record

After Junos Space discovers and imports a device, if the network is the system of record, Junos Space enables the auto-resync feature on the physical device by initiating a commit operation.

After auto-resynchronization is enabled, any configuration changes made on the physical device, including out-of-band CLI commits and change-request updates, automatically trigger resynchronization on the device. [Figure 21 on page 43](#) shows how a commit operation on the device triggers resynchronization.

Figure 21: Resynchronization Process



When a commit operation is performed on a managed device under NSOR, Junos Space schedules a resync job to run 20 seconds after the commit notification is received. However, by default, if Junos Space receives another commit notification from the device within 25 seconds of the previous commit notification, no additional resync jobs are scheduled, but Junos Space will resynchronize both commit operations in one job. This damping feature of automatic resynchronization provides a window of time during which multiple commit operations can be executed on the device, but only one or a few resync jobs are required to resynchronize the Junos Space database after multiple configuration changes are executed on the device.

When Junos Space receives the device commit notification, the device status is “Out of Sync”. When the resync job begins on the device, the Managed Status for the device displays “Synchronizing” and then “In Sync” after the resync job has completed, unless a pending device commit operation causes the device to display “Out of Sync” while it was synchronizing.

When a resync job is scheduled to run but another resync job on the same device is in progress, Junos Space delays the scheduled resync job. The time delay is determined by the damper interval that you can set from the application workspace. By default, the time delay is 20 seconds. The scheduled job is delayed as long as the other resync job to the same device is in progress. When the currently running job finishes, the scheduled resync job starts.

You can disable the auto-resync feature in the Application workspace. When auto-resync is turned off, the server continues to receive notifications and will go into the out-of-sync state; however, the auto-resync does not run on the device. To resynchronize a device

when the auto-resync feature is disabled, you can use the resync feature to manually resync the device.

For information about setting the damper interval to change the resync time delay and information about disabling the auto-resync feature, see [“Modifying Application Settings” on page 508](#).

## Junos Space as System of Record

If Junos Space is the system of record, the automatic resynchronization described above does not occur. When Junos Space receive the device commit notification, device status becomes Out of Sync and remains so unless you push the system-of-record configuration from the Junos Space database down to the device.

### Related Documentation

- [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)
- [Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network on page 84](#)
- [Device Discovery Overview on page 107](#)
- [Device Inventory Management Overview on page 36](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)

---

## Troubleshooting Devices

You can check the configuration settings of one or more devices from Junos Space using Looking Glass. It enables you to execute **show** commands across multiple devices to compare the configuration and runtime information. See [“Using Looking Glass” on page 86](#).

In Junos Space you can also perform troubleshooting on N-PE devices from Network Activate. See the Troubleshooting N-PE Devices Before Provisioning a Service topic in the Network Activate documentation.

### Related Documentation

- [Deploying Device Instances on page 125](#)

## CHAPTER 4

# Device Configuration

- [Editing Device Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Selecting the Device and the Configuration Perspective on page 46](#)
- [Editing Device Configuration Options on page 48](#)
- [Viewing Change Requests on page 52](#)
- [Viewing Space Changes on page 53](#)
- [Resolving Out-of-Band Configuration Changes on page 54](#)
- [Viewing Assigned Shared Objects on page 56](#)
- [Managing Consolidated Configurations on page 58](#)
- [Viewing Config Change Log on page 67](#)

### Editing Device Configuration Overview

---

This action enables you to view and edit a device's configuration. You can deploy the new configuration immediately, save it as a change request, publish it to the device's consolidated configuration (see [“Managing Consolidated Configurations” on page 58](#)), or schedule it for later.

To display all of a device's configuration options, Junos Space requires the DMI schema for that device type. To upload a DMI schema to Junos Space, see [“Managing DMI Schemas Overview” on page 574](#).

If Junos Space does not have the DMI schema for that device type, it uses a default DMI schema. The default DMI schema does not necessarily display all your device's configuration options, whereas having the DMI schema specific to that device enables Junos Space to let you edit all of the device's configuration options. If Junos Space uses the default schema, some already configured parameters on the device might not be displayed.

Junos Space checks for an exact match between device and DMI schema every time you edit the device's configuration.

Editing device configuration relates to three types of device configuration files:

- Running configuration—The current running configuration.

- **Candidate configuration**—The future running configuration, which is saved as a change request until you deploy it or create another candidate configuration. If you create a second candidate configuration, the first (undeployed) candidate configuration, is overwritten.
- **Backup configuration**—The copy of the running configuration created by a commit command applied to a candidate configuration. All former running configurations are saved in the change request history.

When you edit a device configuration, you are creating a candidate configuration file. When you deploy the candidate, you are creating a new running-configuration file and a backup configuration file.

The sequence of tasks to edit a device configuration is as follows:

1. [Selecting the Device and the Configuration Perspective on page 46](#)
2. [Editing Device Configuration Options on page 48](#)

Although Junos OS devices can maintain up to 49 copies of a configuration file, Junos Space also provides database management of configuration files (see [“Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space” on page 591](#)).

#### **Related Documentation**

- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)
- [Viewing Change Requests on page 52](#)
- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)
- [Managing Consolidated Configurations on page 58](#)

---

## Selecting the Device and the Configuration Perspective

The Modify Device Configuration page shows the DMI schema applied by Junos Space to the selected device. If Junos Space has the same DMI schema as the device, then that schema will be applied. If Junos Space does not, then it displays the default schema for the selected device's type. The default schema does not necessarily show all of the configuration options available in the actual device schema. Therefore you cannot configure those options using Junos Space; you must go to the device itself. To avoid this situation, upload the device's schema to Junos Space using the DMI Schema management workspace (see [“Managing DMI Schemas Overview” on page 574](#)).

This topic describes how to view the device configuration before editing it.

To select the device and the perspective:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**, and select a single device.
2. Select **Device Configuration > Modify Device Configuration** from the Actions menu.

The Modify Device Configuration page appears. The default perspective is All Data, which means all configuration options, whether set or not. The left pane shows the Junos OS statement hierarchy. The right pane shows the values in the running configuration.

3. Explore the configuration details in the following ways:

- Use the expander buttons (plus and minus) to explore the Junos OS statement hierarchy.
- Mouse over the blue information icon next to each Junos OS statement to display explanatory text. The information is the same as that in the device CLI.
- See which configuration options in the hierarchy are actually set by selecting **Configured Data** from the Perspective list on the top of the left pane next to the magnifying glass search icon.
- Likewise, in the right pane, select **Configured Data** in the list at the right of the title bar to display in the right pane only those options that are actually configured.
- Search for a particular option. See [“Finding Configuration Options” on page 186](#). Although that topic deals with Device Templates, the principle is exactly the same.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Editing Device Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Editing Device Configuration Options on page 48](#)
- [Updating a DMI Schema on page 576](#)

## Editing Device Configuration Options

---

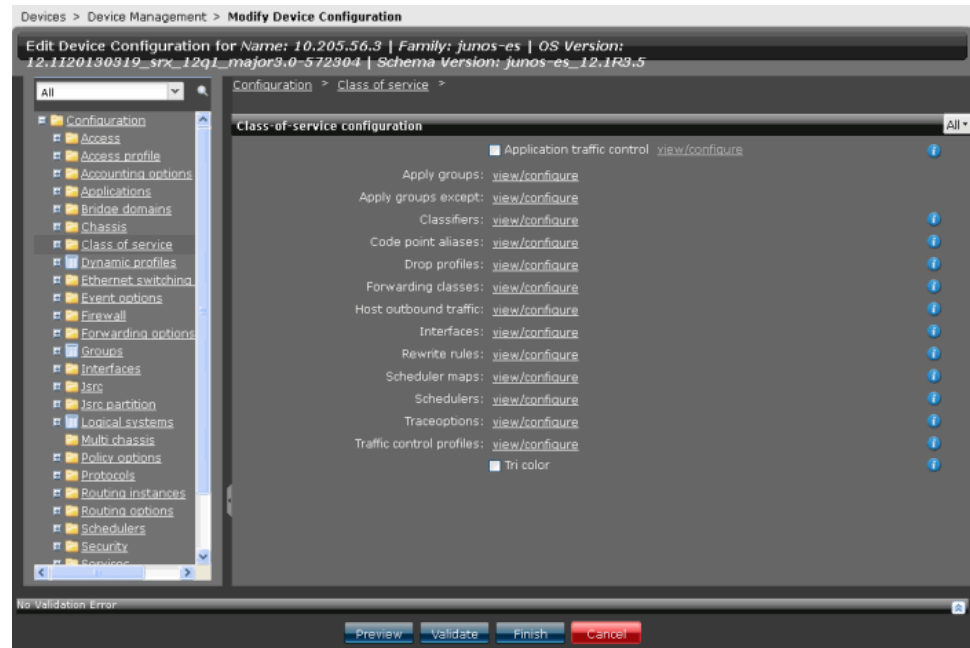
This topic describes the individual operations in editing a device configuration after you have selected your device and the perspective.

To edit a configuration option:



1. Select a configuration option in the hierarchy in the left pane.

**Figure 22: Modify Device Configuration**



The contents of the right pane changes to reflect your selection on the left, and the full name of the configuration option appears in the title bar on the right pane.

The way the parameters in a configuration option are displayed varies depending on the option's data type. The data type is shown in a tooltip when you mouse over an option in the hierarchy. It is the data type that determines how the parameter is validated, and the data type is in turn determined by the DMI schema.

Options can be displayed in table rows that can be manipulated as follows:

- Edited by selecting a row and selecting the diagonal pencil icon
- Added by selecting the plus icon
- Deleted by selecting a row and selecting the minus icon

The variety in the data presentation only affects how you arrive at the value you want to change, not the value itself.

For more information on the correlation between data types and validation methods, see [“Creating a Template Definition” on page 176](#).

A parameter available for configuration is usually displayed as a link called **View/Configure**.

2. Select **View/Configure** until you arrive at the parameter you want to change.
3. Make your change(s).

In the hierarchy on the left, the option you have changed is highlighted, and the option label is in bold. This distinguishes it from subsequent options that you simply visit,

without making any changes. If you have opened up the hierarchy, you can see not only the name of the principal option, but also the name of the particular parameter you have changed, for example not only “SNMP,” but also “Description.”



**NOTE:** Your edits are saved when you click anywhere else on the Edit Device Configuration page, whether another configuration option or any of the buttons.

4. (Optional) For information on the individual parameters, click the little blue information icons to the right of the configuration settings to display the explanations.
5. (Optional) To add comments for individual parameters, click the little yellow comment icons next to the configuration settings and enter your comments.
6. Continue to either make changes or to do any of the following tasks:

- (Optional) Select **Preview** to see how your changes would look on the device CLI.

The View Device Configuration Changes page appears, displaying in XML format all the parameters you changed.



**NOTE:** All changes are displayed, not just the one you are currently working on.

Select **Close** to return to the device configuration editor.

- (Optional) Select **Validate** to perform the configuration validation check.

The Validate Device Configuration Changes dialog box appears, asking that you wait while the configuration is being validated on the device. When it has finished, the device validation status appears, announcing success or failure.



**TIP:** Validate after each change that you make. If you wait until after you have finished a complex configuration to validate, and it fails, it might be difficult to identify which element of the configuration had caused the validation to fail.

Select **Close** to return to the device configuration editor.

- Select **Cancel** to cancel the editing operation without making any changes.

You can also use the Preview and Validate buttons for configurations that you have not changed.

7. Select **Finish**.

The Finalize Device Configuration Changes dialog box appears.

8. Choose one of the following:

- **Save as Change Request** (default setting).

The item appears in the Change Request list for that device. See [“Viewing Change Requests” on page 52](#).

- **Publish to Consolidated Config**

Publishing to Consolidated Config puts your configuration into a queue for the device, so that *all* configuration changes made for that device—via Configuration Editor, Device Templates, or another Junos Space application—can be reviewed and approved before being deployed. Configuration changes made in Configuration Editor do not show up for review in the consolidated configuration for the selected device unless you select this option. Similarly, scheduled configuration changes do not show up in the consolidated configuration either (see [“Managing Consolidated Configurations” on page 58](#)).

- **Deploy now**

Select this option and select **OK**.

The Deploy Configuration Changes Job dialog box appears.

- Select the job ID to view details.

The Manage Jobs dialog box appears, filtered to display your job.

- **Deploy later**

- Choose the date and time.

The time zone is determined by the setting on the Junos Space server. If you choose a time or date that is in the past, a little red exclamation mark icon appears. Mouse over it to see the warning.

- Select **OK**.

The Deploy Configuration Changes Job Information dialog box appears.

- Select the job ID to view details.

The Manage Jobs dialog box appears, filtered to display your job. .

- (Optional) Enter in the **Comments** field any remarks that you want to be seen when the consolidated configuration is reviewed.

If you do not put anything into this field, the label for the configuration is only something similar to **Generated config change from: created by super at 2012-09-14 01:33:26.564 (1 Item)**.

- Select **OK**.

The Device Management page reappears.

#### Related Documentation

- [Editing Device Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Selecting the Device and the Configuration Perspective on page 46](#)
- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)

- [Creating a Template Definition on page 176](#)

## Viewing Change Requests

---

Change requests are generated when you edit a device configuration and save the edits instead of deploying them immediately or scheduling deployment.

This topic includes the following tasks:

- [Viewing Change Requests on page 52](#)
- [Adding, Modifying, or Deleting a Change Request on page 52](#)

### Viewing Change Requests

To view a change request:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The list of managed devices appears on the Device Management inventory page. See [“Viewing Managed Devices” on page 37](#).

2. Select a single device, and select **Device Configuration > View Change Requests** from the Actions dropdown.

The list of change requests for the selected device appears in the form of a table.

The table displays the following column headings:

- **Checkbox**—When checked, it selects all entries in the table.
- **Description**—The value of the changed parameter. Note that this value is likely to be ambiguous without the context of the parameter name and the schema path: for example, one schema path for the parameter name “Description” is “configuration/snmp/description.”
- **Created By**—The name of the person who edited the configuration to produce the change request.
- **Creation Time**—The time at which the change request was created.
- **Last Updated By**—The name of the person who updated the original change request.
- **Last Update Time**—The time at which the update was made.
- **Schedule Status**—The status, including scheduled, unscheduled, or in progress.

3. Select **Return to Inventory View**.

### Adding, Modifying, or Deleting a Change Request

To add a change request, select the green plus icon above the View Change Requests table.

The Edit Device Configuration page appears. See [“Editing Device Configuration Overview” on page 45](#).

To modify a change request, select it, then select the diagonal pencil icon above the View Change Requests table.

The Edit Device Configuration page appears. See [“Editing Device Configuration Overview” on page 45](#).

To delete a change request, select it, then select the red X icon above the View Change Requests table.



**NOTE:** Change requests in progress cannot be deleted. An error message appears if your change is in progress.

The Confirm Deletion of Change Request dialog box appears. It displays two columns, Description and Created By.

Confirm by selecting **Delete**.

An error message tells you if the delete action cannot be completed, and you return to the Confirm Deletion of Change Request dialog box.

#### Related Documentation

- [Editing Device Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Selecting the Device and the Configuration Perspective on page 46](#)
- [Editing Device Configuration Options on page 48](#)

## Viewing Space Changes

Space changes are those made using Junos Space applications or the Platform (initiated from Space), as opposed to out-of-band changes made on a device itself (see [“Resolving Out-of-Band Configuration Changes” on page 54](#)). If these out-of-band changes are synchronized with Space, then they do show up when you view Space changes, because they then become changes recorded in Space. In other words, this is Space’s record of the device configuration changes, as opposed to the device’s change log (see [“Viewing Config Change Log” on page 67](#)).

To view configuration changes made in Junos Space:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.
2. Select the device whose changes you want to view.
3. Select **Device Configuration > View Space Changes** from the Actions dropdown.

Any configuration changes deployed to the device are displayed in a table.

#### Related Documentation

- [Editing Device Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Viewing Change Requests on page 52](#)
- [Resolving Out-of-Band Configuration Changes on page 54](#)
- [Viewing Assigned Shared Objects on page 56](#)

- [Managing Consolidated Configurations on page 58](#)

## Resolving Out-of-Band Configuration Changes

When Junos Space is the system of record, users may make out-of-band configuration changes to network devices by manually using the device's management CLI, but there is no automatic resynchronization with the Junos Space database.

By viewing the configuration change log, you can see the history and details of all device configuration changes, whether initiated from Junos Space or not. You can investigate details of the changes that were made, and you can decide to accept or reject the changes. If you accept them, the Junos Space database is updated to reflect the new configuration. If you reject them, the device's out-of-band configuration changes are reverted.

You can resolve changes directly from the device inventory landing page by using the action Resolve OOP Change from the Actions dropdown. However, the configuration change log gives more detailed information.

- [Viewing the Configuration Change Log on page 54](#)
- [Managing Configuration Changes on page 55](#)

### Viewing the Configuration Change Log

To view configuration changes:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Devices inventory landing page is displayed.
2. Select the device whose configuration log you want to see.
3. Select **Device Configuration > View Config Change Log** from the Actions dropdown.  
The configuration change log is displayed. [Table 11 on page 54](#) describes its contents.

**Table 11: Configuration Change Log**

Timestamp	The date and time at which the configuration change was made.
Author	The user ID of the person who made the change. For an in-band change, this is the Junos Space username; for an out-of-band change, it is the credential used to log into the CLI management interface.
Configuration Changes	A link to a View Configuration Change XML window in which the details of the change for this device are shown as XML.
Change Type	The type of the change: in band or out of band. Out-of-band changes are further denoted as Outstanding, Accepted, or Rejected.
Application Name	The name of the Junos Space application from which the change was requested.
Commit Comments	The commit comments included in the syslog entry related to committing this change. These may include notes from the user who made the commit, as well as the timestamp and username.

## Managing Configuration Changes

To accept or reject configuration changes:

1. Select **Resolve outstanding out of band changes**, at the top of the Configuration Change Log window. You can also take this action directly from the devices inventory landing page by selecting Resolve OOB Changes in the Actions menu.  
The Resolving OOB Changes window appears. [Table 12 on page 55](#) describes the columns in this window.

Table 12: Resolving Out-of-Band Changes

Timestamp	The date and time at which the configuration change was made.
Author	The user ID of the person who made the change. For an in-band change, this is the Junos Space username; for and out-of-band change, it is the credential used to log into the CLI management interface.
Application Name	The name of the Junos Space application from which the change was requested.
Config Change	A link to a View Configuration Change XML window in which the details of the change for this device are shown as XML.
Action	Radio buttons enabling you to select Accept or Reject.

**Related Documentation** • [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)

## Viewing Assigned Shared Objects

---

An assigned shared object is a configuration or a configuration template created for multiple devices, that is, an object that has been assigned to more than one device.

The View Assigned Shared Objects is a device-centric action that enables you to view configurations created in the applications and workspaces listed below for each device, and queue them up in preparation for publishing those changes. Publication makes them available for a consolidated configuration. You can accept or reject the pending configurations, and you can change the sequence in which the changes will be committed. Accepting a configuration is assigning it, and rejecting it is unassigning it.

After you have generated the consolidated configuration, you can verify and review the configurations contained in it, and deploy them all at once, discarding any you do not want (see [“Managing Consolidated Configurations” on page 58](#)).

Configurations created by the following application workspaces can be assigned to devices:

- Network Application Platform
  - Device templates
- Security Design
  - IPSEC VPNS
  - IDP Profiles
  - Security Policies

All configurations that have been created for the device are assigned and will be candidates for deployment, unless you unassign them.

Viewing assigned shared objects can only be done on a per-device basis.

You can select only one device at a time. To view assigned shared objects:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management page appears.

2. Select the device whose assigned objects you want to view, and either
  - Select **Device Configuration > View/Assign Shared Objects** from the Actions dropdown.

The View/Assign Shared Objects page appears, listing the running configuration and the pending configurations on the right and displaying the workspaces where they originated on the left.

The pending configurations are shown in a table, whose data is described in [Table 13 on page 57](#).



Table 13: View Assigned Shared Objects Table

Column Heading	Content
Name	Name of the configuration, assigned at time of creation
Published	Yes or No. Templates cannot be deployed unless they are published. You can go to the Config Templates workspace to publish a template by clicking <b>Config Templates</b> on the panel to the left of the table.
Status	Deployed or Not Deployed
Modified By	Name of person who last modified the configuration
Modify Time	Expressed as a date (year-month-day), followed by a time (hours:minutes:seconds) and a timezone.
Description	Text entered in the Description field when the configuration was created.

All of the columns in the table have filtering enabled. Each of the configurations listed can be selected and all of the following can be performed:

- Assign Templates
- Unassign Templates
- Move Up / Move Down

From this page, you can also navigate back to the application where a configuration was created.

To assign a template:

1. On the left side of the page, select the workspace where the configuration was created.  
The table on the right displays the configurations created in the selected workspace.
2. Select the check box for the configuration you want to assign, and click the [ + ] sign.  
The template is assigned.
3. Finish by clicking **Save Changes** or **Save & Publish Changes**.

To unassign a template:

1. On the left side of the page, select the workspace where the configuration was created.  
The table on the right displays the configurations created in the selected workspace.
2. Select the check box for the configuration you want to unassign, and click the [ - ] sign.  
A Confirm dialog appears, asking you whether you want to unassign the selected object.
3. Click **Yes** to dismiss the dialog.

The template disappears from the table.

4. Finish by clicking **Save Changes** or **Save & Publish Changes**.

To change the sequence of objects, assigned or otherwise,

1. Select the check box for the configuration whose position you want to change, and click the up or the down arrow.

The object moves up or down in the display as required.

2. (Optional) Continue moving objects the same way until you are satisfied.
3. Finish by clicking **Save Changes** or **Save & Publish Changes**.

Only configuration changes that have been published are available for a consolidated configuration.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Managing Consolidated Configurations on page 58](#)
- [Viewing Space Changes on page 53](#)

---

## Managing Consolidated Configurations

---

A consolidated configuration is a collection of pending configurations created for one or more devices by using Junos Space applications or the Junos Space Network Application Platform. Such configurations could be created using the Configuration Editor, Device Templates, or Service Design, for example. The main purpose of collecting them is to review them all in a device-centric view, and then potentially to deploy them to one or more devices in a single commit.

In Junos Space, different users can create change requests, configuration templates, and so forth for a particular device. A single reviewer can then view all of these configurations for multiple devices (see [“Viewing Assigned Shared Objects” on page 56](#)) to decide which of them to deploy, and in which sequence. However, permissions for the Manage Consolidated Configurations task could be restricted to specific subtasks; for example, the person who generates a consolidated configuration might not have the permissions to approve the consolidated configuration for deployment.



**NOTE:** Granular level permission control is not available for consolidated configuration actions in Manage Templates. The template actions such as publish templates to consolidated configuration, unpublish templates to consolidated configuration, assign templates to device, and unassign templates to the device do not have granular permissions. However, granular level permission control is available for Manage Consolidated Configuration in Manage devices. The subtasks that a user with Manage CC permissions can be allowed to perform or prevented from performing are:

- Generate Consolidated Config
- Prepare Consolidated Config
- Validate on Device Consolidated Config
- Approve Consolidated Config
- Reject Consolidated Config
- Deploy Consolidated Config



**NOTE:** It is possible to create a configuration that is not shared, in which case, only its creator can deploy it. For example, configurations scheduled for deployment that were created with Config Editor are not shared, and are therefore not visible using [“Viewing Assigned Shared Objects” on page 56](#).

A consolidated configuration that has been approved can be deployed immediately or scheduled for a later time. A consolidated configuration cannot be approved until it has been submitted for review.

This topic includes the following activities for managing consolidated configurations:

- [Generating a Consolidated Configuration on page 59](#)
- [Preparing for Consolidated Configuration on page 62](#)
- [Validating a Consolidated Configuration on a Device on page 63](#)
- [Approving a Consolidated Configuration on page 64](#)
- [Rejecting a Consolidated Configuration on page 65](#)
- [Deploying a Consolidated Configuration on page 65](#)

## Generating a Consolidated Configuration

Before you begin generating a consolidated configuration, you can check the configurations queued up for the device by viewing the assigned objects and unassigning them, or rearranging their sequence as required (see [“Viewing Assigned Shared Objects” on page 56](#)). These objects include only configuration templates and Service Design-related changes that have not yet been deployed (including those scheduled). These objects do not include change requests or changes made using Configuration Editor.



**NOTE:** View Assigned Shared Objects does not reflect the configuration changes made by publishing changes using Config Editor.

You can select multiple devices at a time.

Generating a consolidated configuration enables you to:

- Queue up pending change requests from different Junos Space applications and workspaces
- Review any conflicts
- Validate the consolidated configuration using a Junos commit check
- Deploy the multiple configurations in a consolidated configuration in a single Junos commit



**NOTE:** If Security Design has been installed, the Manage CC page displays a config change object for Security Design regardless of whether an object has been assigned or published. If no object has been assigned or published, the config change object for Security Design is empty.

To generate a consolidated configuration:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management page appears.

2. Select the device whose consolidated configuration you want to generate, and either
  - Select **Device Configuration > Manage Consolidated Config** from the Actions dropdown.

The Manage Consolidated Config page appears, displaying the information shown in [Table 14 on page 61](#).

Table 14: Manage Consolidated Config Page

Page Section	Information	Description
Selected Devices	Device Name	
	Validation	?
		Validation test has been run, but result is inconclusive
		N/A
		No consolidated configuration has been generated; therefore validation is not applicable
	Status	Prepared
Tabs		Consolidated configuration has been generated and is accessible on this page
		N/A
		No consolidated configuration has yet been generated
		Approved
Additional Info		Consolidated configuration has been approved
	Config Change	Shows:
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Device Validation Report and its source</li> <li>• Deltas from running configuration, displayed in format similar to screen output</li> </ul>
	Raw XML Format	Displays deltas from running configuration in XML format
	Additional Info	Provides a Comments field so that remarks can be added to the audit trail

- From the list of devices selected in 2 and displayed on the left side of the Manage Consolidated Config page, select the devices for which to generate consolidated configurations.
- The Generate Consolidated Config for Selected Devices dialog box appears, displaying the names of the devices you selected in 3.

You can do the following:

- Add comments to the consolidated configuration. These comments then appear on the View Space Changes page, under the Description heading (see [“Viewing Space Changes” on page 53](#)).
- Select configurations to be included in the consolidated configuration for the device.
- Prepare the consolidated configuration for review.

Leaving this option selected (default) enables you to proceed immediately with the rest of the tasks included in managing consolidated configurations, which are described in this topic. If you do not select this option, you will not be able to do any of the other tasks until you have prepared the consolidated configuration for review (see [“Preparing for Consolidated Configuration” on page 62](#)).

5. Select the appropriate check boxes and click **OK**.

The Generate Consolidated Config Job Information window appears, announcing successful or unsuccessful validation.

6. (Optional) To view details, click the job ID in the window.

The Manage Jobs page appears, displaying details for the deployment of the consolidated configuration you generated.

7. To finish, click **OK**.

The Manage Consolidated Config page reappears.

On the right side of the page is displayed the generated configuration change information; for example, **Generated config change from: Security Design Configuration (1 item)**. The status of the devices whose consolidated configuration you have generated changes to Prepared.

8. To review the content of the configurations included in the consolidated configuration you just generated, look at the panel on the right of the page. It shows the various changes queued up for the device. Include or exclude the changes in the consolidated configuration by clicking **Include** or **Exclude**.



**NOTE:** You cannot change the sequence of the configuration changes here. This can be important, because in the case of a conflict, the last configuration to be committed prevails. To change the sequence of a configuration created with Device Templates, go to **Devices > Device Management > Device Configuration > View/Assign Shared Objects**

---

## Preparing for Consolidated Configuration

This subtask consists of publishing the consolidated configuration so that it can be reviewed; that is, validated on the device, approved or rejected, and deployed.



**NOTE:** A configuration template that is deleted after a CC containing it has been prepared will cause the CC state to revert to Generated (see [“Deleting a Template” on page 198](#)).

To make a consolidated configuration available for review:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management page appears.

2. Select the devices whose consolidated configurations you want to prepare, and either
  - Select **Device Configuration > Manage Consolidated Config** from the Actions dropdown.

The Manage Consolidated Config page appears, displaying the information shown in [Table 14 on page 61](#).

- From the list of devices selected in the previous step and displayed on the left side of the Manage Consolidated Config page, select the devices whose consolidated configurations you want to prepare.

Click **Prepare for Consolidated Configuration**.

The Prepare for Consolidated Configuration window appears.

- Select either:

- **Prepare now** (default)

or .

- **Prepare later**, and then select the date and time from the corresponding lists. The default settings for this option are the current time and date.

The Prepare For Consolidated Config Job Information window appears, announcing successful or unsuccessful completion.

- (Optional) To view details, click the job ID in the window.

The Manage Jobs page appears, displaying details for the validation of the consolidated configuration.

- To dismiss the window, click **OK**.

The Manage Consolidated Config page reappears. If you have the permissions to carry out the rest of the operations in Manage Consolidated Config, the other buttons are activated.

## Validating a Consolidated Configuration on a Device

Validating a configuration on a device is recommended prior to deploying the configuration.

Only a consolidated configuration that has already been generated can be validated.

To validate a consolidated configuration:

- Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management page appears.

- Select the devices whose consolidated configurations you want to validate, and either

- Select **Device Configuration > Manage Consolidated Config** from the Actions dropdown.

The Manage Consolidated Config page appears, displaying the information shown in [Table 14 on page 61](#).

- From the list of devices selected in the previous step and displayed on the left side of the Manage Consolidated Config page, select the devices whose consolidated configurations are to be validated.



**NOTE:** If a validation has already been run, it is shown as x in the Status column.

Click **Validate on Device**.

The Validate Consolidated Config window appears.

4. Select either:

- **Validate now**

or

- **Validate later**, and then select the date and time from the corresponding drop down lists. The default settings for this option are the current time and date.

5. Click **OK**.

The Deploy Consolidated Config Job Information window appears, announcing successful or unsuccessful validation.

6. (Optional) To view details, click the job ID in the window.

The Manage Jobs page appears, displaying details for the validation of the consolidated configuration.

7. Click **OK** to dismiss the Deploy Consolidated Config Job Information window.

The validation column for the device on the Manage Consolidated Config page displays the result of the validation, if available. If unavailable, Unknown is shown.

## Approving a Consolidated Configuration

Only prepared consolidated configurations can be approved. Approving a consolidated configuration enables it to be deployed. Unapproved consolidated configurations cannot be deployed.

To approve a consolidated configuration:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management page appears.

2. Select the devices whose consolidated configuration you want to approve, and either

- Select **Device Configuration > Manage Consolidated Config** from the Actions dropdown.

The Manage Consolidated Config page appears, displaying the information set out in [Table 14 on page 61](#).

3. From the list of devices selected in the previous step and displayed on the left side of the Manage Consolidated Config page, select the devices whose consolidated configurations you want to approve.

Click **Approve**.

A confirmation window appears, asking if you are sure you want to approve this consolidated configuration for the selected devices.

4. Click **Yes**.



The Manage Consolidated Config page reappears, displaying Approved in the status column of the device whose consolidated configuration you approved. If you have appropriate permissions, the Deploy button is activated.

The consolidated configuration is now ready for deployment.

## Rejecting a Consolidated Configuration

Rejecting a consolidated configuration prevents it from being deployed. Both approved and unapproved consolidated configurations can be rejected.

To reject a consolidated configuration:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management page appears.

2. Select the devices whose consolidated configurations you want to approve, and either
  - Select **Device Configuration > Manage Consolidated Config** from the Actions dropdown.

The Manage Consolidated Config page appears, displaying the information shown in [Table 14 on page 61](#).

3. From the list of devices selected in the previous step and displayed on the left side of the Manage Consolidated Config page, select the devices whose consolidated configurations you want to reject.

Click **Reject**.

A confirmation window appears, asking if you are sure you want to reject this consolidated configuration for the selected devices.

4. Click **Yes**.

The Manage Consolidated Config page reappears, displaying Prepared in the status column of the device whose consolidated configuration you rejected. The Deploy button appears dimmed.

When the consolidated configuration is rejected, it cannot be deployed. It is not deleted, but it will be discarded when a later consolidated configuration is created.

Other supported workflows for discarding consolidated configurations occur under the following circumstances:

- When consolidated configuration is prepared for a Review state or an Approved state, you can Regenerate the consolidated configuration to autodiscard the consolidated configuration in these states and create a new consolidated configuration.
- When the deployment is successful, consolidated configuration is marked as historical and is not available.

## Deploying a Consolidated Configuration

Only approved consolidated configurations can be deployed.

To deploy a consolidated configuration:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management page appears.

2. Select the devices whose consolidated configurations you want to approve, and either
  - Select **Device Configuration > Manage Consolidated Config** from the Actions dropdown.

The Manage Consolidated Config page appears, displaying the information shown in [Table 14 on page 61](#).

3. From the list of devices selected in the previous step and displayed on the left side of the Manage Consolidated Config page, select the devices whose consolidated configurations you want to deploy.

Click **Deploy**.

The Deploy Consolidated Config window appears.

4. Select either:

- **Deploy now** (default)

or

- **Deploy later**, and then select the date and time from the corresponding drop down lists. The default settings for this option are the current time and date.

5. Click **OK**.

The Deploy Consolidated Config Job Information window appears, announcing successful or unsuccessful deployment.

6. (Optional) To view details, click the job ID in the window.

The Manage Jobs page appears, displaying details for the validation of the consolidated configuration.

7. Click **OK** to dismiss the Deploy Consolidated Config Job Information window.

A successfully deployed consolidated configuration is considered historical and is no longer available. If a deployment fails, the consolidated configuration remains in the Approved state and does not get deleted or discarded. Regenerate consolidated configuration will autodiscard the old consolidated configuration and create a new consolidated configuration.

#### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Space Changes on page 53](#)
- [Viewing Assigned Shared Objects on page 56](#)
- [Assigning a Template to a Device on page 206](#)
- [Publishing a Template To CC on page 208](#)
- [Unpublishing a Template From CC on page 209](#)

## Viewing Config Change Log

Viewing the Config Change Log enables you to resolve out of band changes, which are those changes made on the device itself.

When the mode in Platform > Administration > Manage Applications > Network Application Platform > Device > Application Settings is Space as the System of Record (SSOR), the system tracks both in-band (Space) and out-of-band (non-Space) changes. When the mode in Application Settings is Network as the System of Record (NSOR) (the default), the system tracks only in-band (Space) changes.

To view the Config Change Log,

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.
2. Select the device whose config change log you want to view.
3. Select **Device Configuration > View Config Change Log** from the Actions dropdown..

The View Config Change Log page appears, displaying the information listed in [Table 15 on page 67](#).

**Table 15: View Config Change Log Table**

Column Header	Explanation
Timestamp	Time when the change was committed
Author	Creator of the change
Configuration Change	Description of the change
Change Type	Type of change, that is, the workspace or tool that was used
Application Name	Name of the Junos Space application that was used
Commit Comments	Any comments made by the person committing the change.

4. To resolve any out of band changes, see [“Resolving Out-of-Band Configuration Changes” on page 54](#).

### Related Documentation

- [Editing Device Configuration Overview on page 45](#)
- [Viewing Change Requests on page 52](#)
- [Viewing Space Changes on page 53](#)
- [Resolving Out-of-Band Configuration Changes on page 54](#)
- [Viewing Assigned Shared Objects on page 56](#)
- [Managing Consolidated Configurations on page 58](#)



## CHAPTER 5

# Device Inventory

- [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Displaying Service Contract and EOL Data in the Physical Inventory Table on page 70](#)
- [Viewing Physical Interfaces on page 72](#)
- [Viewing Logical Interfaces on page 73](#)
- [Viewing and Exporting License Inventory on page 75](#)
- [Viewing and Exporting Software Inventory on page 78](#)
- [Exporting Physical Inventory Information on page 79](#)
- [Viewing Associated Scripts on page 81](#)
- [Viewing Script Execution on page 81](#)

### Viewing Physical Inventory

---

Hardware inventory information shows the slots that are available for a device and provides information about power supplies, chassis cards, fans, part numbers, and so forth. Junos Space displays hardware inventory by device name, based on data retrieved both from the device during discovery and resync operations, and from the data stored in the hardware catalog. For each managed device, the Junos Space hardware catalog provides descriptions for field replaceable units (FRUs), part numbers, model numbers, and the pluggable locations from which empty slots are determined.

Sorting is disabled for the hardware inventory page to preserve the natural slot order of the devices.

To view hardware inventory for devices that Junos Space manages:

1. **Select Devices > Device Management.**  
The Device Management inventory page displays the devices managed in Junos Space in a table.
2. Select a device whose inventory you want to display.
3. Select **Device Inventory > View Physical Inventory** from the Actions dropdown.  
The inventory is displayed in a table, as shown in [Figure 23 on page 70](#).

Figure 23: Device Inventory: Chassis Cluster

Module	Model Number	Model	Part Number	Serial Number	Description
Cluster					
10.205.56.3 - SRX1400					
Chassis (node0)					
PEM 0	SRX1K-PWR-AC		740-032015 (rev 03)	J027K7000F03P	AC Power Supply
CB 0	SRX1K-RE-12-10		750-032544 (REV 07)	AA059827	Routing Engine with 1200 MHz proc
Routing Engine			BUILTIN	BUILTIN	Routing Engine
CPP			BUILTIN	BUILTIN	Central PFE Processor
Mezz			710-021035 (REV 09)	AA0T4005	SRX HD Mezzanine Card
ad0		CF 1GB		2012B 00000...	Compact Flash(disk-size 1006)
ad2		Wintec SSD 16GB		WT1027AA01...	Hard Disk(disk-size 15392)
FPC 0	SRX1K-SYSIO-GE		750-032536 (REV 17)	AA0S7379	SRX1k 1GE SYSIO
PIC 0			BUILTIN	BUILTIN	6x 1GE RJ45 6x 1GE SFP
FPC 1	SRX1K-NPC-SPC-1...		750-032543 (REV 10)	AAEY8402	Network and Services Processing Ca
PIC 0			BUILTIN	BUILTIN	SPU Cp-Flow
FPC 3			710-017865 (REV 18)	AAEY8465	BUILTIN NPC
PIC 0			BUILTIN	BUILTIN	NPC PIC
Fan Tray	FANTRAY-A1-S		-N/A- (-N/A-)	-N/A-	SRX 1400 Fan Tray
10.205.56.4 - SRX1400					
Chassis (node1)					
PEM 0	SRX1K-PWR-AC		740-032015 (rev 02)	J027JP00G202P	AC Power Supply
CB 0	SRX1K-RE-12-10		750-032544 (REV 06)	AAEH4199	Routing Engine with 1200 MHz proc
Routing Engine			BUILTIN	BUILTIN	Routing Engine
CPP			BUILTIN	BUILTIN	Central PFE Processor
Mezz			710-021035 (REV 09)	AAEH3036	SRX HD Mezzanine Card
ad0		CF 1GB		2011B 00004...	Compact Flash(disk-size 1006)
ad2		Wintec SSD 16GB		WT1027AA01...	Hard Disk(disk-size 15392)
FPC 0	SRX1K-SYSIO-GE		750-032536 (REV 17)	AAEH5924	SRX1k 1GE SYSIO
PIC 0			BUILTIN	BUILTIN	6x 1GE RJ45 6x 1GE SFP
FPC 1	SRX1K-NPC-SPC-1...		750-032543 (REV 10)	AAEY8391	Network and Services Processing Ca
PIC 0			BUILTIN	BUILTIN	SPU Cp-Flow

You can expand certain categories (for example, the Routing Engine category) to show data for all memory (RAM and disk) installed on device components.

The device inventory for a Junos Space Network Application Platform installation that includes Service Now and Service Insight includes columns related to service contracts and end-of-life status. For detailed information, see [“Displaying Service Contract and EOL Data in the Physical Inventory Table” on page 70](#).

- (Optional) Click **Export** at the top of the inventory page to export the table in CSV format. See [“Exporting Physical Inventory Information” on page 79](#).
- Click **Return to Inventory View** to return to the device inventory page.

#### Related Documentation

- [Displaying Service Contract and EOL Data in the Physical Inventory Table on page 70](#)
- [Exporting Physical Inventory Information on page 79](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Viewing Physical Interfaces on page 72](#)
- [Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network on page 84](#)
- [Viewing and Exporting License Inventory on page 75](#)
- [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)

## Displaying Service Contract and EOL Data in the Physical Inventory Table

**Problem** **Description:** As of Release 11.3 of Junos Space, the Physical Inventory table can include columns related to the part's service contract and end-of-life (EOL) status.

The service contract data in this table is populated by the Service Now Devices table. The EOL data in this table is populated by the Service Insight Exposure Analyzer table. If Service Now or Service Insight is not installed, or if the required tables are empty, these columns are not displayed in the Physical Inventory table.

**Solution** To investigate missing service contract and EOL data:

1. Use the table column display filters to check whether the columns have been hidden.  
Select the columns you want. If the columns cannot be selected (are not listed), check your Service Now and Service Insight settings.

2. Check the Service Now Devices table for details about the devices managed with Junos Space, including information about the service contract.

If you are unable to view service contract information, check the Service Now settings to ensure the following items have been properly configured:

- Service Now Organization. See Organizations Overview topic in the Service Now documentation.
- Service Now Device. See Service Now Devices Overview topic in the Service Now documentation.
- Service Now Device Group. See Associating Devices with a Device Group topic in the Service Now documentation.
- Service Now Event Profile. See Event Profiles Overview topic in the Service Now documentation.

3. Check the Service Insight Exposure Analyzer table for details about the devices managed with Junos Space, including information about EOL announcements.

The EOL Status column indicates whether EOL data is available or not. EOL data is available only if there is an EOL bulletin. EOL data is typically unavailable for newer products. If the Exposure Analyzer table does not contain records, there might be a problem with the Service Now configuration. Service Now manages the communication between Junos Space and the Juniper Networks support organization, which is the originating source of EOL data. If the Service Insight Exposure Analyzer table is empty, check the following Service Now settings:

- Service Now Organization. See the Organizations Overview topic in the Service Now documentation.
- Service Now Device. See the Service Now Devices Overview topic in the Service Insight documentation.

**Related Documentation** • [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)

## Viewing Physical Interfaces

Junos Space displays physical interfaces by device name, based on the device information in its database. You can view the operational status and administrative status of physical interfaces for one or more devices to troubleshoot problems.

Sorting is disabled for the physical interfaces view to preserve the natural slot order of the devices.

If the interface status changes on the managed device, the information is not updated in Junos Space until the device is resynchronized with the Junos Space database.

You can access the Physical Interfaces view either from the Manage Devices inventory page, or from within the Physical Inventory view.

To view the physical interfaces for devices from the Manage Devices inventory page:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.
2. Select the device for which you want to view the physical interfaces.
3. Select **Device Inventory > View Physical Interfaces** from the Actions dropdown.

Junos Space displays a table containing the status of the physical interfaces for the device. [Table 16 on page 72](#) describes the information that can be displayed for the physical Interfaces. Some columns may be hidden. To expose them, mouse over any column head, click the down arrow that appears, select **Columns** from the resulting menu, and check the columns you want to see.

**Table 16: Physical Interfaces Columns**

Field	Description
Device Name	The device configuration name.
Physical Interface Name	Standard information about the interface, in the format <i>type-/fpc/pic/port</i> , where <i>type</i> is the media type that identifies the network device; for example, ge-0/0/6.
IP Address	The IP address for the interface.
Logical Interfaces	A link to the table of logical interfaces for the device.
MAC Address	The MAC address of the device.
Operational Status	The operational status of the interface: up or down.
Admin Status	The admin status of the interface: up or down.
Encapsulation	The encapsulation type used on the physical interface.
Link Type	The physical interface link type: full duplex or half duplex.
Speed (Mbps)	The speed at which the interface is running.



Table 16: Physical Interfaces Columns (*continued*)

Field	Description
MTU	The maximum transmission unit size on the physical interface.
Description	An optional description for this interface configured on the device. It can be any text string of 512 or fewer characters. Any longer string is truncated to 512. If there is no information, the column entry is blank.

- Click **Return to Inventory View** at the top of the inventory page.

#### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Viewing and Exporting License Inventory on page 75](#)
- [Viewing Logical Interfaces on page 73](#)

## Viewing Logical Interfaces

You can view logical interfaces on a per-port basis or on a per-device or per-logical system basis. You can view the logical interface configurations for one or more devices or logical systems to troubleshoot problems.

You can access the Logical Interfaces view in either of two ways: from the Manage Devices inventory page, or from within the Physical Interfaces view. These two procedures are described separately below.

To view the logical interfaces configured for a selected device from the Manage Devices inventory page:

- Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
A tabular list of devices appears.
- Select the device for which you want to view logical interface information.
- Do one of the following:
  - Select the **View** link in the Logical Interfaces column.
  - Select **Device Inventory > View Logical Interfaces**.
  - Right-click the selected device in the table and select **View Logical Interfaces** from the menu that appears.

Junos Space displays the status of the logical interfaces for the selected device in a table. Its possible fields are described in [Table 17 on page 74](#). Some columns may be hidden. To expose them, mouse over any column head, click the down arrow that appears, select **Columns** from the resulting menu, and check the columns you want to see.

- Select **Return to Inventory View** at the top left of the display.

To view the logical interfaces configured for a physical interface from the Physical Interfaces view:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The device inventory table appears.
2. Find the device that has the physical interfaces of interest.
3. In the table row for the device, select the word **View** in the Interfaces column.  
Junos Space opens a table that shows all of the physical interfaces for the device.
4. From the table of physical interfaces, find the interface for which you want to view the logical interfaces.
5. In the table row for the physical interface, select the word **View** in the Logical Interfaces column.  
Junos Space displays the status of the logical interfaces for the selected physical interface. Its fields are described in [Table 17 on page 74](#). Some columns may be hidden. To expose them, mouse over any column head, click the down arrow that appears, select **Columns** from the resulting menu, and check the columns you want to see.
6. Select **Return to Physical Interfaces** at the top left of the display.

**Table 17: Logical Interfaces Columns**

Field	Description
Device Name	The device configuration name.
Interface Name	Standard information about the interface, in the format <i>type-/fpc/pic/port/logical interface</i> , where <i>type</i> is the media type that identifies the network device; for example, ge-0/0/6.135.
IP Address	The IP address for the logical interface.
Encapsulation	The encapsulation type used on the logical interface.
Vlan	The VLAN ID for the logical interface.
Description	An optional description configured for the interface. It can be any text string of 512 or fewer characters. Any longer string is truncated. If there is no information, the column entry is blank.

**Related Documentation** • [Viewing Physical Interfaces on page 72](#)

---

## Viewing and Exporting License Inventory

---

The Device Licence Inventory feature enables you to display the currently installed license inventory information for all DMI schema-based devices under Junos Space management.

The license inventory is generated when the device is first discovered and synchronized in Junos Space.

The licenses used by all Juniper Networks devices are based on SKUs, which represent lists of features. Each license includes a list of features that the license enables and information about those features. Sometimes the license information also includes the inventory keys of hardware or software elements upon which the license can be installed.



**NOTE:** To view the license(s) for Junos Space itself, see [“Viewing Licenses” on page 503](#).

This topic also covers:

- Absence of license
- Trial information
- Count-down information
- Date-based information

DMI enables each device family to maintain its own license catalog in the DMI Update Repository. The license catalog is a flat list of all the licenses used by a device family. The key for a license element is its SKU name. Each license element in the catalog includes a list of features that the license enables and information about each feature (that is, its name and value). Optionally, the license element can also list the inventory keys of hardware or software elements and where it can be installed.

If the license inventory on the device is changed, the result depends on whether the network is the system of record or Junos Space is the system of record. See [“Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space” on page 591](#).

If the network is the system of record, Junos Space automatically synchronizes with the managed device. You can also manually resynchronize the Junos Space license database with the device by using the Resynchronize with Network action. See [“Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network” on page 84](#).

If Junos Space is the system of record, neither automatic nor manual resynchronization is available.

Viewing device license inventory does not include pushing license keys to devices. You can, however, push licenses with the Configuration Editor to any device that has license keys in its configuration. See [“Editing Device Configuration Overview” on page 45](#). You can export device license inventory information to a CSV file for use in other applications.

License inventory information shows individually installed licenses as well as a license

usage summary, with statistics for various features.

To view license inventory for a device:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management inventory page displays the devices managed in Junos Space.

2. Select **Device Inventory > View License Inventory** from the Actions dropdown.

The License Inventory page displays the license information listed in [Table 18 on page 76](#).



**NOTE:** Need Counts in red indicate violations. In other words, entries in red indicate that you are using features that you are not licensed to use. You may also encounter the message that you have no licenses installed.

3. (Optional) View the list of licensed features for the selected license by double-clicking a license usage summary or clicking on the forward action icon to the left of a license usage summary.

The information displayed is described in [Table 19 on page 77](#).

4. (Optional) Click **Return to Inventory View** at the top of the inventory page.

5. (Optional) Click **Export** at the top of the inventory page, to export the license inventory information.

The Export Device License Information dialog box appears, displaying a link: Download license file for selected device (CSV format).

6. (Optional) Click the download link.

The Opening Device License-xxxxxxCSV dialog box appears, where xxxxxx represents a number.

7. Open the file with an application of your choice, or download the file by clicking **Save**.

The CSV file contains the fields described in [Table 19 on page 77](#) and [Table 20 on page 77](#). These fields are not populated if the information is not available for the selected license.



**NOTE:** Exporting device license information generates an audit log entry.

**Table 18: License Usage Summary Fields**

Field	Description
Feature name	Name of the licensed SKU or feature. It can be used to look up the license with Juniper Networks. Not all devices support this.
License count	Number of times an item has been licensed. This value may have contributions from more than one licensed SKU or feature. Alternatively, it may be 1, no matter how many times it has been licensed.

Table 18: License Usage Summary Fields (*continued*)

Field	Description
Used count	Number of times the feature is used. For some types of licenses, the license count will be 1, no matter how many times it is used. For capacity-based licensable items, if infringement is supported, the license count may exceed the given count, which has a corresponding effect on the need count.
Need count	Number of times the feature is used without a license. Not all devices can provide this information.
Given count	Number of instances of the feature that are provided by default.

Table 19: License Feature or SKU Fields

Field	Description
Feature Name	Name of the licensed SKU or feature. It can be used to look up the license with Juniper Networks. Not all devices support this.
Validity Type	The SKU or feature is considered permanent if it is not trial, count-down, or data-based.

Table 20: Additional Fields in CSV Files

Field	Description
State	Status of the license: valid, invalid, or expired. Only licenses marked as valid are considered when calculating the license count.
Version	
Type	Permanent, trial, and so on.
Start Date	Licensed feature starting date.
End Date	Licensed feature ending date.
Time Remaining	Licensed feature time remaining.

- Related Documentation**
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
  - [Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network on page 84](#)
  - [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)
  - [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)

## Viewing and Exporting Software Inventory

---

The Device Software Inventory feature enables you to display the currently installed software inventory information for all DMI schema-based devices under Junos Space management.

The software inventory is generated when the device is first discovered and synchronized in Junos Space. If the software inventory on the device is changed by a local user, the result depends on whether the network is the system of record or Junos Space is the system of record. See [“Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space” on page 591](#).

If the network is the system of record, Junos Space automatically synchronizes with the managed device. You can also manually resynchronize the Junos Space software database with the device by using the Resynchronize with Network action. See [“Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network” on page 84](#).

If Junos Space is the system or record, neither automatic nor manual resynchronization is available. You can reset the device configuration from the values in the Junos Space database if and when you want to do so.

If you need to install software on a device, see [“Editing Device Configuration Overview” on page 45](#). You can export device software inventory information to a CSV file for use in other applications (steps 5 through 7).

To view software inventory for a device:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management inventory page displays the devices managed in Junos Space.

2. Select a device or devices by clicking the boxes next to their names, and then select **Device Inventory > View Software Inventory** from the Actions dropdown. You can sort the device column either by clicking the arrow in the column head or by mousing over the column head and clicking your choice of Sort Ascending or Sort Descending.

If you selected more than one device, the report is grouped by device name. You can expand or contract each section by clicking the icon to the left of each device name.

3. (Optional) You can control which columns are displayed by mousing over any column head and clicking Columns in the drop-down menu, then checking the column names that you want. The Version column is redundant with the Major, Minor, and Revision columns. You might need only one or two of these.
4. (Optional) Click **Return to Inventory View** at the top of the software inventory page.
5. (Optional) Click **Export**, at the top of the inventory page, to export the software inventory information.

The Export Software Inventory dialog box appears, displaying a link: Download software inventory for selected device (CSV format).

6. (Optional) Click the download link.
7. Open the file with an application of your choice, or download the file by clicking **Save**. You can designate a filename and location.

The CSV file contains the following fields: Device Name, Product Model, Package Name, Version, Type, and Description, as detailed in [Table 21 on page 79](#), irrespective of the columns you have chosen to display on the screen. These fields are not populated if the information is not available for the selected software.

**Table 21: Software Inventory Fields**

Field	Description
Device	Name of the device on which this software inventory is present.
Model	The model of this device. Possible device families include J Series, M Series, MX Series, TX Series, SRX Series, EX Series, BXOS Series, and QFX Series.
Routing engine	On a device supporting multiple Routing Engines, indicates which Routing Engine is described.
Package name	Name of the installed software package.
Description	Description of the installed software package.
Version	Version number of the installed software package.
Type	Type of the installed software package. Permitted values are operating-system, internal-package, and extension.
Major	Major portion of the version number. For example, in version 11.4R1.14, the major portion is 11.
Minor	Minor portion of the version number. For example, in version 11.4R1.14, the minor portion is 4.
Revision number	The revision number of the package. For example, in version 11.4R1.14, the revision number is 1.14.

**Related Documentation**

- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network on page 84](#)
- [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)
- [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)
- [Device Images and Scripts Overview on page 221](#)

## Exporting Physical Inventory Information

From the Manage Devices application in the Junos Space Devices workspace, you can view the list of devices managed through Junos Space and export the device information

to a comma-separated value (CSV) file. You can upload the CSV file that you create into other applications, such as those you use for asset management. The export task runs as a Junos Space job.

You can display the device inventory summary in table format from Manage Devices in the task tree, or in a detailed list form from the Actions menu. You use both forms in the export device inventory process.

To export device inventory information:

1. Display the device inventory by selecting **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management table appears.

2. Select the devices you want to include in the inventory report.
3. (Optional) Preview the device information before you export to the CSV file. Select **Device Inventory > View Physical Inventory** from the Actions dropdown.

The physical inventory page appears.

You can expand the information in this view to see the details of each device. Click the plus sign (+) to the left of the device in the list.

If the device information in this display is what you want to include in your report, select **Export** in the window header to create the CSV file. If you want to change the content of the report, select the **Return to Inventory View** link in the top-left corner to display the device summary table again. You can make a new selection or continue with the export.

4. Export the device inventory information to the CSV file.

You can export information about selected devices or about all of the devices managed by Junos Space.

Once you are satisfied with your selection of devices to include in your report, open the Actions menu and click **Export Physical Inventory** to display the Export Inventory dialog box.

Click either the **Export Selected** button or the **Export All** button to begin creating the CSV file.

Clicking an export button starts a Junos Space job that creates and saves the CSV report. When the job is completed, the Export Inventory Job Status report indicates the job is 100% complete.

5. Click the **Download** link in the Export Inventory Job Status report to display the CSV file.

You can import the CSV file into other applications, such as those you might use for asset management.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Device Inventory Management Overview on page 36](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)



- [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Device Management Overview on page 31](#)
- [Device Discovery Overview on page 107](#)

## Viewing Associated Scripts

---

To view the scripts associated with the devices:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management page is displayed.
2. Select the devices for which you want to view the associated scripts.
3. Select **Device Inventory > View Associated Scripts** from the Actions dropdown.

The View Associated Scripts page is displayed. This page displays all the scripts that are deployed on the devices you have selected. You can view the script name, script type, staged version of the script, latest version of the script, and the activation status of the script.

### Related Documentation

- [Device Inventory Management Overview on page 36](#)

## Viewing Script Execution

---

To view the script execution on the devices:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management page is displayed.
2. Select the devices for which you want to view the script execution.
3. Select **Device Inventory > View Script Executions** from the Actions dropdown.

The View Script Executions page is displayed. This page displays all the scripts that are executed on the devices you have selected. You can view the script name, script version, execution status, execution results, and the start time and end time for script execution.

### Related Documentation

- [Device Inventory Management Overview on page 36](#)



## CHAPTER 6

# Device Operations

- [Deleting Devices on page 83](#)
- [Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network on page 84](#)
- [Using Looking Glass on page 86](#)
- [Understanding Logical Systems for SRX Series Services Gateways on page 87](#)
- [Creating a Logical System \(LSYS\) on page 88](#)
- [Deleting Logical Systems on page 89](#)
- [Viewing the Physical Device for a Logical System on page 89](#)
- [Viewing Logical Systems for a Physical Device on page 90](#)
- [Putting a Device in RMA State and Reactivating Its Replacement on page 91](#)

### Deleting Devices

---

You can delete devices from Junos Space. Deleting a device removes all device configuration and device inventory information from the Junos Space database.

To delete a device from Junos Space:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

Graphical summaries about the devices in the network appear.

2. Expand the Devices workspace by clicking the expansion symbol to the left of its name.

Tasks related to managing devices are displayed in the expanded portion of the tree. Some (for example, Discover Devices) can be further expanded.

3. From the task tree, select **Device Management**.

The Device Management inventory page displays information about the devices managed in Junos Space.

4. (Optional) View summary information for a device before deleting by selecting the device and moving the scroll bar to the far right.

Junos Space displays basic device information, including name, OS version, platform, IP address, and connection status.

5. From the Device Management inventory page, select one or more devices to delete.

6. If provisioning services are associated with a device that you want to delete, you must remove the provisioning services before deleting the device. See *Deleting a Service Order*.
7. Select **Device Operations > Delete Devices** from the Actions dropdown.  
Junos Space displays the Delete Devices dialog box.
8. Select **Delete** to delete the selected devices.  
Junos Space deletes all device configuration and inventory information for the selected devices from the Junos Space database.

**Related Documentation**

- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Viewing Physical Interfaces on page 72](#)
- [Discovering Devices on page 108](#)

---

## Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network

---

If the network is the system of record, you can resynchronize a managed device at any time. For example, when a managed device is updated by a device administrator from the device's native GUI or CLI, you can resynchronize the device configuration in the Junos Space database with the physical device. (If Junos Space is the system of record, this capability is not available. See [“Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space” on page 591](#).)

To resynchronize a device:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management** workspace.
2. Expand the Devices workspace by clicking the expansion symbol to the left of its name.  
Tasks related to managing devices are displayed in the expanded portion of the tree. Some (for example, Discover Devices) can be further expanded.
3. Select **Device Management**.  
The Device Management inventory page displays the list of managed devices by name and IP address.
4. From the Device Management inventory page, select one or more devices to resynchronize:
5. Select **Device Operations > Resynchronize with Network** to reimport the devices in Junos Space.  
Junos Space displays the Resynchronize Devices dialog box.
6. Click **Confirm**.

Junos Space starts resynchronizing the device and displays the Resynchronization status message.

7. Click the Job ID to view details about the device resynchronization, or click **OK** to close the message.

When a resync job is scheduled to run but another resync job on the same device is in progress, Junos Space delays the scheduled resync job. The time delay is determined by the damper interval that you set from the application workspace. By default the time delay is 20 seconds. The scheduled job is delayed as long as the other resync job to the same device is in progress. When the job that is currently running finishes, the scheduled resync job starts. See [“Modifying Application Settings” on page 508](#).

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)
- [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)
- [Device Inventory Management Overview on page 36](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Viewing Physical Interfaces on page 72](#)
- [Viewing and Exporting License Inventory on page 75](#)

## Using Looking Glass

---

You can check the configuration settings of one or more devices from Junos Space using Looking Glass. It enables you to execute **show** commands across multiple devices to compare the configuration and runtime information.

Looking Glass supports many Junos OS **show** commands, which you can see in a drop-down list. The availability of commands depends on the device platform and the OS version. (The **show** commands supported for each device platform and Junos OS version are loaded into the database during configuration import.)

Looking Glass offers two views for the command outputs—text output and table view. Text output simulates the CLI, whereas table view resembles the information display on the Devices page in Junos Space.

Although Looking Glass is available for most devices, not every user can manage all devices. Permissions to use Looking Glass must be assigned as part of a user's role. Without permissions to manage a device, you cannot use Looking Glass on it.



**NOTE:** Looking Glass does not support ScreenOS or logical systems.

---

To run a **show** command from Junos Space:

1. From the task tree, select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management inventory page displays the devices managed in Junos Space.

2. Select **Device Operations > Looking Glass** from the Actions dropdown.

The Looking Glass page appears, displaying the name of the device(s) selected and their icons on the upper part of the page, above the Execute Command field and the Refresh Response button.

3. Begin to enter a **show** command in the **Execute Command** field.

A list of suggestions appears below the field. The suggestions are based on the commands that can be executed on the device(s) currently selected. Usually viewing the entire list requires vertical scrolling.

4. Either finish entering your command or select it from the list.

5. If the command you are running requires your input, replace the part of the command shown as text in angle brackets with your own data. For example, replace **<slot>** in **show chassis routing-engine <slot>** with the slot number, as in **show chassis routing-engine 1**.



**NOTE:** If you do not enter required input, there is no output in response to the **show** command.

---

6. Click **Refresh Response** if necessary. (If you typed an entire command without selecting from the drop-down list, you will need to do this.)

The command you entered or selected is displayed to the right of the Refresh Response button.

Especially in table view, you should expect to scroll horizontally. With multiple devices selected, you must scroll vertically as well.

If there is no output, the lower part of the page remains blank.

All the details shown in Looking Glass are obtained directly from the devices and may not be formatted as well as those displayed on the Space inventory landing pages.

7. (Optional) To change the way the output is displayed, click the Format Text View icon in the Execute Command banner, between the View Response button and the displayed command name. The default view is Table View.
8. (Optional) To display only a single device's output on a page showing the output for multiple devices, click the device's icon in the upper part of the page.  
A green check mark appears on the icon, and the lower panel of the window displays the output for the selected device only.
9. (Optional) To remove all selections, click in the empty part of the upper section of the page.  
All check marks disappear, and the lower panel displays no output.
10. (Optional) To display the output for a subset of devices on a page showing the output for multiple devices, hold down the CtrlL key or the Shift key as you click the icons for the devices whose output you want to display.  
Green check marks appear on the icons of the devices you select, and the lower panel of the window displays the output for the selected devices only.



**TIP:** If you are looking at output across multiple devices in Format Text View, use the individual vertical scrollbar at the far right of the page for each device to see the entire output. You can position the slider to show the same output parameters for different devices you are comparing.

#### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Viewing Physical Interfaces on page 72](#)
- [Discovering Devices on page 108](#)

## Understanding Logical Systems for SRX Series Services Gateways

Logical systems for SRX Series devices enable you to partition a single device into secure contexts. Each logical system has its own discrete administrative domain, logical interfaces, routing instances, security firewall and other security features. By transforming

an SRX Series device into a multitenant logical systems device, you can give various departments, organizations, customers, and partners—depending on your environment—private use of portions of its resources and a private view of the device. Using logical systems, you can share system and underlying physical machine resources among discrete user logical systems and the master logical system. The logical systems feature runs with the Junos operating system (Junos OS) on SRX1400, SRX3400, SRX3600, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices.

For detailed information about understanding and configuring logical systems for SRX series services gateways, see *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Viewing Devices and Logical Systems with QuickView on page 41](#)
- [Viewing the Physical Device for a Logical System on page 89](#)
- [Viewing Logical Systems for a Physical Device on page 90](#)
- [Creating a Logical System \(LSYS\) on page 88](#)
- [Deleting Logical Systems on page 89](#)
- *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*

---

## Creating a Logical System (LSYS)

For detailed information about using logical systems on Juniper Networks security devices, see *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*

To create a new logical system on a physical device:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.
2. Select a physical device and then select **Device Operations > Create LSYS** from the Actions dropdown.

The new logical system window opens, prompting you to enter information for the new logical system.

3. In the LSYS device name box, enter the name for the new logical system.
4. From the LSYS profile menu, choose a logical system security profile for the new logical system. For more information about security profiles, see *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*
5. Click **Finish** to create the new logical system.

Network Application Platform shows you the ID number of the job for creating the new logical system. You can click on the ID number to check status of the job.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Understanding Logical Systems for SRX Series Services Gateways on page 87](#)
- [Viewing Devices and Logical Systems with QuickView on page 41](#)
- [Viewing the Physical Device for a Logical System on page 89](#)



- [Viewing Logical Systems for a Physical Device on page 90](#)
- [Deleting Logical Systems on page 89](#)
- *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*

## Deleting Logical Systems

For detailed information about using logical systems on Juniper Networks security devices, see *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*



**NOTE:** We recommend that you *not* delete an SRX root device and an LSYS simultaneously in Junos Space. Although deleting the SRX root device will delete the root device and the LSYS instances from Junos Space, it will not remove the LSYS configuration from the device, whereas deleting an LSYS will remove LSYS-related configuration from the device.

To delete one or more existing logical systems:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.
2. Select a logical system and then select **Device Operations > Delete Devices** from the Actions dropdown.  
  
Network Application Platform opens a dialog box prompting you to confirm the deletion of the selected logical systems.
3. Click **Confirm** to proceed with the deletion of the logical systems, or click **Cancel** to return to the Manage Devices view without deleting the logical systems.

### Related Documentation

- [Understanding Logical Systems for SRX Series Services Gateways on page 87](#)
- [Viewing Devices and Logical Systems with QuickView on page 41](#)
- [Viewing the Physical Device for a Logical System on page 89](#)
- [Viewing Logical Systems for a Physical Device on page 90](#)
- [Creating a Logical System \(LSYS\) on page 88](#)
- *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*

## Viewing the Physical Device for a Logical System

For detailed information about using logical systems on Juniper Networks security devices, see *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*

To view the physical device on which a selected logical system is configured:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.
2. In the tabular view, locate the table row for the logical system.

The logical system name will be followed by link text indicating the name of the physical device on which the logical system is configured.

3. Click on the link text next to the name of the logical system.

Space Platform filters the device inventory list so that it shows only the entry for the physical device on which the logical system is configured.

4. To clear the filter and return the inventory list to its original view, click the red X next to the filter criteria above the inventory list.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Understanding Logical Systems for SRX Series Services Gateways on page 87](#)
- [Viewing Devices and Logical Systems with QuickView on page 41](#)
- [Viewing Logical Systems for a Physical Device on page 90](#)
- [Creating a Logical System \(LSYS\) on page 88](#)
- [Deleting Logical Systems on page 89](#)
- *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*

---

## Viewing Logical Systems for a Physical Device

---

For detailed information about using logical systems on Juniper Networks security devices, see *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*.

To view the logical systems configured on a selected physical device:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

2. Locate the table row for the physical device.

If the device supports logical systems, the device name will be followed by link text indicating how many logical systems are configured on it. If no logical systems are configured on the device, the link text reads "0 LSYS(s)."

3. Click on the link text next to the name of the physical device.

Space Platform filters the device inventory list so that it lists the logical systems configured on the selected physical device.

4. To clear the filter and return the inventory list to its original view, click the red X next to the filter criteria above the inventory list.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Understanding Logical Systems for SRX Series Services Gateways on page 87](#)
- [Viewing Devices and Logical Systems with QuickView on page 41](#)
- [Viewing the Physical Device for a Logical System on page 89](#)
- [Creating a Logical System \(LSYS\) on page 88](#)
- [Deleting Logical Systems on page 89](#)
- *Junos OS Logical Systems Configuration Guide for Security Devices*

---

## Putting a Device in RMA State and Reactivating Its Replacement

---

Sometimes, because of hardware failure, a device managed by Junos Space needs to be returned to the vendor for repair or replacement. In such cases, Junos Space can keep on record the configuration of the defective device until you can obtain an equivalent replacement device from the vendor. You create this record by putting the defective device in Return Materials Authorization (RMA) state before removing it. In this way, you prevent the configuration from being deleted from the Junos Space database when the device is removed.

Before connecting the replacement device, you must configure it with such basic information as the name, IP address, and login credentials (which must exactly match those of the original device when it was put in RMA state).

Once the replacement device has been reconnected within your network, you perform the Reactivate from RMA task to cause Junos Space to read its settings, put the preserved configuration onto it, and bring it back under management. Because the two devices are perceived as equivalent, this operation is considered *reactivation*, even if the replacement device is new.

Do not delete or physically disconnect the defective device before performing the Put in RMA State task.



**WARNING:** Remove any provisioning services associated with a device before putting it in RMA state.

- [Putting a Device in RMA State on page 91](#)
- [Reactivating a Replacement Device on page 92](#)

### Putting a Device in RMA State

If you want to return a device to the vendor under RMA, but you do not want to delete its configuration from the Junos Space database, put the device in RMA state.

To have Junos Space keep on record the configuration of a defective device so that you can later deploy that configuration to the defective device's replacement:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The **Device Management** inventory page displays the devices managed in Junos Space.

2. Select the defective device.
3. Select **Device Operations > Put in RMA State** from the Actions dropdown.

The RMA Device window appears.

4. Click **Confirm** to put the selected device in RMA state.

The RMA Devices Information window appears, displaying the job ID, which you can click to view details.

5. Click **OK** to return to the Device Management inventory page.

The defective device is still displayed, but it is no longer active. The Connection Status column reports that the device is down, and the Managed Status column reports that the device is In RMA.

## Reactivating a Replacement Device

Before you begin, you must perform basic configuration on the replacement device, such as the name, IP address, and login credentials. These values must match those of the original device when it was put in RMA state.

To have Junos Space deploy the configuration of a defective device to a replacement device:

1. Connect the replacement device to your network in the same way as the defective device was connected.
2. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management inventory page displays the devices managed in Junos Space.

3. Select the item that formerly represented the defective device. (It in fact now represents the replacement device, without the need for you to make any changes to it.)
4. Select **Device Operations > Reactivate from RMA** from the Actions dropdown.
5. Click **Confirm** to activate the replacement device.

The RMA Devices Information window appears, displaying the job ID, which you can click to view details.

6. Click **OK** to return to the Device Management inventory page.

The replacement device is displayed, now with the defective device's configuration.

As activation proceeds, intermediate states such as Reactivating are displayed under Managed Status. The replacement device is active and under management when Connection Status reports that the device is up, and Managed Status reports In Sync.

## CHAPTER 7

# Device Access

- [Secure Console Overview on page 93](#)
- [Connecting to a Device From Secure Console on page 93](#)
- [Launching a Device's Web UI on page 98](#)
- [Changing Device Credentials on page 98](#)
- [Key-based Authentication Overview on page 99](#)
- [Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices on page 100](#)

### Secure Console Overview

---

From the Junos Space user interface, you can use the Secure Console feature to open an SSH session to connect to a Junos space managed device or unmanaged device. The Secure Console is a terminal window embedded in Junos Space that eliminates the need for a third party SSH client.

Secure Console initiates the SSH session from the Junos Space server (rather than from your browser) to provide a secure and reliable connection for both managed and unmanaged devices.

You can use Secure Console to connect to any managed device in Junos Space by using the credentials previously stored for the device. To connect to devices that are not managed by Junos Space, you must provide device credentials before connecting to the device.

You can establish multiple SSH connections to connect to different devices simultaneously, with each SSH connection in a different window.

You must have Super Administrator or Device Manager privileges to open an SSH session to a device in Junos Space.

#### Related Documentation

- [Connecting to a Device From Secure Console on page 93](#)

### Connecting to a Device From Secure Console

---

You can use Secure Console to establish a connection to a device directly from the Junos Space user interface. Secure Console uses the SSH protocol to provide a secure remote access connection to a device. After you connect to a device, you can enter CLI commands

from the terminal window to monitor or troubleshoot the device. You can use Secure Console to establish a connection to a managed device or unmanaged device. An unmanaged device is a device that has not been discovered in Junos Space.

This topic includes the following tasks:

- [Connecting to a Managed Device on page 94](#)
- [Connecting to an Unmanaged Device on page 95](#)

## Connecting to a Managed Device

To open an SSH session to connect to a managed device, the following conditions must be met:

- You must have Super Administrator or Device Manager privileges in Junos Space.
- The status of the managed device must be “UP”

You can use Secure Console to establish a connection to a Junos Space managed device. Secure Console uses the SSH protocol to provide a secure remote access connection to your managed devices.

To connect to the managed device:

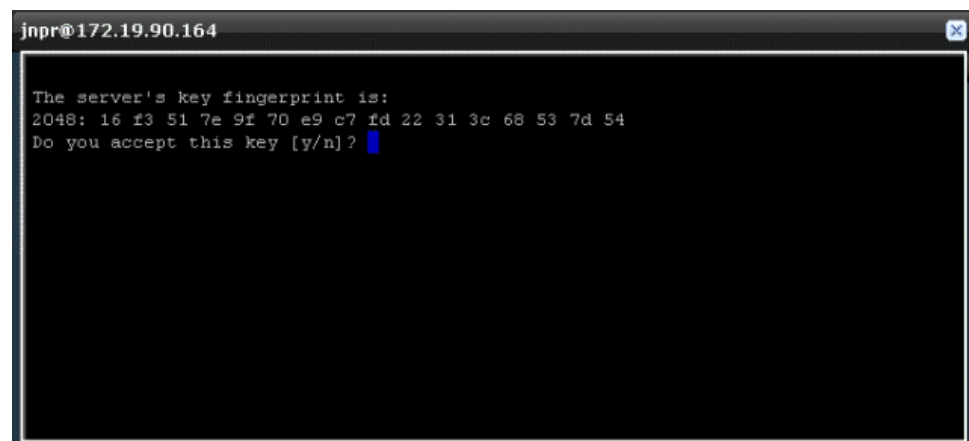
1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management inventory page displays managed devices by name and IP address.

2. Select a device by selecting the table row for the device.
3. In the Actions menu, click **Secure Console**.

A window appears that prompts you to validate the device key fingerprint, as shown in the following illustration.

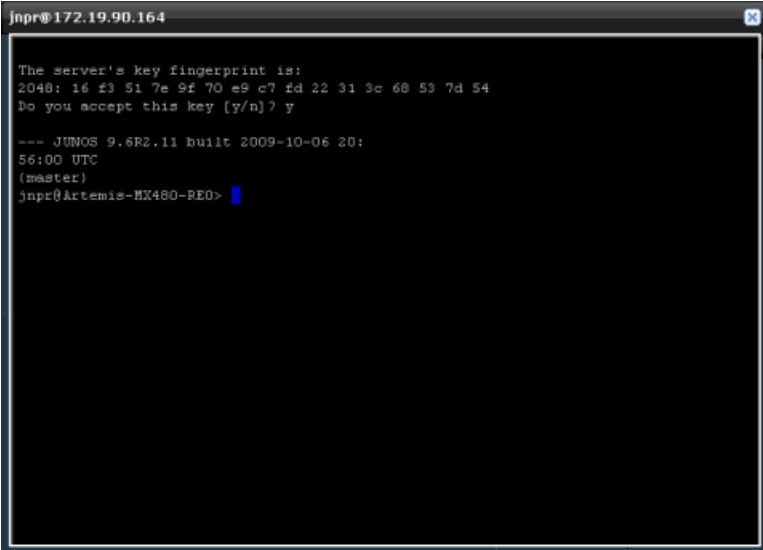
**Figure 24: Verifying the Device Key Fingerprint**



4. Verify that the fingerprint is for the device you want to connect to, and type **y** and press Enter to validate the Server's key fingerprint.

A terminal window opens in a non-modal popup with the SSH connection opened on the selected device, as shown in the following example.

Figure 25: Logging Into the Device after Validating the Fingerprint



```

jnpr@172.19.90.164
The server's key fingerprint is:
2048: 16 f3 51 7e 9f 70 e9 c7 fd 22 31 3c 68 53 7d 54
Do you accept this key [y/n]? y

--- JUNOS 9.6R2.11 built 2009-10-06 20:
56:00 UTC
(master)
jnpr@Artemis-MX480-PE0>

```



**NOTE:** You might encounter the error messages “Unable to Connect”, “Authentication Error”, or “Connection Lost or Terminated”, which are displayed as standard text in terminal window. When an error occurs, all other functionality in the terminal window is stopped. When you encounter such an error, you can close the terminal window and open a new SSH session.

5. From the terminal window prompt, you can enter CLI commands to monitor or troubleshoot the device.
- Secure Console supports the following terminal control characters:
- **CRTL + A**—moves cursor to start of the command line
  - **CRTL + E**—moves cursor to end of the command line
  - **↑** (up arrow key)—repeats the last command
  - **TAB**—completes a partially typed command
6. To terminate the SSH session, type **exit** from the terminal window prompt and press Enter.
  7. Click in the top right corner of the terminal window to close the window.

## Connecting to an Unmanaged Device

You can use Secure Console to establish a connection to an unmanaged device.

To open an SSH session to connect to an unmanaged device, the following conditions must be met:

- You must have Super Administrator or Device Manager privileges in Junos Space.
- The device is configured with a static management IP address that is reachable from the Junos Space appliance.
- SSH v2 is enabled on the device. To enable SSH v2 on a device, issue the following CLI command:

```
set system services ssh protocol-version v2
```

- The status of the device must be “UP”
- A valid user name and password is created on the device.

To connect to an unmanaged device:

1. From the task tree, select **Devices > Secure Console**.

The Secure Console dialog box appears.

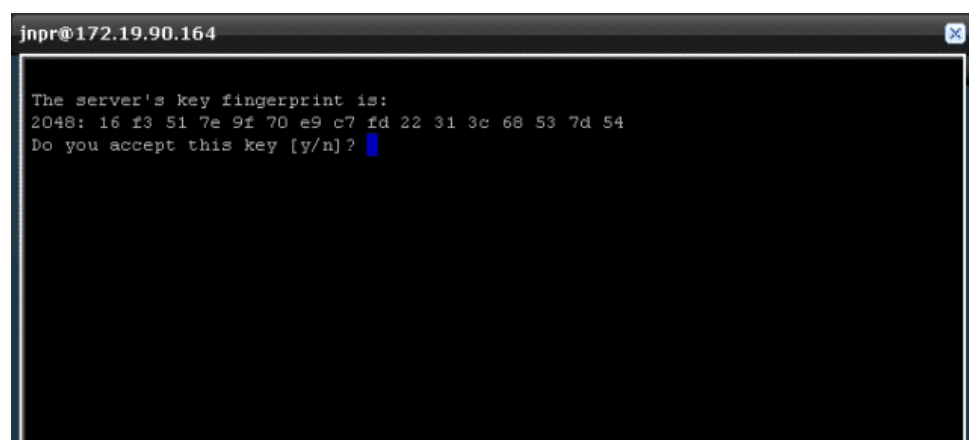
2. Specify the IP address of the device.
3. To establish an SSH connection for the device, specify the administrator user name and password.

The name and password must match the name and password configured on the device.

4. Specify the port number.
5. Click **Connect**.

The device key fingerprint window appears, as shown in the following example.

**Figure 26: Validating the Server Key Fingerprint**



6. Verify that the fingerprint is for the device you want to connect to, and type **y** and press Enter to validate the Server's key fingerprint.

A terminal window opens in a non-modal popup with an SSH connection opened on the selected device, as shown in the following example.



Figure 27: SSH Connection after Validating Server Key Fingerprint



```

jnpr@172.19.90.164
The server's key fingerprint is:
2048: 16 f3 51 7e 9f 70 e9 c7 fd 22 31 3c 60 53 7d 54
Do you accept this key [y/n]? y

--- JUNOS 9.6R2.11 built 2009-10-06 20:
56:00 UTC
(master)
jnpr@Artemis-MX480-PE0>

```



**NOTE:** You might encounter the error messages “Unable to Connect”, “Authentication Error”, or “Connection Lost or Terminated”, which are displayed as standard text in terminal window. When an error occurs, all other functionality in the terminal window is stopped. If you encounter such an error, you can close the terminal window and open a new SSH session.

7. From the terminal window prompt, you can enter CLI commands to monitor or troubleshoot the device.

Secure Console supports the following terminal control characters:

- **CRTL + A**—moves cursor to start of the command line
  - **CRTL + E**—moves cursor to end of the command line
  - **↑** (up arrow key)—repeats the last command
  - **TAB**—completes a partially typed command
8. To terminate the SSH session, type **exit** from the terminal window prompt, and press Enter.
  9. Click in the top right corner of the terminal window to close the window.

#### Related Documentation

- [Secure Console Overview on page 93](#)

## Launching a Device's Web UI

---

The Launch Device WebUI action enables you to access the WebUI of a device to manage it directly. The device should have the required Web UI components installed and enabled (for example, J-web).

Once launched, the Web UI appears either in a new tab in your browser or in a new window. Ensure you enable pop-ups on your browser for the device for which the Web UI is being launched.

To launch a device Web UI:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management inventory page displays information about the devices managed in Junos Space.

2. Select **Device Access > Launch Device WebUI** from the Actions dropdown.
3. Click the **https://ipaddress** link.

Log in and perform the desired operations, following the instructions for your device.

### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)
- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)
- [Selecting the Device and the Configuration Perspective on page 46](#)

## Changing Device Credentials

---

You can change the login credentials for any device that Junos Space manages. Changing the credentials for a managed device updates the credentials in Junos Space but not on the device itself. To change credentials on a device, you must access the device directly from the CLI.

We recommend that you bring down the managed device connection before you change the login credentials.

To change the login credentials for devices that Junos Space manages:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.

The Device Management inventory page displays information about the devices managed in Junos Space.



**NOTE:** You can select one or more devices and apply the same login credentials to the selected devices.

---

2. Change credentials for one or more managed devices for which the connection status is down as follows:

- a. Select the device or devices for which you want to change login credentials.
- b. Select **Change Credentials** from the Actions dropdown.

The Change Credentials dialog box appears.

- c. Enter a username and password, and reenter the password.
- d. Click **Confirm**.

The new login credentials for the selected devices are updated in the Junos Space database.

Change credentials for one or more managed devices for which the connection status is up.

- a. Select one or more devices for which you want to change the login credentials.
- b. Select **Change Credentials** from the Actions menu.

The Change Credentials dialog box appears.

- c. Clear the **Do not change device credentials in the database for devices currently connected to Junos Space** check box.

The Change Credentials dialog box displays the selected devices that are connected to Junos Space.

- d. Enter a username and password, and reenter the password.
- e. Click **Confirm**.

The new login credentials for the selected devices are updated in the Junos Space database.

#### Related Documentation

- [Connecting to a Device From Secure Console on page 93](#)

## Key-based Authentication Overview

Junos Space can discover and manage a device either by presenting credentials (username and password) or by key-based authentication.

Junos Space supports RSA keys for key-based authentication. RSA is an asymmetric-key or public-key algorithm using two keys that are mathematically related. Junos Space includes a default set of public-private key pairs. However, we recommend that you generate your own public/private key pair with a passphrase applied. Generate your keys by following the instructions in [“Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices” on page 100](#). The public key can be uploaded to devices being managed by Junos Space. The private key is encrypted and stored on the system running Junos Space. Junos Space uses username and password credentials to log in to a device for the first time in order

to copy and upload the public key. Any further communication to the devices is done using key-based authentication, without passwords.

It is advisable to protect the private key on the Junos Space system by using a passphrase, which is merely a long password that can include spaces and tabs and is much more difficult to break by brute-force guessing than is one shorter string.

You do not have to use RSA-based authentication on every device in your network; you can use passwords on some systems if you prefer or they require it.

Setting up key-based authentication between two computers is a multi-step process that is well described on many IT-related Internet sites (as is the public-key cryptography to which it is related). Junos Space automates all of this key-creation and uploading process for you. It also tracks and reports the authentication status of each device in the Devices workspace.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices on page 100](#)

---

## Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices

- [Generating Keys on page 100](#)
- [Uploading Keys to Devices for the First Time on page 100](#)
- [Upload Keys on Managed Devices that have Conflicting keys with Junos Space on page 101](#)
- [Verifying Device Key Status on page 102](#)

### Generating Keys

To generate a public/private key pair for authentication during login to network devices:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric** and select the Generate Key icon on the Actions dropdown.  
The Key Generator dialog appears.
2. (Optional) In the **Passphrase** box, enter a passphrase to be used to protect the private key, which will remain on the system running Junos Space and will be used during device logins.  
The passphrase must have a minimum of 5 and a maximum of 255 characters. It may include spaces and tabs. A long passphrase with space and tab characters is harder to break by brute-force guessing. Although a passphrase is not required, it is recommended because it will impede an attacker who gains control of your system and tries to log in to managed network devices.
3. Select **Generate**.

### Uploading Keys to Devices for the First Time

To upload authentication keys to multiple managed devices for the first time:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management inventory page appears.
2. Select the Upload Authentication Key to Devices icon from the Actions menu. You can upload the keys to a single device or multiple devices.
3. To upload keys to a single device:
  - a. Select **Add Manually**.  
The Authentication Details box appears within the Upload Authentication Key dialog.
  - b. In the **IP Address/Host Name** box, enter the IP address or the hostname of the target managed device.
  - c. In the **User Name** box, enter the appropriate username for that device.
  - d. In the **Password** box, enter the password for that device. Confirm it by reentering it in the **Re-enter Password** box.
  - e. Click **Next**.
  - f. Click **Upload** to upload keys to the device.
4. To upload keys to multiple devices:
  - a. Select **Import From CSV**.
  - b. (Optional) To see a sample CSV file as a pattern for setting up your own, select **View Sample CSV**. A separate window appears, allowing you to open or download a sample CSV file.
  - c. Once you have a CSV file listing the managed devices and their data, select **Select a CSV To Upload**.
  - d. Upload the CSV file.
  - e. Click **Next**.
  - f. Click **Upload** to upload keys to the device.

RSA Keys are uploaded automatically to all the managed devices (that were discovered through RSA authentication) in Junos Space, if a new key is generated on Junos Space.

### Upload Keys on Managed Devices that have Conflicting keys with Junos Space

To upload authentication keys to one or several managed devices that have conflicting keys:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management inventory page appears.
2. Select the devices to which you want to upload keys.
3. Select **Device Access > Upload Authentication Key** from the Actions dropdown.  
The IP address of the devices are pre-populated.
4. In the **User Name** box, enter the appropriate username for that device.

5. In the **Password** box, enter the password for that device. Confirm it by reentering it in the **Re-enter Password** box.
6. Select **Next** to provide details for the next device.
7. Select **Upload** to upload the new keys to the managed devices.

## Verifying Device Key Status

To verify the authentication status of managed devices:

- Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management inventory page appears.  
The Authentication Status column displays one of three values:
  - Key Based—Authentication key was successfully uploaded.
  - Credential—Key upload was not attempted; login to this device is by credentials.
  - Key Conflict—Device was not available; key upload was unsuccessful.

### Related Documentation

- [Key-based Authentication Overview on page 99](#)
- [Device Discovery Overview on page 107](#)
- [Discovering Devices on page 108](#)

## CHAPTER 8

# Device Monitoring

- [Viewing and Acknowledging Alarms on page 103](#)

### Viewing and Acknowledging Alarms

---

Junos Space is monitored by default using the built-in SNMP manager, OpenNMS. The Junos Space node is listed in the OpenNMS node list (Platform > Network Monitoring > Node List), and referred to hereafter as Junos Space node.

There are two basic categories of alarm, acknowledged and outstanding. Acknowledging an alarm indicates that you have taken responsibility for addressing the corresponding network or systems-related issue. Any alarm that has not been acknowledged is considered outstanding and is therefore visible to all users on the Alarms page, which displays outstanding alarms by default.

If an alarm has been acknowledged in error, you can find the alarm and unacknowledge it, making it available for someone else to acknowledge.

When you acknowledge, clear, escalate, or unacknowledge an alarm, this information is displayed in the alarm's detailed view. You can click the alarm ID to view the fields such as Acknowledged By, Acknowledgement Type, and Time Acknowledge. These fields display details such as who acknowledged, cleared, escalated, or unacknowledged the alarm, the acknowledgement type (acknowledge, clear, escalate, or unacknowledge), and the date and time the action was performed on the alarm.



**NOTE:** If a remote user has cleared, acknowledged, escalated, or unacknowledged an alarm, the detailed alarm view displays *admin* instead of the actual remote user in the Acknowledged By field.

You can search for alarms by entering an individual ID on the initial Alarms page, or by sorting by the column headings on the Alarms page that displays alarms.

- [Viewing Alarms on page 104](#)
- [Acknowledging Alarms on page 105](#)
- [Clearing Alarms on page 105](#)
- [Escalating Alarms on page 106](#)

- [Unacknowledging Alarms on page 106](#)
- [Viewing Acknowledged Alarms on page 106](#)

## Viewing Alarms

To view alarms:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Alarms**.
2. Click one of the following links:
  - All alarms (summary)
  - All alarms (detail)
  - Advanced Search

The Alarms page appears with the list of alarms. By default, the first view for all alarms, both summary and details, shows outstanding alarms, as indicated by the content of the Search constraints box.

3. (Optional) Use the toggle control (the minus sign) in the Search constraints box to show acknowledged alarms.
4. (Optional) You can refine the list of alarms by either or both of the following:
  - Entering something in the Alarm Text box
  - Selecting a time period from the Time list. You can choose only time spans ending now, for example, Last 12 hours.

Click **Search**.

Links at the top of the page, under its title, provide access to further functions:

- View all alarms
- Advanced Search
- Long Listing/Short Listing

[Table 22 on page 104](#) describes the information displayed in the columns of the Alarms page. An X indicates the data is present in the Short Listing or Long Listing displays.

**Table 22: Information Displayed in the Alarms List**

Data	Short Listing	Long Listing	Comments
Ack check box	X	X	
ID	X	X	Click the ID to go to the Alarm <i>alarm ID</i> section of the Alarms page.
Severity	Color-coding only	X	Toggle enables you to show only alarms with this severity, or not to show alarms with this severity.



Table 22: Information Displayed in the Alarms List (*continued*)

Data	Short Listing	Long Listing	Comments
UEI		X	Toggle enables you to show only events with this UEI, or not to show events with this UEI.
Node	X	X	Toggles enable you to show only alarms on this IP address, or not to show alarms for this interface.
Interface		X	
Service		X	
Count	X	X	Click the count to view the Events page for the event that triggered this alarm.
Last Event Time	X	X	Mouse over this to see the event ID. Toggles enable you to show only alarms occurring after this one, or only alarms occurring before this one.
First Event Time		X	
Log Msg	X	X	

- **Severity Legend**—Click to display a table in a separate window showing the full explanations and color coding for the degrees of severity.
- **Acknowledge/Unacknowledge entire search**—Click to perform the relevant action on all alarms in the current search, including those not shown on your screen.

## Acknowledging Alarms

To acknowledge an alarm:

1. Select the alarm's **Ack** check box. To select all alarms, at the bottom of the page, click **Select All**.
2. At the bottom of the page, select **Acknowledge Alarms** from the list on the left, and click **Go**.

The alarm is removed from the default view of all users.

## Clearing Alarms

To clear an alarm:

1. Select the alarm's **Ack** check box. To select all alarms, at the bottom of the page, click **Select All**.
2. At the bottom of the page, select **Clear Alarms** from the list on the left, and click **Go**.

## Escalating Alarms

To escalate an alarm:

1. Select the alarm's **Ack** check box. To select all alarms, at the bottom of the page, click **Select All**.
2. At the bottom of the page, select **Escalate Alarms** from the list on the left, and click **Go**.

The alarm is escalated by one level.

3. (Optional) To view the severity to which an alarm has been escalated, click the alarm's ID.

## Unacknowledging Alarms

To unacknowledge an alarm:

1. Display the list of acknowledged alarms by toggling the Search constraint box so that it is showing Alarm is acknowledged.
2. Select the **Ack** check box of the alarm you acknowledged in error. To select all alarms, at the bottom of the page, click **Select All**.
3. At the bottom of the page, select **Unacknowledge Alarms** from the list on the left, and click **Go**.

The alarm appears again in the default view of All Alarms.

## Viewing Acknowledged Alarms

To view acknowledged alarms:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Alarms** and click **All Alarms (summary)** or **All Alarms (details)**.

The Alarms page appears listing the alarms.

2. In the Search constraints field, click the minus sign to toggle between acknowledged and outstanding alarms.
3. (Optional) To remedy an alarm acknowledged by mistake, unacknowledge it.

### Related Documentation

- [Viewing, Configuring, and Searching for Notifications on page 313](#)

## CHAPTER 9

# Discover Devices

- [Device Discovery Overview on page 107](#)
- [Discovering Devices on page 108](#)

### Device Discovery Overview

---

You use device discovery to add devices to Junos Space. *Discovery* is the process of finding a device and then synchronizing the device inventory and configuration with the Junos Space database. To use device discovery, Junos Space must be able to connect to the device.

To discover network devices, Junos Space uses the SSH and SNMP protocols. Device authentication initially is handled through administrator login SSH v2 credentials and SNMP v1/v2c or v3 settings, which are part of the device discovery configuration. You can continue to use credentials for these devices thereafter, or you can create and upload RSA keys to devices to allow Junos Space to authenticate itself to them automatically during later discoveries.

You can specify a single IP address, a DNS hostname, an IP range, or an IP subnet to discover devices on a network. During discovery, Junos Space connects to the physical device and retrieves the running configuration and the status information of the device. To connect with and configure devices, Junos Space uses Juniper Network's Device Management Interface (DMI), which is an extension to the NETCONF network configuration protocol.

When discovery succeeds, Junos Space creates an object in the Junos Space database to represent the physical device and maintains a connection between the object and the physical device so their information is linked.

When configuration changes are made in Junos Space, for example, when you deploy service orders to activate a service on your network devices, the configuration is pushed to the physical device.

If the network is the system of record (NSOR), when configuration changes are made on the physical device (out-of-band CLI commits and change-request updates), Junos Space automatically resynchronizes with the device so that the device inventory information in the Junos Space database matches the current device inventory and configuration information. If Junos Space is the system of record (SSOR), this resynchronization does not occur and the database is unchanged.

The following device inventory and configuration data is captured and stored in relational tables in the Junos Space database:

- Devices—hostname, IP address, credentials
- Physical Inventory—chassis, FPM board, Power Entry Module (PEM), Routing Engine, Control Board (CB), Flexible PIC Concentrator (FPC), CPU, Physical Interface Card (PIC), transceiver (Xcvr), fan tray

Junos Space displays the model number, part number, serial number, and description for each inventory component, when applicable.

- Logical Inventory—subinterfaces, encapsulation (link-level), type, speed, maximum transmission unit (MTU), VLAN ID
- License information:
  - License usage summary—license feature name, feature description, licensed count, used count, given count, needed count
  - Licensed feature information—original time allowed, time remaining
  - License SKU information—start date, end date, and time remaining
- Loopback interface

Other device configuration data is stored in the Junos Space database as binary large objects, and is available only to northbound interface (NBI) users.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Discovering Devices on page 108](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)
- [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)
- [Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network on page 84](#)
- [Device Management Overview on page 31](#)
- [Device Inventory Management Overview on page 36](#)
- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)

---

## Discovering Devices

You use device discovery to automatically discover and synchronize Junos OS devices in Junos Space. Device discovery is a three-step process in which you specify target devices, a probe method (ping or SNMP or both, or none), and, optionally, credentials to connect to each device.



**NOTE:** The values that you enter to specify the targets, probe method, and credentials are persistent from one discovery operation to the next, so you do not have to reenter information that is the same from one operation to the next.



**NOTE:** To perform discovery on a device with dual Routing Engines, always specify the IP address of the current master Routing Engine. When the current master IP address is specified, Junos Space manages the device and the redundancy. If the master Routing Engine fails, the backup Routing Engine takes over and Junos Space manages the transition automatically without bringing down the device.



**NOTE:** When you initiate discovery on a device, Junos Space automatically enables the NETCONF protocol over SSH by pushing the following command to the device:

```
set system services netconf ssh
```

To discover and synchronize devices, complete the following tasks:

1. [Specifying Device Targets on page 109](#)
2. [Specifying Probes on page 111](#)
3. [Specifying Credentials on page 112](#)

## Specifying Device Targets

To specify the device targets that you want Junos Space to discover:

1. Select **Devices > Device Discovery > Discover Targets**.

The Discover Targets dialog box appears.

2. You can add devices using either the **CSV Upload** button or the Add icon, or both together.

Use the **CSV Upload** feature to add devices in bulk. You can add hundreds of devices to Junos Space by using a CSV file that contains information extracted from an LDAP repository.

To view a sample CSV file, click the **CSV Sample** link.

- The **File Download** dialog box appears.
- Click **Open** to view a sample CSV file.



**NOTE:** Steps 4–7 below are optional if you use only the Add icon to add devices. Steps 8–10 below are optional if you use only the CSV Upload button to add devices. Follow steps 4–10 if you use both the CSV Upload button and the Add icon to add devices.

3. Click the **CSV Upload** button to add your own CSV files.



**NOTE:** The format of the CSV file that you are uploading should exactly match the format of the sample CSV file.

A dialog box appears.

4. Click **Browse**.

The CSV File Upload dialog box appears.

5. Navigate to the desired CSV file, select it, and then click **Open**.

The CSV File Upload dialog box reappears, this time displaying the name of the selected file.

6. Click **Upload** to upload the selected CSV file.

7. Click the Add icon to add devices by specifying IP addresses, IP address range, IP subnet, or host name.

The Add Device Target dialog box appears.

8. Choose one of the following options to specify device targets:

- Select the **IP** option button and enter the IP address of the device.
- Select the **IP Range** option button and enter a range of IP addresses for the devices. The maximum number of IP addresses for an IP range target is 1024.
- Select the **IP subnet** option button and enter an IP subnet for the devices.
- Select the **Host name** option button and enter the hostname of the device.

9. Click **Add** to save the target devices that you specified, or click **Add More** to add more device targets. When you have added all device targets that you want Junos Space to discover, click **Add**.

The Discover Targets Dialog box displays the addresses of the configured device targets.

10. Click **Discover** from the Discover Targets dialog box.



**NOTE:** You need to navigate through the Specify Probes and Specify Credentials dialog boxes before you click the Discover button.

In the next task, you specify a probe method to connect to and discover the device targets.

## Specifying Probes

To configure the method Junos Space uses to discover the device targets:

1. Select **Devices > Device Discovery > Specify Probes**.

The Specify Probes dialog box appears.

2. Select a probe method (or SSH) to discover target devices:

- If SNMP is configured for the device, select **Use SNMP**, and clear the check box **Use Ping**.

Junos Space uses the SNMP GET command to discover target devices.

- If SNMP is not configured for the device, select the check box **Use Ping**, and clear the check box **Use SNMP**.

Junos Space uses the Juniper Networks Device Management Interface (DMI) to directly connect to and discover devices. DMI is an extension to the NETCONF network management protocol.

- When both the Use Ping and Use SNMP check boxes are selected (the default), Junos Space can discover the target device more quickly, if the device is pingable and SNMP is enabled on the device.

3. Click the Add icon (+).

An Add SNMP Settings dialog box appears.

4. If you select SNMP V1/V2C, specify a community string, which can be **public**, **private**, or a predefined string.

Figure 28 on page 111 shows the Add SNMP Settings dialog box when you select **SNMP V3**.

Figure 28: SNMP Settings

The image shows a dialog box titled "Add SNMP Settings". At the top, there are two radio buttons: "SNMP V1/V2C" (which is unselected) and "SNMP V3" (which is selected). Below the radio buttons, there are five input fields: "Username:" (a text box), "Privacy type:" (a dropdown menu showing "Please select ..."), "Privacy password:" (a text box), "Authentication type:" (a dropdown menu showing "Please select ..."), and "Authentication password:" (a text box). At the bottom of the dialog box, there are three buttons: "Add" (blue), "Add More" (blue), and "Cancel" (red).

If you make this selection, complete the following settings:

- Enter the username.
- Select the privacy type (**AES 128**, **DES**, or **none**).
- Enter the privacy password (if AES 128 or DES). If you specify **none** for the privacy type, the privacy function is disabled.
- Select the authentication type (**MD5**, **SHA**, or **none**).
- Enter the authentication password (if MD5 or SHA). If you specify **none** for the authentication type, the authentication function is disabled.

Click **Add** to save the SNMP settings, or click **Add More** to add additional configurations. After using **Add More**, click **Add** to save the settings and close the dialog box.

The Specify Probes dialog box displays the configured SNMP settings.

5. Click **Discover** in the Specify Probes dialog box.

## Specifying Credentials

Optionally, specify an administrator name and password to establish the SSH connection for each target device that you configured. If you are using key-based authentication, you do not need to do this step.

1. Select **Devices > Device Discovery > Specify Credentials**.

The Specify Credentials dialog box appears.

2. Click the Add icon.

The Add Device Login Credential dialog box appears.

3. Specify the administrator username and password, and confirm the password. The name and password must match the name and password configured on the device.

Save the user name and password that you specified by selecting **Add** or **Add More** to add another username and password. If you use Add More, select **Add** after you have finished adding all login credentials.

The Credential dialog box displays the administrator user names that you configured.

4. Schedule the device discovery operation:
  - Clear the **Schedule at a later time** check box (the default) to initiate the discovery operation when you complete Step 7 in this procedure.
  - Select the **Schedule at a later time** check box to specify a later start date and time for the discovery operation.



**NOTE:** The selected time in the scheduler corresponds to Junos Space server time but is mapped to the local time zone of the client computer.

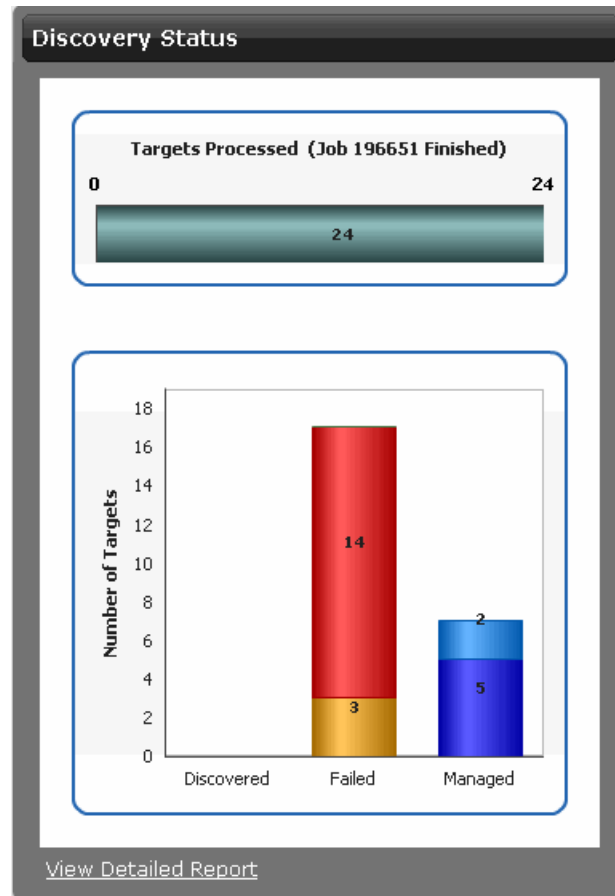
---

5. Select **Discover** to start the discovery job.



The Discovery Status report appears, as shown in [Figure 29 on page 113](#). It shows the progress of discovery in real time. Click a bar in the chart to view information about the devices currently managed or discovered, or for which discovery failed.

**Figure 29: Device Discovery**



6. To view device discovery details, select **View Detailed Report**.

The report displays the IP address, hostname, and discovery status for discovered devices.



**NOTE:** If the discovery operation fails, the Description column in the Detailed Report table indicates the cause of failure.

You can also view the device discovery job in the Jobs workspace.

To view device discovery from the Jobs workspace:

1. Select **Jobs > Job Management**.  
The Job Management inventory page appears.
2. Enter **Discover Network Elements** in the search box to view device discovery jobs.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Viewing Scheduled Jobs on page 376](#)
- [Resynchronizing Managed Devices With the Network on page 84](#)
- [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)
- [Viewing Physical Inventory on page 69](#)
- [Viewing Physical Interfaces on page 72](#)
- [Viewing and Exporting License Inventory on page 75](#)
- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)
- [Key-based Authentication Overview on page 99](#)

## CHAPTER 10

# Add Deployed Devices

- [Adding Deployed Devices on page 115](#)
- [Add Deployed Devices Wizard Overview on page 117](#)
- [Managing Deployed Devices on page 118](#)
- [Adding SRX Series Devices Overview on page 119](#)
- [Adding Devices on page 121](#)
- [Deploying Device Instances on page 125](#)

## Adding Deployed Devices

---

To create a Task Instance:

1. Select **Devices > Deployed Devices > Add Devices**.
2. In the Name box, enter a name for the new Task Instance.
3. In the Description box, enter a description for the new Task Instance.
4. You can add a new Task Instance either by importing a CSV file or manually.

To add a new Task Instance by importing a CSV file:

- a. Select the **Import to CSV** option button.
- b. Select the **View Sample CSV** link in the Import section to see a sample of the CSV file that should be uploaded.
- c. Save the sample CSV file to your storage location.
- d. Make necessary changes in this CSV file and rename it with an appropriate name.



**NOTE:** Do not add or delete any columns in the CSV file. You cannot upload the CSV file successfully if you add or delete any columns.

- e. Select the **Select a CSV To Upload** link in the Import section.

The **Select CSV File** dialog box appears.

- f. Click **Browse** and upload the CSV file from your storage location.

- g. If the CSV file is successfully uploaded, a Green mark appears next to the Select a CSV To Upload link.

The Upload dialog box appears.

- h. Click **OK**.

To add a new Task Instance manually:

- a. Select the **Add Manually** option button.
- b. Enter the following details in the Device Details section:
  - From the Platform list, select an appropriate platform.
  - From the OS Version list, select an appropriate OS version.
  - In the Number of devices box, enter the number of devices with the same platform and OS version.





**NOTE:** If you add multiple devices, a unique numerical identifier is appended at the end of each device name.

- c. In the Authentication Details section:
  - In the Username box, choose an appropriate user name.
  - In the Password box, enter a password.
  - In the Re-enter Password box, reenter the password.

5. Click **Next**.

6. This wizard page displays rows that make up the configured Task Instance. Select a row or rows and use the icons described in [Table 23 on page 116](#) to view or download management CLI commands.

**Table 23: Icons to View or Download Management CLI Commands**

Icon	Description
	View the management CLI commands.
	Download the management CLI commands.

7. Click **Finish**.

The new Task Instance you have added appears in the Add Deployed Devices inventory page. A new job is created and the job ID appears in the Job Information dialog box.

8. Click the job ID to view more information about the job created.

This action directs you to the Job Management workspace.

- Related Documentation**
- [Add Deployed Devices Wizard Overview on page 117](#)
  - [Managing Deployed Devices on page 118](#)
  - [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)

---

## Add Deployed Devices Wizard Overview

Network devices deployed on the network can be easily managed by Junos Space using the Discover Devices task. However, for security devices, SSH and ping are disabled on the device interface for any incoming traffic. Hence, security devices cannot communicate with Junos Space. In such instances, you can use the Add Deployed Devices Wizard to enable communication between security devices and Junos Space. The Add Deployed Devices Wizard creates a Task Instance that you can use to obtain management CLI commands related to these devices. These CLI commands can be pasted on the device console, enabling the device to connect to Junos Space for further management.

You can create Task Instances either manually or by uploading a comma-separated values (CSV) file. You need to specify the following details to create a Task Instance:

- Device name
- Device platform
- OS version
- Device count
- Authentication details

You can store the management CLI commands obtained from a Task Instance and paste it on the device console or on a command-line session on the device.



### NOTE:

If you are using Internet Explorer to download the management CLI commands, you must customize the browser settings to download them. Perform the following steps to customize the Internet Explorer settings:

1. Open Internet Explorer and select **Tools > Internet Options**.
  2. Click the **Security** tab and select the **Custom Level** tab.
  3. In the Automatic prompting for file downloads section, click the **Enable** option button.
- 

- Related Documentation**
- [Adding Deployed Devices on page 115](#)
  - [Managing Deployed Devices on page 118](#)
  - [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)

## Managing Deployed Devices

---

Task Instances are listed in the Add Deployed Devices inventory page. You can view or download the management CLI commands associated with Task Instances. You can also view the device instance status or delete Task Instances.

This topic describes the following tasks related to Task Instances and management CLI commands:

- [Viewing the Details of a Task Instance on page 118](#)
- [Viewing the Device Status on page 118](#)
- [Deleting a Task Instance on page 119](#)
- [Downloading Management CLI Commands on page 119](#)

### Viewing the Details of a Task Instance

To view the details of a Task Instance:

1. From the task tree, select the **Devices** workspace.  
Graphical summaries about the devices in the network appear.
2. Expand the **Devices** workspace by clicking the expansion symbol to the left of its name.  
Tasks related to managing devices are displayed in the expanded portion of the tree.
3. Select **Deployed Devices**.  
The Deployed Devices inventory page appears.
4. Double-click the row for the Task Instance whose details you intend to view.  
The details of the Task Instance are displayed in the Add Instance Details dialog box.
5. Click **Close** to close the Add Instance Details dialog box.

### Viewing the Device Status

To view the device status:

1. Select **Devices > Deployed Devices**.  
The Deployed Devices inventory page appears.
2. Select the Task Instance for which you intend to view the device status, and click **View Device Status** from the Actions dropdown.  
A new dialog box displays the connection status and managed status of the devices.
3. Click **Back** on the top-left corner to return to the inventory page.

## Deleting a Task Instance

To delete a Task Instance you have created:

1. Select **Devices > Deployed Devices**.

The Deployed Devices inventory page appears.

2. Select the Task Instance you intend to delete and click the **Delete** link from the Actions dropdown.

The Delete Instance dialog box appears.

3. Select the Task Instance you want to delete and click **Delete**.

## Downloading Management CLI Commands

To download management CLI commands from the Task Instance you have created:

1. From the task tree, select **Devices > Deployed Devices**.

The Deployed Devices inventory page appears.

2. Select the Task Instance containing the management CLI commands you intend to download and click the **Download Management CLIs** link from the Actions dropdown.

The Download Management CLIs dialog box appears.

3. Click the **Download Management CLIs** link.
4. Save the .zip file in your local host.

### Related Documentation

- [Add Deployed Devices Wizard Overview on page 117](#)
- [Adding Deployed Devices on page 115](#)
- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)

---

## Adding SRX Series Devices Overview

You can use the Add Device wizard to create deployment instances that are used to deploy SRX Series devices. You can create deployment instances either manually or by uploading a comma-separated values (CSV) file. A deployment instance contains the configlets used to deploy branch SRX Series devices that are currently using the factory default settings.

A configlet is a small subset of a configuration used by a device to obtain an IP address and connect back to the management station for further management. A configlet contains information about the device series, device platform, OS version, and the connection details used to bootstrap the device. It can be used to deploy devices from an external storage device such as a USB stick.

You need to specify the following details to create a configlet:

- Device name
- Device series
- Device platform
- OS version
- Device count
- Connectivity type
- Interface
- Connection profile
- Encryption password

You can store this configlet in an external USB storage device and plug it into the SRX Series device to start it. The device count and encryption option determine the subsequent steps in starting the SRX Series device using the configlet.

The following parameters determine the steps in booting the SRX Series device using the configlet:

- Plain text configlet

If you save the configlet as a plain text file, the device will not prompt you to enter a password during the startup process.

- Encrypted configlet using AES encryption with a custom key

If you encrypt the configlet with a custom key, the device will prompt you to enter a password. You are required to enter the 16-character password specified during the creation of the configlet. You can also save a text file named `key.txt` in the USB storage device that you are using to start the device. This file contains the password; the device will automatically use the password specified in this file.

- Device count value is 1

If you create an individual configlet for each device with a Device Count column value of 1, the configlet contains the hostname. The device does not prompt you to enter the hostname during startup.

- Device count value greater than 1

You can start devices with similar network connection parameters (for example, obtaining IP address through DHCP) using an individual configlet. This is done by specifying the number of devices that can be started with the same configlet in the Device Count column. If you create such a configlet, the device prompts for a hostname during startup. You are required to enter a unique hostname for each of the devices that are used to startup using this configlet. You can also save a text file named `hostname.txt` in the USB storage device which you are using to start the device. This file contains the hostnames for all devices that are started using the configlet.





**NOTE:** By default, the configlet that you download is named Configlets.zip. This zip file is unzipped to obtain the configlet files. You should not rename the configlet files. Renaming the configlet files may not complete the device startup process.



**NOTE:** If you are using Internet Explorer to download the configlets, you need to customize the browser settings to download them. Perform the following steps:

1. Open Internet Explorer and navigate to Tools > Internet Options.
2. Click the Security tab and select the Custom Level tab.
3. In the Automatic prompting for file downloads section, click the Enable option button.

#### Related Documentation

- [Adding Devices on page 121](#)
- [Deploying Device Instances on page 125](#)
- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)

## Adding Devices

This topic includes the following procedures:

- [Creating a Deployment Instance on page 121](#)
- [Adding a Deployment Instance by Importing a CSV File on page 122](#)
- [Adding a Deployment Instance Manually on page 123](#)
- [Working with Rows and Columns on page 123](#)
- [Working with Configlets on page 125](#)

### Creating a Deployment Instance

To create a new deployment instance:

1. From the task tree, select the **Devices** workspace.  
Graphical summaries about the devices in the network appear.
2. Expand the **Devices** workspace by clicking the expansion symbol to the left of its name.  
Tasks related to managing devices are displayed in the expanded portion of the tree.
3. Expand the **Add Deployed Devices** workspace by clicking the expansion symbol to the left of its name.  
The Add Deployed Devices inventory page appears.
4. From the task tree, select **Add Devices**.

The Add Devices dialog box appears.

5. In the Name box, enter a name for the new deployment instance.
6. In the Description box, enter a description for the new deployment instance.
7. Add a new deployment instance either by importing or manually adding a CSV file. See [“Adding a Deployment Instance by Importing a CSV File” on page 122](#) or [“Adding a Deployment Instance Manually” on page 123](#).
8. Click **Next**.

The Add Devices dialog box appears, displaying a table of settings for the deployment instance that you have added manually or uploaded using a CSV file. Each record in the table can be used to create a configlet.

9. Implement the configlet. See [“Working with Rows and Columns” on page 123](#) and [“Working with Configlets” on page 125](#).
10. Click **Finish**.

The new deployment instance you have added appears in the Device Details inventory page. A new job is created and the job ID appears in the Job Information dialog box.

11. Click the job ID to view more information about the job created.

This action directs you to the Job Management workspace.



**NOTE:** When you have a large number of devices, we recommend you wait for the Job to complete before downloading the configlets.

---

## Adding a Deployment Instance by Importing a CSV File

To add a new deployment instance by importing a CSV file:

1. Select the **Import to CSV** option button.
2. Select the **View Sample CSV** link in the Import section to view a sample of a CSV file.
3. Save the sample CSV file to your storage location.
4. Make necessary changes in this CSV file and rename it with an appropriate name.



**NOTE:** Do not add or delete any columns in the CSV file. You cannot upload the CSV file successfully if you add or delete any columns.

---

5. Select the **Select a CSV To Upload** link in the Import section.
6. The Select CSV File dialog box appears.
7. Click **Browse** and upload the CSV file from your storage location.

If the CSV file is successfully uploaded, a Green mark appears next to the Select a CSV To Upload link.

The Upload dialog box appears.

8. Click **OK**.

## Adding a Deployment Instance Manually

To add a new deployment instance manually:

1. Select the **Add Manually** option button.
2. Enter the following details in the Device Details section:
  - From the Platform list, select an appropriate platform.
  - From the OS Version list, select an appropriate OS version.
  - In the Number of devices box, enter the number of devices with the same connection details.

These devices will use a common connection profile.

3. Enter the following details in the Connectivity Details section:
  - Specify an Interface Type: Ethernet or ADSL.
  - The Interface box displays the default interface in the untrust zone, depending on the connection type chosen. Make changes to this field if necessary.
  - Select an appropriate IP assignment type.
  - Select an appropriate connection profile.

## Working with Rows and Columns

The Rapid Deployment dialog box displays a table of settings for the deployment instance that you have added manually or uploaded using a CSV file. Each record in the table can be used to create a configlet.

You can clone, delete, sort the rows, and hide the columns in the Rapid Deployment dialog box.

[Table 24 on page 124](#) describes the icons used to perform these tasks.

Table 24: Icons in the Rapid Deployment dialog box





Icon	Description
	<p>View the details of a configlet.</p> <p>To view a configlet:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the check box to the left of the row corresponding to the configlet you want to view.</li> <li>2. Click the View Configlet icon.</li> </ol>
	<p>Clone a row from the deployment instance table.</p> <p>To clone rows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the check boxes to the left of the rows you want to clone.</li> <li>2. Specify the number of clones in the <b>Clone Times</b> field.</li> <li>3. Click the Clone icon.</li> </ol> <p>The new rows appear at the end of the table.</p>
	<p>Delete a row from the deployment instance table.</p> <p>To delete rows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select check boxes to the left of the rows you want to delete.</li> <li>2. Click the Delete icon</li> </ol>
	<p>Download configlets.</p> <p>To download the configlets:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the check boxes to the left of the rows corresponding to the configlets you want to download.</li> <li>2. Click the Download Configlet icon.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If you are using Internet Explorer to download the configlets, you need to customize the browser settings to be able to download them. Perform the following steps to customize the Internet Explorer settings:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open Internet Explorer and navigate to <b>Tools &gt; Internet Options</b>.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Security</b> tab and select the <b>Custom Level</b> tab.</li> <li>3. In the Automatic prompting for file downloads section, click the <b>Enable</b> option button.</li> </ol>

Table 25 on page 124 lists the fields that you need to add manually.

Table 25: Fields Manually Entered in the Rapid Deployment Dialog Box

Field	Description
Device Count	Specify the number of devices that can be deployed using this configlet.
Interface IP	Specify the IP address of the interface.

Table 25: Fields Manually Entered in the Rapid Deployment Dialog Box (*continued*)

Field	Description
Gateway	Specify the IP address of the gateway.

## Working with Configlets

You can use the procedures in this section to package the configlet.

To encrypt the configlet:

1. Select the type of encryption you want to use in the Encryption section: AES or Plain Text.
2. Enter a password with 16 characters in the corresponding field.



**NOTE:** You will need to provide this password when you deploy devices using this configlet.

To save the configlet to a disk drive:

- Click the **Click Here** link next to the field in the Save section.

To save the configlet to an FTP location:

1. Select the option button corresponding to the file transfer method you want to use.
2. Enter the user ID, password, server address and folder details in the appropriate fields.

### Related Documentation

- [Adding SRX Series Devices Overview on page 119](#)
- [Deploying Device Instances on page 125](#)
- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)

## Deploying Device Instances

You can view, delete and search for specific deployment instances listed in the Deploy Devices inventory page. You can also download configlets from a specific deployment instance.

You can perform the following tasks on the deployment instances and configlets:

1. [Viewing the Details of a Deployment Instance on page 126](#)
2. [Viewing the Device Status on page 126](#)
3. [Deleting a Deployment Instance on page 126](#)
4. [Downloading Configlets on page 126](#)
5. [Searching for a Deployment Instance on page 127](#)

## Viewing the Details of a Deployment Instance

To view the details of a deployment instance:

1. From the task tree, select **Devices > Deployed Devices**.  
The Deploy Devices inventory page appears.
2. Double-click the icon for the deployment instance whose details you intend to view.  
The Deployment Instance Details report appears.
3. Click **Close**.

## Viewing the Device Status

To view the device status:

1. From the task tree, select **Devices > Deploy Devices**.  
The Deploy Devices inventory page appears.
2. Select the deployment instance you intend to view the device status for and click the **View Device Status** link from the Actions menu in the left corner of the inventory page.  
A dialog box displays the connection status of the devices.
3. Click **Back** on the left corner of this dialog box to return to the inventory page.

## Deleting a Deployment Instance

To delete a deployment instance you have created:

1. From the task tree, select the **Devices > Deploy Devices**.  
The Deploy Devices inventory page appears.
2. Select the deployment instance you intend to delete and click the **Delete** link from the Actions menu in the left corner of the inventory page.  
The Delete Deployment Instance dialog box appears.
3. Select the deployment instance you want to delete and click **Delete**.

## Downloading Configlets

To download the configlet you have created:

1. From the task tree, select **Devices > Deploy Devices**.  
The Deploy Devices inventory page appears.
2. Select the deployment instance containing the configlet you intend to download and click the **Download Configlets** link from the Actions menu in the left corner of the inventory page.  
The Download Configlets dialog box appears.

3. Select the **Download XML based Configlets** link in the Download Configlets dialog box.
4. Save the .zip file in your storage location.



**NOTE:** You can also download the configlets when you are creating a deployment instance. However, for a large number of devices we recommended downloading the configlets from the inventory page. See [“Adding Devices” on page 121](#).



**NOTE:** You cannot download the configlets associated with a deployment instance if a job related to that deployment instance is in progress. The Download Configlets action is disabled until the job is completed.

## Searching for a Deployment Instance

To search for a deployment instance you have created:

1. From the task tree, select **Devices > Deploy Devices**.  
The Deploy Devices inventory page appears.
2. In the Search box, enter the name of the deployment instance you want to search.
3. Click the magnifying glass icon next to the Search box.

The Deploy Devices inventory page is populated with the deployment instances matching your search criterion.

### Related Documentation

- [Adding SRX Series Devices Overview on page 119](#)
- [Adding Devices on page 121](#)





# Add Unmanaged Devices

- [Adding Unmanaged Devices on page 129](#)

## Adding Unmanaged Devices

---

In the Junos Space context, unmanaged devices are those made by vendors other than Juniper Networks, Inc. You can add such devices to Junos Space manually, or by importing multiple devices at once from a CSV file. You need to provide the IP address or the host name of the non-Juniper devices, the vendor names, and optionally their SNMP credentials. If Junos Space can communicate with the device using SNMP, the information gathered via SNMP overrides the information that you enter.

Creating an unmanaged device from a vendor other than Juniper Networks also creates a tag for that vendor (for example, CISCO) and assigns that tag to the device.

To add a non-Juniper device to Junos Space manually:

1. Select **Devices > Add Unmanaged Devices**.  
The Add Unmanaged Devices page appears.
2. Select the **Add Manually** radio button.  
The Device Details area appears.
3. Select **Host Name** or **IP Address**.  
The first box changes to represent your selection. Enter the appropriate name or address value for the device.
4. (Optional) In the **Vendor** box, enter the name of the device's vendor.  
The maximum length is 256 characters. Spaces are acceptable.
5. Select the **SNMP** box if you want to use SNMP to gather device information.  
If you do so, the SNMP Settings area appears.
6. Use the radio buttons to select either SNMP V1/V2C or SNMP V3.
  - If you select SNMP V1/V2C, the Community box appears. Enter the appropriate SNMP community string (password) to give access to the device.
  - If you select SNMP V3, several boxes appear, as described in [Table 26 on page 130](#). Enter values as appropriate.

Table 26: SNMP V3 Configuration Parameters

Name	Value
Username	The username previously configured on the device.
Authentication type	The algorithm used for authentication: MD5, SHA1, or None. MD5 or SHA1 is used to create a hash of the authentication password. Note that only this password is encrypted, not any other packets transmitted.
Authentication password	The password that authenticates Junos Space to the device to gain access to it. The password must have at least eight characters and can include alphanumeric and special characters, but not control characters.
Privacy type	The encryption algorithm: AES128, DES, or None, used to encrypt transmitted packets.
Privacy password	The password that allows reading the transmissions themselves. The password must have at least eight characters.

7. Press **Finish** to complete the addition of this device.

To add a non-Juniper device or multiple devices to Junos Space using a CSV file:

1. Navigate to **Devices > Add Unmanaged Devices**.

The Add Unmanaged Devices page appears.

2. Select the **Import from CSV** radio button.

The **Import** area appears, displaying the following links:

- View Sample CSV
- Select a CSV file to Upload.

Clicking **View Sample CSV** displays a CSV file with the format shown in [Table 27 on page 130](#).

Table 27: Sample CSV for Importing Unmanaged Devices

Column Heading	Sample Data	Field Constraints
Host Name or IP Address	Sunnyvale_R1	Name: Limit of 256 characters, no spaces. IP address: Dotted decimal notation.
Vendor	Cisco Systems	Alphabetic characters only
SNMP Version	SNMPV3	SNMPv3, or SNMPv1 or v2C
Community	N/A (for SNMP V3)	Community string (authentication password) for V2; otherwise, N/A
Username	admin	
Authentication Type	MD5	MD5, SHA1, or N/A

Table 27: Sample CSV for Importing Unmanaged Devices (*continued*)

Column Heading	Sample Data	Field Constraints
Authentication Password	admin123	Must have at least eight characters and can include alphanumeric and special characters, but not control characters
Privacy Type	DES	DES, AES128, or N/A
Privacy Password	admin123	Must have at least eight characters and can include alphanumeric and special characters, but not control characters. Can be same as authentication password, or different.

3. Once you have a complete CSV file, select **Select a CSV file to Upload**.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Device Management Overview on page 31](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)



# Secure Console

- [Configuring SRX Device Clusters in Junos Space on page 133](#)

## Configuring SRX Device Clusters in Junos Space

---

You can create a cluster of two SRX-series devices that are combined to act as a single system, or create a single-device cluster and then add a second device to the cluster later. You can also configure a standalone device from an existing cluster device.



**NOTE:** You can discover and manage SRX device clusters in Junos Space.

This topic includes the following tasks:

- [Configuring a Standalone Device from a Single-node Cluster on page 133](#)
- [Configuring a Standalone Device from a Two-Node Cluster on page 135](#)
- [Configuring a Primary Peer in a Cluster from a Standalone Device on page 136](#)
- [Configuring a Secondary Peer in a Cluster from a Standalone Device on page 137](#)

## Configuring a Standalone Device from a Single-node Cluster

You can configure a standalone device from device that is currently configured as a single-node cluster.

To configure a single-node cluster as a standalone device:

1. Select **Devices > Secure Console**.

The Secure Console dialog box appears.

2. Specify the IP address of the single-node cluster device.



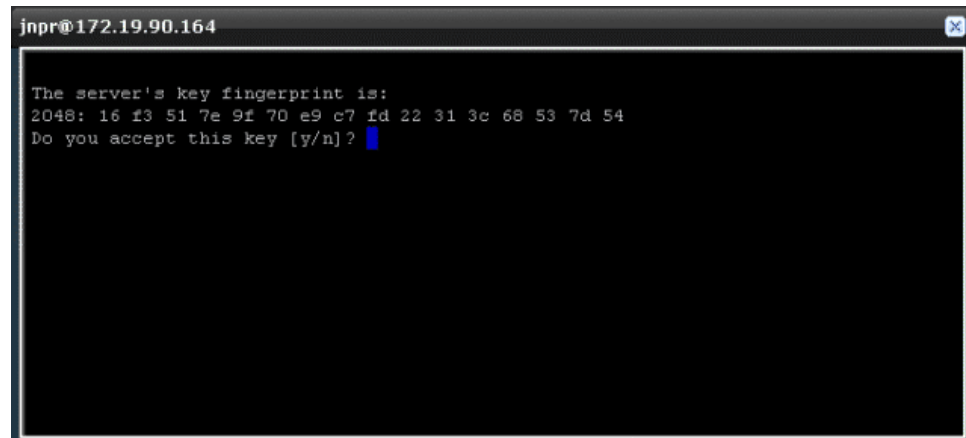
**NOTE:** A device in a single-node cluster is always the primary member.

3. To establish an SSH connection for the device, specify the administrator user name and password. The name and password must match the name and password configured on the device.

4. Click **Connect**.

The device key fingerprint window appears, as shown in the following example.

**Figure 30: Validating the Server Key Fingerprint**



5. Verify that the fingerprint is for the device you want to connect to, then type **y** and press Enter to validate the Server's key fingerprint.

A terminal window opens in a non-modal popup with an SSH connection opened on the selected device.

6. Enter the set chassis command to remove the cluster configuration:

```
set chassis cluster cluster-id 0 node 0
```

7. Reboot the device, by entering the command:

```
request system reboot
```

8. Copy the outbound-ssh configuration from group node to system level, for example:

```
set system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A device-id 6CFF68
set system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A secret
"$9$-zbgoDikf5zDjuOIISyW8Xxbs"
set system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A services netconf
set system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A 10.155.70.252 port 7804
```

9. Copy the syslog configuration from group node to system level:

```
set system syslog file default-log-messages any any
set system syslog file default-log-messages structured-data
```

10. Copy the fxp0 interface setting from group node to system level, for example:

```
set interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.155.70.223/19
```

11. Delete the outbound-ssh configuration from the group node, for example:

```
delete groups node0 system services outbound-ssh
```

12. Delete the syslog configuration from the group node, for example:

```
delete groups node0 system syslog file default-log-messages any any
delete groups node0 system syslog file default-log-messages structured-data
```

13. Delete the interfaces configuration from the group node, for example:

```
delete groups node0 interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.155.70.223/19
```

14. Commit the configuration changes on the device:

```
commit
```

In the Junos Space user interface, the device connection status will go down and then up again. After the device connection is back up, you can verify that the device you configured displays as a standalone device.

15. To terminate the SSH session, type **exit** from the terminal window prompt, and press Enter.
16. Click in the top right corner of the terminal window to close the window.

## Configuring a Standalone Device from a Two-Node Cluster

You can configure a standalone device from the secondary peer device in a cluster.



**NOTE:** You cannot use the primary peer in a two-node cluster to configure a standalone device.

To configure a secondary peer device in a cluster as a standalone device:

1. Select **Devices > Secure Console**.

The Secure Console dialog box appears.

2. Specify the IP address of the secondary peer device.
3. To establish an SSH connection for the device, specify the administrator user name and password. The name and password must match the name and password configured on the device.
4. Click **Connect**.

The device key fingerprint window appears, as shown in the following example.

5. Verify that the fingerprint is for the device you want to connect to, then type **y** and press Enter to validate the Server's key fingerprint.

A terminal window opens in a non-modal popup with an SSH connection opened on the selected device.

6. Disconnect the HA cable from the device that you want to configure as a standalone device.
7. Enter the set chassis command for the peer device, for example:

```
set chassis cluster cluster-id 0 node 1
```

8. Reboot the device, by entering the command:

```
request system reboot
```

9. Copy the outbound-ssh configuration from group level to system level, for example:

```
set system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A device-id 6CFF68
set system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A secret
"$9$-zbgoDikf5zDjuO1ISyW8Xxbs"
set system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A services netconf
set system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A 10.155.70.252 port 7804
```

10. Copy the syslog configuration from group level to system level:

```
set system syslog file default-log-messages any any
```

**set system syslog file default-log-messages structured-data**

11. Copy the fxp0 interface setting from group level to system level, for example:

**set interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.155.70.223/19**

12. Delete the outbound-ssh configuration from the group level, for example:

**delete groups node1 system services outbound-ssh**

13. Delete the syslog configuration from the group level, for example:

**delete groups node1 system syslog file default-log-messages any any  
delete groups node1 system syslog file default-log-messages structured-data**

14. Delete the interfaces configuration from the group level, for example:

**delete groups node1 interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.155.70.223/19**

15. Commit the configuration changes on the device:

**commit**

In the Junos Space user interface, the device connection status will go down and then up again. After the device connection is back up, you can verify that the device you configured displays as a standalone device.

After the device connections are up, verify the following changes in the Manage Devices inventory landing page:

- The device you configured now displays as a standalone device.
  - The cluster that formerly included a primary and secondary peer device now displays the primary peer device only.
16. To terminate the SSH session, type **exit** from the terminal window prompt, and press Enter.
  17. Click in the top right corner of the terminal window to close the window.

## Configuring a Primary Peer in a Cluster from a Standalone Device

You can create a device cluster from two standalone devices. Use the following procedure to configure a standalone device as the primary peer in a cluster.

To configure a primary peer in a cluster from a standalone device:

1. Select **Devices > Secure Console**.

The Secure Console dialog box appears.

2. Specify the IP address of the standalone device that you want to configure as the primary peer in the cluster.
3. To establish an SSH connection for the device, specify the administrator user name and password. The name and password must match the name and password configured on the device.
4. Click **Connect**.

The device key fingerprint window appears.

5. Verify that the fingerprint is for the device you want to connect to, and type **y** and press Enter to validate the Server's key fingerprint.



A terminal window opens in a non-modal popup with an SSH connection opened on the selected device.

6. For the standalone device, enter the command:

```
set chassis cluster cluster-id 1 node 0
```

7. Reboot the device, by entering the command:

```
request system reboot
```

8. Copy the outbound-ssh configuration from the system level to the group level, for example:

```
set groups node0 system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A device-id 6CFF68  
set groups node0 system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A secret  
"$9$-zbgoDikf5zDjuO1ISyW8Xxbs"  
set groups node0 system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A services netconf  
set groups node0 system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A 10.155.70.252 port  
7804
```

9. Copy the fxp0 interface configuration from the system level to the group level, for example:

```
set groups node0 interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.155.70.223/19
```

10. Copy the syslog configuration from system level to group level:

```
set groups node0 system syslog file default-log-messages any any  
set groups node0 system syslog file default-log-messages structured-data
```

11. Delete the outbound-ssh configuration from the system level, for example:

```
delete system services outbound-ssh
```

12. Delete the syslog configuration from the system level, for example:

```
delete system syslog file default-log-messages any any  
delete system syslog file default-log-messages structured-data
```

13. Delete the interfaces configuration from the system level, for example:

```
delete interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.155.70.223/19
```

14. Commit the configuration changes on the device again:

```
commit
```

After the device connection is up, verify the following changes:

- In the Manage Devices inventory landing page:
    - The cluster icon appears for the device.
    - The new cluster device appears as the primary device.
  - In the physical inventory landing page, Junos Space displays chassis information for the primary device cluster.
15. To terminate the SSH session, type **exit** from the terminal window prompt, and press Enter.
  16. Click in the top right corner of the terminal window to close the window.

## Configuring a Secondary Peer in a Cluster from a Standalone Device

If a device cluster contains only a primary peer, you can configure a standalone device to function as a secondary peer in the cluster. Use the following procedure to ensure that Junos Space is able to manage both devices.

To add a standalone device to a cluster:

1. Select **Devices > Secure Console**.

The Secure Console dialog box appears.

2. Specify the IP address of the standalone device that you want to configure as a secondary peer in a cluster.
3. To establish an SSH connection for the device, specify the administrator user name and password. The name and password must match the name and password configured on the device.

4. Click **Connect**.

The device key fingerprint window appears.

5. Verify that the fingerprint is for the device you want to connect to, and type **y** and press Enter to validate the Server's key fingerprint.

A terminal window opens in a non-modal popup with an SSH connection opened on the selected device.

From the terminal window prompt, you can enter CLI commands to create a standalone device from the device cluster.

6. For the standalone device, enter the command:

```
set chassis cluster cluster-id 1 node 1
```

7. Enter the command:

```
request system reboot
```

8. Copy the outbound-ssh configuration from the system level to the group level, for example:

```
set groups node1 system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A device-id 6CFF68
set groups node1 system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A secret
"$9$-zbgoDikf5zDjuO1ISyW8Xxbs"
set groups node1 system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A services netconf
set groups node1 system services outbound-ssh client 00089BBC494A 10.155.70.252 port
7804
```

9. Copy the fxp0 interface configuration from the system level to the group level, for example:

```
set groups node1 interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.155.70.223/19
```

10. Copy the syslog configuration from system level to group level:

```
set groups node1 system syslog file default-log-messages any any
set groups node1 system syslog file default-log-messages structured-data
```

11. Delete the outbound-ssh configuration from the system level, for example:

```
delete system services outbound-ssh
```

12. Delete the syslog configuration from the system level, for example:

```
delete system syslog file default-log-messages any any
delete system syslog file default-log-messages structured-data
```

13. Delete the interfaces configuration from the system level, for example:

```
delete interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.155.70.223/19
```

14. Commit the configuration changes on the device again:

**commit**

15. Connect the HA cable to each device in the cluster.
16. Establish an SSH connection to the primary device in the cluster.
17. On the primary device, make some trivial change to the device, for example, add a description, and commit the change:

**commit**

After the device connections are up for both devices in the cluster, verify the following changes:

- In the Manage Devices inventory landing page:
    - Each peer device displays the other cluster member.
    - The cluster icon appears for each member device.
    - One device appears as the primary device and the other as the secondary device in the cluster.
  - In the physical inventory landing page, chassis information appears for each peer device in the cluster.
18. To terminate the SSH sessions, type **exit** from the terminal window prompt, and press Enter.
  19. Click in the top right corner of the terminal window to close the window.



# Manage Device Adapter

- [Worldwide Junos OS Adapter Overview on page 141](#)
- [Installing the Worldwide Junos OS Adapter on page 142](#)

## Worldwide Junos OS Adapter Overview

---

The Junos Space wwadapter enables you to manage devices running the worldwide version of Junos OS (ww Junos OS devices) through Junos Space.

ww Junos OS devices use Telnet instead of Secure Shell (SSH2) to communicate with other network elements. Junos Space uses the failover approach when identifying a ww Junos OS device. It first tries to initiate a connection to the device using SSH2. If it cannot connect to the device, Junos Space identifies the device as a ww Junos OS device. Since Junos Space does not support Telnet, it uses an adapter to communicate with ww Junos OS devices. Junos Space connects to the adapter using SSH2 and the adapter starts a Telnet session with the device.

Before you install the wwadapter, complete the following prerequisites:

- Download the adapter image from the local client workstation.
- Ensure that the Junos Space servers have been deployed and are able to access devices.
- Configure Junos Space to initiate connections with the device.



**NOTE:** Ensure that you allow at least three Telnet connections between the ww Junos OS device and the Junos Space server. Junos Space needs a minimum of three Telnet connections with the device in order to be able to manage it.



**NOTE:** For ww Junos OS devices, the Junos Space Service Now application works only on AI-Scripts version 2.5R1 and later.

The Secure Console workspace and the option in the right-click context menu in the Manage Devices workspace are disabled for ww Junos OS devices.

For more information, see [“Installing the Worldwide Junos OS Adapter” on page 142](#).

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Installing the Worldwide Junos OS Adapter on page 142](#)

## Installing the Worldwide Junos OS Adapter

This section shows you how to install and use the wwadapter to manage devices running on the worldwide version of Junos OS (ww Junos OS devices).

This section includes the following tasks:

- [Installing the wwadapter Image on page 142](#)
- [Connecting to ww Junos OS Devices on page 143](#)

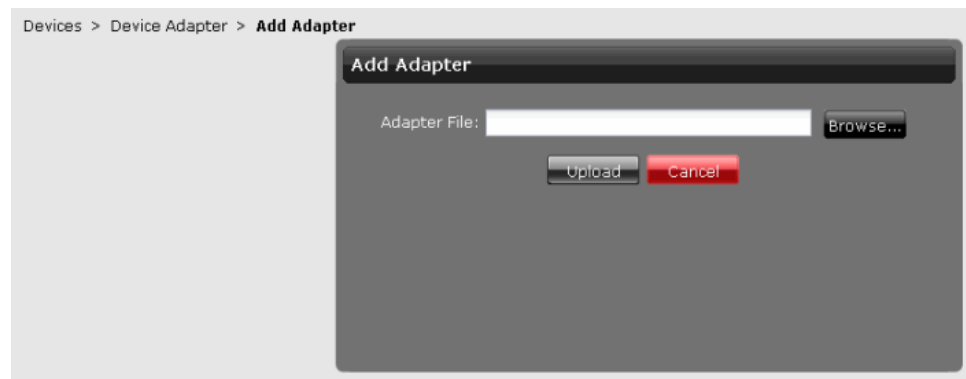
### Installing the wwadapter Image

Before you install the wwadapter, you must upload the ww Junos OS device wwadapter image file.

To upload the wwadapter image file:

1. Select **Devices > Device Adapter**.
2. Select the Add Device Adapter icon on the menu bar.

**Figure 31: Add Device Adaptor Dialog Box**



3. Browse to the wwadapter image file and select the filename so that the full path appears in the Software File field.
4. Click **Upload** to bring the image into Junos Space.

A status box shows the progress of the image upload. Adding the wwadapter image file automatically installs the wwadapter.

Before you connect to any device, you must verify that the installation was successful.

To verify that the installation was successful, look at the device console on the Junos Space server.

1. On the server, change directories to verify that the wwadapter directory has been created.

```
cd /home/jmp/wwadapter
```

2. To verify that the wwadapter is running, enter the following command on the Space server:

```
prompt > service wwadapter status
wwadapter running
```

If the wwadapter is not active, you see the following status:

```
wwadapter stopped
```

Use the following commands to start or stop the wwadapter:

To start the wwadapter:

```
service wwadapter start
```

To stop the wwadapter:

```
prompt > ps -ef | grep wwadapter
prompt > kill -9 {wwadapter pid}
```

To see the wwAdapter logs, change directories to the wwadapter directory.

```
cd /home/jmp/wwadapter/var/errorLog/DmiAdapter.log
```

To view the contents of the error log file, open it with any standard text editor.

To view the contents of the log4j configuration file, change directories to the wwadapter directory.

```
cd /home/jmp/wwadapter /wwadapterlog4j.lcf
```

## Connecting to ww Junos OS Devices

A device running worldwide Junos OS (ww Junos OS device) cannot initiate a connection with Junos Space. Junos Space must initiate the connection to the device. To configure this setting:

1. Select **Administration > Applications**.

The Applications page appears displaying all the applications currently running in the Junos Space server.

2. Select **Network Application Platform** and select **Modify Application Settings** from the Actions dropdown.

The Modify Application Settings page appears.

3. Select **Junos Space initiates connection to device**.

4. Select **Support ww Junos Devices** so that Junos Space can connect to a ww Junos OS device using the wwadapter.

After Junos Space has discovered the ww Junos OS device through the wwadapter ([“Discovering Devices” on page 108](#)), it manages the device just as it would manage a device that runs the domestic version of Junos OS.



**NOTE:** The Secure Console workspace and the SSH to Device option on the right-click contextual menu in the Manage Devices workspace are disabled for ww Junos OS devices.



**NOTE:** If you are not able to discover the WW Junos OS device , make sure that the NMAP utility returns ‘telnet’ as open for port 23 on the device.

```
$ nmap -p23 < Device IP >
```

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)



# Discover Topology

- [Topology Discovery Overview on page 145](#)
- [Discovering a Topology on page 148](#)
- [Managing Device Targets on page 149](#)
- [Managing Probes on page 151](#)

## Topology Discovery Overview

---

Topology discovery is the process of discovering information about network devices and their interconnections. The topology discovery process creates a topology map that displays how the devices in the network are connected. You can use topology maps to monitor the network and ensure that the network is functioning effectively. You can identify weaknesses in the network infrastructure, such as bottlenecks and failures within a network, and isolate problem areas when you are troubleshooting network problems.

You need to install the Chrome Frame plugin if you are using the Topology Discovery feature on Internet Explorer version 8 browser. Topology Discovery feature does not work on the Internet Explorer version 9 browser.

Using the Discover Topology task, you can search for network topologies based on a target device or subnet that you specify.

Topology Discovery consists of two main steps:

1. Specifying the device target

To discover a topology using Topology Discovery, you must first specify a device target. This device initiates topology discovery, and Junos Space searches for all the devices and subnets that are connected to the specified device. You can specify either the hostname or IP address of the device target. You can also use a range of IP addresses or an IP subnet to initiate topology discovery.

2. Specifying the SNMP probes

Junos Space uses SNMP to discover network elements that are connected to the specified target devices and subnets. The Junos Space server uses SNMP probes to contact the targeted devices and get the relevant management information base (MIB) information needed to compute the topology.

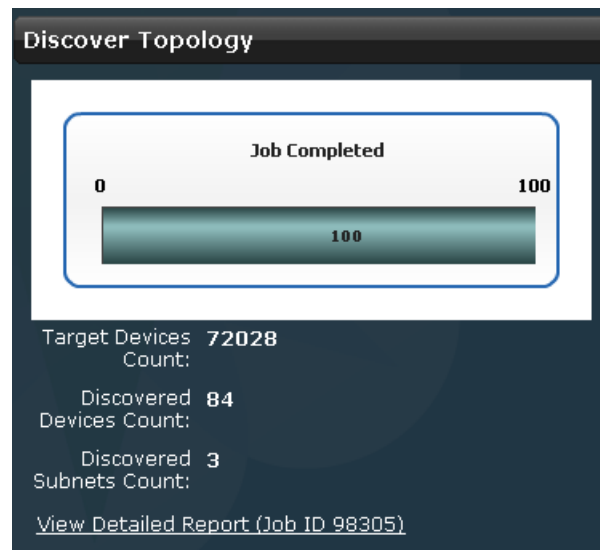
You can also specify a hop count to limit the number of routers that you want Junos Space to discover from the specified device. For example, if you specify a hop count of 1 for a target device, then all the IP addresses present in the routing table of that device are targeted for discovery. If the hop count is 2, this process is repeated for all the routing tables of the devices that were discovered in the first hop.

For more information about how to discover a topology, see [“Discovering a Topology” on page 148](#).

Select **Devices > Topology Discovery**.

The Topology Discovery landing page appears ([Figure 32 on page 146](#)) displaying details of the last topology discovery job that was carried out as described in [Table 28 on page 146](#).

**Figure 32: Discover Topology**



**Table 28: Discover Topology Landing Page Field Name and Descriptions**

Field Name	Description
Job Completion bar	How much of the job is completed as a percentage
Target Devices Count	Number of target devices that were specified for the job
Discovered Devices Count	Number of devices that were discovered
Discovered Subnets Count	Number of subnets that were discovered
View Detailed Report	Link to the <b>Discovery Job Details</b> dialog box

The Discovery Job Details report displays information about the discovery job, as shown in [Figure 33 on page 147](#). [Table 29 on page 147](#) describes the report.

Figure 33: Discovery Job Details Report

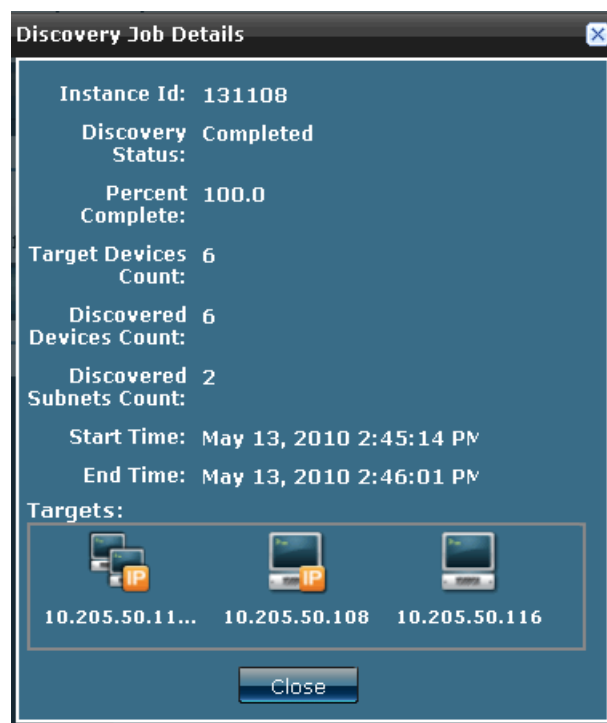


Table 29: Discovery Job Details Field Names and Descriptions

Field Name	Description
Instance ID	Unique identification number of the topology discovery job
Discovery Status	Job status The status can be <b>Starting</b> , <b>In Progress</b> , <b>Stopped</b> , <b>Completed</b> , or <b>Fail</b> .
Percent Complete	How much of the job was completed The value ranges from 0.0 to 100.0.
Target Devices Count	Number of target devices that were specified for the job
Discovered Devices Count	Number of devices that were discovered
Discovered Subnets Count	Number of subnets that were discovered
Start Time	Date and time when the job started
End Time	Date and time when the job was completed
Targets	Targets and corresponding IP addresses that were specified for the discovery job

### Prerequisites for Discovering a Topology

For Junos Space to discover a topology, the following conditions must be met.

- SNMP credentials must be configured on all the targeted devices in the network.
- Either LLDP or xSTP protocols must be enabled on all the devices in the network.

To view logs of tasks performed from the Discover Topology user interface, select **Audit Logs > View Audit Logs**. Audit logs list information about the task, such as task name, result, description, and job ID. For more information about audit logs, see [“Junos Space Audit Logs Overview” on page 435](#).

**Related Documentation**

- [Discovering a Topology on page 148](#)
- [Managing Device Targets on page 149](#)
- [Managing Probes on page 151](#)

---

## Discovering a Topology

To discover a topology:

1. Select **Devices > Topology Discovery > Specify Targets**.

The Specify Targets page appears.

Here you can add, edit, or delete device targets. For more information, see [“Managing Device Targets” on page 149](#).

2. (Optional) You can select the **Include Managed Devices as Targets** check box if you want Junos Space to use the Juniper Networks devices as the target devices for topology discovery.

3. Click **Next** to open the Specify SNMP Probes page.

Alternatively, click **Finish** to discover topologies based on the seed devices that you have specified.

You can also click **Cancel** to go back to the Discover Topology page.

On the Specify SNMP Probes page, you can add, edit, or delete SNMP probes that specify how Junos Space discovers the network. See [“Managing Probes” on page 151](#).

4. (Optional) You can specify a hop count to limit the number of routers from the target that Junos Space tries to discover. To do so, select the **Network Discovery Settings** check box and select the number of hops from the Number of Hops list.

The hop count limits the number of routers from the target device that you want Junos Space to discover.

5. Click **Finish** to discover topologies based on the seed devices and SNMP probe settings that you have specified.

Alternatively, click **Back** to go to the previous step of the Discover Topology wizard.

You can also click **Cancel** to go back to the Discover Topology page

- Related Documentation**
- [Topology Discovery Overview on page 145](#)
  - [Managing Device Targets on page 149](#)
  - [Managing Probes on page 151](#)

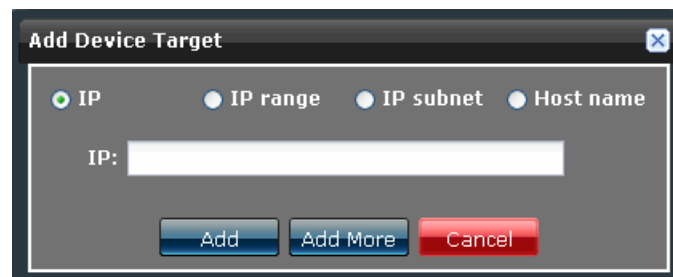
## Managing Device Targets

This topic describes adding, modifying, and deleting targets. Perform any or all of these tasks as described below, then click **Next** to move to specifying probes or credentials (see *Specifying Probes* and

To add a target:

1. Select **Devices > Device Discovery > Discover Targets**.  
The **Discover Targets** dialog appears.
2. Click the Add (+) button to open the **Add Device Target** dialog box (Figure 34 on page 149).

**Figure 34: Add Device Target**



3. Select one of the following options and enter the appropriate value in the field provided.
  - **IP**—Select this option to discover devices that are connected to the target device whose IP address you specified. Enter the IP address of the device in the **IP address** field. For example, 10.204.33.1.
  - **IP range**—Select this option to discover the network devices and connections that are connected to the target devices whose IP addresses you specified. Enter the addresses in the **IP range** field. For example, 10.204.33.1-10.204.33.20.
  - **IP subnet**—Select this option to discover the network devices and connections that are connected to the target subnets whose IP address you specified. Enter the IP address of the subnet in the **IP subnet** field. For example, 10.204.33.1 / 24.
  - **Hostname**—Select this option to discover the network devices and connections that are connected to the target device whose hostname you specified. Enter the hostname in the **Hostname** field.
4. Click **OK** to close the **Add Device Target** dialog box and add the device target to the **Device Targets** list.

Alternatively, click **Add More** to add the device target to the list without closing the **Add Device Target** dialog box so that you can add more device targets to the device targets list.

You can also click **Cancel** to close the **Add Device Target** dialog box without adding any device targets.

To edit a target:

1. Select **Devices > Device Discovery > Discover Targets**. The **Discover Targets** dialog box appears.
2. Select the device target that you want to edit and click the modify icon [slanted pencil] to open the **Modify Device Target** dialog box.
3. Select one of the following options and enter the appropriate value in the field provided.

You can choose to edit the existing values in the selected option, or you can select a different option and enter the desired values for that option.

- **IP**—Select this option to discover devices that are connected to the target device whose IP address you specified. Enter the IP address of the device in the **IP** field. For example, 10.204.33.1.
  - **IP range**—Select this option to discover the network devices and connections that are connected to the target devices whose IP addresses you specified. Enter the addresses in the **IP range** field. For example, 10.204.33.1-10.204.33.20.
  - **IP subnet**—Select this option to discover the network devices and connections that are connected to the target subnets whose IP address you specified. Enter the IP address of the subnet in the **IP subnet** field. For example, 10.204.33.1 / 24.
  - **Hostname**—Select this option to discover the network devices and connections that are connected to the target device whose hostname you specified. Enter the hostname in the **Hostname** field.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Modify Device Target** dialog box. Alternatively, click **Cancel** to close the **Modify Device Target** dialog box without editing the device target.

To delete a target:

1. Select **Devices > Device Discovery > Discover Targets**.  
The **Discover Targets** dialog box appears.
2. Select the device target that you want to delete and click the delete icon [X] to open the **Delete Device Target** dialog box.
3. Click **Delete** to delete the device target and remove it from the device targets list.  
Click **Cancel** to close the **Delete Device Target** dialog box without deleting a target.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Discovering a Topology on page 148](#)
- [Topology Discovery Overview on page 145](#)

- [Managing Probes on page 151](#)

## Managing Probes

You can specify an SNMP probe to connect to and discover the devices in a network.

To add a probe:

1. Select **Devices > Topology Discovery > Specify Probes**.

The **Specify Probes** dialog box appears.

2. Click the **+** button to open the **Add SNMP Settings** dialog box.
3. Select one of the following options and enter the appropriate value in the field provided.
  - Select **SNMP V1/V2C** and specify the community string in the **Community** field.  
The SNMP v1/v2c community string *public* is available by default. The SNMP v1/v2c community string is based on the community string configured on the devices in your network.
  - Select **SNMP V3** and enter the information in the fields provided.
    - a. Enter the SNMP V3 username in the **Username** field.
    - b. Select the privacy protocol (the encryption standard for the SNMP user) from the **Privacy type** list.  
The available options are **AES128**, **DES**, and **None**.
    - c. Enter the password used to generate the key used for encryption in the **Privacy password** field.  
The password must be at least eight characters long. You can include all character classes in a password (alphabetic, numeric, and special characters) except control characters.
    - d. Select the authentication type for the SNMP user from the **Privacy type** drop-down list.  
The available options are **MD5**, **SHA1**, and **none**.
    - e. Enter the password used to generate the key used for authentication in the **Authentication password** field.  
The password must be at least eight characters long. You can include all character classes in a password (alphabetic, numeric, and special characters) except control characters.
4. Click **OK** to close the **Add SNMP Settings** dialog box and add the SNMP probe to the **SNMP Settings** list.

The **Specify Probes** window displays the configured SNMP settings.

Alternatively, click **Add More** to add the device target to the list while keeping the **Add SNMP Settings** dialog box open to add more SNMP probes.

You can also click **Cancel** to close the **Add SNMP Settings** dialog box without adding any SNMP probes.

To edit an SNMP probe:

1. Select **Devices > Topology Discovery > Specify Probes**.

The **Specify Probes** dialog box appears.

2. Select the SNMP probe that you want to edit and click the Modify icon [slanted pencil] to open the **Modify SNMP Settings** dialog box.
3. Select one of the following options and enter the appropriate value in the field provided.

You can choose to edit the existing values in the selected SNMP version, or you can select a different SNMP version and enter the desired values.

- Select **SNMP V1/V2C** and specify the community string in the **Community** field. You can enter “public”, “private”, or a predefined string.
- Select **SNMP V3** and enter the information in the fields provided.
  - a. Enter the SNMP version 3 username in the **Username** field.
  - b. Select the privacy protocol—that is, the encryption standard for the SNMP user—from the **Privacy type** list. The available options are **AES128**, **DES**, and **None**.
  - c. Enter the password used to generate the key used for encryption in the **Privacy password** field. The password must be at least eight characters long. You can include all character classes in a password (that is, alphabetic, numeric, and special characters) except control characters.
  - d. Select the authentication type for the SNMP user from the **Privacy type** drop-down list. The available options are **MD5**, **SHA1**, and **none**.
  - e. Enter the password used to generate the key used for authentication in the **Authentication password** field. The password must be at least eight characters long. You can include all character classes in a password (that is, alphabetic, numeric, and special characters) except control characters.

4. Click **Modify** to save your changes and close the **Modify SNMP Settings** dialog box.

The **Specify Probes** window displays the configured SNMP settings.

Alternatively, click **Cancel** to close the Modify SNMP Settings dialog box without editing any SNMP probes.

To delete an SNMP probe:

1. Select **Devices > Topology Discovery > Specify Probes**.

The **Specify Probes** dialog box appears.

2. Select the SNMP probe that you want to delete and click the Delete icon [X] to open the **Delete SNMP Settings** dialog box.



3. Click **Delete** to delete the probe and remove it from the **SNMP Settings** list.

The **Specify Probes** window displays the configured SNMP settings.

Click **Cancel** to close the **Delete SNMP Settings** dialog box without deleting the probe.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Discovering a Topology on page 148](#)
- [Topology Discovery Overview on page 145](#)
- [Managing Device Targets on page 149](#)



## CHAPTER 15

# Upload Keys to Devices

- [Key-based Authentication Overview on page 155](#)
- [Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices on page 156](#)

### Key-based Authentication Overview

---

Junos Space can discover and manage a device either by presenting credentials (username and password) or by key-based authentication.

Junos Space supports RSA keys for key-based authentication. RSA is an asymmetric-key or public-key algorithm using two keys that are mathematically related. Junos Space includes a default set of public-private key pairs. However, we recommend that you generate your own public/private key pair with a passphrase applied. Generate your keys by following the instructions in [“Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices” on page 100](#). The public key can be uploaded to devices being managed by Junos Space. The private key is encrypted and stored on the system running Junos Space. Junos Space uses username and password credentials to log in to a device for the first time in order to copy and upload the public key. Any further communication to the devices is done using key-based authentication, without passwords.

It is advisable to protect the private key on the Junos Space system by using a passphrase, which is merely a long password that can include spaces and tabs and is much more difficult to break by brute-force guessing than is one shorter string.

You do not have to use RSA-based authentication on every device in your network; you can use passwords on some systems if you prefer or they require it.

Setting up key-based authentication between two computers is a multi-step process that is well described on many IT-related Internet sites (as is the public-key cryptography to which it is related). Junos Space automates all of this key-creation and uploading process for you. It also tracks and reports the authentication status of each device in the Devices workspace.

#### Related Documentation

- [Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices on page 100](#)

## Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices

---

- [Generating Keys on page 156](#)
- [Uploading Keys to Devices for the First Time on page 156](#)
- [Upload Keys on Managed Devices that have Conflicting keys with Junos Space on page 157](#)
- [Verifying Device Key Status on page 157](#)

### Generating Keys

To generate a public/private key pair for authentication during login to network devices:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric** and select the Generate Key icon on the Actions dropdown.  
The Key Generator dialog appears.
2. (Optional) In the **Passphrase** box, enter a passphrase to be used to protect the private key, which will remain on the system running Junos Space and will be used during device logins.  
The passphrase must have a minimum of 5 and a maximum of 255 characters. It may include spaces and tabs. A long passphrase with space and tab characters is harder to break by brute-force guessing. Although a passphrase is not required, it is recommended because it will impede an attacker who gains control of your system and tries to log in to managed network devices.
3. Select **Generate**.

### Uploading Keys to Devices for the First Time

To upload authentication keys to multiple managed devices for the first time:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management inventory page appears.
2. Select the Upload Authentication Key to Devices icon from the Actions menu. You can upload the keys to a single device or multiple devices.
3. To upload keys to a single device:
  - a. Select **Add Manually**.  
The Authentication Details box appears within the Upload Authentication Key dialog.
  - b. In the **IP Address/Host Name** box, enter the IP address or the hostname of the target managed device.
  - c. In the **User Name** box, enter the appropriate username for that device.
  - d. In the **Password** box, enter the password for that device. Confirm it by reentering it in the **Re-enter Password** box.

- e. Click **Next**.
  - f. Click **Upload** to upload keys to the device.
4. To upload keys to multiple devices:
    - a. Select **Import From CSV**.
    - b. (Optional) To see a sample CSV file as a pattern for setting up your own, select **View Sample CSV**. A separate window appears, allowing you to open or download a sample CSV file.
    - c. Once you have a CSV file listing the managed devices and their data, select **Select a CSV To Upload**.
    - d. Upload the CSV file.
    - e. Click **Next**.
    - f. Click **Upload** to upload keys to the device.

RSA Keys are uploaded automatically to all the managed devices (that were discovered through RSA authentication) in Junos Space, if a new key is generated on Junos Space.

### Upload Keys on Managed Devices that have Conflicting keys with Junos Space

To upload authentication keys to one or several managed devices that have conflicting keys:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management inventory page appears.
2. Select the devices to which you want to upload keys.
3. Select **Device Access > Upload Authentication Key** from the Actions dropdown.  
The IP address of the devices are pre-populated.
4. In the **User Name** box, enter the appropriate username for that device.
5. In the **Password** box, enter the password for that device. Confirm it by reentering it in the **Re-enter Password** box.
6. Select **Next** to provide details for the next device.
7. Select **Upload** to upload the new keys to the managed devices.

### Verifying Device Key Status

To verify the authentication status of managed devices:

- Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management inventory page appears.  
The Authentication Status column displays one of three values:
  - Key Based—Authentication key was successfully uploaded.
  - Credential—Key upload was not attempted; login to this device is by credentials.

- Key Conflict—Device was not available; key upload was unsuccessful.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Key-based Authentication Overview on page 99](#)
- [Device Discovery Overview on page 107](#)
- [Discovering Devices on page 108](#)

## PART 3

# Device Templates

- [Overview on page 161](#)
- [Template Definitions on page 169](#)
- [Templates on page 195](#)





## CHAPTER 16

# Overview

- [Device Templates Overview on page 161](#)

### Device Templates Overview

---

- [Device Templates Overview on page 162](#)
- [Device Templates Workflow on page 165](#)
- [Viewing Statistics for Templates and Definitions on page 165](#)
- [User Privileges in Device Templates on page 166](#)
- [Changing Template Definition States on page 167](#)

## Device Templates Overview

The Device Templates workspace provides the tools to create custom device templates deployable through Junos Space. Unlike other systems that provide configuration of most aspects of a device and allow implementation of some form of template, Device Templates enables you to set *all* configuration parameters for *any* supported device because it is DMI schema-driven. In other words, all Juniper devices managed by Junos Space convey to the system all their parameters, which are displayed for configuration in the Configuration Editor and in Device Templates.

Templates are an excellent way to create the base build of a new device. Using device templates, you can configure, for example, routing protocols such as bgp, ospf, isis or even static routes. You can even set up CSV files (outside of Junos Space) as a basis for your template definitions.



**NOTE:** When you deploy a template to a device, even the unconfigured parameters are committed. This means that if you applied two templates to a device, only the configuration contained in the last template would be retained. For example, if you set SNMP location in the first template you deployed, but did not do so in the second template, the SNMP location information would be lost as soon as you deployed the second template. Therefore, to build up a complex configuration by applying multiple templates in stages, you should modify the last deployed definition or template each time you add a layer of complexity.

This behavior also has implications for versioning. In order for Space to retain version information, every time a template is deployed to a device, the previous template deployed to the device is undeployed, even if the subsequent template only contains additional parameter settings. In other words, template deployment is not additive.

The device templates workflow has two [predefined] roles:

- The Template Design Manager—A designer who understands both:
  - The technical details of device configuration
  - How to implement this knowledge to solve specific business problems
- The Template Manager—An operator, a junior individual to execute the orders of the designer.

A template design manager (hereinafter referred to as a “designer”) creates template definitions and publishes them. A template manager (hereinafter referred to as an operator”) selects a template definition and creates from it a template to configure one or more devices. The operator then tests the template on the device (without deploying it). If the template is validated, the operator deploys the template to the devices.

With this division of labor, the operator does not need specialist knowledge. The designer can design the device templates to allow (or prevent) specific tasks to be performed by specified administrator roles. Alternatively, one person can have both roles.

While creating the definition, the designer can verify what the operator sees when creating a template from the definition. The operator, however, can gain no insight into what the designer saw when creating the definition. This has important consequences: while the designer can identify configuration options simply through their place in the hierarchy represented as a tree, the operator is entirely dependent on the name of the option. It is by means of the label alone that an operator determines which parameter he or she is configuring.

Designers can choose not only which options to display to their operators, but also whether to display them at all. They can make configuration options editable or read-only, and even provide customized explanations for operators.

Operators can immediately deploy a template to the devices they select, or schedule deployment for a later date.



**NOTE:** You cannot edit, publish, or delete a template definition if the template definition is being edited by another user. You will receive a pop-up message indicating the user who is currently editing the template definition.



**NOTE:** You cannot edit or delete a template if the template is being edited by another user. You will receive a pop-up message indicating the user who is currently editing the template.



**NOTE:** We recommend that you do not navigate to other pages or other Junos Space applications when modifying a template or a template definition. Save the changes before you navigate to other pages or other Junos Space applications.

**Related Documentation**

- [Device Templates Workflow on page 165](#)

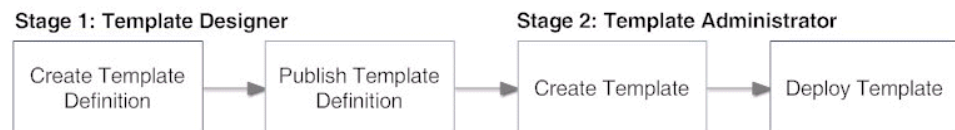
## Device Templates Workflow

The device templates workflow has two parts, corresponding to the two roles associated with this workspace:

- The Template Design Manager, or template designer, who creates the template definition (see [“Creating a Template Definition Overview” on page 175](#)).
- The Template Manager, or template administrator, who creates a template from a template definition (see [“Creating a Template Overview” on page 210](#)).

[Figure 35 on page 165](#) diagrams the role responsibilities and the workflow for creating a definition, then a template from the definition, and finally deploying the template to devices.

**Figure 35: Workflow for Device Template Definition and Template Creation**



### Related Documentation

- [Creating a Template Definition Overview on page 175](#)
- [Creating a Template Overview on page 210](#)

## Viewing Statistics for Templates and Definitions

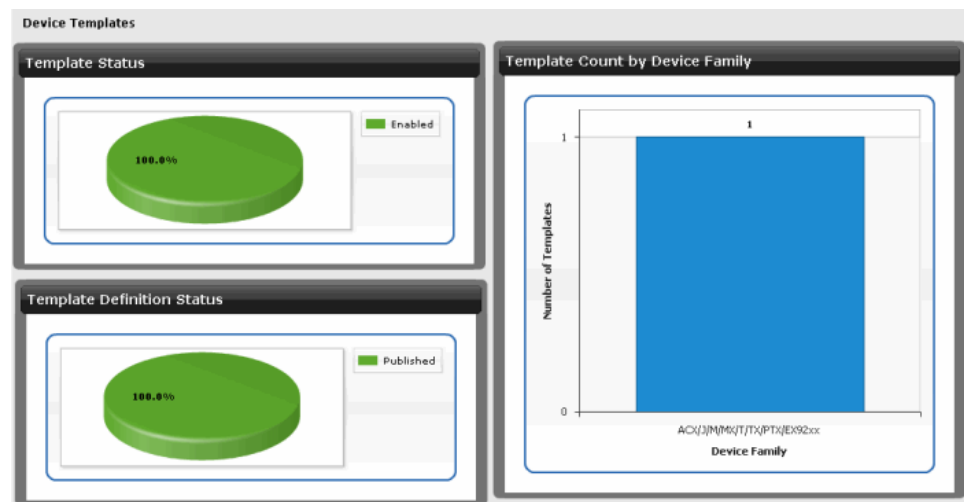
The device template statistics page shows the states of both definitions and templates, and the number of templates per device family.

All the charts are interactive. Clicking the enabled templates part of the Template Status chart, for example, takes you directly to the page displaying that category of template.



**NOTE:** Do not use your browser's Back and Forward buttons to navigate in Device Templates pages.

Figure 36: Device Template Statistics



The Device Templates statistics page displays the following information:

- **Template Status**—this pie chart shows the templates that are enabled, disabled, and needing review. The templates based on a definition that is currently in a published state are enabled. Templates based on a definition that is currently unpublished are disabled. Templates based on a republished definition are marked as needing review.
- **Template Definition Status**—this pie chart shows published and unpublished definitions (available for template creation and unavailable, respectively).
- **Template Count by Device Family**—this bar chart shows the number of templates per device family (each template can apply to only one device family).

#### Related Documentation

- [Changing Template Definition States on page 167](#)
- [Viewing Template Inventory on page 213](#)
- [Viewing Template Definition Inventory on page 172](#)
- [Managing Template Definitions on page 169](#)
- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)

## User Privileges in Device Templates

In Junos Space Users, the two roles for Device Templates users are predefined: Template Design Manager for the definition designer and Template Manager for the operator. For ease of use, in this documentation we refer to the Template Design Manager as the designer, and to the Template Manager as the operator.

You must have Template Design Manager privileges to create, delete, modify, and manage template definitions.

You must have Template Manager Privileges to create, deploy, delete, modify, and manage templates.

- Related Documentation**
- [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)

## Changing Template Definition States

When a designer finishes creating a template definition, that definition is automatically published by default. Designers can perform a series of operations on definitions, but to do so, they must first unpublish the definitions. Operators can see only published definitions; unpublished ones are not visible for them.

Ensure that you have the appropriate permissions before undertaking any of these tasks or operations. See [“User Privileges in Device Templates” on page 166](#)

- To be available for use by operators, template definitions must be published. Template definitions that are unpublished are not available for the creation of templates.
- Templates based on a definition that was unpublished after the templates were created are automatically disabled.
- Templates based on a definition that was unpublished and then republished are marked as needing review. They cannot be deployed before the operator reviews them.
- Templates based on a definition that has been deleted are permanently disabled.
- Templates based on a published definition that has not been unpublished in the meantime are enabled.

- Related Documentation**
- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)
  - [Creating a Template Definition Overview on page 175](#)
  - [Creating a Template on page 210](#)





## CHAPTER 17

# Template Definitions

- [Manage Definitions on page 169](#)
- [Create Definition on page 175](#)
- [Manage CSV Files on page 191](#)
- [Import Definitions on page 192](#)

## Manage Definitions

---

- [Managing Template Definitions on page 169](#)
- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)
- [Modifying a Template Definition on page 171](#)
- [Viewing Template Definition Inventory on page 172](#)
- [Cloning a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Deleting a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Exporting a Template Definition on page 174](#)

## Managing Template Definitions

Before you begin, make sure you have the appropriate permissions; see [“User Privileges in Device Templates” on page 166](#).



**NOTE:** Do not use your browser’s Back and Forward buttons to navigate in Device Templates pages.

To manage Device Template definitions, from the task tree, navigate to the Definitions inventory page by selecting **Device Templates > Definitions**. The Definitions inventory page displays all published or unpublished template definitions in a table format view. You can select or deselect all items, and you can use the search function to find a template definition by name.

From the Definitions page, you can use the Actions menu to publish, unpublish, modify, view, clone, delete, import, and export a template definition. You can also tag and untag an object.

**Related Documentation**

- [Creating a Template Definition Overview on page 175](#)
- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)
- [Modifying a Template Definition on page 171](#)
- [Deleting a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Importing a Template Definition on page 193](#)
- [Exporting a Template Definition on page 174](#)
- [Cloning a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Managing Templates Overview on page 195](#)
- [Changing Template Definition States on page 167](#)

## Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition

In the lifecycle of a definition there are two states.



**NOTE:** If you unpublish a definition that is already being used as the basis for templates, all templates based on that definition are disabled. Republishing the definition alone is not enough to reenable the templates. The templates must be reviewed before they can be reenabled (see [“Managing Templates Overview” on page 195](#)).

1. To view all template definition states, select **Device Templates > Definitions**.



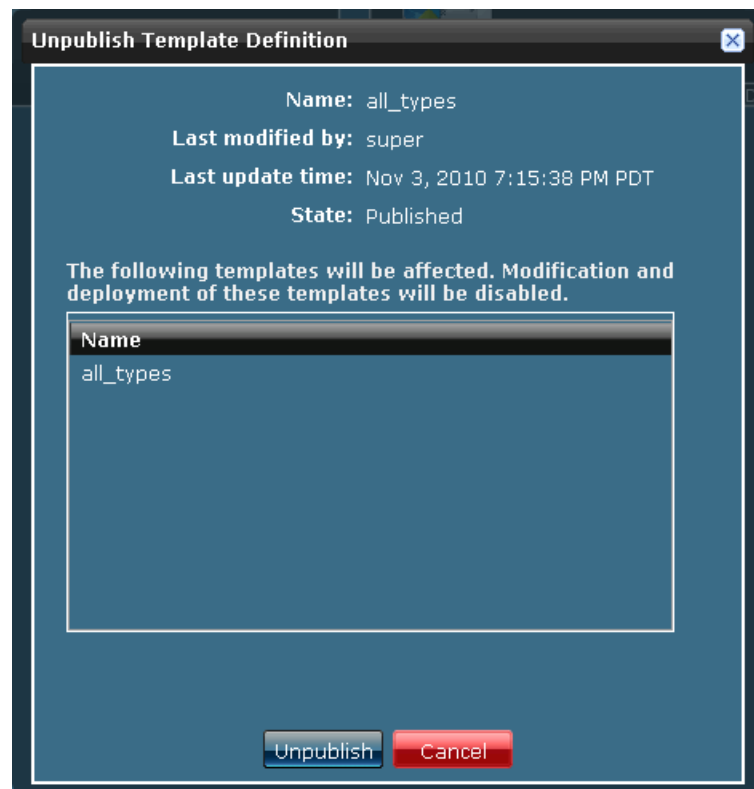
**TIP:** To use an existing published definition as the basis for a new definition, clone the existing definition and make your modifications to the clone (see [“Cloning a Template Definition” on page 173](#)).

To publish a template definition:

1. Select **Device Templates > Definitions**, and select the definition.
2. Select **Publish Template Definition** or **Unpublish Template Definition** or select the appropriate command from the Actions dropdown.

If you try to unpublish a definition already being used for templates, the **Unpublish Template Definition** dialog box notifies you that in unpublishing, you will disable those templates, and prompts you to confirm you want to do this.

Figure 37: Unpublish Template Definition



#### Related Documentation

- [Cloning a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Modifying a Template Definition on page 171](#)
- [Changing Template Definition States on page 167](#)

## Modifying a Template Definition

You can modify a template definition only when it is unpublished.

To modify a published definition, you must first unpublish it (see [“Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition” on page 170](#)).

When you modify a template definition, you cannot change the device family. Also, by default, the same OS and schema versions are used as in the original template definition.

When you modify a template definition, you cannot change any existing pages. You can only add additional pages.

To modify a template definition:

1. Select **Device Templates > Definitions** and select the definition by clicking its check box.
2. Select **Modify Template Definition** or select the appropriate command from the Actions dropdown

3. To make the modified definition available to operators, publish it.



**NOTE:** Because you must unpublish a definition before modifying it, any templates based on that definition are disabled. After you modify a definition and republish, templates based on that definition are not automatically reenabled. The status of the affected templates is Needs Review.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)
- [Cloning a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Deleting a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Importing a Template Definition on page 193](#)
- [Exporting a Template Definition on page 174](#)

## Viewing Template Definition Inventory

To view Device Template definition inventory, select **Device Templates > Definitions**. The Definitions inventory page appears.

You can display template definitions in tabular view. You can also do the following:

- Use the Search function to find a particular template definition.
- Select all template definitions on a page, or you can deselect them.
- You can refresh the page by clicking the Refresh icon in the status bar.
- When you have selected a template definition, you can perform actions on it by right-clicking it or hovering over the Actions menu.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Managing Template Definitions on page 169](#)
- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)
- [Modifying a Template Definition on page 171](#)
- [Cloning a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Deleting a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Importing Template Definitions Overview on page 192](#)
- [Importing a Template Definition on page 193](#)
- [Exporting a Template Definition on page 174](#)

## Cloning a Template Definition

Cloning a template definition is the same as copying it. If you want to copy a definition from one Junos Space fabric to another, however, you must import or export it.

To modify a template definition without disabling templates based upon that definition, first clone the definition, then modify the clone.

Unlike the **Modify** function, the **Clone** function does not require that a definition be unpublished.

When you clone a template definition, you cannot change the device family or any existing pages.

To add additional pages, modify the clone (see [“Modifying a Template Definition” on page 171](#)).

To clone a template definition:

1. Select **Device Templates > Definitions**, and select the definition by clicking its check box.
2. Select **Clone Template Definition** from the Actions dropdown.

The new definition appears, named **Clone of ...**

3. To make the cloned definition available to operators, publish it (see [“Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition” on page 170](#)).

### Related Documentation

- [Deleting a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Modifying a Template Definition on page 171](#)
- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)
- [Importing Template Definitions Overview on page 192](#)

## Deleting a Template Definition

You can delete a template definition only when it is unpublished. This status is indicated by an appropriate icon. A different icon indicates a published definition.

To delete a published definition, you must first unpublish it (see [“Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition” on page 170](#)). When you unpublish a definition, any templates based on that definition are disabled. When you delete a definition, all templates based on that definition are permanently disabled. They can therefore be neither modified nor deployed.

To delete a template definition:

1. Select **Device Templates > Definitions**, and select the definition.
2. Select **Delete** from the Actions dropdown.



**TIP:** Ensure that you have a plan in place before you delete a definition that is being used for templates. All templates based on a deleted definition are disabled.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)
- [Cloning a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Modifying a Template Definition on page 171](#)
- [Changing Template Definition States on page 167](#)

## Exporting a Template Definition

Exporting a template definition enables you to transfer it to another Junos Space fabric.

Before you begin, you must have a template definition already created.

To export a definition:

1. From the Definitions page, select the definition to export.
2. Select **Export** from the Actions dropdown.

The Export Template Definition dialog box appears.

3. Click **Download file for selected template definitions (tgz format)**.

The Opening xxx.tgz dialog box appears. (XXX is a placeholder for the name of the definition.)

4. Select **Save File** and click **OK**.

You may have to toggle between the option buttons to activate the **OK** button.

The Enter name of file to save to ... dialog appears.

5. Rename the file if desired and save it to the appropriate location.

The Export Template Definition dialog reappears.

6. Click **Close**.

Although the exported definition file is an .XML file, it is saved as a .tgz file, which is the format the system uses to import XML files.

You can now import the definition into another Junos Space fabric.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Importing Template Definitions Overview on page 192](#)
- [Importing a Template Definition on page 193](#)
- [Cloning a Template Definition on page 173](#)
- [Managing Template Definitions on page 169](#)

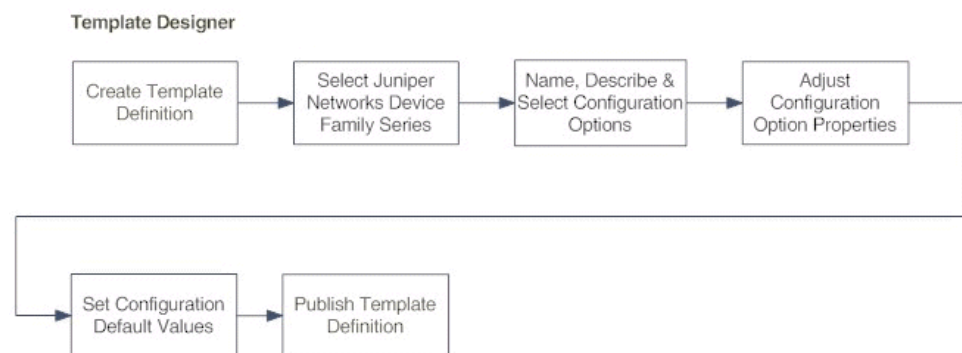
## Create Definition

- [Creating a Template Definition Overview on page 175](#)
- [Creating a Template Definition on page 176](#)
- [Finding Configuration Options on page 186](#)
- [Specifying Device-Specific Values in Definitions on page 187](#)
- [Working with Rules on page 190](#)

### Creating a Template Definition Overview

The workflow for creating a template definition is illustrated by [Figure 38 on page 175](#).

**Figure 38: Template Definition Workflow**



Creating a template definition includes the following tasks, described in “[Creating a Template Definition](#)” on page 176, unless specified otherwise:

1. Select a device family.
2. Select the configuration options (parameters) to be included in the definition. .
3. Define the text, labels, and template UI elements the operator sees, which includes defining which options or parameters the operator sees and can change in the template.
4. Determine which - if any - parameters will be governed by CSV files or rules. See “[Specifying Device-Specific Values in Definitions](#)” on page 187, “[Managing CSV Files](#)” on page 191, and “[Working with Rules](#)” on page 190.
5. Set the default values for the template parameters, i.e. the range of permissible values the operator can enter.
6. Preview the template and if necessary modify the definition. See “[Modifying a Template Definition](#)” on page 171.



**NOTE:** Template definitions are published by default. If you want to avoid making a definition available to operators, you must unpublish it. See “[Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition](#)” on page 170.

- Related Documentation**
- [Device Templates Overview on page 162](#)
  - [Device Templates Workflow on page 165](#)

## Creating a Template Definition

- [Selecting the Device Family and Naming the Definition on page 176](#)
- [Creating Configuration Pages on page 177](#)
- [Determining Editable Parameters on page 179](#)
- [Filling in the General Tab on page 180](#)
- [Filling in the Description Tab on page 182](#)
- [Filling in the Validation Tab on page 183](#)
- [Filling in the Advanced Tab on page 184](#)
- [Specifying Default Values for Configuration Options on page 185](#)

---

### Selecting the Device Family and Naming the Definition

Each template definition is associated with a Juniper Networks Device Family DMI schema. Before creating any template definitions, you must set a default DMI schema for each device family. See [“Setting a Default DMI Schema” on page 581](#).

To select the device family and name the template definition:

1. Select **Device Templates**.

The Device Templates statistics page appears, displaying all available statistics for both template definitions and templates.

2. Select **Definitions**.

The Templates inventory page appears, displaying all template definitions.

3. Click the **Create Template Definition** icon on the menu bar.

The Create Template Definition page appears.

4. From the Device Family Series panel, select the device family to which your definition will apply.

The Junos OS versions and hardware platforms supported by the selected device family appear in the Description panel on the right. The OS version that appears on the lower left is the one that is set as default for that device family.



**NOTE:** Unless you include it in the definition name or description, the operator will not know which device family this definition applies to.

---

5. Select the appropriate OS version from the dropdown list in the lower part of the left panel.





**NOTE:** If you do not use the latest DMI schema, you will not have access to all the most recent device configuration options.

6. Click **Next**.

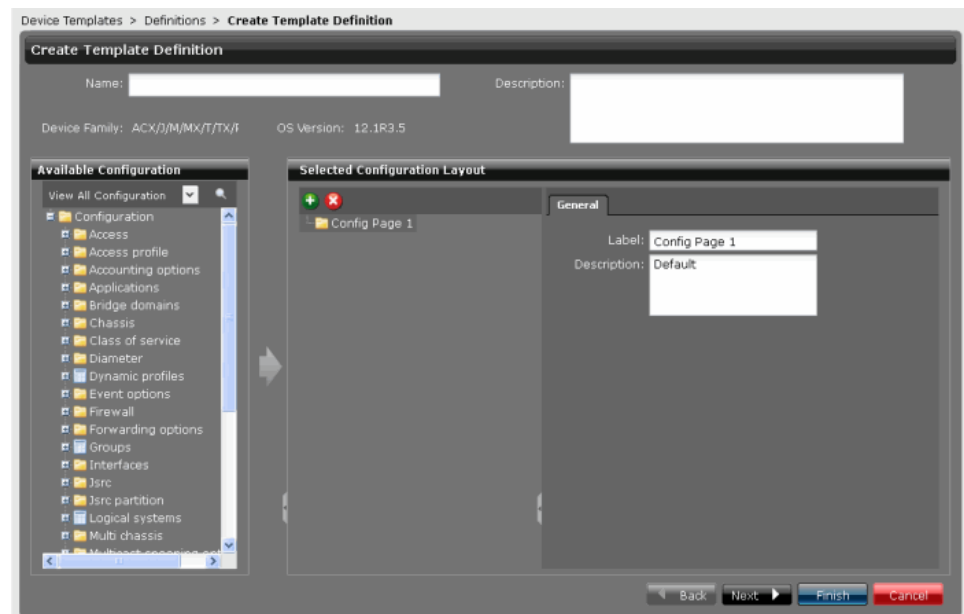
The second Create Definition page appears.

### Creating Configuration Pages

Create configuration pages to organize and group the device configuration parameters you include in your device template definition.

The second Create Definition page displays the selected device family, the Available Configuration panel, and the Selected Configuration Layout panel.

**Figure 39: Create Template Definition**



1. In the Name box, enter a name for the template definition (limit of 63 characters).

Do not input any leading or trailing spaces. If you do, an error icon appears next to the field, and mousing over the icon displays a tooltip explaining that leading or trailing spaces are not permitted.

Each template definition must have a unique name.

2. (Optional) Enter a description in the Description box (limit of 255 characters).

The operators who use the template definition to create templates rely on the description for information on the definition.

3. In the Available Configuration panel on the left, select from the View All Configuration drop down list any of the following:

- View All Configuration—For all configuration options available for the selected device family's default DMI schema.
  - Common Configuration—For the parameters typically configured for the selected device family; for example, for J/M/MX/T/TX, these are Interfaces, Routing options, SNMP, and System.
  - MPLS Pre-staging—For the parameters necessary to configure this for the selected device family; for example, for J/M/MX/T/TX, these are Interfaces, Protocols, and Routing options.
4. Display the hierarchy of Junos OS configuration options available for the device family by clicking the plus sign to the left of **Configuration** at the top of the tree.  
  
The hierarchy appears in the form of a list. Each item can be expanded by clicking the plus sign.
  5. (Optional) To find particular configuration options, see ["Finding Configuration Options" on page 186](#).
  6. A default page, Config Page 1, is available to hold your groups of configuration options. Create additional pages by clicking the green plus sign at the top of the Selected Configuration Layout panel.  
  
A new page appears in the left panel of the Selected Configuration Layout. By default, the page is named Config Page [x].
  7. (Optional) To rename a page, select it and overwrite the text in the Label field on the General tab.
  8. (Optional) To enter a description to help the operator or template administrator using this definition to create a template, overwrite the word Default in the Description field.
  9. (Optional) Delete a page by selecting a page in the Selected Configuration Layout panel, and clicking the red X at the top of the panel.
  10. To choose configurable options, drill down through the hierarchy in the Available Configuration panel. Unless you have opened a directory, selecting it and moving it does not transfer the directory's contents into your definition. You can select multiple options simultaneously by holding down the Ctrl key.

There are three ways to move an option from the Available Configurations panel to a page in the Selected Configuration Layout panel:

- Drag one or more options from the Available Configuration panel to the Selected Configuration Layout panel, and drop it directly onto the appropriate page in the Selected Configuration Layout panel.
- First, select the destination page in the Selected Configuration Layout panel, then the option(s) to be moved.

Click the orange arrow between the panels.

The option moves from the Available Configuration panel to the Selected Configuration Layout panel.

- First select a page in the Selected Configuration Layout panel, then double-click an option in the Available Configuration panel.

The option moves to the selected page. Note that the page does not open automatically. The minus sign to the left of an empty page changes to a plus sign if the move was successful.

Any sequence is permissible, and there is no limit on the number of options a page can hold.

You cannot put children of the same parent into different pages.

If you drill down and select a parameter deep in the hierarchy, dragging that parameter causes all the other parameters that require configuration to come with it.

### Determining Editable Parameters

The template definition designer specifies not only which device parameters appear in the definition, but also which parameters can be edited by the operator when he or she creates a template. The designer also sets the defaults for the editable parameters.

The data type of an option or parameter determines the configurability of the option in the finished definition. The data type is set in the DMI schema.

[Table 30 on page 179](#) lists the data types for the configuration options, and the tabs associated with each type. The data type is determined by the DMI schema, and it also determines the method of validation and the way the parameters are displayed.

To create a useful template definition, it is helpful to determine in advance which parameters or configuration options you want your operators to be able to set themselves, which parameters are to be read-only, and which, if any, are to be hidden from the operator. The data type of an option only determines how it will be displayed.

**Table 30: Data Types and Tabs**

Data Types	Description	Tabs			
		General	Description	Validation	Advanced
Container	Container data type holds other data types.	*	*		
Table	Table data type displays a list of records with identical structure.	*	*	*	*
String - Key column in a table	String - Key data type identifies the uniqueness of the record in the table. If the table has a key specified, only one record with the given key could exist.	*	*	*	*
String	String data type contains character strings.	*	*	*	*
Integer [Number]	Integer [Number] data type is used to specify a numeric value without a fractional component.	*	*	*	*

Table 30: Data Types and Tabs (*continued*)

Data Types	Description	Tabs			
		General	Description	Validation	Advanced
Boolean	Boolean data type has two possible values: true and false. True if checked and False if unchecked.	*	*		*
Enumeration	Enumeration data type defines a variable to be a set of predefined constants. The variable must be equal to one of the values that have been predefined for it. Use this data type to create drop-down lists.	*	*		*
Choice	Choice data type provides a radio button. Check the radio button to use the configuration option in the template.	*	*		*

[Table 31 on page 180](#) lists the validation parameters for the data types supporting validation.

Table 31: Data Types and Validation Parameters

Data Type	Validation Parameters		
Integer [Number]	Min Value	Max Value	
String	Min Length	Max Length	Regular Expression
Table	Min Occurrence	Max Occurrence	
String - Key column in a table	Min Length	Max Length	Regular Expression

- All configuration options of the table data type have a key column by default.
- To save the settings you enter, select another tab or option or configuration page. The Next button also saves your settings. To save the entire template definition, click **Finish**.

### Filling in the General Tab

The General tab enables you to create field labels that help the operator enter correct field data. The General tab applies to both the configuration *pages* and the configuration *options* you select. Here we are dealing with the options. For certain data types, filling in the General tab is optional.

To fill in the General tab for an option,

1. In the Selected Configuration Layout pane, select a *configuration option*.  
The General tab appears, displaying the default text.
2. (Optional) To rename the selected option, in the Label field, overwrite the default or existing name.



**TIP:** Because the configuration options lose their context when you move them out of the tree in the Available Configuration panel, consider changing the default labels to indicate to operators creating templates what these parameters are for. The default labels are ambiguous without the context of the tree. For example, there are many options called *pool*.

The Data Type box displays the selected option's data type, which determines not only the tabs displayed, but also the method of validation. For tables showing the various data types and their tabs, see [Table 30 on page 179](#) and [Table 31 on page 180](#).

3. (Optional) If the data type of an option is String, it is possible to provide the template administrator or operator a dropdown list to choose from when creating templates from this definition. To provide a dropdown list of choices, change the data type of the selected option to Enumeration by clicking the Enumeration radio button in the Data Type box.

Either a box containing ready-made choices appears, or a box to contain the choices you create appears, and next to it, a green plus [+] and a red minus [-] icon.

- To create each dropdown list choice, click the green plus [+] icon  
A text field appears, to the right of it an OK button, a Close button, and a red X.
- Enter text in the field (limit 255 alphanumeric characters), and click **OK** when finished.

The newly created choice appears in the box to the left of the text field.



**TIP:** Keep your choices short, otherwise they are hard to read when you specify the default values and or when the operator tries to select from the list. You can create up to 23 choices.

- (Optional) To delete a dropdown list choice, select it and click the red minus [-] icon.

The choice disappears from the box.

- To finish adding choices, click **Close** or the red X to the right of the text field.
4. To save your entries on the General tab, select another tab or another option, or click **Next** or **Finish**.

Either fill in the General tab as described above for each option in your configuration group, or go on to fill in the Description tab for the current option.

### Filling in the Description Tab

---

The Description tab enables you to add descriptive text to help the operator enter the correct data. When the operator creates a template, he or she can view your description or explanation by clicking the little Information icon to the right of the parameter (in the template). A pop-up appears, displaying the content you entered in the Description field.

To fill in the Description tab:

1. In the Selected Configuration Layout pane, select a configuration option. It can be the same option for which you have just filled out the General tab, or any other option.
2. Click the Description tab to display it.
3. In the Description field, enter [additional] descriptive text for the selected configuration option, or leave the default text, if desired.
4. To save your the description, move to another tab or another option, or click **Next**.

### Filling in the Validation Tab

When you define fields in which you intend the operator to enter content, you usually restrict or limit that content in order to prevent validation errors during deployment. For example, if you define a field that you label **Hostname**, you could use a regular expression to prevent the operator from entering anything other than an IP address. Another situation might be when a particular attribute allows values A/B/C/D/E, but you want templates that allow only values A/C.



**TIP:** Remember that the definition is just the “template of the template.” Therefore in the definition you only need to set up one Primary Resolver, for example, because it is during template creation that the number of actual instances will be determined.

The Validation tab displays the validation criteria for the selected configuration option. Not all options have Validation tabs. The validation criteria are determined by the option's data type: string, integer/number, table, container, choice, or enumeration.

The following screen capture shows the validation tab for a string.

The next screen capture shows the Validation tab for the integer/number data type.

The following shows the Validation tab for the table data type.



**NOTE:** If values are already displayed on the validation tab, they provide the range that governs the default values you set for the definition. The operator only sees the validation criteria and their values if you supply them when you create an error message.

You do not always need to enter anything on the Validation tab. However, in certain cases, input is mandatory, for example when a hostname is to be validated.

To fill in the Validation tab:

1. In the Selected Configuration Layout pane, select a configuration option of the appropriate type. It can be the same option for which you have just filled out the General and the Description tabs, or any other option for which validation is relevant.
2. Click the **Validation** tab in the Create Template Definition page.
3. Enter the parameters for the option in the appropriate fields.

If the fields already display default values and you change them, ensure that your values do not exceed the default values.

The Regular Expression Error Message box on the Validation tab appears only if you configure an option of the string data type.

4. (Optional) For a string, in the Regular Expression field, enter a regular expression to further constrain what the operator can enter.

5. (Optional) For a string, compose an error message.

This is not a validation parameter but instead a clue to enable the operator to enter correct field data. The text you enter here is displayed when an operator enters invalid content in a template field. An error message is very helpful for ensuring that operators are successful in creating templates. You cannot enter an error message if you have not entered a regular expression.

6. To save your entries, select another tab or another option, or click **Next** or **Finish**.

---

### Filling in the Advanced Tab

The settings on the Advanced tab determine whether:

- The operator can see the selected option or edit its values
- Device-specific values will be used for the selected option. The Device Specific checkbox only appears for options of these data types:
  - Integer
  - String
  - Boolean
  - List

To fill in the Advanced tab:

1. In the Selected Configuration Layout pane, select a configuration option. It can be the same option for which you have just filled out other tabs, or any other.

If it is not already visible, the General tab appears.

2. Select the Advanced tab.
3. Select **Editable**, **Readonly**, or **Hidden**, depending on whether the operator creating the template should see this device configuration parameter, or change it.

If you hide an option, not only will the operator not see the settings for the option, but also he or she will not see the option itself.

4. (Optional) To mark this configuration option as device-specific, click the **Device Specific** check box.

See [“Specifying Device-Specific Values in Definitions” on page 187](#) for further instructions on using CSV files for this purpose. You can use rules instead of or in addition to CSV files to specify device-specific values. See [“Working with Rules” on page 190](#) for more information on this.

5. To save your entries, select another tab or another option, or click **Next**.



## Specifying Default Values for Configuration Options

If you choose not to enter default values, the operator must decide what values to enter when creating a template.

To specify default values for configuration parameters:

1. On the second Create Definition page, on the Specify default values for configuration parameters page, on the left, select one of your configuration pages.

To the right a breadcrumb of that name appears, and in the pane under that, the options you added to the page on the Create Definition page.

2. To display the fields for the default values, click **View/Configure**.

The layout of the fields on the page varies depending on the data type of the configuration option you selected.

The screen shows the default configuration parameters for an option of the table data type.

3. To add a row to a table, click the plus sign (+).

The fields for the options displayed in the previous view appear. Whether the operator can edit the option values depends on the settings you made on the Advanced tab, Editable, Readonly, or Hidden.

To remove a row from a table, select the row and click the minus sign (-). To edit a table row, select the row and click the pencil icon (looks like a diagonal line).

As you drill down, successive breadcrumbs appear, with the names of the options you clicked to configure, enabling you to navigate through multiple configuration option levels. The operator also sees these breadcrumbs, and uses them to navigate.

4. Enter the data as appropriate.



**TIP:** To review your settings, click **Back** at the bottom of the page.

Any field that you have marked as editable can remain empty, but do not leave hidden and read-only fields empty.

If you enter an invalid value, a red exclamation mark icon appears. Click the icon to find out what the value should be. The same icon is also visible to the operator when creating a template.

Click the blue Information icon on the far right of each setting to view the explanatory or descriptive text for the operator that you entered on the Description tab.

5. (Optional) To verify what the operator sees, click **Operator View**.
6. (Optional) Add settings in the Operator View.

When you click **Designer View**, a message appears, asking "Do you want to save this draft before you leave this page?"

7. (Optional) To save the settings you made in the Operator View, click **Yes**.

8. To complete your definition, return to the designer view by clicking **Designer View**.
9. Repeat these steps as necessary to specify default values for all the parameters in your definition.
10. To complete the template definition, click **Finish**.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Finding Configuration Options on page 186](#)
- [Specifying Device-Specific Values in Definitions on page 187](#)
- [Setting a Default DMI Schema on page 581](#)

## Finding Configuration Options

There are two ways to locate particular configuration options: you can browse the list or use the search function.

To display the top level configuration options, click the plus sign [+] or expansion icon at the top of the tree in the Available Configuration pane. Many of the options contain further parameters. To display these, click on the plus sign [+] or expansion icon left of the option.

To search for a specific configuration option:

1. Click the magnifying glass icon.  
The search term bar appears.
2. Enter your search term.

As soon as you enter the first three letters, the bar opens downwards, displaying the search results.

Search displays only the first ten matches for your term.



**TIP:** Search results appear while you are typing. You can continue typing or even delete text. Note that the cursor might not be visible in the search field if the focus is somewhere within the list of search results.

The order of the search results is not dependent on the order of those items in the Available Configuration pane. It is based on the similarity of your search term to indexed fields.

3. While the result list is still visible, select a result by:
  - Using the mouse to click on it.
  - Pressing the Enter key to select the first result in the list.
  - Using the up and down arrow keys on the keyboard to move through the list, pressing the Enter key to select a result.

The tree in the Available Configuration pane jumps to the location of the match for the result you selected and highlights the option. The list of results disappears.

4. (Optional) To review the results that you did *not* select, either:
  - Click the white arrows next to the Search box.  
Click the arrow to the left to move to the result listed previous to the selected result.  
Click the arrow to the right to move to the result after the selected result.
  - Use the left and right arrow keys on the keyboard.  
Press the arrow to the left to move to the result listed previous to the selected result.  
Press the arrow to the right to move to the result after the selected result.
5. To close the search bar, click the X in the top right corner of the bar.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Creating a Template Definition on page 176](#)

## Specifying Device-Specific Values in Definitions

Template designers can use a comma-separated value (CSV) file to provide device-specific values for a template definition.

A single CSV file can be used to supply as many values as you wish, because the same file can be used in many situations.

Once you have created a CSV file, you import it into Space, and manage it using the Manage CSV Files task in the Device Templates workspace.

To create a CSV file for use in Space, use any appropriate program such as Notepad or Excel

1. For each value to be specified, use one column.
2. For each device, use one row.
3. Create a header row to name your columns.

It does not matter what you name your columns - you could call them anything, but each name must be unique, because Space uses them to identify the values for the template definition.

If you wanted to specify interfaces and other values, you would simply add a column for each type of value, which specifies two interfaces on a single device, as well as MTU and traps for each:



**NOTE:** You must correctly identify the column from which the value is to be taken and the key column when you select the CSV file during the template definition creation process. You do not necessarily need to note down this information, because you can view the contents of the CSV file in Space when you choose column and key column.

Table 32: CSV File for Interfaces

device	interface-1	mtu-1	traps-1	interface-2	mtu-2	traps-2
gemini-re0	ge-0/1/1	1514	1	ge-0/1/2	1518	0

To use a CSV file to set device-specific values in a template definition:

1. Select **Device Templates > Definitions >** and click the Create Template Definition icon.  
The Create Template Definition page appears.
2. Add the configuration option for which you want to supply device-specific values using a CSV file that you have already created (see [“Managing CSV Files” on page 191](#)).
3. Click the **Advanced** tab.
4. Select the **Device Specific** check box.
5. Click **Next**.

You see the device-specific value link immediately if it is not buried, for example in a table. If you find the link immediately in the next screen, skip to Step 6. In the example illustrated in Step 4, note that the Device Specific check box applies to the Operation configuration option, which is a child of the MIB profile. Therefore clicking the Next button shows only a link for configuring the MIB profile, as shown.

To see the device-specific value link, drill down into the MIB profile by clicking **Click to Configure**.

This reveals the table where the Operation option appears (on the far right of the screen capture) as a column heading, along with the other children of the MIB profile.

In the example illustrated, you must click the **Add** button above the table to display the Device Specific Value link next to the Operation label.

6. Click the **Device Specific Value** link.

Where the device-specific value is in a table, as in the example illustrated, you must confirm that you want to add a row to the table. Click **Yes**.

The Device Specific Value [name of selected configuration option] dialog box appears.

7. Select the **Resolve the value from a CSV file at deploy time** check box.
8. Click **Please select a CSV file**.

The Manage CSV files dialog box appears.

Use the Manage CSV files dialog box to either select a file already in the system, or to navigate and upload CSV files from the local file system. You can view the content of a CSV file already in the system by selecting it in the left pane. Its content displays in the right pane.

9. To upload a file not already in the system, follow the procedure described in [“Managing CSV Files” on page 191](#).

or

To use a CSV file already in the system, select it and click **OK**.

The Device Specific Value [name of selected configuration option] dialog box reappears, this time displaying the name of the CSV file you selected in the previous steps, and the name of the configuration option whose value is to be specified by the CSV file

10. Specify the column and the key column in the CSV file.

- a. For **Column** select the column with the value to be used. You could begin by specifying any of the values, but we will specify the *name of the first interface*: you would select **interface-1**, and for **Key Column** you would select **gemini-re0**. These specify the value **ge-0/1/1**.
- b. Still in the Device Specific Value [name of selected configuration option] dialog box, click **Save**.

The Create Definition / Specify default values for configuration parameters page reappears.

11. Continue with Specifying Default Values for Configuration Options in [“Creating a Template Definition” on page 176](#).

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Creating a Template Overview on page 210](#)
- [Deploying a Template on page 199](#)

## Working with Rules

Device Templates uses rules to supplement the device-specific value capability supplied by CSV files. Specify rules to resolve device specific values at the time of deployment.

You can use rules in addition to CSV files, or instead of CSV files.

The system resolves device specific values by first checking the CSV file and then the rules. If both the CSV file and the rules return a value, the CSV file takes precedence. If neither the CSV file nor the rules return a value, deployment validation will fail. If a rule cannot provide the requisite value, the operator will be prompted to enter it at deployment.

Rules are applied in the order shown. You can change the order as necessary.

You can create rules for devices whose names start with a specific word, or rules for devices with a specific tag.

For the selected configuration option, on the Advanced tab, select the **Device Specific Value** check box.

You can add, edit, move, and delete rules.

You can only select one rule at a time. If no rule is selected, only the **Add** button is enabled.

To add a rule:

1. In the Device Specific Value dialog, select the check box to the left of Specify rules to resolve the value at deploy time.

The rules section of the dialog is activated, displaying the name of the configuration option for which you are setting a device specific value.

2. Click the [ + ] icon.

Two options appear:

- Rule matching tagged device
- Rule matching device name.

3. Select the appropriate option.

A rule appears, depending on your selection in the previous step, either of the following:

- Set to a specific value for devices tagged with a specific tag
- Set to a specific value for devices with name starting with a specific word.

In both cases, the phrase “a specific value” is a link, as are “a specific tag” and “a specific word.”

4. Click either **a specific tag** or **a specific value**.

The **Set \$dsv** field appears.

5. Enter the appropriate value.

If the value you enter is not valid, an error message appears in the form of a tool tip explaining why the entry is invalid.

6. To save your input, click the **OK** button. To clear your input, click the [X] button.

The rule reappears, this time with your input replacing the link.

7. (Optional) To change the sequence of in which the rules will be applied, select a rule and click either the up arrow icon or the down arrow icon.

The selected rule moves to the new position.

8. (Optional) To delete a rule, select the rule and click the [X] button.

The selected rule disappears.

9. (Optional) To clone a rule, select the rule and click the last icon on the right, next to the down arrow.

A clone of the selected rule appears.

10. (Optional) Refresh the rules display by clicking the Refresh icon in the lower bar of the Rules section of the Device Specific Value dialog.

11. When you have finished working with rules, close the Device Specific Value dialog box by clicking **Close**.

#### Related Documentation

- [Managing Template Definitions on page 169](#)
- [Creating a Template Overview on page 210](#)

## Manage CSV Files

- [Managing CSV Files on page 191](#)

### Managing CSV Files

Device Templates uses CSV files to specify device-specific values, in addition to rules (see [“Working with Rules” on page 190](#)). The Managing CSV Files task describes how to import this type of CSV file into Space. For instructions on the procedure for linking the file to a definition and identifying the key column for Device Templates, see [“Specifying Device-Specific Values in Definitions” on page 187](#).

Although designers can configure the parameter governed by the CSV file as editable, operators can neither view nor change the file when they create templates.

The CSV files you use can be any file format (for example, .xls or .txt) as long as they have appropriate columns and key columns. That means one row per device. If you want to reference several interfaces on a single device, then each of the interfaces must have its own column.

You can add a record to a CSV file from within Device Templates. However, if you change a CSV file outside Junos Space, from its native application (for example, Microsoft Excel or Notepad), you must upload it again. You can do this within the device templates workflow.

To add the CSV files you use for template definitions to Junos Space:

1. Select **Device Templates > Definitions** and click the Manage CSV Files icon.

The Manage CSV Files page appears.

2. Click **Upload**.

The CSV File upload dialog appears.

3. Click **Browse**.

The File Upload dialog opens.

4. Navigate to the desired CSV file, select it and click **Open**.

The CSV File upload dialog reappears, this time displaying the name of the selected file.

5. Click **Upload**.

The Manage CSV Files page reappears. The name of the file just imported appears in the left pane.

To display the content of a file, select its name in the left pane. Its content displays in the right pane.

To use the file you just uploaded, either follow the sequence of tasks in [“Creating a Template Definition Overview” on page 175](#) or go directly to [“Specifying Device-Specific Values in Definitions” on page 187](#).

To

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Managing Template Definitions on page 169](#)
- [Creating a Template Overview on page 210](#)

---

## Import Definitions

- [Importing Template Definitions Overview on page 192](#)
- [Importing a Template Definition on page 193](#)

### Importing Template Definitions Overview

The Import Definition facility in Device Templates enables you to import template definitions from XML files and export template definitions to XML files. You can therefore send definitions to other parties and or transfer definitions from one Junos Space fabric to another.

A definition retains its state when it is exported or imported: published definitions that are exported also appear as published when they are imported. Therefore, if you import a definition that was published, but do not want it to be available to operators, you must unpublish it either before you export it or immediately after importing it.



- Related Documentation**
- [Exporting a Template Definition on page 174](#)
  - [Importing a Template Definition on page 193](#)
  - [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)
  - [Managing Template Definitions on page 169](#)

## Importing a Template Definition

Importing a template definition enables you to transfer a definition from another Junos Space fabric.

A template definition is based on a specific OS version, or DMI schema. If the definition you import is based on a schema that is not found, the definition is set to the default DMI schema assigned to the device family to which the definition applies. If you have not set default schemas for your device families, Junos Space defaults to the most recent schema for each.

Before you begin, make sure you have access to a template definition file. Although it is an XML file, the system expects to find it packed into a .tgz file, which is the way the system exports .XML files (see [“Exporting a Template Definition” on page 174](#)).

To import a template definition:

1. Select **Device Templates > Definitions**.  
The Definitions dialog appears.
2. Select **Import Template Definitions** from the Actions dropdown.
3. To locate a definition file, click the **Browse** button.  
The File Upload dialog box opens.
4. Navigate to the appropriate file, select it, and click **Open**.

The Import Definition dialog box reappears, displaying the name of the selected file in the Definition File box.



**NOTE:** Under some circumstances, when the Import Definition dialog box reappears, it displays a message beginning the phrase “Confirm name mapping of”. This message serves as a warning that the system has changed:

- The name mapping on the CSV file associated with the imported definition.
- The name of the definition itself.

5. Click **Import**.

The Manage Template Definitions page reappears, displaying the newly imported template definition.

The newly imported definition has the same name as the original definition, so you may wish to use the Modify action to rename it.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Importing Template Definitions Overview on page 192](#)
- [Exporting a Template Definition on page 174](#)
- [Modifying a Template Definition on page 171](#)
- [Managing Template Definitions on page 169](#)

## CHAPTER 18

# Templates

- [Manage Templates on page 195](#)
- [Create Template on page 214](#)

## Manage Templates

---

- [Managing Templates Overview on page 195](#)
- [Deleting a Template on page 198](#)
- [Deploying a Template on page 199](#)
- [Modifying a Template on page 200](#)
- [Undeploying a Template on page 201](#)
- [Viewing Template Deployment on page 203](#)
- [Auditing Template Configuration on page 205](#)
- [Assigning a Template to a Device on page 206](#)
- [Unassigning a Template From a Device on page 207](#)
- [Publishing a Template To CC on page 208](#)
- [Unpublishing a Template From CC on page 209](#)
- [Creating a Template Overview on page 210](#)
- [Creating a Template on page 210](#)
- [Viewing Template Inventory on page 213](#)
- [Viewing Template Statistics on page 213](#)

## Managing Templates Overview

The Templates page gives you access to the entire template workflow.

The Templates inventory page enables you to view the Junos OS device templates created to deploy configuration changes to multiple Juniper Networks discovered devices simultaneously. Device templates are created on the basis of template definitions. The designer who creates the definitions can assign the template operator settings to configure, review, or validate as necessary. The template operator then deploys the templates.




Device templates appear as rows in a table in tabular view.

From Device Templates > Templates, you can create , deploy, modify, or delete device templates.

### Template States

Device templates have several states that are indicated in the State column of the table: review, disabled, and enabled—ready to deploy. The title and description tell you how to manage the device template. See [Table 33 on page 196](#).

**Table 33: Device Template State Icon Indicators**

State Icon	Description
	Needs Review—The device template cannot be deployed until you review it. This state is triggered by a designer modifying the definition on which the template is based. That template is then automatically moved into the Needs Review state.
	Disabled—The device template cannot be deployed. This state is triggered by the designer unpublishing the definition upon which a template is based. That template is then automatically disabled.
	Enabled—The device template can be deployed. As soon as you finish creating a template, it is enabled automatically.

### Filtering and Searching Templates

You can filter the view of the device templates by state using the Device Templates statistics page. A quick way to view which templates you need to review, modify, or deploy is to click the status type in the Template Status pie chart—Disabled, Enabled, Needs Review. The Manage Templates inventory page appears filtered by the state you selected.

You can also search for templates by name using the Search box at the top-right in the Templates inventory page. If you start typing a template name in the Search box, you see the name in the Search Name list.

### Device Template Detailed Information

Detailed template information in the Manage Templates inventory page is displayed in table columns. [Table 34 on page 196](#) describes the device template detailed information.

**Table 34: Descriptive Information**

Information	Description
Name	Unique name for the template.
Description	Description of the device template.
Device Family	Refers to the Juniper Networks DMI Schema, for example J/M/MX/T/TX.
Last Modified By	Login name of the operator who last modified the template.

Table 34: Descriptive Information (*continued*)

Last Update Time	Time when the template was last updated.
State	Template deployment readiness: needs review, disabled, or enabled.

### Template Actions

From the Manage Templates inventory page, you can perform the following actions:

- Delete Template—See [“Deleting a Template” on page 198](#).
- Deploy Template—See [“Deploying a Template” on page 199](#).
- Modify Template—See [“Modifying a Template” on page 200](#).
- Undeploy Template—See [“Undeploying a Template” on page 201](#).
- View Template Deployment—See [“Viewing Template Deployment” on page 203](#).
- Audit Template Configuration—See [“Auditing Template Configuration” on page 205](#).
- Assign Template to Device—See [“Assigning a Template to a Device” on page 206](#).
- Unassign Template From Device—See [“Unassigning a Template From a Device” on page 207](#).
- Publish Template to CC—See [“Publishing a Template To CC” on page 208](#).
- Unpublish Template from CC—See [“Unpublishing a Template From CC” on page 209](#).
- Create Template—See [“Creating a Template” on page 210](#).
- Tag It—See [“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#).
- View Tags—See [“Viewing Tags” on page 564](#).
- UnTag It—See [“Untagging Objects” on page 565](#).
- Clear All Selections—All selected device templates on the Manage Templates inventory page are deselected. This action works the same as the Select: None link to the left of the Search box.

### Related Documentation

- [Creating a Template Overview on page 210](#)
- [User Privileges in Device Templates on page 166](#)
- [Deploying a Template on page 199](#)
- [Modifying a Template on page 200](#)
- [Deleting a Template on page 198](#)
- [Creating a Tag on page 566](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)
- [Untagging Objects on page 565](#)

## Deleting a Template

Deleting a device template removes it from the Junos Space database.

You need to have the appropriate user privileges before undertaking this task (see [“User Privileges in Device Templates” on page 166](#)).

1. Select **Device Templates > Templates**.

The Templates inventory page appears.

2. Select the device template you want to delete and select **Delete Template** from the Actions dropdown.

A window appears with the **Unpublish from CC** checkbox selected by default. Leave the default setting to ensure that the template is not deployed in a consolidated configuration (CC). If the CC has gone beyond the Prepared state, removal of the template will cause the CC to revert to the Generated state (see [“Managing Consolidated Configurations” on page 58](#)).

3. Click **OK**.

The device template disappears from the Manage Templates inventory page, and from the CC if it was included in one.

### Related Documentation

- [Creating a Template Overview on page 210](#)
- [Modifying a Template on page 200](#)
- [Managing Consolidated Configurations on page 58](#)
- [Publishing a Template To CC on page 208](#)

## Deploying a Template

Deploying a device template allows the Template Administrator or operator to update the device configuration on multiple devices. Deploying a template is the second stage of creating a template. For more information about creating a template, see [“Creating a Template” on page 210](#). You can deploy a template when you create it or schedule it to deploy later.



**NOTE:** When you select devices in a service order selection, you can select devices that are down. This is permitted because the device status could change between the time the deploy is submitted and the time the actual push is performed.

Junos Space allows you to validate the template against the device family and against the device.

To deploy a device template:

1. Select **Device Templates > Templates**.

The Templates inventory page appears.

2. Select the template you want to deploy and select **Deploy Template** from the Actions dropdown.
3. Select the devices to which you want to deploy the template.
4. Click **Next**.

The Review Changes page appears for you to review the validation result.

This is the static template validation related to the CSV file. Does the CSV file have all the device specific values? If there is an error, request that the designer fix the CSV file or ensure that the right devices have been selected to deploy the template.

The validation ensures that the template is syntactically correct against the device family.

5. Click **Validate** to test the template against the selected device.

The device validation ensures that the template is semantically correct. Junos Space performs a check on the device and displays any errors in the Device Validation Result dialog box, which lists all the devices that are affected.

6. If the device validation result is successful, click **OK**.
7. Click **Next**.

The Deployment Confirmation dialog box appears.

You can select the deployment options, including scheduling deployment at a later time.

If you schedule deployment at a later time, set the time and date.

If you do not schedule template deployment, the template deploys immediately.

8. Click **Finish**.

Junos Space creates a job. The Deploy Template Job Information dialog box appears.

9. Click the **job ID** to ensure the template deployment is successful.
10. Click **OK**.
11. If you need to troubleshoot template deployment, see [“Viewing Template Deployment” on page 203](#). You can also navigate to **Audit Logs > Audit Log** to review what configuration was deployed on each device.

The Audit Log page captures all template deployment operations.

#### Related Documentation

- [Creating a Template Overview on page 210](#)
- [Creating a Template on page 210](#)
- [Modifying a Template on page 200](#)
- [Deleting a Template on page 198](#)
- [Viewing Template Deployment on page 203](#)
- [Undeploying a Template on page 201](#)

## Modifying a Template

Modifying a device template allows you to make changes to it before deploying.

If you need to modify the template after deployment, the Template Designer must check the template and the template definition to fix any errors. Thereafter, you must redeploy the template. For more information about deploying a template, see [“Deploying a Template” on page 199](#).

You must have the appropriate user privileges before undertaking this task (see [“User Privileges in Device Templates” on page 166](#)).

A device template must be enabled for you to modify or deploy it.

To modify a device template:

1. Select **Device Templates > Templates**.  
The Templates inventory page appears.
2. Select the device template you want to modify and select **Modify Template** from the Actions dropdown.
3. Modify the template name, description, or configuration settings.
4. Click **Finish**.

Now, you can deploy the template.

If you need to modify the template after deployment, the Template Designer must check the template and the template definition to fix any errors. Thereafter, you must



redeploy the template. For more information about deploying a template, see [“Deploying a Template” on page 199](#)

- Related Documentation**
- [Creating a Template Overview on page 210](#)
  - [Creating a Template on page 210](#)
  - [Deploying a Template on page 199](#)
  - [Deleting a Template on page 198](#)

## Undeploying a Template

Undeploying a device template allows the Template Administrator or operator to remove the template configuration on one or more devices.



**NOTE:** When you select devices in a service order selection, you can select devices that are down. This is permitted because the device status could change between the time the undeploy is submitted and the time the actual pull is performed.

To undeploy a device template:

1. Select **Device Templates > Templates**.

The Templates inventory page appears.

2. Select the template you want to undeploy and select **Undeploy Template** from the Actions dropdown.

The Templates inventory page appears, displaying the Junos Space devices to which the selected template was deployed.

3. Select the devices from which you want to undeploy the template.
4. Click **Next**.

The Review Changes page appears for you to review the configuration changes that would result from undeploying the template from the selected device(s). This page displays the information listed in [Table 35 on page 201](#)

**Table 35: Review Changes Page**

Device Name	Column heading: name(s) of the device(s) to which the template was deployed.
Device Specific Value	Column heading: name of configuration option to which device-specific values were applied (see <a href="#">“Specifying Device-Specific Values in Definitions” on page 187</a> ).
Audit Result	Column heading: displays the last audit result..
Change Summary	Tab: displays the summary of changes that will result from undeployment.
Deployed	Tab: displays the configuration pushed to the device via Template Deploy.

Table 35: Review Changes Page (*continued*)

Audit Result	Tab: displays in sync, not in sync, or unavailable.
	<p>5. To view the Change Summary for a device, click on the name of a device in the table on the left of the Review Changes page.</p> <p>The Change Summary tab appears on the right, displaying any changes resulting from the undeployment.</p> <p>To view the device's current configuration, click the Deployed tab.</p> <p>To view the audit of the deployment of the current template to the device, click the Audit Result tab.</p> <p>6. To validate the changed configuration directly on the device, on the Change Summary tab, click <b>Validate on Device</b>.</p> <p>The device validation ensures that the template is semantically correct. Junos Space performs a check on the device and displays any errors in the Device Validation Result dialog box, which lists all the devices that are affected.</p> <p>7. If the device validation result is successful, click <b>OK</b>.</p> <p>8. Click <b>Next</b>.</p> <p>The Undeployment Confirmation dialog box appears.</p> <p>You can select the undeployment options, including scheduling deployment at a later time.</p> <p>If you schedule undeployment at a later time, set the time and date.</p> <p>If you do not schedule template deployment, the template undeploys immediately.</p> <p>9. Click <b>Finish</b>.</p> <p>Junos Space creates a job. The Deploy Template Job Information dialog box appears.</p> <p>10. Click the <b>job ID</b> to ensure the template deployment is successful.</p> <p>11. Click <b>OK</b>.</p> <p>12. If you need to troubleshoot template deployment, see <a href="#">“Viewing Template Deployment” on page 203</a>. You can also navigate to <b>Platform &gt; Audit Logs &gt; View Audit Logs</b> to review what configuration was deployed on each device.</p> <p>The Audit Log page captures all template undeployment operations.</p>
<b>Related Documentation</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Deploying a Template on page 199</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Viewing Template Deployment on page 203</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Auditing Template Configuration on page 205</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Modifying a Template on page 200</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Deleting a Template on page 198</a></li> </ul>

## Viewing Template Deployment

Viewing template deployment enables you to find out which devices a template has been deployed to, the version of the template that was deployed to each device, and to find out whether the device was in sync with the template at the time the last audit was performed, as well as other relevant details.

To get this information, you must perform an audit at least once after deploying a template. To ensure the information presented to you is current, perform a template configuration audit immediately before viewing template deployment. If there are any differences between template and device since the template was deployed, you can view the differences.

To view template deployment,

1. Select **Device Templates > Templates**.

The Templates inventory landing page appears.

2. Select the template whose deployment you want to view.

3. Choose View Template Deployment from the Actions dropdown.

The View Deployment page appears. It shows the information described in [Table 36 on page 203](#)

**Table 36: View Deployment Table**

Column Header	Description
Name	Name of the device(s) to which the template is deployed.
IP Address	IP address of the device(s) to which the template is deployed.
Template Version	Version of the template currently deployed to the device named in this row.
Deploy Time	Time at which the template was deployed to the device named in this row.
Deployed By	Login ID of the person who deployed the template to the device named in this row.
Job ID	ID of the job constituted by deployment of this template to the device named in this row.
Audit Status	Unavailable, in sync or not in sync.
Audit Time	Time at which the template was deployed to the device named in this row.

4. To view details of a device to which the template was deployed, double-click on the device name or its IP address

The Device Details window appears.

5. To view the change summary represented by a template version, click the number of the template version.

The Template Change Summary window appears, showing the configuration options that were changed due to the configuration snippet being deployed to the device.

6. To view the status of the job represented by deployment of the template, click the job ID.

The Manage Jobs window appears.

7. To view any differences between a template and the configuration on the devices to which it has been deployed, first ensure an audit has been performed on the template since it was deployed (see [“Auditing Template Configuration” on page 205](#)).



**NOTE:** To view current information, audit the template configuration immediately before doing this: see [“Auditing Template Configuration” on page 205](#).



**NOTE:** Each audit is performed as a job. It may take some time to finish auditing, if a large number of devices were selected for auditing.

The possible states for a template audit are displayed in the Audit Status column:

- **Insync**
- **Out of sync**
- **Unavailable**—The difference, if any, between a template and the device to which it is deployed is unavailable unless you perform a template configuration audit after deploying the template: see [“Auditing Template Configuration” on page 205](#).

To view the audit status, click the link for the device in the Audit Status column.

The Template Audit Result window appears.

Under the Audit Status heading, any differences found last time the template was audited are listed. Such differences will be due to someone having altered the device configuration between the two template deployments.

8. To return to the Manage Templates page from the View Deployment page, click **Cancel**.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Managing Templates Overview on page 195](#)
- [Auditing Template Configuration on page 205](#)
- [Undeploying a Template on page 201](#)

## Auditing Template Configuration

To verify the extent to which a template and the device to which it has been deployed match, start by using the audit template configuration action. The audit can be performed immediately or scheduled for a particular time. Performing this action immediately before you view template deployment ensures that you see current information.

To view any differences between a template and the configuration on the devices to which it has been deployed,

1. Select the template whose deployment you want to audit.

2. Select **Audit Template Config** from the Actions dropdown,

The Audit Template Configuration window appears.

3. Select either **Audit Now** or **Audit Later**. If you select **Audit Later**, you must select the date and time by clicking on the listboxes.

4. Click **Confirm**.

The Audit Template Config Information window appears.

5. To view details about the time of deployment, etc., click the job ID.

The Job Manager page appears.

6. To view the audit status, click either **Insync** or **Out of sync** under the column heading Audit Status.

The Template Audit Result window appears. If differences are found, those differences are displayed in the window



**NOTE:** Viewing the audit status without having first performed an audit means that you are only viewing the differences that existed *at the time the last audit was performed*.

### Related Documentation

- [Managing Templates Overview on page 195](#)
- [Viewing Template Deployment on page 203](#)
- [Undeploying a Template on page 201](#)

## Assigning a Template to a Device

Assigning a template to a device enables you set up the template for deployment without actually deploying it or scheduling it for deployment. Assigning a template enables you to put the template into a queue for the device, so that all the accumulated configuration changes waiting in the queue for the device can be reviewed before any of them are deployed (see [“Managing Consolidated Configurations” on page 58](#)).



**NOTE:** A template that has been assigned to a device cannot be deployed directly. An assigned template becomes part of a consolidated configuration.

To assign a template to a device:

1. Select **Device Templates > Templates**.

The Templates page appears.

2. Select the template to be assigned, and select **Assign to Device** from the Actions dropdown.

The Assign to Device page appears.

3. Either

- Select from the table the device to which the template is to be assigned,

or

- Search for the device using the Search field at the top of the page. You can either:
  - Enter the name of the device in the Search field

or

- Select the device name from a list of search results. To do this, either:
  - Start entering the name of the device so that all the devices whose names begin the same way are displayed in a list.

or

- Click the magnifying glass search icon to display a list of device names.

Select the device.

4. Click **Next**.

The Confirm Assignment page appears, displaying the name of the device you selected in the last step.

5. (Optional) To make this assignment visible to others, select the **Publish changes in Consolidated Config** check box. The template assignment will then appear when the View Assigned Shared Objects action is performed on the device, and it will also appear when a consolidated config is generated.



**NOTE:** If you do not select the **Publish changes in Consolidated Config** check box, the template does not become available for deployment by others, even as part of a consolidated configuration. To deploy such a template, the creator of an unpublished assignment must generate his or her own consolidated config.

6. To confirm the assignment of this template to this device, click **Finish**.

The Template Assign Confirmation window appears.

7. To dismiss the Template Assign Confirmation window, click **OK**.

The Assign to Device page reappears.

Once you have assigned a template to a device, you can proceed toward deploying the template by generating a consolidated configuration (see [“Managing Consolidated Configurations” on page 58](#)).

#### Related Documentation

- [Managing Consolidated Configurations on page 58](#)
- [Viewing Assigned Shared Objects on page 56](#)
- [Publishing a Template To CC on page 208](#)
- [Unpublishing a Template From CC on page 209](#)

## Unassigning a Template From a Device

Unassigning a template from a device enables you to remove the template from the device so that it is not considered for deployment. Unassigning a template enables you to remove the template from the queue for the device, so that it can no longer become part of a consolidated configuration (see [“Managing Consolidated Configurations” on page 58](#)). Unassigning unpublishes changes from Consolidated Configuration.

To unassign a template from a device:

1. Select **Device Templates > Templates**.

The Templates page appears.

2. Select the template to be unassigned, and select **Unassign to Device** from the Actions dropdown.

The Unassign from Device page appears, displaying a table containing the devices to which it was assigned.

3. Either

- Select from the table the devices from which the template is to be unassigned,

or

- Search for the devices using the Search field at the top of the page. You can either:

- Enter the name of the device in the Search field

or

- Select the device name from a list of search results. To do this, either:
  - Start entering the name of the device so that all the devices whose names begin the same way are displayed in a list.

or

- Click the magnifying glass search icon to display a list of device names.

Select the device.

4. Click **Next**.

The Confirm Unassignment page appears, displaying the name of the device(s) you selected in the last step.

5. To confirm the unassignment of this template to this device, click **Finish**.

The Template Unassign Confirmation window appears.

6. To dismiss the Template Assign Confirmation window, click **OK**.

The Assign to Device page reappears.

#### Related Documentation

- [Assigning a Template to a Device on page 206](#)
- [Managing Consolidated Configurations on page 58](#)
- [Viewing Assigned Shared Objects on page 56](#)

## Publishing a Template To CC

Publishing a template to CC makes the template available for inclusion in a consolidated configuration (CC). Unless it a template is published to CC, it cannot be included in a CC (see [“Managing Consolidated Configurations” on page 58](#)).

To publish a template to CC:

1. Select **Device Templates > Manage Templates**.

The Templates page appears.

2. Select the template to be published, and select **Publish to CC** from the Actions dropdown.

The Publish Template dialog box appears, asking you to confirm publication of the named template, and the username of the person by whom it was last modified.

3. Click **Publish**.

The Templates page reappears.



Once you have published a template, you can proceed toward deploying the template by generating a consolidated configuration (see [“Managing Consolidated Configurations” on page 58](#)).

- Related Documentation**
- [Managing Consolidated Configurations on page 58](#)
  - [Viewing Assigned Shared Objects on page 56](#)

## Unpublishing a Template From CC

Unpublishing a template from CC makes the template unavailable for inclusion in a consolidated configuration (CC). Unless it a template is published to CC, it cannot be included in a CC (see [“Managing Consolidated Configurations” on page 58](#)).

To unpublish a template from CC:

1. Select **Device Templates > Manage Templates**.

The Templates page appears.

2. Select the template to be unpublished, and select **Unpublish from CC** from the Actions dropdown.

The Unpublish Template dialog box appears, asking you to confirm unpublishing of the named template, and the username of the person by whom it was last modified.

3. Click **Unpublish**.

The Templates page reappears.

- Related Documentation**
- [Managing Consolidated Configurations on page 58](#)
  - [Viewing Assigned Shared Objects on page 56](#)
  - [Publishing a Template To CC on page 208](#)

## Creating a Template Overview

Device templates enable you to update the configuration committed on multiple Juniper Networks devices in one mechanism. Deploying device templates from Junos Space saves time and reduces the risk of errors, especially when you are responsible for updating the configuration on a large number of devices in the same network when many of the configuration parameters are the same.

The Junos Space device templates user interface is based upon Juniper Network device family schemas. The Device Management Interface (DMI) enables Junos Space to connect with and configure Juniper Networks devices.

This topic covers template creation. Template definitions must be available before you can create any templates.

Ensure that you have the appropriate user permissions before undertaking any of these tasks (see [“User Privileges in Device Templates” on page 166](#)).



**NOTE:** Do not use your browser’s Back and Forward buttons to navigate in Device Templates pages.

---

### Related Documentation

- [Creating a Template on page 210](#)
- [Deploying a Template on page 199](#)

## Creating a Template

Device templates enable operators to update the Junos OS configuration running on multiple Juniper Networks devices at once. Operators can create and deploy device templates (based on definitions created by designers) from Platform > Device Templates > Manage Templates.

Before you begin, ensure that you have the appropriate permissions (see [“User Privileges in Device Templates” on page 166](#)).

1. [Selecting a Template Definition on page 210](#)
2. [Naming and Describing a Template on page 211](#)
3. [Entering Data and Finishing the Template on page 212](#)
4. [Deploying the Template on page 213](#)

### Selecting a Template Definition

---

The Select Template Definitions inventory page enables you to select a template definition from which to create a device template.

You can view the details of the template definition by clicking the **Details** button on each definition icon in the image view, or by looking at the grid view.

Operators cannot create or change template definitions, only templates themselves. You can regard the device template as an instance of a template definition. You can only make changes to the configuration parameters in your template if the designer has made them editable.

To select a template definition:

1. Select **Device Templates > Templates** and select the Create Template icon.
2. Select a template definition.



**TIP:** Operators can only see published definitions. If you do not see a definition that you expect to see, the designer might have unpublished it.

3. Click **Next**.

The Create Template page appears.

---

### Naming and Describing a Template

The Create Templates page enables you to view the definition content so that you can name and describe the template you will create from it.

To name and describe a device template:

1. On the Create Templates page, in the Template Name box, enter a name for the device template.

The template name is required. The template name must be unique and limited to 63 characters.

2. Enter a template description in the Description box.

The template description is optional and limited to 255 characters.

If you leave a required field empty, an error message prompts you to fix the error.

## Entering Data and Finishing the Template

---

In your template, you can see only the parameters that the definition designer has made visible. You can edit only the parameters that the definition designer has made editable. If you are looking at a template that is in the Needs Review state, it is necessary to look at all the visible parameters, whether you can change them or not.

1. In the Create Template page, on the left, select a configuration page.

To the right a breadcrumb of that name appears, and in the pane under that, the configuration options.



**TIP:** To navigate through the configuration options on any page, click the breadcrumbs.

As you drill down, successive breadcrumbs appear, with the names of the options you clicked to configure, enabling you to navigate through multiple configuration option levels.

The layout of the configuration settings on the page varies depending on the data type of the configuration option selected.

2. To display the settings that are not immediately evident, click **Click To Configure**.
3. (Optional) For information on the individual parameters, click the little blue information icons to the right of the configuration settings to display the explanations the designer wrote.
4. (Optional) To add comments for individual parameters, click the little yellow comment icons next to the configuration settings and enter your comments.
5. (Optional) Add any required configuration specifics.

You can change only configuration options that the definition designer made editable.



**NOTE:** You must click through all the settings to ensure that all necessary values are populated.

6. (Optional) To add a row to a table, click the plus sign (+).

To remove a row from a table, select the row and click the minus sign (-). To edit a table row, select the row and click the pencil icon (looks like a diagonal line).

7. Enter the data, as appropriate.

If you enter an invalid value, a red exclamation mark icon appears. Click the icon to find out what the value should be.

As appropriate, click the Undo and Redo icons to the right of the fields.

8. Click **Finish**.

The template appears on the Manage Templates inventory page. The template details include the name, description, device family, last modified by login name, last update time, and state. The template is automatically enabled.

### Deploying the Template

---

To deploy a device template to selected devices, see [“Deploying a Template” on page 199](#).

#### Related Documentation

- [Deploying a Template on page 199](#)
- [Modifying a Template on page 200](#)
- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)

## Viewing Template Inventory

To view Device Template inventory, in the Device Templates workspace, click **Templates**. The Templates inventory page appears.

You can display templates in tabular view. You can also do the following:

- Use the Search function to find a particular template.
- Select all templates on a page, or you can deselect them.
- You can refresh the page by clicking the Refresh icon in the status bar.
- When you have selected a template, you can perform actions on it by right-clicking it or hovering over the Actions menu.

#### Related Documentation

- [Deleting a Template on page 198](#)
- [Deploying a Template on page 199](#)
- [Modifying a Template on page 200](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Untagging Objects on page 565](#)
- [Viewing Template Statistics on page 213](#)

## Viewing Template Statistics

The device template statistics page shows the states of both definitions and templates, and the number of templates per device family.

All the charts are interactive. clicking the enabled templates part of the Template Status chart, for example, takes you directly to the page displaying that category of template.



**NOTE:** Do not use your browser’s Back and Forward buttons to navigate in Device Templates pages.

---

The Device Templates statistics page displays the following information:

- **Template Status**—this pie chart shows the templates that are enabled, disabled, and needing review. The templates based on a definition that is currently in a published state are enabled. Templates based on a definition that is currently unpublished are disabled. Templates based on a republished definition are marked as needing review.
- **Template Definition Status**—this pie chart shows published and unpublished definitions (available for template creation and unavailable, respectively).
- **Template Count by Device Family**—this bar chart shows the number of templates per device family (each template can apply to only one device family).

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Changing Template Definition States on page 167](#)
- [Viewing Template Inventory on page 213](#)
- [Managing Template Definitions on page 169](#)
- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)

---

## Create Template

- [Creating a Template Overview on page 214](#)
- [Creating a Template on page 215](#)

### Creating a Template Overview

Device templates enable you to update the configuration committed on multiple Juniper Networks devices in one mechanism. Deploying device templates from Junos Space saves time and reduces the risk of errors, especially when you are responsible for updating the configuration on a large number of devices in the same network when many of the configuration parameters are the same.

The Junos Space device templates user interface is based upon Juniper Network device family schemas. The Device Management Interface (DMI) enables Junos Space to connect with and configure Juniper Networks devices.

This topic covers template creation. Template definitions must be available before you can create any templates.

Ensure that you have the appropriate user permissions before undertaking any of these tasks (see [“User Privileges in Device Templates” on page 166](#)).



**NOTE:** Do not use your browser's Back and Forward buttons to navigate in Device Templates pages.

---

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Creating a Template on page 210](#)
- [Deploying a Template on page 199](#)

## Creating a Template

Device templates enable operators to update the Junos OS configuration running on multiple Juniper Networks devices at once. Operators can create and deploy device templates (based on definitions created by designers) from Platform > Device Templates > Manage Templates.

Before you begin, ensure that you have the appropriate permissions (see [“User Privileges in Device Templates” on page 166](#)).

1. [Selecting a Template Definition on page 215](#)
2. [Naming and Describing a Template on page 215](#)
3. [Entering Data and Finishing the Template on page 216](#)
4. [Deploying the Template on page 217](#)

---

### Selecting a Template Definition

The Select Template Definitions inventory page enables you to select a template definition from which to create a device template.

You can view the details of the template definition by clicking the **Details** button on each definition icon in the image view, or by looking at the grid view.

Operators cannot create or change template definitions, only templates themselves. You can regard the device template as an instance of a template definition. You can only make changes to the configuration parameters in your template if the designer has made them editable.

To select a template definition:

1. Select **Device Templates > Templates** and select the Create Template icon.
2. Select a template definition.



**TIP:** Operators can only see published definitions. If you do not see a definition that you expect to see, the designer might have unpublished it.

3. Click **Next**.

The Create Template page appears.

---

### Naming and Describing a Template

The Create Templates page enables you to view the definition content so that you can name and describe the template you will create from it.

To name and describe a device template:

1. On the Create Templates page, in the Template Name box, enter a name for the device template.

The template name is required. The template name must be unique and limited to 63 characters.

2. Enter a template description in the Description box.

The template description is optional and limited to 255 characters.

If you leave a required field empty, an error message prompts you to fix the error.

### Entering Data and Finishing the Template

---

In your template, you can see only the parameters that the definition designer has made visible. You can edit only the parameters that the definition designer has made editable. If you are looking at a template that is in the Needs Review state, it is necessary to look at all the visible parameters, whether you can change them or not.

1. In the Create Template page, on the left, select a configuration page.

To the right a breadcrumb of that name appears, and in the pane under that, the configuration options.



**TIP:** To navigate through the configuration options on any page, click the breadcrumbs.

As you drill down, successive breadcrumbs appear, with the names of the options you clicked to configure, enabling you to navigate through multiple configuration option levels.

The layout of the configuration settings on the page varies depending on the data type of the configuration option selected.

2. To display the settings that are not immediately evident, click **Click To Configure**.
3. (Optional) For information on the individual parameters, click the little blue information icons to the right of the configuration settings to display the explanations the designer wrote.
4. (Optional) To add comments for individual parameters, click the little yellow comment icons next to the configuration settings and enter your comments.
5. (Optional) Add any required configuration specifics.

You can change only configuration options that the definition designer made editable.



**NOTE:** You must click through all the settings to ensure that all necessary values are populated.

6. (Optional) To add a row to a table, click the plus sign (+).

To remove a row from a table, select the row and click the minus sign (-). To edit a table row, select the row and click the pencil icon (looks like a diagonal line).

7. Enter the data, as appropriate.



If you enter an invalid value, a red exclamation mark icon appears. Click the icon to find out what the value should be.

As appropriate, click the Undo and Redo icons to the right of the fields.

8. Click **Finish**.

The template appears on the Manage Templates inventory page. The template details include the name, description, device family, last modified by login name, last update time, and state. The template is automatically enabled.

### Deploying the Template

To deploy a device template to selected devices, see [“Deploying a Template” on page 199](#).

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Deploying a Template on page 199](#)
- [Modifying a Template on page 200](#)
- [Publishing and Unpublishing a Template Definition on page 170](#)



## PART 4

# Images and Scripts

- [Overview on page 221](#)
- [Device Images on page 225](#)
- [Scripts on page 227](#)
- [Operations on page 231](#)
- [Script Bundles on page 233](#)
- [Configuration: Device Images on page 235](#)
- [Configuration: Scripts on page 249](#)
- [Configuration: Operations on page 269](#)
- [Configuration: Script Bundles on page 275](#)
- [Administration: Scripts on page 281](#)
- [Administration: Operations on page 285](#)



## CHAPTER 19

# Overview

- [Device Images and Scripts Overview on page 221](#)

### Device Images and Scripts Overview

---

In Junos Space, a device image is a software installation package that enables you to upgrade or downgrade from one Junos operating system (Junos OS) release to another. Scripts are configuration and diagnostic automation tools provided by Junos OS.

Device Images and Scripts is a workspace in the Junos Space Network Application Platform that enables you to manage these device images and scripts.

You can access the Images and Scripts workspace by clicking **Images and Scripts** on the taskbar.

The Images and Scripts workspace enables you to perform the following tasks:

- Manage device images

You can upload device images from your local file system and deploy these device images to a device or onto multiple devices of the same device family simultaneously. After uploading device images, you can stage a device image on a device, verify the checksum, and deploy the staged image whenever required. You can also schedule the staging, deployment, and validation of device images.

- Manage scripts

You can import multiple scripts into the Junos Space server and perform various tasks such as modifying the scripts, viewing their details, exporting their content, comparing them, and deploying them on multiple devices simultaneously. After you deploy scripts onto devices, you can use Junos Space to enable, disable, and execute them on those devices.

- Manage operations

You create, manage, and execute operations that combine multiple script and image tasks, such as upgrading images and deploying or executing scripts, into a single bundle for efficient use and reuse.

- Manage script bundles

You can group multiple op scripts into a script bundle. Script bundles can be deployed and executed on devices. You can also modify and delete script bundles.

## User Roles

The Junos Space user administrator creates users and assigns roles (permissions) so that users can access and perform different tasks. You must be given access to a page in order to view it. While Junos Space allows the admin to create users and control their access to different tasks, it also has a set of predefined user roles. [Table 37 on page 222](#) describes the Device Images and Scripts tasks to which different users have access, based on the roles the admin assigns to them.

You can create users and manage them on the Users page, if you have user administrator permissions. To create and manage these users, select **Network Application Platform > Users > User Accounts**. The Users page lists the existing users. Use this page to create and assign roles to Device Images and Scripts users.

You can enable and disable scripts on devices that use Junos Space only if you are a superuser with complete permissions or a user who has been given maintenance privileges.



**NOTE:** The Junos OS management process executes commit scripts with root permissions, not the permission levels of the user who is committing the script. If the user has the necessary access permissions to commit the configuration, then Junos OS performs all actions of the configured commit scripts, regardless of the privileges of the user who is committing the script.

**Table 37: Device Images and Scripts User Roles**

User Role	Permitted Tasks
For Device Images	
Device Image Manager	Viewing, uploading, modifying, deleting, staging, verifying the checksum of, and deploying device images.
Device Script Manager	Viewing, importing, modifying, comparing, deleting, deploying, enabling, disabling, verifying, removing, and viewing results.
For Scripts	
Device Script Read Only User	Viewing Scripts and Script Bundles pages. Exporting scripts.
Device Image Read Only User	Viewing Images pages.

- Related Documentation**
- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
  - [Operations Overview on page 231](#)
  - [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)
  - [Script Bundles Overview on page 233](#)







## CHAPTER 20

# Device Images

- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)

### Device Images Overview

---

In Junos Space, a device image is a software installation package that enables you to upgrade or downgrade from one Junos operating system (Junos OS) release to another. You can download these device images from <https://www.juniper.net/customers/support/>. For more information about downloading the device image, see the *Junos OS Installation and Upgrade Guide*.

Junos Space facilitates management of device images for devices running Junos OS by enabling you to upload device images from your local file system and deploy these device images onto a device or onto multiple devices of the same device family simultaneously. You can modify the platforms supported by the device image and the description of the device image. After uploading device images, you can stage a device image on a device, verify the checksum, and deploy the staged image whenever required. You can also schedule the staging, deployment, and validation of device images.

[Table 38 on page 225](#) describes the Images page. The fields **File Name** and **Version** have the drop down list enabled with the filter functionality, which has an input field wherein you can enter the filter criteria. On applying the filter(s), the table contents display only the values that match the filter criteria. The field **Series**, however, does not support the filter option.

**Table 38: Manage Images Page**

Field	Description
File Name	Name of the device image.
Version	Version of the device image.
Series	Series supported by the device image.

You can perform the following tasks from the Images page:

- Stage an image on devices
- Verify the checksum

- Deploy device images
- Delete device images
- Modify device images

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Deploying Device Images on page 239](#)
- [Staging Device Images on page 236](#)
- [Modifying Device Image Details on page 245](#)
- [Uploading Device Images to Junos Space on page 235](#)
- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)
- [Script Bundles Overview on page 233](#)
- [Operations Overview on page 231](#)

## CHAPTER 21

# Scripts

- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

### Scripts Overview

---

Scripts are configuration and diagnostic automation tools provided by Junos OS. They help reduce network downtime and configuration complexity, automate common tasks, and decrease the time to problem resolution. Junos OS scripts are of three types: commit, op, and event scripts.

- **Commit scripts:** Commit scripts enforce custom configuration rules and can be used to automate configuration tasks, enforce consistency, prevent common mistakes, and more. Every time a new candidate configuration is committed, the active commit scripts are called and inspect the new candidate configuration. If a configuration violates your custom rules, the script can instruct the Junos OS to perform various actions, including making changes to the configuration, and generating custom, warning, and system log messages.
- **Op scripts:** Op scripts enable you to add your own commands to the operational mode CLI. They can automate the troubleshooting of known network problems, and correcting them.
- **Event scripts:** Event scripts use event policies to enable you to automate network troubleshooting by diagnosing and fixing issues, monitoring the overall status of the router, and examining errors periodically. Event scripts are similar to op scripts but are triggered by events that occur on the device.

Using Junos Space you can import multiple scripts into the Junos Space server. After importing scripts, you can perform various tasks such as modifying the scripts, viewing their details, exporting their content, comparing them, viewing their association with devices and deploying them on multiple devices simultaneously. After you deploy scripts onto devices, you can use Junos Space to enable, disable, and execute them on those devices. You can remove the scripts from the devices as well. To help ensure that the deployed scripts are not corrupt, you can verify the checksum of the scripts.

Junos Space also supports task scheduling. You can specify the date and time when you want a script to be deployed, verified, enabled, disabled, removed, or executed.

Junos Space provides an option to associate scripts to devices. It maintains this association with the information pertaining to the current status of the script. Based on this feature, Junos Space supports the following operations:

- Associating scripts with devices and maintaining the association
- Displaying the status (version, enabled/disabled) of scripts on the devices
- Displaying the results of script execution on the devices
- Upgrading the scripts to the latest version on some or all the associated devices
- Auto upgrading the scripts on the associated devices, whenever the script is modified from Junos Space
- Removing the script-device association



**NOTE:**

- You can perform script related operations (enable/disable/remove/verify/execute scripts, excluding stage scripts) only if the scripts are associated with the devices.
- If you want to delete scripts from Junos space, first remove the scripts from device, and then delete all the related associations.
- You cannot modify the script type if there is an association with a device. You need to first remove the scripts from device, and then modify the script type.

The fields **Script Name**, **Type**, **Format**, and **Latest Revision** have the drop down list enabled with the filter option, which has an input field wherein you can enter the filter criteria. On applying the filter(s), the table contents display only the values that match the filter criteria. The fields **Creation Date**, **Last Updated Time**, and **Association** however, do not support the filter option.

**Table 39: Manage Scripts Page Fields Description**

Field	Description
Script Name	Name of the script file
Descriptive Name	Descriptive name of the script
Type	Type of script: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Commit script</li> <li>• Op script</li> <li>• Event script</li> </ul>
Format	Format of the script file: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XSL</li> <li>• SLAX</li> </ul>

Table 39: Manage Scripts Page Fields Description (*continued*)

Field	Description
Version	Latest version number of the script.
Creation Time	Date and time when the script was created.
Last Updated Time	Latest time when the script was last updated.
Association	The associated devices for a script are displayed when you click <b>View</b> under <b>Associations</b>

You can perform the following tasks from the Scripts page:

- Import scripts
- View script details
- Modify scripts
- Modify script types
- Compare script versions
- Delete scripts
- Export scripts in .tar format
- Stage Scripts on Devices
- View Associated Devices
- View execution results
- Verify the checksum of scripts on devices
- View verification results
- Enable scripts on devices
- Disable scripts on devices
- Remove scripts from devices
- Execute scripts on devices

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Device Images and Scripts Overview on page 221](#)
- [Importing Scripts on page 265](#)
- [Viewing Script Details on page 281](#)
- [Modifying a Script on page 249](#)
- [Modifying Script Types on page 250](#)
- [Comparing Script Versions on page 250](#)
- [Deleting Scripts on page 252](#)
- [Exporting Scripts in Tar Format on page 283](#)

- [Staging Scripts on Devices on page 253](#)
- [Viewing Execution Results on page 263](#)
- [Verifying the Checksum of Scripts on Devices on page 254](#)
- [Viewing Verification Results on page 282](#)
- [Enabling Scripts on Devices on page 256](#)
- [Disabling Scripts on Devices on page 258](#)
- [Removing Scripts from Devices on page 259](#)
- [Executing Scripts on Devices on page 261](#)
- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
- [Script Bundles Overview on page 233](#)
- [Operations Overview on page 231](#)
- [Viewing Associated Devices on page 254](#)

## CHAPTER 22

# Operations

- [Operations Overview on page 231](#)

### Operations Overview

---

In Junos Space, a device image is a software installation package that enables you to upgrade or downgrade from one Junos operating system (Junos OS) release to another. Scripts are configuration and diagnostic automation tools provided by Junos OS.

Junos Space enables you to simultaneously execute scripts and device images by allowing you to group tasks, such as staging device images and deploying or executing scripts, into a single operation. This facilitates efficient use and reuse.

Using the Operations task, you can:

- Create an operation
- Modify an operation
- Create a copy of an existing operation
- Execute (or run) an operation
- Delete an operation
- View information about operations in four stages of execution (successful, failed, in progress, and scheduled).

#### **Related Documentation**

- [Creating an Operation on page 269](#)
- [Modifying an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Running an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Copying an Operation on page 272](#)
- [Viewing Operations Results on page 285](#)
- [Deleting an Operation on page 273](#)
- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)
- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
- [Script Bundles Overview on page 233](#)





## CHAPTER 23

# Script Bundles

- [Script Bundles Overview on page 233](#)

### Script Bundles Overview

---

Scripts are configuration and diagnostic automation tools provided by Junos OS. They help reduce network downtime and configuration complexity, automate common tasks, and decrease the time to problem resolution. Junos OS scripts are of three types: commit, op, and event scripts.

Junos Space allows you to group multiple op scripts into a script bundle. To create a script bundle, you must first import the scripts that you want to include in the script bundle (see [“Importing Scripts” on page 265](#)). The script bundles that you create are displayed on the Script Bundles page. Script bundles can be deployed and executed on devices. You can also modify and delete script bundles. For more information about scripts, see [“Scripts Overview” on page 227](#).

Based on the user role assigned to your username, Junos Space enables and disables different tasks. For more information about Network Application Platform— User roles see, [“Device Images and Scripts Overview” on page 221](#).

You can execute the following tasks from the Script Bundles page:

- Create script bundles
- Deploy script bundles to devices
- Execute script bundles on devices
- Modify a script bundle
- Delete script bundles

#### Related Documentation

- [Creating a Script Bundle on page 275](#)
- [Deploying Script Bundles on Devices on page 278](#)
- [Executing Script Bundles on Devices on page 279](#)
- [Modifying a Script Bundle on page 276](#)
- [Deleting Script Bundles on page 278](#)

- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)
- [Operations Overview on page 231](#)

## CHAPTER 24

# Configuration: Device Images

- [Uploading Device Images to Junos Space on page 235](#)
- [Viewing Device Image Deployment Results on page 236](#)
- [Staging Device Images on page 236](#)
- [Verifying the Checksum on page 238](#)
- [Deploying Device Images on page 239](#)
- [Deleting Device Images on page 245](#)
- [Modifying Device Image Details on page 245](#)
- [Viewing and Deleting MD5 Validation Results on page 246](#)

### Uploading Device Images to Junos Space

---

To deploy a device image that uses Junos Space, you must first download the device image from the Juniper Networks Support webpage <http://www.juniper.net/customers/support/>. Download the device image to the local file system of your workstation or client, and then upload it into the Junos Space server. Once the image is uploaded, you can stage a device image, verify the checksum, deploy the device image on one or more devices, modify the description and supported platforms, and also delete the device image from Junos Space.

To upload device images:

1. Select **Images and Scripts** > **Images** and select the Import Image icon..

The Upload Image dialog box appears.

2. Click **Browse**.

The File Upload dialog box displays the directories and folders on your local file system.

3. Navigate to the device image file and click **Open**.

4. Click **Upload**.

The time taken to upload the file depends on the size of the device image and the connection speed between the local machine and the Junos Space server. Once the file is uploaded onto the platform, it is listed on the Images page.

- Related Documentation**
- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
  - [Deploying Device Images on page 239](#)
  - [Staging Device Images on page 236](#)

---

## Viewing Device Image Deployment Results

You can view the results of device image deployment and also filter these results to display only the failures in deployment.

To view deployment results:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Images** and click the **View Deploy Results** icon.  
The View Deploy Results page displays the job Id, timestamp, job description, scripts executed, and the results of the device images that you deployed on devices.
2. To view only the failures in deployment, select the **Show Failures** check box.
3. Click **Close** to return to the Images page.

- Related Documentation**
- [Deploying Device Images on page 239](#)
  - [Staging Device Images on page 236](#)

---

## Staging Device Images

Junos Space enables you to stage an image on one device or on multiple devices of the same device family simultaneously. Staging an image enables you to hold a device image on a device, ready to be deployed when needed. At any given time, you can stage only a single device image. Staging images repeatedly on a device merely replaces the staged device image. While staging device images, you can also delete existing device images from the device. After you stage a device image, you can verify the checksum to ensure that the device image was transferred completely.

To stage an image on devices:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Images**.  
The Images page appears.
2. Select the selected device image and select **Stage Image on Device**. This page displays a list of the Junos Space devices.
3. Select the device or devices on which you want to stage the device image, by using either of two selection modes—manual or tag-based. These options are mutually exclusive. If you select one, the other is disabled. .



**NOTE:** By default the **Select by Device** option is selected and the full list of devices is displayed.

---

4. To select devices manually:

- Click the **Select by Device** option and select the device(s) on which you want to stage the device image.

The Select Devices status bar shows the total number of devices that you selected, dynamically updating as you select.

- To select all the devices, select the check box in the column header next to Host Name.

5. To select devices based on tags:

- Click the **Select by Tags** option. The Select by tags list is activated.
- Click the arrow on the **Select by Tags** list. A list of tags defined on devices in the Junos Space system appears.
  - The list displays two subcategories of tags—Public and Private.
  - A check box is available next to each tag name.
  - You can select one or more check boxes to select one or more tags.
  - When you enter text in the **Select by Tags** field left of the **OK** button, if a match is found, a suggestion is made, and you can select it.
- Select the check boxes next to the displayed tag names as desired, or search for specific tags. When you have made your selection, click **OK** to save the selected tags.
  - The total number of devices associated with the selected tags appears in the **Select Devices** status bar above the options.
  - The selected tags appear in the status bar below the radio buttons, next to the **Tags Selected** label. An [X] icon appears after each tag name. You can use the [X] icon to clear any tag from the list. The device count in the Select Devices status bar decrements accordingly.
  - Below this lower status bar appears the **Preview of Selections** list, displaying a table showing the selected devices and their details.

6. To delete existing device images from the device, expand the **Staging Options** section and select the **Delete any existing image before download** check box. This deletes all .tgz files and files whose filenames begin with **jinstall**.

7. To schedule a time for staging the device image, select the **Schedule at a later time** check box and use the lists to specify the date and time.

8. Click **Stage Image**.

The image is staged on the selected device or devices and a Jobs dialog box displays the job ID.

9. To verify the status of this job, click the job ID link or navigate to the Jobs page and view the status of the job. When there is a failure in the staging of the device image, you can view the reason for failure within the job description.

To verify the checksum of the staged device image, see [“Verifying the Checksum” on page 238](#).

**Table 40: Stage Image On Devices Dialog Box Fields Descriptions**

Field	Description
Image Name	Name of the device image.
Host Name	Identifier used for network communication between Junos Space and the Junos OS device.
IP Address	IP address of the device.
Platform	Model number of the device.
Serial Number	Serial number of the device chassis.
Software Version	Operating system firmware version running on the device.

- Related Documentation**
- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
  - [Deploying Device Images on page 239](#)
  - [Verifying the Checksum on page 238](#)

## Verifying the Checksum

When you stage an image on a device that use Junos Space, sometimes the device image might not get completely transferred to the device. Verifying the checksum helps validate the completeness of the staged device image.

To verify the checksum:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Images**.  
The Images page appears.
2. Select the image whose checksum you want to verify.
3. Select **Verify Checksum** from the Actions dropdown.  
The Images dialog box appears.
4. Select the devices that have the device image staged on them.
5. To schedule a time for verifying the checksum, select the **Schedule a later time** check box and use the lists to specify the date and time.
6. Click **Verify**.  
The selected image is verified and a Jobs dialog box displays the job ID.
7. To check the status of verification you can click on the job ID link or navigate to the Jobs page and view the job status.

- Related Documentation**
- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
  - [Deploying Device Images on page 239](#)

## Deploying Device Images

Junos Space enables you to deploy device images onto a device or on multiple devices of the same device family simultaneously. During deployment, a device image is installed on the device. After you deploy an image onto a device, you can reboot the device, delete the device image from the device, check the device image's compatibility with the current configuration of the device, and load the image when even a single statement is valid. Using an image that is already staged on a device eliminates the time taken to load the device image on a device and directly jumps to the installation process. Junos Space also enables you to schedule a time when you want the image to be deployed.

On dual Routing Engine platforms, you can also do an in-service software upgrade (ISSU) between two different Junos software releases with no disruption on the control plane and with minimal disruption of traffic. This provides the following benefits:

- Eliminates network downtime during software image upgrades
- Reduces operating costs, while delivering higher service levels
- Allows fast implementation of new features.

During the ISSU, the backup Routing Engine is rebooted with the new software package and switched over to make it the new primary Routing Engine. The former primary Routing Engine can also be upgraded to the new software and rebooted.

[Table 41 on page 239](#) describes the devices and software releases that support ISSU.

**Table 41: Routing Platforms and Software Releases Supporting ISSU**

Routing Platform	Software Release
M120 router	Junos 9.2 or later
M320 router	Junos 9.0 or later
MX-series Ethernet Services router	Junos 9.3 or later
<b>NOTE:</b> Unified ISSU for MX-series does not support IEEE 802.1ag OAM, IEEE 802.3ah, and LACP protocols.	
T320 router	Junos 9.0 or later
T640 routing node	Junos 9.0 or later
T1600 routing node	Junos 9.1 or later
TX Matrix platform	Junos 9.3 or later

Additionally you must note the following in connection with doing an ISSU:

- You can upgrade to a software version that supports unified ISSU from a software version that does not support unified ISSU only by means of a conventional upgrade. During the conventional upgrade, all line modules are reloaded, all subscribers are dropped, and traffic forwarding is interrupted until the upgrade is completed.
- The armed (upgrade) release must be capable of being upgraded to from the currently running release.
- All applications that are configured on the router must support unified ISSU and stateful SRP switchover.
- If one or more unified ISSU-challenged applications are configured and you proceed with a unified ISSU, the unified ISSU process forces a conventional upgrade on the router.
- To perform ISSU on an MX device, you must manually configure the device to enable **Non-stop bridging**, in addition to the GRES and NSR that Space enables on the dual RE device for ISSU.



**NOTE:** We strongly recommend that you configure the Master only IP on the dual Routing Engine device. Dual Routing Engine devices without Master only configuration are not yet fully supported on Junos Space.

---

For complete details about the protocols, features, and PICs supported by ISSU, refer to the Unified ISSU System Requirements sections in the *Junos OS High Availability Configuration Guide*.

You can deploy a device image only onto devices or platforms supported by that device image. When you select an image for deployment, the list of the displayed devices contains only those devices that are supported by the selected device image.



**NOTE:** In Junos Space, an SRX Series cluster is represented as two individual devices with cluster peer information. When you deploy a device image on an SRX cluster, the image is installed on both cluster nodes.

---



**NOTE:** If you want to select **Check compatibility with current configuration** for Conventional Deploy Image on a dual RE device, make sure that GRES and NSR are disabled on the device.

---

To deploy device images:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Images**.

The Images page appears.

2. Select the image that you want to deploy.



The selected image is highlighted.

3. Select **Deploy Device Image** from the Actions dropdown.

The Select Devices table at the top of the Deploy Image on Device page displays the devices that are supported by the selected device image. For a description of the fields in this table, see [Table 46 on page 244](#).

4. Select the devices on which you want to deploy the device image by using either of two selection modes—manual or tag-based. These options are mutually exclusive. If you select one, the other is disabled.



**NOTE:** By default the **Select by Device** option is selected and the full list of devices is displayed.

5. To select devices manually:

- Click the **Select by Device** option and select the device(s) on which you want to stage the device image.

The Select Devices status bar shows the total number of devices that you selected, dynamically updating as you select.

- To select all the devices, select the check box in the column header next to Host Name.

6. To select devices based on tags:

- Click the **Select by Tags** option. The Select by tags list is activated.
- Click the arrow on the **Select by Tags** list. A list of tags defined on devices in the Junos Space system appears.
  - The list displays two subcategories of tags—Public and Private.
  - A check box is available next to each tag name.
  - You can select one or more check boxes to select one or more tags.
  - When you enter text in the **Select by Tags** field left of the **OK** button, if a match is found, a suggestion is made, and you can select it.
- Select the check boxes next to the displayed tag names as desired, or search for specific tags. When you have made your selection, click **OK** to save the selected tags.
  - The total number of devices associated with the selected tags appears in the **Select Devices** status bar above the options.
  - The selected tags appear in the status bar below the radio buttons, next to the **Tags Selected** label. An [X] icon appears after each tag name. You can use the [X] icon to clear any tag from the list. The device count in the Select Devices status bar decrements accordingly.
  - Below this lower status bar appears the **Preview of Selections** list, displaying a table showing the selected devices and their details.

7. To specify different deployment options, select one or more of the check boxes in the Common Deployment Options and/or Conventional Deployment Options sections.

See [Table 42 on page 243](#) and [Table 43 on page 243](#) for a description of the deployment options.



**NOTE:** When you do a conventional upgrade of the device image on dual Routing Engines (RE), the image is first deployed on the backup Routing Engine followed by the primary Routing Engine. If deployment fails on the backup Routing Engine, the device image is not deployed on the primary Routing Engine.

8. (Optional) To perform an ISSU on a dual Routing Engine device, open the ISSU Deployment Options section, and check one or more of the check boxes. The ISSU option is enabled only if the selected device has a dual Routing Engine. This capability is shown in the Platform column in the Select Devices table in the upper part of the screen.

See [Table 44 on page 243](#) for a description of the ISSU deployment options.

9. To specify advanced deployment options, select one or more of the Select Advanced Deployment options check boxes. See [Table 45 on page 244](#) for a description of the advanced deployment options.

To configure the script parameters of scripts included in the script bundle:

- a. Select the prescript or postscript bundle that you want to configure, using the respective lists.

If there are no script bundles available, you can create script bundles using the Scripts workspace (see [“Creating a Script Bundle” on page 275](#)) and then re-select the script bundle during script deployment.

- b. Click the **Configure Scripts Parameters** link.

The Configure Script Bundle Parameters page appears. You can hover over the script parameters to view short descriptions about them.

- c. You can edit the value (success or failure) of script parameters using the icon shown below before deploying the script bundles on devices. The changes made to script parameters are saved only on the devices on which the script bundle is executed. The script parameters in the script bundle in Junos Space continues to reflect the original values.



- d. Click **Configure**.

Your changes are saved and the Deploy Image on Device page appears.

10. To schedule a time for deployment, select the **Schedule at a later time** check box and use the lists to specify the date and time.

11. Click **Deploy**.

The selected image is deployed on the specified devices with the deployment options that you specified.

12. To view the result of deployment, navigate to the View Deploy Results page. See [“Viewing Device Image Deployment Results” on page 236](#).**Table 42: Common Deployment Options Description**

Common Deployment Options	Description
Use image already downloaded to device	Use the device image that is staged on the device for deployment.
Archive Data (Snapshot)	Collect and save device data and executable areas.
Remove the package after successful installation	Delete the device image from the device after successful installation.
Delete any existing image before download	Delete all device images with the same filename from the device before deploying the selected device image.

**Table 43: Conventional Deployment Options Description**

Conventional Deployment Options	Description
Check compatibility with current configuration	Verify device image compatibility with the current configuration of the device.
Load succeeds if at least one statement is valid	Ensure that the device image is loaded successfully even if only one of the statements is valid.
Reboot device after successful installation	<p>Reboot the device after deployment is successful. If the device is down, Junos Space waits for the device to come up before initiating the reboot. If the device is not up within 30 minutes, the Image Deployment Job is marked as failed.</p> <p>After rebooting the device, the status of the device is checked every 5 minutes to check whether the device is up.</p>
Upgrade Backup Routing Engine only	Deploys the image to only the backup Routing Engine.

**Table 44: ISSU Deployment Options Description**

ISSU Deployment Options	Description
Upgrade the former Master with new image	After the backup Routing Engine is rebooted with the new software package and a switchover occurs to make it the new primary Routing Engine, the former primary (new backup) Routing Engine is automatically upgraded. If you do not check this option, the former primary must be manually upgraded.
Reboot the former Master after a successful installation	The former primary (new backup) Routing Engine is rebooted automatically after being upgraded to the new software. If this option is not selected, you must manually reboot the former primary (new backup) Routing Engine.

Table 44: ISSU Deployment Options Description (*continued*)

ISSU Deployment Options	Description
Save copies of the package files on the device	Copies of the package files are retained on the device.

Table 45 on page 244 describes the different advanced deployment options.

Table 45: Advanced Deployment Options Description

Advanced Deployment Options	Description
Execute script bundle before image deployment (pre scripts)	<p>With this option, you have the opportunity to configure scripts parameters after you have select a script bundle.</p> <p>Execute the selected script bundle before deploying the device image. This ensures that the scripts in the selected script bundle are executed before the device image is installed on the device.</p>
Select same pre script bundle for post script bundle	Execute the same script bundle on the device before and after device image deployment.
Execute script bundle after image deployment (post scripts)	<p>With this option, you have the opportunity to configure scripts parameters after you have select a script bundle.</p> <p>Execute the selected script bundle before deploying the device image. This ensures that the script bundle is executed after the device image is installed on the device.</p>
Deploy and Enable script bundle before execution	Deploy the selected script bundle, enable the scripts included in the script bundle, and then execute the script bundle on the device.
Disable scripts after execution	Execute the script bundle on the device and then disable the script bundle.

describes the **Select Devices** table fields.

Table 46: Select Devices Table Field Descriptions

Field	Description
Image Name	Name of the device image. (This field is above the table.)
Host Name	Identifier used for network communication between Junos Space and the device running Junos OS.
IP Address	IP address of the device.
Platform	Model number of the device.
Serial Number	Serial number of the device chassis.
Software Version	Operating system firmware version running on the device.

- Related Documentation**
- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
  - [Uploading Device Images to Junos Space on page 235](#)
  - [Script Bundles Overview on page 233](#)

---

## Deleting Device Images

You can delete device images from Junos Space including deleting multiple device images simultaneously.

To delete device images from the Junos Space:

1. From the taskbar, select **Images and Scripts > Images**.

The Images page appears.

2. Select the image that you want to delete.

The selected image is highlighted.

To select multiple device images, click the **Multiple** tab, and select the images you want to delete.

3. Select **Delete Device Images** from the Actions dropdown,.

The Delete Device Image dialog box displays the image filename and the image version number.

4. Click **Delete** to confirm the deletion.

The selected image is deleted from Junos Space and no longer appears on the Images page.

- Related Documentation**
- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
  - [Deploying Device Images on page 239](#)
  - [Staging Device Images on page 236](#)

---

## Modifying Device Image Details

Junos Space enables you to add and modify the description of a device image and also to modify the series that the device image supports.

To modify the parameters of a device image:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Images**.

The Images page appears.

2. Select the image that you want to modify. The selected image is highlighted.

3. Select a device image and select **Modify Device Image Details**.

The Modify Device Image Details dialog box appears.

4. To modify the series, use the Series list and specify the series that the selected device image supports. The platforms that are part of the selected series are automatically displayed in the Platforms box and cannot be modified.

To add or modify the description, you can use a maximum of 256 characters within the Description box.

5. Click **Modify**.

Your changes are saved. These changes can be viewed on the device image detail and summary view.

#### Related Documentation

- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
- [Deploying Device Images on page 239](#)
- [Deleting Device Images on page 245](#)

## Viewing and Deleting MD5 Validation Results

Using Junos Space, you can validate completeness of a device image that is staged on devices. See “[Verifying the Checksum](#)” on page 238. The result of this validation appears on the Validation Results page. From this page you can view and delete the validation results.

- [Viewing the MD5 Validation Results on page 246](#)
- [Deleting the MD5 Validation Results on page 247](#)

### Viewing the MD5 Validation Results

The MD5 validation results indicate whether the device image that is staged on a device is completely transferred to the device or not. The result also indicates whether the device image is not present on the selected devices.

To view the MD5 validation results:

1. From the taskbar, select **Images and Scripts > Images**.  
The Images page displays the list of device images.
2. Select a device image.
3. Select **MD5 Validation Result** from the Actions dropdown.

The Validation Results page displays the results of verification tasks.

[Table 47 on page 246](#) describes the Validation Results page.

**Table 47: Validation Results Page Field Descriptions**

Field Name	Description
Device Image Name	Name of the device image selected for verifying the checksum.
Device Name	Name of the selected devices on which the device images are verified.

Table 47: Validation Results Page Field Descriptions (*continued*)

Field Name	Description
Action	Name of the action performed.
Checksum Result	Result of the verification
Remarks	Observations made during the verification.
Verification Time	Time at which the verification was initiated.

### Deleting the MD5 Validation Results

To delete the MD5 validation results:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Images**.

The Images page appears.

2. Select a device image.

3. Select **MD5 Validation Result**.

The Validation Results page displays the results of all verification tasks.

4. Select the result that you want to delete.

5. Right-click your selection and select **Delete Validation Results**.

The **Delete Validation Results** dialog box displays the selected results.

6. Click **Delete** to confirm.

The selected results are removed from Junos Space.

- Related Documentation**
- [Device Images Overview on page 225](#)
  - [Staging Device Images on page 236](#)
  - [Verifying the Checksum on page 238](#)





## CHAPTER 25

# Configuration: Scripts

- [Modifying a Script on page 249](#)
- [Modifying Script Types on page 250](#)
- [Comparing Script Versions on page 250](#)
- [Deleting Scripts on page 252](#)
- [Staging Scripts on Devices on page 253](#)
- [Viewing Associated Devices on page 254](#)
- [Verifying the Checksum of Scripts on Devices on page 254](#)
- [Enabling Scripts on Devices on page 256](#)
- [Disabling Scripts on Devices on page 258](#)
- [Removing Scripts from Devices on page 259](#)
- [Executing Scripts on Devices on page 261](#)
- [Viewing Execution Results on page 263](#)
- [Importing Scripts on page 265](#)

## Modifying a Script

---

You can use Junos Space to modify the script type, script contents, and the script version to the latest version of the script. You can also add your comments to the details of a script. When you modify a script, the script is saved as the latest version by default. Junos Space modifies both the associated and unassociated scripts. To modify the script type for multiple scripts, see [“Modifying Script Types” on page 250](#).

To modify a script:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The **Scripts** page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.

2. Select the script that you want to modify.
3. Select **Modify Script** from the Actions dropdown.

The **Modify Script** dialog box displays the details of the script.

4. You can modify the script type, script version, script contents, and the comments about the script. Script type will be disabled if it is associated to any device.

5. Click **Next**.

The **Modify Scripts** page displays a list of all the associated device(s) that are preselected. You can deselect the device(s) for which the script need not be upgraded with the current modification. The script is modified immediately and upgrade step alone can be scheduled.

6. Click **Finish**. The **Scripts** page appears.
7. Your changes are saved to the latest version of the script, and the old version of the script is retained. To verify these changes, you can view the details of this script. See [“Viewing Script Details” on page 281](#).

The **Latest Version** column displays the latest version.

8. Click **Cancel** to withdraw your changes and return to the **Scripts** page.

- Related Documentation**
- [Staging Scripts on Devices on page 253](#)
  - [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

---

## Modifying Script Types

Using Junos Space, you can modify the script type of multiple scripts simultaneously.

To modify the script type:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.  
The **Scripts** page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.
2. Select the script whose script type you want to modify.
3. Select **Modify Scripts Type** from the Actions dropdown.  
The **Modify Scripts Type** dialog box displays the details of the script.
4. Use the Bulk Actions list to select a common script type for all scripts. To modify script types of individual scripts, click the **Script Type** column heading and use the drop-down menu to make your changes.
5. Click **Apply**.  
Your changes are saved and the Manage Scripts page appears.
6. (Optional) To verify, double-click the script that you modified and view the script type.

- Related Documentation**
- [Viewing Script Details on page 281](#)
  - [Staging Scripts on Devices on page 253](#)

---

## Comparing Script Versions

Using Junos Space you can compare two scripts and view their differences. This comparison can be done with two different scripts or between the same scripts of different versions.

To compare scripts:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The Scripts page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.

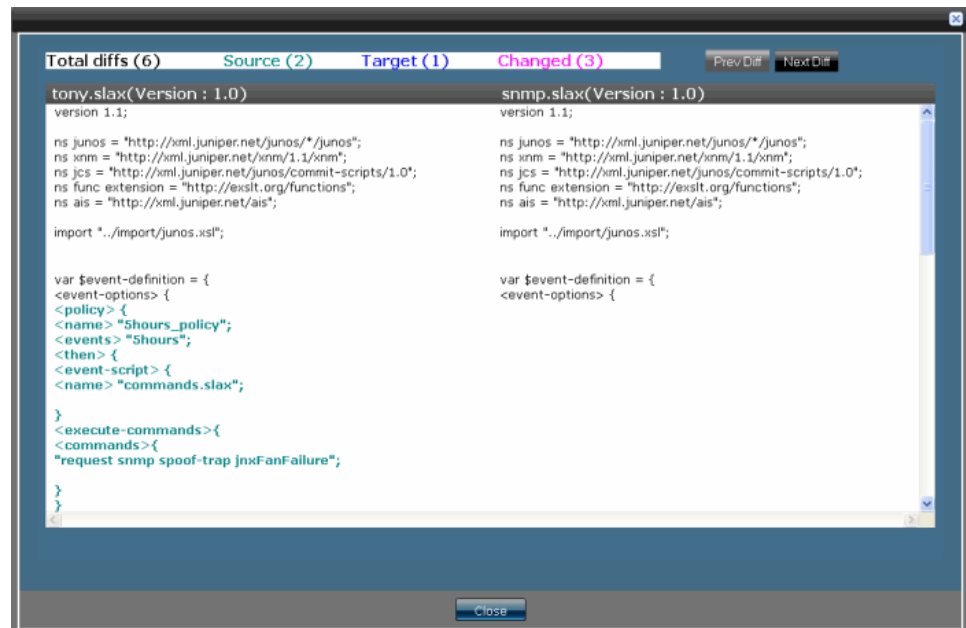
2. Select the script that you want to compare.
3. Select **Compare Script Versions** from the Actions dropdown.

The **Compare Scripts** dialog box appears.

4. Use the **Source script** and **Target script** lists to select the scripts that you want to compare.
5. Use the **Version** lists to specify the versions of the source and target scripts that you have selected.
6. Click **Compare**.

The differences between the scripts are displayed. Use the **Next Diff** and **Prev Diff** buttons to navigate to the next change or the previous change, respectively.

Figure 40: Compare Scripts



The differences between the two scripts are represented using three different colors:

- Green— The green lines represent the changes that appear only in the source script.
- Blue— The blue lines represent the changes that appear only in the target script.
- Purple— The purple lines represent the changes that are different between the two scripts.

After the **Next Diff** and **Prev Diff** buttons, the total number of differences, the number of differences in the source script, the number of differences in the target script, and the number of changes are displayed.

7. Click **x** to close the window and return to the Manage Scripts page.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Modifying a Script on page 249](#)
- [Staging Scripts on Devices on page 253](#)
- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

---

## Deleting Scripts

You can use Junos Space to delete the scripts that you import into the Junos Space server. When you delete a script, all versions of that script and the checksum verification results associated to that script are deleted.

To delete scripts:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The Scripts page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.

2. Select the scripts that you want to delete.



**NOTE:** Only the scripts that are not associated to any of the device(s) can be deleted. You need to remove scripts from device before deleting it from Junos space. When you delete a script, all versions of that script and the checksum verification results associated to that scrip are deleted.

3. Select **Delete Scripts** from the Actions dropdown.

You will receive a confirmation message before you delete the script. If you have not removed scripts from device before deleting it from Junos space, you will receive an action failure message.

The **Delete Device Scripts** dialog box lists the scripts that you chose for deletion.

4. Click **Confirm**.

The selected scripts are deleted and the **Jobs** dialog box displays a job ID link. You can click the link to view the status of the delete operation on the Jobs page.

5. Click **Cancel** to return to the Scripts page.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Modifying a Script on page 249](#)

## Staging Scripts on Devices

Junos Space enables you to stage a single script or multiple scripts on one device or on multiple devices simultaneously. Staging a script enables you to hold a script on a device, ready to be executed when required. Scripts that are staged list only the devices that are not associated to any of the selected script and to the devices with older versions of the selected scripts. This allows you to associate scripts to new devices and also upgrade scripts to the latest version on already associated devices.

To stage a script on devices:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.
2. The **Scripts** page appears.
3. Select the scripts that you want to stage on one or more devices. The selected script is highlighted.
4. Select **Stage Scripts on Devices** from the Actions dropdown.

The **Stage Scripts on Devices** page appears.

5. The **Stage Scripts on Devices** page displays a list the Junos Space devices that are not associated to any of the selected script and also the devices with older versions of the selected scripts.
6. (Optional) To view all the devices, select **Show existing Staged Devices**.
7. Select a device to stage this selected script.

You can select devices by using two selection modes—manual and tag-based. To select devices manually, click the **Select by Device** option. To select devices based on tags, click the **Select by tags** option. These two options are mutually exclusive. If you select one, the other is disabled.

8. (Optional) To schedule a time for staging the device image, select the **Schedule at a later time** check box and use the lists to specify the date and time.
9. Click **Stage**. The script is staged on the selected device or devices. The **Stage Scripts Information** page displays the job ID.
10. To verify the status of this job, click the job ID to view the details, or close the page to go back to the **Scripts** page.

If there is a failure in the staging of the script, you can view the reason for failure within the job description

11. Click **View** under **Associations** column of that staged script to view the details of the Script - Device association, which includes script name, script type, host name, IP address, platform, software, correct staged script version, latest version, and activation status. If you need to view the associated devices for multiple scripts, see [“Viewing Associated Devices” on page 254](#).

**Related Documentation**

- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

- [Viewing Associated Devices on page 254](#)

## Viewing Associated Devices

---

You can view the details of multiple scripts that got staged to a Junos device or multiple devices using Junos Space. The script-device association can be viewed from the Scripts landing page by selecting one or more scripts. Clicking on **View** under the **Associations** column displays the associated devices for a single script.

To view the associated scripts:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The **Scripts** page appears.

2. Select a script.



**NOTE:** Make sure that the script has already got staged to the device(s) using Junos Space.

3. Select **View Associated Devices** from the Actions dropdown.
4. The View Associated Devices Page appears with valid Script - Device(s) association details, which includes script name, script type, IP address, platform, software, correct staged script version, latest script version, and activation status.
5. Click **Return to Scripts Inventory View** to go back to the **Scripts** page.

### Related Documentation

- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)
- [Staging Scripts on Devices on page 253](#)

## Verifying the Checksum of Scripts on Devices

---

A script that is transferred to a device can be corrupt. Verifying the checksum of the scripts that use Junos Space ensures that the transferred script is not corrupt. Junos Space enables you to verify the checksum of multiple scripts that are deployed on the devices.

When you verify scripts that have multiple versions, the latest version of selected scripts are verified with the version of script that is available on the device. If the version of the script present on the device does not match the version that it is compared with, you will be notified by an error message.

To verify the checksum of a script:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The **Scripts** page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.

2. Select the script whose checksum you want to verify.

3. Select **Verify Checksum**.

The **Verify Checksum of Scripts on Device(s)** dialog box.

4. Select the devices that have the script deployed on them, by using either of two selection modes—manual or tag-based. These options are mutually exclusive. If you select one, the other is disabled.



**NOTE:** By default the **Select by Device** option is selected and the full list of devices is displayed.

5. To select devices manually:

- Click the **Select by Device** option and select the device(s) that have the script deployed on them. The Select Devices status bar shows the total number of devices that you selected, dynamically updating as you select.
- To select all the devices, select the check box in the column header next to Host Name.

6. To select devices based on tags:

- Click the **Select by Tags** option. The Select by tags list is activated.
- Click the arrow on the **Select by Tags** list. A list of tags defined on devices in the Junos Space system appears.
  - The list displays two subcategories of tags—Public and Private.
  - A check box is available next to each tag name.
  - You can select one or more check boxes to select one or more tags.
  - When you enter text in the **Select by Tags** field left of the **OK** button, if a match is found, a suggestion is made, and you can select it.
- Select the check boxes next to the displayed tag names as desired, or search for specific tags. When you have made your selection, click **OK** to save the selected tags.
  - The total number of devices associated with the selected tags appears in the **Select Devices** status bar above the options.
  - The selected tags appear in the status bar below the radio buttons, next to the **Tags Selected** label. An [X] icon appears after each tag name. You can use the [X] icon to clear any tag from the list. The device count in the Select Devices status bar decrements accordingly.
  - Below this lower status bar appears the **Preview of Selections** list, displaying a table showing the selected devices and their details.

7. To schedule a time for verification, select the **Schedule at a later time** check box and use the lists to specify the date and time when you want the script to be verified.

8. Click **Verify Checksum**.

The result of this verification appears, and a **Jobs** dialog box displays a job ID link. You can click the link to view the status of the verification operation on the Jobs page. To display the checksum verification results, see [“Viewing Verification Results” on page 282](#).

9. Click **Cancel** to return to the Scripts page.

**Related Documentation**

- [Enabling Scripts on Devices on page 256](#)

---

## Enabling Scripts on Devices

After you stage scripts on devices, you can use Junos Space to enable these scripts on one or more devices simultaneously.

When you enable scripts that use Junos Space, depending on the type of script, an appropriate configuration is added on the device. For example, for a file named `bgp-active.slax`, the configuration added to the device is as follows:

- For a commit script:  
Example: [edit]  
user@host# set system scripts commit file bgp-active.slax
- For an op script:  
Example: [edit]  
user@host# set system scripts op file bgp-active.slax
- For an event script:  
Example: [edit]  
user@host# set system scripts event file bgp-active.slax



**CAUTION:** If the filename of the selected script matches that of any script present on the device, then the script on the device is enabled regardless of its contents.

---

To enable scripts on devices:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The Scripts page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.

2. Select one or more scripts that you want to enable on devices.
3. Select **Enable Scripts on Devices** from the Actions dropdown.

The Enable Scripts on Device(s) page appears.



**NOTE:**

- This operation does not list the devices that are not associated. It also does not list the devices wherein the script is in already enabled state.
  - Only commonly associated devices will be listed for multiple selection.
-



4. Select the devices on which you want the script to be enabled, by using either of two selection modes—manual or tag-based. These options are mutually exclusive. If you select one, the other is disabled.



**NOTE:** By default the **Select by Device** option is selected and the full list of devices is displayed.

5. To select devices manually:
  - Click the **Select by Device** option and select the device(s) on which you want to enable the device script. The Select Devices status bar shows the total number of devices that you have selected, dynamically updating as you select.
  - To select all the devices, select the check box in the column header next to Host Name.
6. To select devices based on tags:
7. Click the **Select by Tags** option. The Select by tags list is activated.
8. Click the arrow on the **Select by Tags** list. A list of tags defined on devices in the Junos Space system appears.
  - The list displays two subcategories of tags—Public and Private.
  - A check box is available next to each tag name.
  - You can select one or more check boxes to select one or more tags.
  - When you enter text in the **Select by Tags** field left of the **OK** button, if a match is found, a suggestion is made, and you can select it.
9. Select the check boxes next to the displayed tag names as desired, or search for specific tags. When you have made your selection, click **OK** to save the selected tags.
  - The total number of devices associated with the selected tags appears in the **Select Devices** status bar above the options.
  - The selected tags appear in the status bar below the radio buttons, next to the **Tags Selected** label. An [X] icon appears after each tag name. You can use the [X] icon to clear any tag from the list. The device count in the Select Devices status bar decrements accordingly.
  - Below this lower status bar appears the **Preview of Selections** list, displaying a table showing the selected devices and their details.
10. To schedule a time for enabling the script, select the **Schedule at a later time** check box and specify the date and time when you want the script to be enabled.
11. Click **Enable**.

The selected scripts are enabled on the devices, and the **Jobs** dialog box displays a link to the Job ID. You can click the link to view the status of this task on the Jobs page.

Click **Cancel** to return to the Scripts page.

**Related Documentation** • [Executing Scripts on Devices on page 261](#)

## Disabling Scripts on Devices

---

After you deploy scripts on devices, you can use Junos Space to disable these scripts on one or more devices simultaneously.

When you disable scripts that use Junos Space, the configuration added on the device is similar to the following:

For example, for a file named `bgp-active.slax`, the configuration added is:  
`user@host# delete system scripts commit file bgp-active.slax`



**CAUTION:** If the filename of the selected script matches that of any script present on the device, then the script on the device is disabled regardless of its contents.

To disable scripts on devices:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The Scripts page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.

2. Select one or more scripts that you want to disable on devices.
3. Select **Disable Scripts on Devices** from the Actions dropdown.



**NOTE:**

- This operation lists only the associated devices by default. Also, the associated devices should have the script in enabled state.
- The already associated devices should have the latest script version, otherwise those devices are also not displayed for the device selection

The Disable Scripts on Device(s) page appears.

4. Select the devices on which you want the script to be disabled, by using either of two selection modes—manual or tag-based. These options are mutually exclusive. If you select one, the other is disabled.



**NOTE:** By default the **Select by Device** option is selected and the full list of devices is displayed.

5. To select devices manually:
  - Click the **Select by Device** option and select the device(s) that have the script deployed on them. The Select Devices status bar shows the total number of devices that you selected, dynamically updating as you select.

- To select all the devices, select the check box in the column header next to Host Name.
6. To select devices based on tags:
- Click the **Select by Tags** option. The Select by tags list is activated.
  - Click the arrow on the **Select by Tags** list. A list of tags defined on devices in the Junos Space system appears.
    - The list displays two subcategories of tags—Public and Private.
    - A check box is available next to each tag name.
    - You can select one or more check boxes to select one or more tags.
    - When you enter text in the **Select by Tags** field left of the **OK** button, if a match is found, a suggestion is made, and you can select it.
  - Select the check boxes next to the displayed tag names as desired, or search for specific tags. When you have made your selection, click **OK** to save the selected tags.
    - The total number of devices associated with the selected tags appears in the **Select Devices** status bar above the options.
    - The selected tags appear in the status bar below the radio buttons, next to the **Tags Selected** label. An [X] icon appears after each tag name. You can use the [X] icon to clear any tag from the list. The device count in the Select Devices status bar decrements accordingly.
    - Below this lower status bar appears the **Preview of Selections** list, displaying a table showing the selected devices and their details.
7. To schedule a time for disabling the script, select the **Schedule at a later time** check box and specify the date and time when you want the script to be disabled.
8. Click **Disable**.

The selected scripts are disabled on the devices, and the **Jobs** dialog box displays a link to the Job ID. You can click the link to view the status of this task on the Jobs page.

Click **Cancel** to return to the Scripts page.

**Related Documentation**

- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

---

## Removing Scripts from Devices

You can use Junos Space to remove the scripts from the devices. The **Remove Script from Devices** option lists only the devices that are currently associated to the selected script(s). For multiple selection, only the commonly associated devices are listed.



**CAUTION:** If the filename of the selected script matches that of any script present on the device, then the script on the device is removed regardless of its contents.

To remove scripts from devices:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The Scripts page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.

2. Select the script that you want to remove from the device
3. Select **Remove Scripts from Devices** from the Actions dropdown.

The **Remove Scripts from Device(s)** page appears.

The **Remove Scripts from Device(s)** dialog box lists the devices the script is associated with.

4. Select the devices from which you want the script to be removed, by using either of two selection modes—manual or tag-based. These options are mutually exclusive. If you select one, the other is disabled..



**NOTE:** By default the **Select by Device** option is selected and the full list of devices is displayed. For multiple selection, only commonly associated devices are listed.

5. To select devices manually:
  - Click the **Select by Device** option and select the device(s) that have the script deployed on them. The Select Devices status bar shows the total number of devices that you selected, dynamically updating as you select.
  - To select all the devices, select the check box in the column header next to Host Name.
6. To select devices based on tags:
  - Click the **Select by Tags** option. The Select by tags list is activated.
  - Click the arrow on the **Select by Tags** list. A list of tags defined on devices in the Junos Space system appears.
    - The list displays two subcategories of tags—Public and Private.
    - A check box is available next to each tag name.
    - You can select one or more check boxes to select one or more tags.
    - When you enter text in the **Select by Tags** field left of the **OK** button, if a match is found, a suggestion is made, and you can select it.

- Select the check boxes next to the displayed tag names as desired, or search for specific tags. When you have made your selection, click **OK** to save the selected tags.
- The total number of devices associated with the selected tags appears in the **Select Devices** status bar above the options.
- The selected tags appear in the status bar below the radio buttons, next to the **Tags Selected** label. An [X] icon appears after each tag name. You can use the [X] icon to clear any tag from the list. The device count in the Select Devices status bar decrements accordingly.
- Below this lower status bar appears the **Preview of Selections** list, displaying a table showing the selected devices and their details.



**NOTE:** The **Force Remove** check box provides an option to remove the script-device association from Junos Space even if it is unable to remove the script(s) from the device(s) due to any connectivity issues. This option needs to be turned on while removing the scripts. The script - device association will be removed regardless of whether this operation has failed or not.

7. Click **Remove**.

The script is removed from the selected devices, and a **Jobs** dialog box displays a job ID link. You can click the link to view the status of the script removal operation on the Manage Jobs page.

8. In the **Manage Scripts** page, click **View** listed under the **Associations** column of those scripts, one by one. The **View Associated Devices** page is displayed with the script - device association details removed for those scripts that got removed.

Click **Cancel** to return to the Manage Scripts page.

**Related Documentation**

- [Staging Scripts on Devices on page 253](#)
- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

## Executing Scripts on Devices

You can use Junos Space to trigger the execution of op scripts on one or more devices simultaneously. Commit and event scripts are automatically activated after they are enabled. Commit scripts get triggered every time a commit is called on the device and event scripts are triggered every time an event occurs on the device or if a time is specified.



**CAUTION:** If the filename of the selected script matches that of any script present on the device, then the script on the device is executed regardless of its contents.

To execute an op-script on devices:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The Scripts page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.

2. Select the op-script that you want to execute on a device.
3. Select **Execute Script on Device(s)** from the Actions dropdown.

The Execute Script on Device(s) page appears .

4. Select the devices on which you want the script to be executed, , by using either of two selection modes—manual or tag-based. These options are mutually exclusive. If you select one, the other is disabled..



**NOTE:** By default the **Select by Device** option is selected and the full list of devices is displayed.

---

5. To select devices manually:

- Click the **Select by Device** option and select the device(s) that have the script deployed on them. The Select Devices status bar shows the total number of devices that you selected, dynamically updating as you select.
- To select all the devices, select the check box in the column header next to Host Name.

6. To select devices based on tags:

- Click the **Select by Tags** option. The Select by tags list is activated.
- Click the arrow on the **Select by Tags** list. A list of tags defined on devices in the Junos Space system appears.
  - The list displays two subcategories of tags—Public and Private.
  - A check box is available next to each tag name.
  - You can select one or more check boxes to select one or more tags.
  - When you enter text in the **Select by Tags** field left of the **OK** button, if a match is found, a suggestion is made, and you can select it.
- Select the check boxes next to the displayed tag names as desired, or search for specific tags. When you have made your selection, click **OK** to save the selected tags.
  - The total number of devices associated with the selected tags appears in the **Select Devices** status bar above the options.
  - The selected tags appear in the status bar below the radio buttons, next to the **Tags Selected** label. An [X] icon appears after each tag name. You can use the [X] icon to clear any tag from the list. The device count in the Select Devices status bar decrements accordingly.

- Below this lower status bar appears the **Preview of Selections** list, displaying a table showing the selected devices and their details.
7. To specify the parameters for script execution, click **Add Parameters**, and specify the parameter name and value in the row that appears.
  8. To schedule a time to execute the script, select the **Schedule at a later time** check box and specify the date and time when you want the script to be executed.
  9. Click **Execute**.

The selected scripts are executed on the devices, and the Jobs dialog box displays a link to the Job ID. You can click the link to view the status of this task on the Job Management page. The results are displayed in an easy-to-read format and does not contain any < output > tags.

Click **Cancel** to return to the Scripts page.

#### Related Documentation

- [Enabling Scripts on Devices on page 256](#)

## Viewing Execution Results

You can use Junos Space to trigger the execution of op script on one or more devices simultaneously. You can also view the execution result of the script.

To view the execution results:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The **Scripts** page appears. From the tool bar on the top right corner of the page, click the icon as shown in [Figure 41 on page 263](#) to open the **View Execution Results** page.

**Figure 41: View Execution Results Icon**



The **View Execution Results** page appears. This page displays the execution history that includes script version, host name, script name, execution status, job result, execution start time and end time.

Figure 42: View Execution Results Page

Host Name	Script Name	Vers...	Status	Results	Execution Start Time	Execution End Time
EX4200-200	op-ptp-name-detail.slax	1.0	Failed	<a href="#">View</a>	Dec 14, 2012 12:41:34 PM IST	Dec 14, 2012 12:41:36 PM IST
ex4200-20	op-ptp-name-detail.slax	1.0	Success	<a href="#">View</a>	Dec 14, 2012 12:41:34 PM IST	Dec 14, 2012 12:41:37 PM IST
ex4200-240	op-ptp-name-detail.slax	1.0	Inprogress	<a href="#">View</a>	Dec 14, 2012 12:41:34 PM IST	Dec 14, 2012 12:41:34 PM IST
ex4200-240	op-mic-pic-offline.slax	1.0	Inprogress	<a href="#">View</a>	Dec 14, 2012 12:41:27 PM IST	Dec 14, 2012 12:41:27 PM IST
EX4200-200	op-ptp-name-detail.slax	1.0	Failed	<a href="#">View</a>	Dec 14, 2012 12:41:02 PM IST	Dec 14, 2012 12:41:04 PM IST
ex4200-240	op-chassis-env.slax	1.0	Success	<a href="#">View</a>	Dec 14, 2012 12:09:30 PM IST	Dec 14, 2012 12:09:43 PM IST
ex4200-240	op-ptp-name-detail.slax	1.0	Success	<a href="#">View</a>	Dec 14, 2012 12:07:54 PM IST	Dec 14, 2012 12:07:58 PM IST

The fields Host Name, Script Name, Version, and Status have the drop down list enabled with the filter option, which has an input field wherein you can enter the filter criteria. If you apply the filters, the table contents display only the values that match the filter criteria. The fields Results, Execution Start Time and Execution End Time do not support the filter option.

Table 48 on page 264 describes the information that appears on the View Execution Result page.

Table 48: View Execution Result Page Fields Description

Field	Description
Host Name	Name of the Device in which the script is executed
Script Name	Name of the script
Version	Executed version of script
Status	Script Execution Job status
Results	Contains a link to view the Script Execution Results
Execution Start Time	The time at which the Execution started
Execution End Time	The time at which the Execution ended

- Click **View** under the **Results** column to view the detailed execution results.

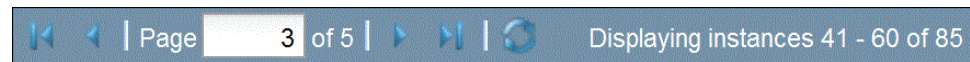
The Execution Result details dialog box displays the script name, version, Host name, Results, Execution Start time and Execution End time. The results displayed in the Execution Result Details page are in the raw HTML format.



3. To view only the result of script Execution click **View** in the Results column.

The Script Execution Job Results page is displayed with the following details like- Device name, Entity name, Script Execution status and Script Execution Result. The result HTML is processed and rendered to allow you to read and understand the Script Execution Results.

**Figure 43: Script Execution Job Results**



**Related Documentation**

- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

## Importing Scripts

Using Junos Space, you can import a single script or multiple scripts (the maximum is 680) at a time to the Junos Space server by clicking the **Add Device Scripts** button. To import scripts, you must first save the scripts on the local file system of your workstation or client, ensure that they are of .slax or .xsl format, and also ensure that they are commit, operation (op), or event scripts.

After importing scripts, you can perform the following tasks:

- View script contents
- Export scripts
- Modify scripts
- Compare scripts
- Verify the checksum of scripts
- View verification results
- Enable and disable scripts on devices
- Remove scripts from devices
- Execute scripts on devices
- Deploy scripts on one or more devices simultaneously

Prior to junos 9.0, evenscripts and op scripts were saved in op directory and enabled under system scripts op hierarchy. However, beginning in Junos 9.0, event scripts are saved in event directory, and enabled under event-script hierarchy.



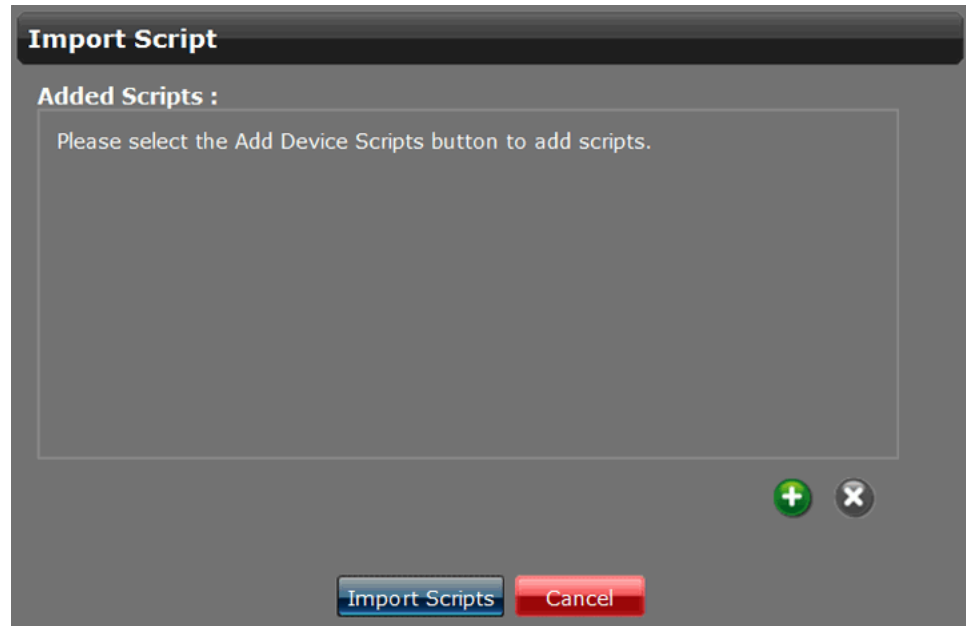
**NOTE:** If you want to import multiple scripts at a time, use the **Firefox** or **Chrome** Web browser. Currently, **Internet Explorer** does not support selection of multiple files. In addition, note that two scripts with the same name cannot be imported into Junos Space server.

To import scripts to Junos Space:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts** and click the Import Script icon on the menu bar.

The Import Script box appears as shown in [Figure 44 on page 266](#).

**Figure 44: Import Scripts Box**



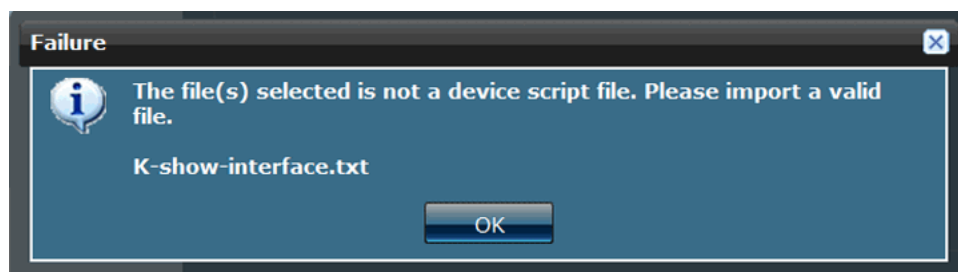
2. Click the Add Device Scripts button . The Add Device Scripts window appears.
3. Click **Browse**. The file upload dialog box displays the directories and folders on your local file system.
4. Select the script or scripts that you want to import (you can select a maximum of 680 scripts at a time), and click **Open**.
5. Click **Add Script** to upload the scripts, or click **Cancel** if you want to go back to the Import Script box.



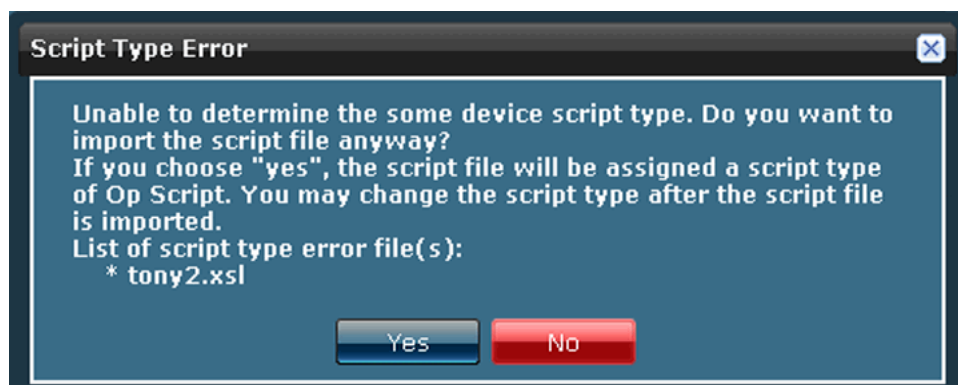
**NOTE:** When you upload multiple scripts, the files are saved on the Junos Space server in the temporary directory `/var/cache/jboss/Script_temp`, where temporary session folders are created and deleted. If you do not log out of Junos Space system using the Log Out button, the temporary session folders are deleted after 30 mins.

If the selected scripts are valid, they are displayed on the Import Script page. If the selected scripts are invalid, you get a failure notice, as shown in [Figure 45 on page 267](#)

Figure 45: Import Script Failure Notice



A script might be valid but of an unrecognized type. That is, it has the correct extension (.xls or .slax) but does not use the correct boilerplate. If you attempt to upload a script that Junos Space does not recognize, you get a script error as shown in [Figure 46 on page 267](#). You can choose to either import or discard the unrecognized script.



6. If you want to remove any script(s) that are displayed in the **Import Script** box, select the script(s) and click the **Delete Scripts** button.
7. Click **Import Scripts**. The selected scripts are uploaded into Junos Space and displayed on the Scripts page.
8. Click **Cancel** to return to the Scripts page.

**Related Documentation**

- [Viewing Script Details on page 281](#)



# Configuration: Operations

- [Creating an Operation on page 269](#)
- [Modifying an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Running an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Copying an Operation on page 272](#)
- [Deleting an Operation on page 273](#)

## Creating an Operation

---

In Junos Space, a device image is a software installation package that enables you to upgrade or downgrade from one Junos operating system (Junos OS) release to another. Scripts are configuration and diagnostic automation tools provided by Junos OS. Junos Space allows you to create operations that combine multiple scripts and image tasks, such as deploying images and deploying or executing scripts, into a single operation for efficient use and reuse.

An operation can contain any number of scripts and other existing operations, but only one device image at a time.

To create an operation:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Operations** and click the Create Operation icon.

The Create Operation page appears.

2. Enter a name and description for the operation.
3. Click the Add (+) icon, and select **Script**, **Image**, or **Operation** from the list.

The **Select Scripts**, **Select Images**, or **Select Operations** dialog box appears depending on what you selected and displays all the Junos Space scripts, images, and operations, respectively, that you can include in the operation.

- To add a script, click the Add (+) icon, and select **Script** from the list. The **Select Scripts** dialog box appears.

Select the scripts and click **Add** to add your selections to the list.

You can edit the action that script should perform (**Stage** or **Execute**), and the **Set Return** parameters.

- To add an image, click the Add (+) icon, and select **Image** from the list. The **Select Images** dialog box appears.

Select the images and click **Add** to add your selections to the list.

You can also edit the action that image should perform (**Stage** or **Deploy**), and various other deployment options. See [“Deploying Device Images” on page 239](#) for more information.

- To add an operation, click the Add (+) icon, and select **Operation** from the list. The **Select Operation** dialog box appears.

Select the operations and click **Add** to add your selections to the list.



**NOTE:** You cannot edit a child operation.

- You can modify the list of selected scripts, images, and operations using the icons described in [Table 49 on page 270](#).

**Table 49: Create Operation Dialog Box Icon Descriptions**

Icon	Description
	Add scripts, image, and operations to the list.
	Delete the selected script, image, or operation from the list.
	Move the selected script, image, or operation to the row above.
	Move the selected script, image, or operation to the row below.
	Make a copy of the selected script, image, or operation, and include it in the operation.
	Edit the options for deploying or executing the scripts or images in the operation. For scripts, you can edit the action type, script parameters, and their values (success or failure). For images, you edit the image deployment options. See <a href="#">“Deploying Device Images” on page 239</a> for more information.
	<b>NOTE:</b> You cannot edit a child operation

- Click **Create** to create the operation and go the Operations page.

To verify whether the operation is created with your specifications, double-click the operation and view its details.

#### Related Documentation

- [Operations Overview on page 231](#)
- [Modifying an Operation on page 271](#)

- [Running an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Copying an Operation on page 272](#)
- [Viewing Operations Results on page 285](#)
- [Deleting an Operation on page 273](#)

## Modifying an Operation

---

Junos Space allows you to edit the parameters of an operation.

To modify an operation:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Operations**.  
The Operations page displays all the operations in the Junos Space database.
2. Select the operation that you want to modify.
3. Select **Modify Operation** from the Actions dropdown.
4. Modify the necessary parameters. See [“Creating an Operation” on page 269](#) for more information.
5. Click **Modify** to save your changes and go to the Operations page.

To verify whether your changes are saved, double-click the operation and view its details.

### Related Documentation

- [Operations Overview on page 231](#)
- [Creating an Operation on page 269](#)
- [Running an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Copying an Operation on page 272](#)
- [Viewing Operations Results on page 285](#)
- [Deleting an Operation on page 273](#)

## Running an Operation

---

Junos Space allows you to execute (or run) operations existing in the Junos Space database on devices.

To run an operation:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Operations**.  
The Operations page displays all the operations in the Junos Space database.
2. Select the operation that you want to execute.
3. Select **Run Operation** from the Actions dropdown.

The Run Operation page appears.

4. Select the devices on which you want to execute the operation.

You can search for specific devices by entering the name of the device in the Find Devices search box.

5. You can also specify a tag for the selected devices so that you can reuse the same group of devices to run a different operation.
6. Click **OK** to run your operation immediately.

You can also schedule a time for the operation to run by selecting the **Schedule at a later time** check box, specifying the date and time when you want to run the operation, and then clicking **Execute**.

The selected operation is executed on the devices, and the Jobs dialog box displays a link to the Job ID. You can click the link to view the status of this task on the Jobs page. The results are displayed in an easy-to-read format and does not contain any < output > tags.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Operations Overview on page 231](#)
- [Creating an Operation on page 269](#)
- [Modifying an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Copying an Operation on page 272](#)
- [Viewing Operations Results on page 285](#)
- [Deleting an Operation on page 273](#)

---

## Copying an Operation

---

You can use Junos Space to create copies of operations existing in the Junos Space database.

To create a copy of an operation:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Operations**.

The **Operations** page displays the operations in Junos Space.

2. Select the operations that you want to copy.
3. Select **Copy Operation** from the Actions dropdown.

The **Copy Operation** dialog box appears, prompting you to enter a new name for the operation.

4. Enter a new name for the operation in the **Destination Name** box.
5. Click **Copy** to create a copy of the operation and go back to the Operations page.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Operations Overview on page 231](#)



- [Creating an Operation on page 269](#)
- [Modifying an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Running an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Deleting an Operation on page 273](#)
- [Viewing Operations Results on page 285](#)

## Deleting an Operation

You can use Junos Space to delete operations from the Junos Space database.

To delete an operation:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Operations**.

The Operations page displays the operations in Junos Space.

2. Select the operations that you want to delete.
3. Select **Delete Operations** from the Actions dropdown.

The **Delete Operations** dialog box lists the operations that you chose for deletion.

4. Click **Confirm** to delete the operation.

The selected operations are deleted and the **Jobs** dialog box displays a job ID link. You can click the link to view the status of the delete operation on the Jobs page.



**NOTE:** When you delete an operation, you do not delete the scripts, images or operations associated with it.

### Related Documentation

- [Operations Overview on page 231](#)
- [Creating an Operation on page 269](#)
- [Modifying an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Running an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Copying an Operation on page 272](#)
- [Viewing Operations Results on page 285](#)



# Configuration: Script Bundles

- [Creating a Script Bundle on page 275](#)
- [Modifying a Script Bundle on page 276](#)
- [Deleting Script Bundles on page 278](#)
- [Deploying Script Bundles on Devices on page 278](#)
- [Executing Script Bundles on Devices on page 279](#)

## Creating a Script Bundle

---

Junos Space allows you to group multiple op and commit scripts into a script bundle. To create a script bundle, you must first import the scripts that you want to include in the script bundle, into Junos Space (see [“Importing Scripts” on page 265](#)).






To create a script bundle:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Script bundles** and select the Create Script Bundle icon.  
The Create Script Bundle page appears.
2. Enter a name and description for the script bundle.
3. Click the Add Scripts (+) icon to add scripts that need to be included into the script bundle.  
The Select Scripts page displays all Junos Space scripts that you can include into the script bundle.
4. Select the scripts that you want to include in the script bundle.  
The selected scripts are highlighted.
5. Click **Add**.  
The selected scripts are included in the **Selected Scripts** section of the **Create Script Bundle** dialog box. You can modify the list of selected scripts using the icons described in [Table 50 on page 275](#).

Table 50: Create Script Bundle Dialog Box Icon Descriptions

Icon	Description
	Add scripts to the script bundle.

Table 50: Create Script Bundle Dialog Box Icon Descriptions (*continued*)

Icon	Description
	Delete the selected script from the script bundle.
	Move the selected script to the row above.
	Move the selected script to the row below.
	Make a copy of the selected script and include it in the script bundle.
	Edit the value (success or failure) of script parameters. This option is disabled when commit scripts are selected.

6. Click **Submit**.

The script bundle is created and displayed on the Script Bundles page.

7. To verify whether the script bundle is created with your specifications, double-click the script bundle and view its details.

#### Related Documentation

- [Deploying Script Bundles on Devices on page 278](#)
- [Modifying a Script Bundle on page 276](#)
- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

## Modifying a Script Bundle

Junos Space allows you to modify a script bundle name, description, number of scripts included in the script bundle, and script parameter value (success or failure) of every script included in the script bundle.

To modify script bundles:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Script bundles**.

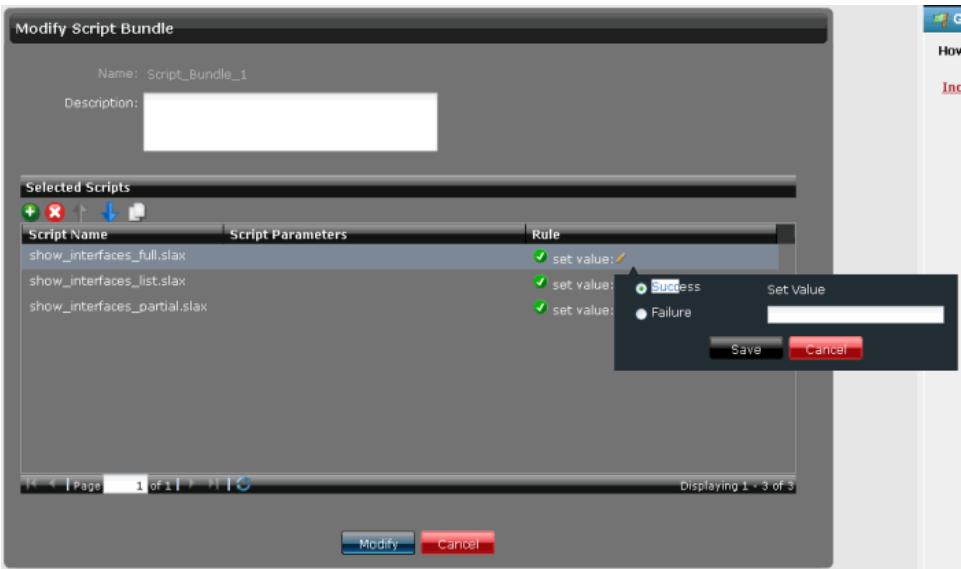
The Script Bundles page displays all Junos Space script bundles.

2. Select the script bundle that you want to modify.

3. Select **Modify** from the Actions dropdown.

The **Modify Script Bundle** dialog box appears as shown in [Figure 47 on page 277](#).

Figure 47: Modify Script Bundle



4. Make your changes to the name, description, number of scripts included in the script bundle, and value (success or failure) of every script included in the script bundle. To modify the scripts use the icons described in [Table 51 on page 277](#).

Table 51: Modify Script Bundle Dialog Box Icon Descriptions

Icon	Description
	Add scripts that are not included in the script bundle.
	Delete the selected script from the script bundle.
	Move the selected script to the row above.
	Move the selected script to the row below.
	Make a copy of the selected script and include it in the script bundle.
	Edit the value (success or failure) of script parameters. This option is disabled when commit scripts are selected.

5. Click **Modify**.  
Your modifications are saved and the Script Bundles page appears.
6. To verify whether your changes are saved, double-click the script bundle and view its details.

- Related Documentation**
- [Deploying Script Bundles on Devices on page 278](#)
  - [Executing Script Bundles on Devices on page 279](#)
  - [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

---

## Deleting Script Bundles

Junos Space enables you to delete multiple script bundles.

To delete script bundles:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Script bundles**.  
The Script Bundles page displays all Junos Space script bundles.
2. Select the script bundles that you want to delete.
3. Select **Delete** from the Actions dropdown.  
The **Delete Script Bundles** dialog box displays the names of the selected script bundles.
4. Click **Delete** to confirm.  
The selected script bundles are deleted and the Script Bundles page appears.
5. To verify whether the script bundles are deleted, view the list of scripts in the Script Bundles page.

- Related Documentation**
- [Creating a Script Bundle on page 275](#)
  - [Executing Script Bundles on Devices on page 279](#)
  - [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

---

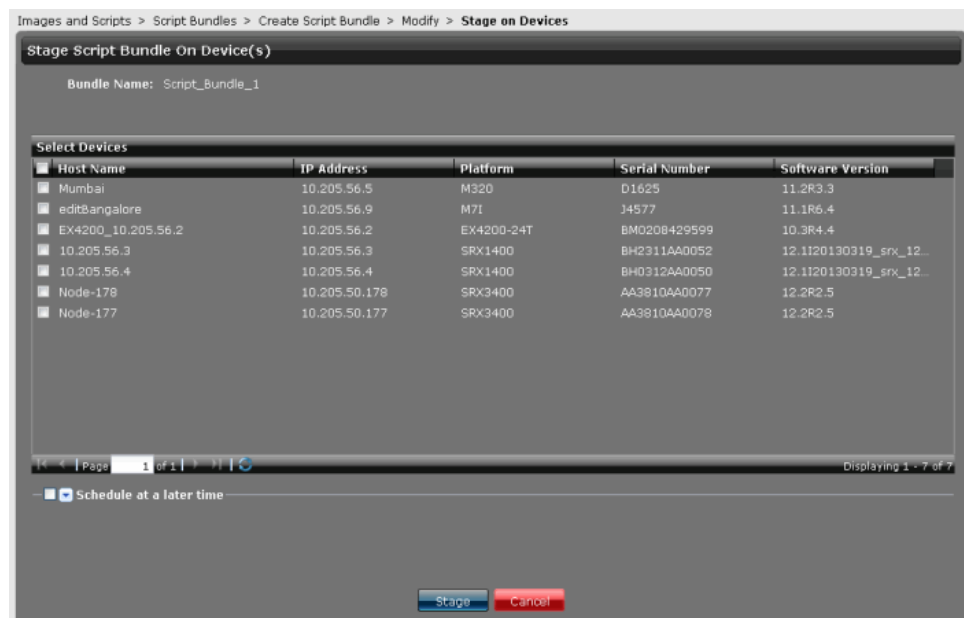
## Deploying Script Bundles on Devices

Junos Space allows you to deploy script bundles on devices. During script bundle deployment, op scripts and commit scripts are copied to the `/var/db/scripts/op` directory on the device. When you deploy script bundles on dual Routing Engines, the script bundles are copied to both Routing Engines, and in case of Virtual Chassis, the script bundles are copied to all of the FPCs.

To deploy script bundles on devices:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Script bundles**.  
The Script Bundles page displays all Junos Space script bundles.
2. Select the script bundles that you want to deploy on devices.
3. Select **Deploy Script Bundles** from the Actions dropdown.  
The **Deploy Script Bundle On Device(s)** dialog box appears as shown in [Figure 48 on page 279](#).

Figure 48: Deploy Script Bundle



4. Select the devices on which you want to deploy the script bundles.
5. To schedule a time for deploying the script bundles, select the **Schedule a later time** check box and specify the date and time when you want the script bundles to be deployed.
6. Click **Deploy**.  
The selected scripts are deployed and a **Jobs** dialog box displays a job id link, which you can click to view the status of the script bundle deployment.
7. Click **OK**.  
The script bundles are deployed on the selected devices and the Script Bundles page appears.

#### Related Documentation

- [Modifying a Script Bundle on page 276](#)
- [Executing Script Bundles on Devices on page 279](#)
- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)

## Executing Script Bundles on Devices

Junos Space allows you to execute script bundles on devices. When you execute script bundles, Junos Space triggers the execution of op scripts on the selected devices. Commit scripts are executed on commit when events occur on the device and therefore the result of the script bundle execution for commit scripts is always shown as Success in Junos Space.

To execute script bundles on devices:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Script bundles**.

The Script Bundles page displays all Junos Space script bundles.

2. Select the script bundles that you want to execute on devices.
3. Select **Execute on devices** from the Actions dropdown.  
The **Execute Script Bundle On Devices(s)** dialog box appears.
4. Select the devices on which you want to execute the selected scripts.
5. To redeploy the scripts before execution, select the **Deploy & Enable Scripts before Execution** check box.
6. You can modify the script parameters before executing script bundles on devices. The changes made to script parameters are saved only on the devices on which the script bundle is executed. The script parameters in the script bundle in Junos Space continues to reflect the original values.

To edit the script parameter values before execution:

1. Click the **Update Script Parameters/Rule** link. The **Configure Script Bundle Parameters** dialog box appears.
2. Use the Edit icon to set the script parameter value to Success or Failure, and click **Save**.
3. Click **Configure**. Your changes are saved and the **Enable Script Bundle On Devices(s)** dialog box displays your previous selections.
7. To schedule a time for deploying the script bundles, select the **Schedule a later time** check box and specify the date and time when you want the script bundles to be executed.
8. Click **Enable**.  
The script bundle is enabled on the selected devices and a **Jobs** dialog box displays a job id link, which you can click to view the status of script bundle execution.
9. Click **OK**.

The selected script bundle is executed on the devices and the Jobs dialog box displays a link to the Job ID. You can click the link to view the status of this task on the Jobs page. The results are displayed in an easy-to-read format and does not contain any < output > tags.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Modifying a Script Bundle on page 276](#)
- [Deploying Script Bundles on Devices on page 278](#)
- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)



## CHAPTER 28

# Administration: Scripts

- [Viewing Script Details on page 281](#)
- [Viewing Verification Results on page 282](#)
- [Exporting Scripts in Tar Format on page 283](#)

### Viewing Script Details

Using Junos Space, you can view detailed information about a script, such as its name, type, format, creation time, version, comments, and the contents of the script.

To view the details of a script:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The Scripts page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.

2. Double click the script whose details you want to view.

The **Script Details** window displays the script name, type, format, creation time, version, script contents and comments.

[Table 52 on page 281](#) describes the fields displayed in the Script Details page.

**Table 52: Script Details Dialog Box Fields**

Field	Description
Name	Name of the script file.
Type	Type of script. The values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Commit script</li><li>• Op script</li><li>• Event script</li></ul>
Format	Format of the script file. The values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• XSL</li><li>• SLAX</li></ul>
Creation Time	Date and time when the script was created.

Table 52: Script Details Dialog Box Fields (*continued*)

Field	Description
Version	The version number of the script. When you modify a script, the changes are saved in the latest version of the script.
Script Contents	The contents of the script.
Comments	Text that describes the script that is entered by the user.
<b>Related Documentation</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Scripts Overview on page 227</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Exporting Scripts in Tar Format on page 283</a></li> </ul>

## Viewing Verification Results

You can use Junos Space to view the results of the checksum verification task. When a verification failure occurs, the results indicate the reason for failure. When you delete a script, the checksum verification results associated to that scrip are also deleted.

To view the verification results:

1. Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.

The Scripts page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.

2. Select the script whose verification result you want to view.
3. Select **View Verification Results** from the Actions dropdown.

The **Script Verification Results** page displays the results of the checksum verification.

[Table 53 on page 282](#) describes the fields on the Script Verification Results page.

Table 53: Script Verification Results Page Fields

Field Name	Description
Script name	Filename of the script that is selected for verifying the checksum.
Device name	Name of the device on which the script is verified.
Result	Result of the verification. The values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Success</li> <li>• Failed</li> </ul>
Start Time	Time when the verification was initiated.
Last Update Time	Latest time when the verification was updated.

Table 53: Script Verification Results Page Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Description
Remarks	Errors encountered during the verification. This field is blank when the verification is successful.

- Click the **Return to Scripts** link to return to the Scripts page.

**Related Documentation**

- [Executing Scripts on Devices on page 261](#)

## Exporting Scripts in Tar Format

You can use Junos Space to export the contents of multiple scripts and save them on your local file system.

To export the contents of scripts:

- Select **Images and Scripts > Scripts**.  
The Scripts page displays the scripts that you imported into Junos Space.
- Select the scripts that you want to export.
- Select **Export Scripts** from the Actions dropdown.  
The **Export Scripts** dialog box asks you for a confirmation.
- Click **Export**.  
The **File Open** dialog box enables you to save the script files in the tar format and the **Export Scripts Job Status** dialog box displays the status of this task graphically. To view the status of your job in the Job Manager, click the bar of the graph. You can also save the tar files by clicking the **Download** link.
- Click **OK** and save the files on your local file system.
- Unzip the files to view the contents of the script.

**Related Documentation**

- [Scripts Overview on page 227](#)



# Administration: Operations

- [Viewing Operations Results on page 285](#)

## Viewing Operations Results

---

Using Junos Space, you can view information about operations in the following stages of execution:

- Operations that were successfully executed
- Operations that were not successfully executed
- Operations that are currently being executed
- Operations that are scheduled to be executed later

To view information about an operation:

1. Select **Images and Scripts** > **Operations** and select the View Operation Results icon.

The View Operation Results page appears. The information appears according to the following parameters:

- Operation name
- Date of execution
- Summary of the result (such as the number of devices on which the operation was successfully executed)
- Execution status (scheduled, in progress, success, or failed)
- Job ID

All the parameters in the View Operation Results page have the drop down list enabled with the filter option, which has an input field wherein you can enter the filter criteria. On applying the filter(s), the table contents display only the values that match the filter criteria.

2. Double-click an operation to open the **Operation Result Detail** dialog box, which displays information about the selected operation according to device name and result (success or failed), along with a summary of the operation. Child operations are automatically expanded in the Operation Result Detail of a device. The detail is a flattened list of script or image entries.

You can expand an individual row to view more information about the scripts, images, and child operations (operations within an operation) associated with that device. You can also expand the rows of child operations to see information about all the scripts and images associated with the operation. This way, you are able to monitor the status of each script or image associated with an operation and identify the causes of failed executions (if any).

3. Click **Close** to go back to the View Operation Results page.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Operations Overview on page 231](#)
- [Creating an Operation on page 269](#)
- [Modifying an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Running an Operation on page 271](#)
- [Copying an Operation on page 272](#)
- [Deleting an Operation on page 273](#)

## PART 5

# Network Monitoring

- [Network Monitoring UI on page 289](#)





## CHAPTER 30

# Network Monitoring UI

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Network Monitoring Reports Overview on page 292](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Turning SNMP Data Collection Off and On on page 295](#)
- [Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace on page 296](#)
- [Viewing the Dashboard on page 297](#)
- [Tracking and Searching for Assets on page 299](#)
- [Working with Topology on page 300](#)
- [Viewing and Tracking Outages on page 306](#)
- [Viewing, Querying, and Acknowledging Events on page 306](#)
- [Viewing and Acknowledging Alarms on page 309](#)
- [Viewing, Configuring, and Searching for Notifications on page 313](#)
- [Creating Reports on page 314](#)
- [Viewing Reports on page 315](#)
- [Deleting Reports on page 320](#)
- [Viewing Charts on page 320](#)
- [Admin: Configuring Network Monitoring on page 321](#)
- [Configuring SNMP Community Names by IP on page 327](#)
- [Configuring SNMP Data Collection per Interface on page 328](#)
- [Managing and Unmanaging Interfaces and Services on page 329](#)
- [Managing Thresholds on page 329](#)
- [Selecting and Sending an Event to the Network Management System on page 333](#)
- [Configuring Notifications on page 334](#)
- [Configuring Scheduled Outages on page 337](#)
- [Compiling SNMP MIBs on page 338](#)
- [Managing Events Configuration Files on page 343](#)
- [Managing SNMP Collections on page 345](#)

- [Managing Data Collection Groups on page 346](#)
- [Managing Surveillance Categories on page 349](#)

## Network Monitoring Workspace Overview

---

The Network Monitoring workspace enables you to assess the performance of your network, not only at a point in time, but also over a period of time. This feature enables you to determine trending and diverse other things; for example, whether Service Level Agreements (SLAs) have been violated.

Junos Space Network Application Platform has integrated a third-party tool for this purpose, OpenNMS, which is a network management application platform that provides solutions for enterprises and carriers.

OpenNMS is installed as part of Platform, which exposes some of the OpenNMS functionality through the Network Monitoring workspace.



**CAUTION:** Although additional OpenNMS functionality can be accessed by customizing its XML files, editing these files can affect the functionality of the Network Monitoring workspace. We recommend that you do not edit these XML files unless you are directed to do so by Juniper Networks.

To analyze and aggregate device-level performance data, and to detect device faults, the Network Monitoring workspace uses a collection of data from managed elements. Performance data is collected automatically if the SNMP settings are set properly for a discovered device.

- *Collection*
  - View historical performance data by using a graphical monitoring tool that allows customization of the parameters to be displayed and the devices to be monitored
  - Create graphs and charts
  - Create and export reports in PDF and HTML formats
  - Define advanced variables that require calculations for historical performance monitoring
  - Allow raw data to be rolled up into processed data, allowing data to be processed from a more-specific to a less-specific level (for example, data collected at a quarter hourly interval can be rolled into hourly data, hourly data can be rolled into daily data, daily can be rolled into weekly data, and weekly data can be rolled into yearly data)
- *Thresholds*
  - Set thresholds for performance data values—including specifying warning and error levels
  - Create threshold graphs
  - Generate threshold-crossing alarms that can be displayed or forwarded

- *Faults*
  - Receive SNMP traps directly from devices and other enterprise management systems (EMSs)
  - Forward traps to other EMSs
  - Generate and display events and alarms
  - Get basic correlation with alarms; for example, clearing alarms, deduplicating alarms
  - Detect device faults based on data collected from devices

You can perform the following tasks from the Network Monitoring workspace:

- Node List: List all the devices under monitoring (see [“Viewing the Node List” on page 293](#))
- Search: Search for devices (see [“Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace” on page 296](#))
- Outages: View unavailable (down) services (see [“Viewing and Tracking Outages” on page 306](#))
- Events: View events (see [“Viewing, Querying, and Acknowledging Events” on page 306](#))
- Alarms: View alarms (see [“Viewing and Acknowledging Alarms” on page 103](#))
- Notifications: Display notices received by users (see [“Viewing, Configuring, and Searching for Notifications” on page 313](#))
- Assets: Search asset information and assets inventory (see [“Tracking and Searching for Assets” on page 299](#))
- Reports: View reports (see [“Viewing Reports” on page 315](#))
- Charts: View charts (see [“Viewing Charts” on page 320](#))
- Admin: Perform system administration (see [“Admin: Configuring Network Monitoring” on page 321](#))

The main Network Monitoring landing page is a dashboard, displaying the most important information about your nodes:

- Nodes with outages
- Availability over the last 24 hours
- Notifications (outstanding notices)
- On-call schedule
- Key SNMP customized (KSC) performance reports (if defined and available)

In addition, from this page you can do quick searches on nodes and resource graphs.



---

**NOTE:**

Network Monitoring upgrade customization – Upgrade from previous releases (12.1 or 12.2) to 12.3 allows a means to preserve the custom configuration that might have been performed on XML files from the backend automatically. For example,

- Let us assume that you have modified or customized the SNMP poll interval in the `collectd-configuration.xml` in Junos Space Platform version 12.1 or 12.2, that is, before upgrade to 12.3.
  - When you upgrade to version 12.3, the upgrade process automatically recognizes the changes made and preserves the changes in OpenNMS database by renaming the XML file. (for example, `collectd-configuration.xml.old`).
  - You can use these preserved, customized configuration files (in this example, `collectd-configuration.xml.old`) to update or replace the new configuration files available after the upgrade.
- 

**Related Documentation**

- [Network Monitoring Reports Overview on page 292](#)

---

## Network Monitoring Reports Overview

---

You can generate and view resource graphs, key SNMP customized (KSC) performance reports, KSC node reports, KSC domain reports, database reports, and statistics reports. To access the reports function, select **Network Monitoring > Reports**.

- [Resource Graphs on page 292](#)
- [Key SNMP Customized \(KSC\) Performance Reports, Node Reports, and Domain Reports on page 292](#)
- [Database Reports on page 293](#)
- [Statistics Reports on page 293](#)

### Resource Graphs

Resource graphs provide an easy way to represent visually the data collected from managed nodes throughout your network. You can display critical SNMP performance, response time, and so forth.

You can narrow your selection of resources by entering a search string in the Name contains box. This invokes a case-insensitive substring match on resource names.

### Key SNMP Customized (KSC) Performance Reports, Node Reports, and Domain Reports

KSC reports enable you to create and view SNMP performance data using prefabricated graph types. The reports provide a great deal of flexibility in time spans and graph types. You can save KSC report configurations so that you can refer to key reports in the future.

Node reports show SNMP data for all SNMP interfaces on a node.

Domain reports show SNMP data for all SNMP interfaces in a domain. You can load node reports and domain reports into the customizer and save them as a KSC report.

You can narrow your selection of resources by entering a search string in the Name contains box. This invokes a case-insensitive substring match on resource names.

## Database Reports

Database reports provide a graphical or numeric view of your service-level metrics for the current month-to-date, previous month, and last 12 months by categories.

## Statistics Reports

Statistics reports provide regularly scheduled statistical reports on collected numerical data (response time, SNMP performance data, and so forth).

### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Creating Reports on page 314](#)
- [Deleting Reports on page 320](#)
- [Viewing Reports on page 315](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace on page 296](#)

## Viewing the Node List

Junos Space is monitored by default using the built-in SNMP manager, OpenNMS. The Junos Space node is listed in the OpenNMS node list, and referred to hereafter as the Junos Space node.

Select **Network Monitoring > Node List**. The Node List page appears. This page displays a list of your nodes and enables you to drill down into each of them.

From the Node List page, you can also access the Resync Nodes subtask (see [“Resyncing Nodes” on page 294](#)).

The Node List page displays a list of all the nodes in your network. You can also display the interfaces for each node. The top level of the Node List displays only the hostname of each device. Click the hostname of the desired device to see:

- SNMP Attributes
- Availability
- Node Interfaces—IP Interfaces, Physical Interfaces (where applicable)

- General (status and detailed information)
- Surveillance Category Memberships
- Notification
- Recent Events
- Recent Outages

Each of these items has links enabling you to drill deeper into the corresponding aspect of the node's performance.

For each node, you can also view events, alarms, outages, asset information, rescan, access the admin options for it, and schedule outages for it.

**Related Documentation**

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Viewing and Acknowledging Alarms on page 103](#)
- [Viewing, Configuring, and Searching for Notifications on page 313](#)
- [Tracking and Searching for Assets on page 299](#)

---

## Resyncing Nodes

---

You should resynchronize your nodes when the contents of the Node List page in the Network Monitoring workspace do not correspond with the device list on the Manage Devices page in the Devices workspace (see [“Viewing Managed Devices” on page 37](#)).

To resynchronize your nodes:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Node List > Resync Nodes**.
2. Click **Confirm**.

The **Resync Nodes Job Information** dialog box appears.

3. (Optional) To view details of the resynchronization job, click the job ID displayed in the dialog box.
4. Click **OK**.

The Node List page appears, displaying the resynchronized nodes.

**Related Documentation**

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Turning SNMP Data Collection Off and On on page 295](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)

## Turning SNMP Data Collection Off and On

Network performance can be adversely affected by the amount of traffic generated by SNMP data collection. For this reason, SNMP service in Junos Space is not started by default.

Junos Space OpenNMS Network Monitoring is always turned on for all devices by default. The ability to turn on data collection is controlled by the Monitor\_SNMP surveillance category. Turning on data collection increases the amount of SNMP traffic, however. If the surveillance category is removed from a device, data collection is turned off.

To turn SNMP data collection off or on for a device:

1. In the Network Monitoring workspace, display the Node List page and click the node name.

The resulting page displays detailed information about the device.

For example, you can select **Network Monitoring > Node List** or you can select **Network Monitoring > Search** and click **All nodes** in the Search for Nodes section of the Search page to display the Node List page.

2. In the Surveillance Category Memberships title bar, click **Edit**.

The Edit surveillance categories on *node name* page appears.

3. Select the **Monitor\_SNMP** category from the Categories On Node list on the right.

If this category is *not* in the list on the right, then SNMP data collection is already turned off.

4. Click **Remove** between the two lists.

The removed category appears in the list of Available Categories on the left.

To turn on data collection for selected devices, reverse the process described here.



**NOTE:** OpenNMS performs SNMP data collection by default only on primary interfaces. If you want to change this, instead of manually selecting the interfaces to be monitored from the GUI, you can set data collection for all interfaces by default by modifying the SNMP collection to set the SNMP Storage Flag to all (see [“Managing SNMP Collections” on page 345](#)). For information on the procedure to select other interfaces and the distinction between primary and secondary interfaces, see [“Configuring SNMP Data Collection per Interface” on page 328](#).

### Related Documentation

- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace on page 296](#)
- [Viewing the Dashboard on page 297](#)

## Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace

---

To search for nodes or asset information, use the Search task in the Network Monitoring workspace—select **Network Monitoring > Search**. The Search page has two sections, Search for Nodes and Search Asset Information.

To quickly search for nodes:

- To display the entire node list, click **All nodes** in the Search for Nodes section.
- To display a list of all nodes and their interfaces, click **All nodes and their interfaces** in the Search for Nodes section.
- To display a list of all nodes that have asset information assigned, click **All nodes with asset info** in the Search Asset Information section. The asset information fields are very comprehensive, ranging from address to circuit ID to date installed, to lease expiry date to number of power supplies installed.

You can search for nodes using these criteria:

- **Name containing**—Searching by name is case-insensitive and inclusive. For example, searching on serv would find serv, Service, Reserved, NTSERV, or UserVortex.
  - The *underscore* character ( `_` ) acts as a single-character wildcard.
  - The *percent* character ( `%` ) acts as a multiple-character wildcard.
- **TCP/IP address**—Allows you to separate the four octets (fields) of a TCP/IP address into separate searches.
  - A single *asterisk* ( `*` ) acts as a wildcard for an octet.
  - Ranges are indicated by two numbers separated by a *dash* ( `-` )
  - *Commas* ( `,` ) are used for list demarcation.

For example, the following searches are all valid and would each create the same result set---all TCP/IP addresses from 192.168.0.0 through 192.168.255.255:

- 192.168.\*.\*
- 192.168.0-255.0-255
- 192.168.0,1,2,3-255.\*
- **ifAlias, ifName, or ifDescr contains**—Finds nodes with interfaces that match the given search string. This is a case-insensitive inclusive search similar to the **Name containing** search. To find an exact match, select **equals** instead of **contains**.
- **Providing service**—Finds nodes providing a particular service. To search for a node providing a particular service, select the service from the Providing service list.
- **MAC Address like**—To find interfaces with hardware (MAC) addresses matching the search string, use this case-insensitive partial string match. For example, you can find



all interfaces with a specified manufacturer's code by entering the first 6 characters of the MAC address. Octet separators (dash or colon) are optional.

- **Foreign Source like**—To find a node with a foreign source IDs, use this partial string match.

To quickly search for all nodes with asset information assigned, click **All nodes with asset info**.

You can search for assets using these criteria:

- **Category**—Find assets associated with a particular category.
- **Field**—Search for a specific asset field.
- **Containing text**—Find assets containing the search string. This is a case-insensitive inclusive search similar to the **Name containing** search.

#### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)

## Viewing the Dashboard

The Network Monitoring Dashboard displays information about your devices.

To view the dashboard:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Dashboard**.

The Dashboard page displays the default surveillance view with information about your devices, such as their surveillance categories (which determines whether their data is collected for performance management monitoring).

If your dashboard does not display information about all your nodes, you should resynchronize your nodes. See [“Resyncing Nodes” on page 294](#).

Under the Show all nodes heading, each of the items—Routers, Switches, Security Devices, and Other Devices subdivided into categories (High End, Medium, Low End)—is a link. Click the item of interest to display information about that category of node in the lower section of the page.

The Alarms section displays in the header bar the number of alarms currently displayed, and the total number, for example, 1 to 5 of 59. Scroll up and down the lists of alarms by clicking the << and >> symbols in the Alarms header bar.



**NOTE:** To refresh the display, you might have to click the scroll symbols, << and >>, in the header bar of the table of interest. For example, if you have been looking at routers, and you want to view the alarms for switches, first select **Switches**, then click << or >> in the Alarms header bar to refresh the display.

Table 54 on page 298 displays the alarms.

**Table 54: Alarms Table**

Column Heading	Content
Node	Device. Clicking the name of the node takes you to the detailed device information page so that you can examine it more closely.
Description	Brief explanation for the alarm.
Count	Number of the same alarm. When there is more than one, the duplicate is not displayed in a separate row in the table.
First Time	The first time the alarm was triggered.
Last Time	The last time the alarm was triggered.

Table 55 on page 298 displays the notifications.

**Table 55: Notifications Table**

Column Heading	Content
Node	Device. Clicking the name of the node takes you to the detailed device information page so that you can examine it more closely.
Service	The name of the service for which the notification was sent.
Message	The content of the notification.
Sent Time	The time the notification was sent.
Responder	Person who received the notification.
Response Time	The time it took to respond.

Table 56 on page 299 displays the status of the node.

**Table 56: Node Status Table**

Column Heading	Content
Node	Device. Clicking the name of the node takes you to the detailed device information page so that you can examine it more closely.
Current Outages	The outages currently in effect, expressed as 1 of 1, for example.
24 Hour Availability	The percentage of time in the last 24 hours when the node actually was available, expressed as 93.391%, for example.

Table 57 on page 299 displays the following:

**Table 57: Resource Graphs Table**

List Contents	Description
Node <i>name</i>	Names of nodes available.
Information options available for the selected node	Varies, depending on the category of node selected, for example:  For routers: SNMP Node Data, SNMP Interface Data, Response Time, BGP Peer, OSPF Area Info  For switches: Response Time
Filename of the resource graph selected from the list	Below this the selected graph is displayed.

#### Related Documentation

- [Turning SNMP Data Collection Off and On on page 295](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)

## Tracking and Searching for Assets

The OpenNMS system provides a means for you to easily track and share important information about capital assets in your organization. This data, when coupled with the information about your network that the OpenNMS system obtains during network discovery, can be a powerful tool not only for solving problems, but in tracking the current state of equipment repairs as well as network or system-related moves, additions, or changes.

There are two ways to add or modify the asset data stored in the OpenNMS system:

- Import the data from another source.
- Enter the data manually.

Once you begin adding data to the OpenNMS system's assets inventory page, any node with an asset number (for example, bar code) is displayed on the lower half of this page, providing you with a one-click mechanism for tracking the current physical status of that device.

If you want to search for particular assets by category, simply select the desired category in the Assets in category list and click **Search** to retrieve a list of all assets associated with that category.

For a complete list of nodes, whether or not they have associated asset numbers, click **All nodes with asset info** link.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace on page 296](#)

---

## Working with Topology

All devices discovered in Junos Space are displayed in the Nodes section of the left pane of the topology map. Linkd is used to discover the network topology. Linkd is an ISO/OSI layer 2/3 network topology discovery daemon. The physical link discovery methods such as LLDP, Bridge, OSPF, and CDP are enabled by default. By default, linkd polls devices every 5 hours and discovers the network topology 30 minutes after the polling.

When you select a link on the topology, the link is displayed in a different color. You can select multiple nodes and services in the nodes and services sections in the left pane by pressing Ctrl on the keyboard. You cannot select multiple devices by pressing Shift. You can also use the semantic zoom functionality on the topology map with the Expand Semantic Zoom Level and Collapse Semantic Zoom Level buttons on the topology map. You can also use the selection tool on the topology map to select the nodes and services.

- [Viewing the Nodes Without Links on page 301](#)
- [Filtering Nodes on page 301](#)
- [Viewing the Topology Map with Different Layouts on page 301](#)
- [Viewing the Details of a Node on page 301](#)
- [Pinging a Node on page 302](#)
- [Viewing the Alarms Associated with the Node on page 303](#)
- [Viewing the Events Associated with the Node on page 303](#)
- [Viewing the Resource Graphs Associated with the Node on page 303](#)
- [Grouping Nodes on page 304](#)
- [Adding Nodes to a Group on page 304](#)
- [Removing a Node from a Group on page 305](#)

- [Viewing the Network Services Across Nodes on page 305](#)
- [Viewing the Details of the Network Service Across Nodes on page 305](#)

## Viewing the Nodes Without Links

By default, the topology map does not show the nodes that are not linked to other nodes. To view all the nodes on the topology map:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. Select the **File** menu and then clear the **Hide Nodes Without Links** check box.

You can view all the nodes on the topology map regardless of whether they are linked or unlinked.

## Filtering Nodes

To filter the nodes:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. In the Filter text box, enter the text related to the node you want to filter.
3. Click **Filter**.

You can view the nodes based on the text you entered in the Filter text box.

## Viewing the Topology Map with Different Layouts

To view the topology map with different layouts:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. Select the **Edit** menu and then select the appropriate layout.

By default, the topology map is displayed in the FR layout.

You can view the topology map using the following layouts:

- Circle Layout
- FR Layout
- ISOM Layout
- KK Layout
- Manual Layout
- Real Ultimate Layout
- Spring Layout

## Viewing the Details of a Node

To view the details of a node:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.

2. From the Nodes section in the left pane of the topology map, select a node for which you want to view the details.

The topology diagram zooms in to show the node you have selected.

3. Mouse over the node.

You can view the details of the node such as the device name, device description, management IP, and the status of the device.



**NOTE:** You can also right-click the node and select **Node Info** from the contextual menu to view the details of a node.



**NOTE:** You can also click the **Device** menu and select **Node Info** to view the details of a node.



**NOTE:** The node tooltip always displays **Status** as **Active** or **Managed** even though the node is down.

## Pinging a Node

To ping a node:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. Right-click the node you want to ping.
3. Select **Ping** from the contextual menu.
4. In the **Number of Requests** field, enter an appropriate value to specify the number of ECHO requests to be sent.
5. In the **Time-Out** field, enter an appropriate value to specify the timeout value of the request.
6. From the **Packet Size** drop down menu, select an appropriate value to specify the size of the ping packet.
7. (Optional) Select the **Use Numerical Node Names** check box.
8. Click **Ping**.

The node is pinged with the specified values and the result of the ping request is displayed.



**NOTE:** You can also click the **Device** menu and select **Ping** to ping a node.

## Viewing the Alarms Associated with the Node

To view the alarms associated with the node:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. Right-click the node whose alarm associations you want to view.
3. Select **Events/Alarms** from the contextual menu.

The events and alarms associated with the node are displayed.

4. Select the **Alarms** tab to view only the alarms associated with the node.

You can view the alarms associated with the node.



**NOTE:** You can also click the **Device** menu and select **Events/Alarms** to view the alarms associated with the node.

## Viewing the Events Associated with the Node

To view the events associated with the node:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. Right-click the node whose event associations you want to view.
3. Select **Events/Alarms** from the contextual menu.

The events and alarms associated with the node are displayed.

4. Select the **Events** tab to view only the events associated with the node.

You can view the events associated with the node.



**NOTE:** You can also click the **Device** menu and select **Events/Alarms** to view the events associated with a node.

## Viewing the Resource Graphs Associated with the Node

To view the resource graphs associated with the node:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. Right-click the node whose resource graphs you want to view.
3. Select **Resource Graphs** from the contextual menu.

The resource graphs associated with the node are displayed. The node resources are shown, such as SNMP node data, SNMP interface data, response time, BGP peers, and OSPF area information.

4. Select the resources you want to view the graphs for and click **Graph Selection**.

You can also use the **Select All** and **Graph All** options to view the resource graphs for all node resources.



**NOTE:** You can also click the **Device** menu and select **Resource Graphs** to view the resource graphs associated with a node.

## Grouping Nodes

To create a group and add nodes to the group:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. On the topology map, select the nodes you want to group and select the **Edit** menu.
3. Select **Create Group**.

The Create Group pop-up window is displayed.

4. Enter a name for the group in the Group Label field.
5. Click **OK**.

The new group is displayed in the nodes section. You can expand the group to view the nodes in the group.



**NOTE:** You can rename or delete the group by right-clicking and choosing the **Rename Group** or **Delete Group** options from the contextual menu, respectively.



**NOTE:** Currently the topology feature allows creating duplicate group names.

## Adding Nodes to a Group

To add nodes to a group:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. On the topology map, select the nodes you want to add to a group and right-click.
3. Select **Add Item to Group** from the contextual menu.

The Add Item to Group pop-up window is displayed.

4. Select the group from the Group drop-down menu.
5. Click **OK**.



## Removing a Node from a Group

To remove a node from a group:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. On the topology map, select the appropriate group and right-click.
3. Select **Remove Item to Group** from the contextual menu.

The Remove Item from Group pop-up window is displayed.

4. Select the node you want to remove from the Item drop-down menu.
5. Click **OK**.

## Viewing the Network Services Across Nodes

For Junos Space Network Application Platform Release 12.3, the network services overlay over topology is of Beta quality. You can view the network services configured using Junos Space Network Activate across nodes.

To view the network services:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. Select the **Services** section at the bottom of the left pane of the topology map.

All services configured using Junos Space Network Activate are displayed.

3. Click a service.

The corresponding links are highlighted on the topology map.

## Viewing the Details of the Network Service Across Nodes

To view the details of a network service across nodes:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Topology**.
2. Select the **Services** section at the bottom of the left pane of the topology map.
3. Click a service whose details you want to view.

You can also select multiple services if you want to view the details of multiple services.

4. Mouse over the corresponding link.

You can view the details such as service name and the IDs of the end nodes associated with the service.

### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)

## Viewing and Tracking Outages

---

To track outages, discovered services are polled. If a service does not respond, a service outage is created, which in turn creates notifications.

To view and track outages, select **Network Monitoring > Outages**.

To get details for a particular outage, enter its ID in the Outage ID box and click **Get details**.

Alternatively, to view all outages still extant, click **Current outages**. To view both current and resolved outages, click **All outages**.

To view other outage types from these Outages pages, change the display by selecting from the Outage type list. You can sort on each of these column headings by clicking them:

- ID
- Node
- Interface
- Service
- Down
- Up

You can also return to the results by clicking **Bookmark Results**. Your browser's favorite or bookmark dialog box opens.

### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)

## Viewing, Querying, and Acknowledging Events

---

Junos Space is monitored by default using the built-in SNMP manager, OpenNMS. The Junos Space node is listed in the OpenNMS node list (Platform > Network Monitoring > Node List), and referred to hereafter as Junos Space node].

Events signal network or systems-related issues. Acknowledging an event enables you to take responsibility for resolving the problem that triggered it. All events are visible to all users. By default, the Events page displays outstanding, or unacknowledged, events.

The Events task contains the functions described below.

The breadcrumbs at the top of each of these pages contain links taking you back to previous pages. Listings frequently extend over multiple pages, between which you can navigate using the **First**, **Previous**, and **Next** links at the top and bottom left of the pages.

On the bottom left of the pages is the number of events on the page, and the number of results on the current page out of the total list.

You can sort on each of the column headings on list pages. You can also return to the results by clicking **Bookmark Results**. Your browser's favorite or bookmark dialog box opens.

- [Events Landing Page on page 307](#)
- [Advanced Event Search on page 307](#)
- [Viewing the Events List on page 308](#)
- [Viewing Event Details on page 308](#)

## Events Landing Page

To search for, view, query, and acknowledge events, select **Network Monitoring > Events**.

- To view all events, click **All events** in the Event Queries section, below and to the left of the Event ID field. The Events page appears with the list of unacknowledged events. See [“Viewing the Events List” on page 308](#).
- To get details for a particular event, enter its ID in the Event ID field and click **Get details**. The Event *event ID* section appears. See [“Viewing Event Details” on page 308](#).
- To perform an advanced search, click **Advanced Search** to go to the Advanced Event Search section. The Advanced Event Search section can be used to search the event list on multiple fields. See [“Advanced Event Search” on page 307](#).

## Advanced Event Search

Enter values into any of the following fields to narrow down the search:

- Event Text Contains
- Node Label Contains
- TCP/IP Address Like
- Severity

For a service, select from the Service list.

To select events by time, first select the box for the time range that you want to limit.

To select events in a time period, select both boxes and then select the beginning and end of the range time from the lists.

You can determine the order in which found events are displayed by selecting from the Sort By list.

Determine the quantity of events displayed by selecting from the Number of Events Per Page list.

## Viewing the Events List

Select **Network Monitoring > Events** and click **All events** in the Event Queries section to display a list of events. By default, the Events page displays outstanding events.

- To see all events, click **View all events** at the top of the page. Clicking Advanced Search takes you to the Advanced Event Search section (see [“Advanced Event Search” on page 307](#)).
- To see the acknowledged events, click the [-] (minus sign) in the Search constraints box to toggle between acknowledged and outstanding events. To revert to the outstanding events, click the [-] again.

The Events page displays the following information for each event:

- **Ack**—Acknowledge check box. Select this to take responsibility for the issue. If an event has been acknowledged in error, you can toggle the Search constraints box to display acknowledged events, find the event, and unacknowledge it, displaying it again to all users.
- **ID**—Event ID. Click for details, which are displayed in the Event *event ID* section (see [“Viewing Event Details” on page 308](#)).
- **Severity**—See degrees of event severity.
- **Time**—Time when the event occurred. You can choose to view only events occurring before or after the selected event by clicking the < or > symbol next to the time.
- **Node**—The name of the node is a link targeting the node's details from the Nodes section (see [“Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace” on page 296](#)). You can choose to view only events on the same node, or to view all events except those on the selected node.
- **Interface**—The IP address of the interface where the event took place. The IP address is a link targeting the interface's details on the Nodes and their Interfaces section (see [“Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace” on page 296](#)). You can choose to view only events on the same interface as the selected event, or view all events except those on that interface.
- **Service**—The name of the service affected, where applicable.
- **UEI**—[Unique Event Identifier] You can choose to view only events with the same UEI or all events except those with the same UEI. You can also edit notifications for the event by clicking on the link of that name, which takes you to the Build the rule section for notifications (see [“Configuring Notifications” on page 334](#)).
- **Log message**—The log message.

## Viewing Event Details

Select **Network Monitoring > Events**, enter its ID in the Event ID field and click **Get details**. The Event *event ID* section displays the following items:

- **Severity**—Severity of event. Degrees of severity are color-coded and labeled:

- **CRITICAL:** Numerous devices are affected; fixing the problem is essential.
- **MAJOR:** Device is completely down or in danger of going down. Immediate attention required.
- **MINOR:** Part of a device (service, interface, power supply, and so forth) has stopped. Attention required.
- **WARNING:** Might require action. Should possibly be logged.
- **INDETERMINATE:** No severity could be associated.
- **NORMAL:** Informational message. No action required.
- **CLEARED:** Indicates that a prior error condition has been corrected and service is restored.
- **Time**—Time when event occurred.
- **Node and Interface**—Both of these values are clickable, targeting the Nodes section and the Nodes and their interfaces section respectively on the Search page.
- **Acknowledged By and Time Acknowledged**—Acknowledger of event and the time of acknowledgement.
- **Service**—Service affected, where applicable.
- **UEI**— Unique Event Identifier. UEIs enable disk usage to be handled differently from other events with high-threshold types, which means you can choose to be notified by e-mail of high disk usage only, instead of getting notified of all events of the threshold type high.
- **Log Message**—The full error message.
- **Description**—The explanation for the log message.
- **Operator Instructions**—Instructions for resolving the issue that triggered the event, if available.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace on page 296](#)

## Viewing and Acknowledging Alarms

Junos Space is monitored by default using the built-in SNMP manager, OpenNMS. The Junos Space node is listed in the OpenNMS node list (Platform > Network Monitoring > Node List), and referred to hereafter as Junos Space node.

There are two basic categories of alarm, acknowledged and outstanding. Acknowledging an alarm indicates that you have taken responsibility for addressing the corresponding

network or systems-related issue. Any alarm that has not been acknowledged is considered outstanding and is therefore visible to all users on the Alarms page, which displays outstanding alarms by default.

If an alarm has been acknowledged in error, you can find the alarm and unacknowledge it, making it available for someone else to acknowledge.

When you acknowledge, clear, escalate, or unacknowledge an alarm, this information is displayed in the alarm's detailed view. You can click the alarm ID to view the fields such as Acknowledged By, Acknowledgement Type, and Time Acknowledged. These fields display details such as who acknowledged, cleared, escalated, or unacknowledged the alarm, the acknowledgement type (acknowledge, clear, escalate, or unacknowledge), and the date and time the action was performed on the alarm.



**NOTE:** If a remote user has cleared, acknowledged, escalated, or unacknowledged an alarm, the detailed alarm view displays *admin* instead of the actual remote user in the Acknowledged By field.

You can search for alarms by entering an individual ID on the initial Alarms page, or by sorting by the column headings on the Alarms page that displays alarms.

- [Viewing Alarms on page 310](#)
- [Acknowledging Alarms on page 312](#)
- [Clearing Alarms on page 312](#)
- [Escalating Alarms on page 312](#)
- [Unacknowledging Alarms on page 312](#)
- [Viewing Acknowledged Alarms on page 313](#)

## Viewing Alarms

To view alarms:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Alarms**.
2. Click one of the following links:
  - All alarms (summary)
  - All alarms (detail)
  - Advanced Search

The Alarms page appears with the list of alarms. By default, the first view for all alarms, both summary and details, shows outstanding alarms, as indicated by the content of the Search constraints box.

3. (Optional) Use the toggle control (the minus sign) in the Search constraints box to show acknowledged alarms.
4. (Optional) You can refine the list of alarms by either or both of the following:
  - Entering something in the Alarm Text box

- Selecting a time period from the Time list. You can choose only time spans ending now, for example, Last 12 hours.

Click **Search**.

Links at the top of the page, under its title, provide access to further functions:

- View all alarms
- Advanced Search
- Long Listing/Short Listing

[Table 22 on page 104](#) describes the information displayed in the columns of the Alarms page. An X indicates the data is present in the Short Listing or Long Listing displays.

**Table 58: Information Displayed in the Alarms List**

Data	Short Listing	Long Listing	Comments
Ack check box	X	X	
ID	X	X	Click the ID to go to the Alarm <i>alarm ID</i> section of the Alarms page.
Severity	Color-coding only	X	Toggle enables you to show only alarms with this severity, or not to show alarms with this severity.
UEI		X	Toggle enables you to show only events with this UEI, or not to show events with this UEI.
Node	X	X	Toggles enable you to show only alarms on this IP address, or not to show alarms for this interface.
Interface		X	
Service		X	
Count	X	X	Click the count to view the Events page for the event that triggered this alarm.
Last Event Time	X	X	Mouse over this to see the event ID. Toggles enable you to show only alarms occurring after this one, or only alarms occurring before this one.
First Event Time		X	
Log Msg	X	X	

- Severity Legend—Click to display a table in a separate window showing the full explanations and color coding for the degrees of severity.
- Acknowledge/Unacknowledge entire search—Click to perform the relevant action on all alarms in the current search, including those not shown on your screen.

## Acknowledging Alarms

To acknowledge an alarm:

1. Select the alarm's **Ack** check box. To select all alarms, at the bottom of the page, click **Select All**.
2. At the bottom of the page, select **Acknowledge Alarms** from the list on the left, and click **Go**.

The alarm is removed from the default view of all users.

## Clearing Alarms

To clear an alarm:

1. Select the alarm's **Ack** check box. To select all alarms, at the bottom of the page, click **Select All**.
2. At the bottom of the page, select **Clear Alarms** from the list on the left, and click **Go**.

## Escalating Alarms

To escalate an alarm:

1. Select the alarm's **Ack** check box. To select all alarms, at the bottom of the page, click **Select All**.
2. At the bottom of the page, select **Escalate Alarms** from the list on the left, and click **Go**.

The alarm is escalated by one level.

3. (Optional) To view the severity to which an alarm has been escalated, click the alarm's ID.

## Unacknowledging Alarms

To unacknowledge an alarm:

1. Display the list of acknowledged alarms by toggling the Search constraint box so that it is showing Alarm is acknowledged.
2. Select the **Ack** check box of the alarm you acknowledged in error. To select all alarms, at the bottom of the page, click **Select All**.
3. At the bottom of the page, select **Unacknowledge Alarms** from the list on the left, and click **Go**.

The alarm appears again in the default view of All Alarms.



## Viewing Acknowledged Alarms

To view acknowledged alarms:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Alarms** and click **All Alarms (summary)** or **All Alarms (details)**.

The Alarms page appears listing the alarms.

2. In the Search constraints field, click the minus sign to toggle between acknowledged and outstanding alarms.
3. (Optional) To remedy an alarm acknowledged by mistake, unacknowledge it.

### Related Documentation

- [Viewing, Configuring, and Searching for Notifications on page 313](#)

## Viewing, Configuring, and Searching for Notifications

When the system detects important events, one or more notices are sent automatically to configured notification information (such as a pager, an email address, or other notification methods). In order to receive notices, users must have their notification information configured in their user profile (see [“Admin: Configuring Network Monitoring” on page 321](#)), notices must be switched on, and an important event must be received.

Select **Network Monitoring > Notifications**. From the Notifications page, you can:

- Display all unacknowledged notices sent to your user ID by clicking **Your outstanding notices**.
- View all unacknowledged notices for all users by clicking **All outstanding notices**.
- View a summary of all notices sent and acknowledged for all users by clicking **All acknowledged notices**.
- Search for notices associated with a specific user ID by entering that user ID in the User field and clicking **Check notices**.
- Jump immediately to a page with details specific to a given notice identifier by entering that numeric identifier in the Notice field and clicking **Get details**.



**NOTE:** Getting details is particularly useful if you are using a numeric paging service and receive the numeric notice identifier as part of the page.

- [Notification Escalation on page 313](#)

## Notification Escalation

Once a notice is sent, it is considered outstanding until someone acknowledges receipt of the notice using the Notice *notice ID* section of the Notifications page. Select **Network Monitoring > Notifications**, enter a notice ID in the Notice field, click **Get details**, and click **Acknowledge**.

If the event that triggered the notice was related to managed network devices or systems, the Network/Systems group is notified, one by one, with a notice sent to the next member on the list only after 15 minutes has elapsed since the last message was sent.

This progression through the list, or escalation, can be stopped at any time by acknowledging the notice. Note that this is not the same as acknowledging the *event* that triggered the notice. If all members of the group have been notified and the notice has not been acknowledged, the notice is escalated to the Management group, where all members of that group are notified simultaneously (with no 15 minute escalation interval). For details on configuring groups, see [“Admin: Configuring Network Monitoring” on page 321](#).

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace on page 296](#)

---

## Creating Reports

You can configure key SNMP customized (KSC) performance reports, node reports, domain reports by selecting **Network Monitoring > Reports**.

- [Creating Key SNMP Customized Performance Reports, Node Reports, Domain Reports on page 314](#)
- [Creating a New KSC Report from an Existing Report on page 315](#)

### Creating Key SNMP Customized Performance Reports, Node Reports, Domain Reports

To create a new KSC report:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > KSC Performance, Nodes, Domains**.
2. From the Node and Domain Interface Reports section, select a resource for the report.
3. Under the Customized Reports section, click **Create New > Submit**

The Customized Report Configuration page is displayed.

4. In the Title text box, enter a name for the report.
5. (Optional) To add a graph to the report:

Select **Add New Graph**.

- a. Select a resource from the Resources section.
- b. Select **Choose Child Resource** to select the resource you want to use in a graph.
- c. Select the check box for the specific node resources you want to view, or click **Select All** to select all the displayed node resources.

6. (Optional) To allow global manipulation of the report timespan, select **Show Timespan Button**.
7. (Optional) To allow global manipulation of report prefabricated graph type, select **Show Graphtype Button**
8. (Optional) Select the number of graphs to show per line in the report.
9. To save the report, click **Save**.

## Creating a New KSC Report from an Existing Report

To create a new KSC report from an existing report:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > KSC Performance, Nodes, Domains**.
2. Under the Resources section, select the KSC report that you want to use to create a new report and click **Create New from Existing > Submit**.

The Customized Report Configuration page is displayed.

3. Select a resource.
4. In the Title text box, enter a new name for the report.
5. (Optional) Customize the report by adding graphs and specifying the number of graphs per line.
6. Click **Save**.

### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Network Monitoring Reports Overview on page 292](#)
- [Viewing Reports on page 315](#)
- [Deleting Reports on page 320](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace on page 296](#)

## Viewing Reports

Select **Network Monitoring > Reports** to view the following types of reports:

- Resource graphs that provide SNMP performance data collected from managed nodes on your network
- Key SNMP customized (KSC) performance reports, node reports, domain reports. You can generate KSC reports to view SNMP performance data using prefabricated graph types.

- Database reports that provide graphical or numeric views of service level metrics
- Statistics reports that provide regularly scheduled reports on response time, SNMP node-level performance and interface data, and OSPF area data

## Viewing Resource Graphs

To view a resource graph:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > Resource Graphs**.
2. Select the resource node for which you want to generate a standard performance report or custom performance report.  
The Node Resources page is displayed.
3. To select the specific node resources data that you want to view, choose one of the following options:
  - To view data for a subset of node resources:
    - a. Click the **Search** option
    - b. Enter a text string to identify the node resources you want to view.
    - c. Click **OK**.
    - d. Select the check box for the specific node resources you want to view, or click **Select All** to select all the displayed node resources.
  - To view data for all listed node resources, click **Select All**.
4. To display graphical data for the all the selected node resources, click **Graph Selection**.
5. In the Time Period field, specify the period of time (last day, last week, last month, custom) which the report should cover.

The statistical data is refreshed to reflect the time period specified.

## Viewing Key SNMP Customized (KSC) Performance Reports, Node Reports, Domain Reports

To view a KSC report:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > KSC Performance, Nodes, Domains**.
2. Select the resource node for which you want to view a standard performance report or custom performance report.  
The Custom View Node Report is displayed.
3. (Optional) To customize the Node Report view:
  - To override the default time span, in the Override Graph Timespan list, select number of hours, days, or months, or select by quarter, or year.
  - To override the default graph type, from the Override Graph type list, select number of hours, days or months, by quarter or by year.

4. Select **Update Report View** to refresh the report.
5. Select **Exit Report Viewer** to exit the report view or select **Customize This Report** to make additional updates to the report.

## Viewing Database Reports

To view database reports:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > Database Reports > List reports**.

The Local Report Repository page is displayed.

2. Select on a report page number or select **Next** or **Last** to scroll through the available reports to locate the database report you want to view.
3. To execute a report, from the row that lists the report, select the arrow icon from the Action column.

The Run Online Report page is displayed.

4. In the Report Format field, select either PDF or comma-separated values (CSV) format for the report from the list.
5. Select **run report**.

For PDF, the report is displayed in the selected format. For CSV, you are prompted to either open or save the file.

## Sending Database Reports

To send database reports:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > Database Reports > List reports**.

The Local Report Repository page is displayed.

2. Select on a report page number or select **Next** or **Last** to scroll through the available reports to locate the database report you want to send.
3. You can send a report to file system or e-mail the report.

- To execute a report, in the row that lists the report, select the arrow icon from the Action column.

The Run Online Report page is displayed.

- a. From the Report Format list, select either PDF or comma-separated values (CSV) format for the report from the list.
- b. Select **run report**.

For PDF, the report is displayed in the selected format. For CSV, you are prompted to either open or save the file.

- To send a report to a file system or e-mail the report, select the Deliver report icon from the Action column.

The Report Parameters page is displayed.

- a. From the report category field, select a category (Network Interfaces, Email Servers, Web Servers, Database Servers, and so forth)
- b. From the end date field, select the end date and time for the report.
- c. Select **Proceed**.

The Report Delivery Options page is displayed.

- d. In the name to identify this report field, specify a name for the report.
- e. (Optional) To send the report through e-mail, select the email report check box.
- f. In the format field, select the format type (HTML, PDF, SVG).
- g. In the recipient field, enter the name of the person to whom the report will be sent.
- h. (Optional) To save a copy of the report select the **save a copy of this report** check box.
- i. Select **Proceed**.

The Report Running page is displayed.

- j. Select **Finished** to close the page and return to the Local Report Repository page.

## Viewing Pre-run Database Reports

To view database reports:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > Database Reports > View and manage pre-run reports**.

All the pre-run reports are displayed in a table.

2. From the view report column, select the **HTML**, **PDF**, or **SVG** link to specify the format in which you want to view the report.

The database report is displayed.

## Viewing Statistics Reports

To view statistics reports:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > Statistics Reports**.

The Statistics Report List page displays a list of all available reports in a table.

2. To search for specific information in statistics reports, enter search text in the blank field directly above a Statistics Report column, and select **Filter**.

All available statistics reports that match the filter text you specified are displayed in the Statistics Report List page.

3. To clear the filtered information and restore the original list of statistics reports, select **Clear**.

All available statistics reports are again displayed in the Statistics Report List page.

4. To view complete information for a specific statistics report, click the Report description link from the Statistics Report List page.

The statistics report is displayed and includes Parent resources and resource graphs with SNMP interface data.

## Generating a Statistics Report for Export

To generate a statistics report as a PDF file or Excel spreadsheet:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > Statistics Reports**.

The Statistics Report List page displays a list of all available reports in a table.

2. In the Report Description column, select the report link.

The statistics report is displayed and includes all information for that report, including parent resources and resource graphs with SNMP interface data.

3. Choose PDF or Excel as the format for the statistics report:

- To generate the statistics report in PDF format, in the top-right corner of the Statistics Report, select the Export PDF icon.

The File Download window is displayed.

- To generate the statistics report as an Excel spreadsheet, in the top-right corner of the Statistics Report, select the Export Excel icon.

The File Download window is displayed.

4. From the File Download window, select **Open** to view the statistics report or select **Save** to save the statistics report.

### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Network Monitoring Reports Overview on page 292](#)
- [Creating Reports on page 314](#)
- [Deleting Reports on page 320](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace on page 296](#)

## Deleting Reports

---

To delete key SNMP customized (KSC) reports and database reports, select **Network Monitoring > Reports**.

- [Deleting Key SNMP Customized Reports on page 320](#)
- [Deleting Pre-run Database Reports on page 320](#)

### Deleting Key SNMP Customized Reports

To delete a KSC report:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > KSC Performance, Nodes, Domains**.
2. From the Customized Reports section, select the report that you want to delete.
3. Select the **Delete** radio button.
4. Select **Submit**.

The KSC report is deleted.

### Deleting Pre-run Database Reports

To delete a database report:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Reports > View and manage pre-run reports**.  
All the pre-run reports are displayed in a table.
2. From the select column in the reports table, select the check box for the database report that you want to delete.
3. Select **delete checked reports**.

The database report is deleted.

#### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Network Monitoring Reports Overview on page 292](#)
- [Creating Reports on page 314](#)
- [Viewing Reports on page 315](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace on page 296](#)

## Viewing Charts

---

To view charts, select **Network Monitoring > Charts**.



This page displays by default:

- Alarms Severity Chart, showing the counts of both alarms and events, distinguishing between major, minor, and critical severities.
- Last 7 Days Outages, showing the counts of outages per service.
- Node Inventory, showing the counts of nodes, interfaces, and services.

## Admin: Configuring Network Monitoring

---

This topic contains the following tasks:

- [Configuring Users, Groups, and Roles on page 321](#)
- [OpenNMS System: System Information on page 325](#)
- [OpenNMS System: Instrumentation Log Reader on page 326](#)
- [Notification Status on page 327](#)

### Configuring Users, Groups, and Roles

To configure user permissions to perform network monitoring tasks for specified categories of network assets, such as routers, switches, and production devices, you must perform the following tasks:

1. Add users and their information to the system, and set their duty schedules, that is, the times when they can receive notifications. For more information, see [“Viewing, Configuring, and Searching for Notifications” on page 313](#).
2. Add new groups and assign and unassign users to groups. You must create at least one group before you can assign any users. Categories of equipment such as routers or switches can be assigned only to groups. Users in the group to which the production category has been assigned can monitor the production network. Both users and groups can be assigned duty schedules.
3. Configure roles that define On Call schedules for users. Assign roles to groups.

The default user is the Default administrator. Do not delete this user.

- [Adding Users on page 322](#)
- [Modifying and Deleting Users on page 323](#)
- [Adding Groups on page 323](#)
- [Configuring Roles on page 324](#)
- [Assigning Roles to Groups on page 325](#)

## Adding Users

---

To add a user:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Users, Groups and Roles > Configure Users > Add New User**.

The New User page appears.

2. Enter a user ID and a password in the fields of those names, confirm the password, and click **OK**.

The Modify User page appears.

3. (Optional) Add any necessary details to the user profile.



**NOTE:** Even if you do not add details, you must click **Finish (Step 4)** to create a user.

- Full Name
- Comments
- Email
- Pager Email
- XMPP Address (for instant messages using the Jabber XMPP protocol)
- Numeric Service (for pagers that cannot display text messages)
- Numerical PIN — The Telephone PIN is an optional numeric field used to authenticate called users.
- Text Service (for alphanumeric pagers)
- Text PIN
- Work Phone
- Mobile Phone
- Home Phone
- Duty Schedules

Duty schedules determine when users should receive notifications. A duty schedule consists of a list of days for which the time applies and a time range (military time: days run from 0000 to 2359). If your duty schedules span midnight, or if your users work multiple, non-contiguous time periods, configure multiple duty schedules. To do this, select the number of duty schedules to add from the drop-down box next to **Add This Many Schedules**, and click **Add This Many Schedules**. To create a duty schedule spanning midnight, enter the first schedule from the start time to 2359 on one day, and enter a second duty schedule that begins at 0000 and ends at the end

of that user's coverage. To remove configured duty schedules, select the appropriate check boxes in the Delete column and click **Remove Checked Schedules**.

4. Click **Finish**.

### Modifying and Deleting Users

---

The default user is the Default administrator. Do not delete this user.

To modify or delete a user:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Users, Groups and Roles > Configure Users**.

Click the User ID link to view detailed information about a user.

2. (Optional) To delete a user, click the appropriate trash can icon in the Delete column.

A message appears, asking you to click OK to confirm.

3. (Optional) To modify a user, click the appropriate edit icon.

The Modify User page appears.

4. (Optional) Edit any necessary details in the user profile. See Step 3 of the preceding procedure to add a user.

5. (Optional) To rename a user, select the user and click **Rename**.

6. Click **Finish**.

### Adding Groups

---

To add a group, assign users to it, and assign a category to the group:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Users, Groups and Roles**, and click **Configure Groups**.

The Group Configuration page appears.

2. Click **Add new group**.

The New Group page appears.

3. Enter a group name and, if desired, a comment in the fields of those names.

4. Click **OK**.

The Modify Group page appears.

5. In the Assign/Unassign Users section of the page, select a user from the Available Users list, and click the >> button under the list.

The user moves to the Currently in Group list.

You can move a user up and down the list by clicking **Move Up** or **Move Down**, and you can remove the user from the group by selecting the user ID and clicking the << button under the list.

6. To assign a category to a group, in the Assign/Unassign Categories section of the page, select a category for your group from the Available Categories list, and click the >> button under the list.

The category moves to the Currently in Group list.

You can move a category up and down the list by clicking **Move Up** or **Move Down**, and you can remove the category from the group by selecting the category and clicking the << button under the list.

7. To assign schedules for groups, see Step 3 of the procedure to add a user. Note that the schedules of a user must coincide with that of the group to which the user belongs. If a group with a weekend schedule contains a user with a weekday schedule, that user will not be able to do any work.
8. When you have finished assigning users to groups and categories to groups, click **Finish**.

---

### Configuring Roles

This topic explains how to configure roles that define On Call schedules for users. Note that the ability to receive notifications does not necessarily coincide with being on call. However, a user who is on call needs to be able to receive notifications.

To configure roles:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Users, Groups and Roles**, and click **Configure Roles**.

The Role Configuration page appears.

2. To add a new role, click **Add New Role**.

The Edit Role page appears.

3. To name the role, select the text in the Name box, and replace it by entering the role name.
4. To select the role's supervisor, choose a user ID from the Supervisor list (Admin is the default). The supervisor does not have to be a member of the group to which the role is assigned. After the role is created, the name of the role's supervisor appears next to Currently On Call.
5. To enter a description, enter text in the Description field.
6. Currently On Call does not have a field unless the role has already been created. If the role has already been created, the On Call field displays the name of the role's supervisor, selected in Step 4.

### Assigning Roles to Groups

To assign roles to groups:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Users, Groups and Roles**, and click **Configure Roles**.

The Role Configuration page appears.

2. Select the role that you want to assign.

The View Role page appears.

3. Click **Edit Details**.

The Edit Role page appears.

4. On the Edit Role page, select from the Membership Group list.

5. Click **Save**.

The View Role page appears, displaying the details for the role. You can edit the details by clicking **Edit Details**. This returns you to the previous Edit Role page.

6. When finished, you can either click **Done** to return to the Role Configuration page, or move on to the next step, setting the role schedule.

7. To set the role schedule on the View Role page, select the appropriate month and year by clicking the << or >> controls.

Note that the month and year can be changed in the next step, so that you could choose a period of several months or years.

8. To select the appropriate days of the month for a specific user in the group, click the + sign for any day and date.

The Edit Schedule Entry page appears.

9. Select the user from the User list, then select the Start Date, Start Time, End Date, and End Time from the respective lists.

10. Click **Save**.

The View Role page reappears.

11. Continue setting the role schedule for different groups as necessary, and when finished, click **Done**.

### OpenNMS System: System Information

Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > System Information** to view the OpenNMS configuration and the system configuration on which OpenNMS is running.

- The OpenNMS Configuration section of the page lists the following information:
  - OpenNMS Version
  - Home Directory
  - RRD store by Group—true or false

- Web-Application Logfiles—location
- Reports directory—location
- Jetty http host
- Jetty http port—usually 8980
- Jetty https host
- Jetty https port
- The System Configuration section of the page lists the following information:
  - Server Time
  - Client Time
  - Java Version
  - Java Virtual Machine
  - Operating System
  - Servlet Container
  - User Agent

## OpenNMS System: Instrumentation Log Reader

Use the instrumentation log reader to find out how long each node is taking to collect data.

The input for the instrumentation log reader is the instrumentation log file produced by the OpenNMS system. To produce parsable data, the log file must be produced with DEBUG enabled.

To ensure service collector data is available, ensure that in the *log4j.properties* configuration file, the <Collectd> and <Instrumentation> appenders are set to log at DEBUG.

The log reader uses the timestamps of events occurring during data collection to compute the total amount of time a node is taking for data collection.

An instrumentation log entry has the following general format:

```
<timestamp> DEBUG [<thread-name>] <operation type> <event-type>: <optional  
service identifier> <optional error-info>
```

The output appears with the services listed in descending order by average collection time. The service whose collection time took the longest would therefore be at the top of the list.

To submit filtering criteria and reset them, select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Instrumentation Log Reader**.

The page displays Start Time, End Time, Duration, Total Services, and Threads Used.

The categories of information collected are:

- Service
- Collections
- Average Collection Time
- Average Time Between Collections
- Successful Collections
- Successful Percentage
- Average Successful Collection Time
- Unsuccessful Collections
- Unsuccessful Percentage
- Average Unsuccessful Collection Time
- Average Persistence Time
- Total Persistence Time

## Notification Status

Notifications are sent out only if Notification Status is switched to On. This is a systemwide setting. The default setting is Notification Status Off. After you change the setting, click **Update**.

### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)
- [Viewing the Node List on page 293](#)
- [Viewing Managed Devices on page 37](#)
- [Resyncing Nodes on page 294](#)
- [Searching in the Network Monitoring Workspace on page 296](#)
- [Viewing Charts on page 320](#)

## Configuring SNMP Community Names by IP

This task enables you to configure SNMP community names by IP address. You also need to configure the community string used in SNMP data collection. OpenNMS is shipped with the *public* community string. If you have set a different *read* community on your devices, this is where you must enter it.

In the boxes on the left, enter in a specific IP address and community string, or a range of IP addresses and a community string, and other SNMP parameters. OpenNMS optimizes this list, so enter the most generic first (that is, the largest range) and the specific IP addresses last, because if a range is added that includes a specific IP address, the community name for the specific address is changed to be that of the range. For devices that have already been discovered and that have an event stating that data collection

has failed because the community name changed, you might need to update the SNMP information on the interface page for that device (by selecting the Update SNMP link) for these changes to take effect.

To configure SNMP using an IP address:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure SNMP Community Names by IP**, and enter in the First IP Address field either a single IP address, or the first one of a range.
2. If you are not entering a range of IP addresses, leave the Last IP Address field blank, otherwise enter the last IP address of the range.
3. In the Community String field, enter the community string you use for your devices. The default is *public*.
4. (Optional) Enter a timeout in the Timeout field.
5. Select the appropriate version from the Version list.
6. (Optional) Enter the number of retries in the Retries field.
7. (Optional) Enter the port number in the Port field.
8. Click **Submit**. The system displays a message telling you whether OpenNMS needs to be restarted for the configuration to take effect.

---

## Configuring SNMP Data Collection per Interface

---

For each different SNMP collection scheme, there is a parameter called SNMP Storage Flag. If this value is set to primary, then only values pertaining to the node as a whole or the primary SNMP interface are stored in the system. If this value is set to all, then all interfaces for which values are collected are stored. If this parameter is set to select, then the interfaces for which data is stored can be selected. By default, only information from primary and secondary SNMP interfaces are stored.

You can choose other non-IP interfaces on a node if you have set up the SNMP collection.

To manage SNMP data collection for each interface:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure SNMP Data Collection per Interface**.  
The Manage SNMP Data Collection per Interface page appears.
2. Select the node for which you want to manage data collection.  
The Choose SNMP Interfaces for Data Collection page appears listing all known interfaces.
3. Select the appropriate value for the interface in the Collect column.  
Primary and secondary interfaces are always selected for data collection.

**Related Documentation** • [Managing SNMP Collections on page 345](#)



## Managing and Unmanaging Interfaces and Services

To manage a service, you must manage its interface. The Manage and Unmanage Interfaces and Services page enables you to manage not only interfaces, but also the combination of node, interface, and service. The tables on this page display the latter, with the Status column indicating if the interface or service is managed or not.

Managing an interface or service means that OpenNMS performs tests on this interface or service. If you want to explicitly enable or disable testing you can set that up here. A typical case is if a webserver is listening on both an internal and an external interface. If you manage the service on both interfaces, you will get two notifications if it fails. If you want only one, unmanage the service on one of the interfaces.

Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Manage and Unmanage Interfaces and Services** to manage or unmanage your node, interface, and service combinations.

To change the status, you have these choices: **Apply Changes**, **Cancel**, **Select All**, **Unselect All**, or **Reset**.

## Managing Thresholds

Thresholds allow you to define triggers against any data retrieved by the SNMP collector, and generate events, notifications, and alarms from those triggers. You can add, remove, and modify thresholds.

- [Creating Thresholds on page 329](#)
- [Modifying Thresholds on page 332](#)
- [Deleting Thresholds on page 333](#)

### Creating Thresholds

To create a threshold:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Manage Thresholds**.

The Threshold Configuration page appears and lists the threshold groups that are configured on the system.

2. To create a new threshold for a threshold group, select **Edit** next to the threshold group.

The Edit group page appears.

3. Select **Create New Threshold**.

The Edit threshold page appears.

4. To configure the threshold, specify appropriate values for the following threshold fields:

- **Type**—Specify high, low, relativeChange, absoluteChange, rearmingAbsoluteChange.
- **Datasource**—Specify a name for the datasource.

- Datasource type—Specify a datasource type from the list.
- Datasource label—Specify a type from the list.
- Value—Use depends on the type of threshold.
- Re-arm— Specify the name of a custom UEI to send into the events system when this threshold is re-armed. If left blank, it defaults to the standard thresholds UEIs.
- Trigger—Specify the number of times the threshold must be exceeded in a row before the threshold is triggered.



**NOTE:** A trigger is not used for relativeChange thresholds.

- Description—(Optional) A description used to identify the purpose of the threshold.
  - Triggered UEI— A custom UEI to send into the events system when the threshold is triggered. If a UEI is not specified, it defaults to the standard thresholds UEIs in the format *uei.opennms.org/<category>/<name>*.
  - Re-armed UEI—A custom UEI to send into the events system when this threshold is re-armed. If left blank, it defaults to the standard thresholds UEIs.
5. Select **Save** to create the threshold in Junos Space.
  6. (Optional) To configure a resource filter for a threshold:
    - a. Configure a filter operator to define the logical function to apply for the threshold filter to determine whether or not to apply the threshold. An OR operator specifies that if the resource matches any of the filters, the threshold is processed. An AND operator specifies that the threshold is processed only when a resource match all the filters.
    - b. Specify a field name for the filter the filter operator to define the logical function to apply for the threshold filter to determine whether or not to apply the threshold.
    - c. Specify the mathematical expression with data source names that is evaluated and compared to the threshold values.
    - d. Select the **Add** action to add the filter to a threshold.

To create an expression-based threshold:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Manage Thresholds**.

The Threshold Configuration page appears and lists the threshold groups that are configured on the system.
2. To create a new threshold for a threshold group, select **Edit** next to the threshold group.

The Edit group page appears.
3. Select **Create New Expression-based Threshold**

The Edit expression threshold page appears.

4. To configure the threshold, specify appropriate values for the following expression threshold fields:
  - Type—Specify high, low, relativeChange, absoluteChange, rearmingAbsoluteChange.
  - Expression—Specify a mathematical expression that includes the datasource names which are evaluated and compared to the threshold values.
  - Datasource type—Specify a datasource type from the list.
  - Datasource label—Specify a type from the list.
  - Value—Use depends on the type of threshold.
  - Re-arm— Specify the name of a custom UEI to send into the events system when this threshold is re-armed. If left blank, it defaults to the standard thresholds UEIs.
  - Trigger—Specify the number of times the threshold must be exceeded in a row before the threshold is triggered.



**NOTE:** A trigger is not used for relativeChange thresholds.

- Description—(Optional) A description used to identify the purpose of the threshold.
- Triggered UEI— A custom UEI to send into the events system when the threshold is triggered. If a UEI is not specified, it defaults to the standard thresholds UEIs in the format `uei.opennms.org/<category>/<name>`.
- Re-armed UEI—a custom UEI to send into the events system when this threshold is re-armed. If left blank, it defaults to the standard thresholds UEIs.

5. Select **Save** to create the expression threshold in Junos Space.
6. (Optional) To configure a resource filter for an expression threshold:
  - a. Configure a filter operator to define the logical function to apply for the expression threshold filter to determine whether or not to apply the expression threshold. An OR operator specifies that if the resource matches any of the filters, the expression threshold is processed. An AND operator specifies that the expression threshold is processed only when a resource match all the filters.
  - b. Specify a field name for the filter to define the logical function to apply for the threshold filter to determine whether or not to apply the threshold.
  - c. Specify the mathematical expression with data source names that are evaluated and compared to the threshold values.
  - d. Select the **Add** action to add the filter to an expression threshold.

## Modifying Thresholds

To modify an existing threshold in a threshold group:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Manage Thresholds**.

The Threshold Configuration page appears and lists the threshold groups that are configured on the system.
2. To create a new threshold for a threshold group, select **Edit** next to the threshold group.

The Edit group page appears.
3. To modify an existing threshold, select the **Edit** option that appears to the right of the threshold you want to update.

The Edit Threshold page appears and displays the threshold fields.
4. Modify the threshold fields you want to update.

5. Click **Save** to update the threshold.
6. (Optional) To add a resource filter for the threshold:
  - a. Specify a filter operator to define the logical function to apply for the threshold filter to determine whether or not to apply the threshold. An OR operator specifies that if the resource matches any of the filters, the threshold is processed. An AND operator specifies that the threshold is processed only when a resource match all the filters.
  - b. Specify a field name for the filter to define the logical function to apply for the threshold filter to determine whether or not to apply the threshold.
  - c. Specify the mathematical expression with data source names that are evaluated and compared to the threshold values.
  - d. Select the **Add** action to add the filter to the threshold.

## Deleting Thresholds

To delete a threshold:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Manage Thresholds**.  
The Threshold Configuration page appears and lists the threshold groups that are configured on the system.
2. To delete a threshold from a threshold group, select **Edit** next to the threshold group.  
The Edit group page appears.
3. To delete an existing threshold, select **Delete**.

**Related Documentation**

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)

## Selecting and Sending an Event to the Network Management System

To select and send an event:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Send Event**.  
The Send Event to OpenNMS page appears.
2. From the Events field, select an event from the list.
3. To define the event and the OpenNMS destination, specify appropriate values for the following fields:
  - Node ID field—Select a device node from the list. The Node ID specifies the device in the event sent to the OpenNMS system.
  - Source Hostname—Specify the hostname of the source from which the event is sent.
  - Interface field—Select the interface address to which the event is sent.

- Service field—Specify the name of the service that will receive the event.
  - Parameters—Click the **Add additional parameters** link to specify the name and value of each additional parameter you want to add.
  - Description field—Provide a description for the event.
  - Severity field—Select a severity level for the event.
  - Operator instructions—Include instructions that the operator might need to respond to the event notification.
4. Click **Send Event** to send the event to the system.

## Configuring Notifications

---

- [Configuring Event Notifications on page 334](#)
- [Configure Destination Paths on page 336](#)
- [Configure Path Outages on page 337](#)

### Configuring Event Notifications

You can configure an event to send a notification whenever that event is triggered. You can add, edit, and delete event notifications.

To add a notification to an event:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Notifications > Configure Event Notifications**.
2. Click **Add New Event Notification**.
3. Select the event UEI that will trigger the notification.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Build the rule that determines whether to send a notification for this event, based on the interface and service information specified in the event.
6. You can validate the rule results or skip the rule results validation:
  - To validate the rule results:
    - a. Click **Validate rule results**.
    - b. Click **Next**.
    - c. Specify a name for the notification, choose the destination path, and enter the information required to send with the notification.
    - d. Click **Finish**.
  - To skip the rule results:
    - a. Click **Skip results validation**.

- b. Specify a name for the notification, choose the destination path, and enter the information required to send with the notification.
- c. Click **Finish**.

To edit an existing event notification:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Notifications > Configure Event Notifications**.
2. Click the **Edit** button that is located to the left of the event notification you want to modify.
3. Select the event UEI that will trigger the notification.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Build the rule that determines whether to send a notification for this event, based on the interface and service information specified in the event.
6. (Optional) Click **Reset Address and Services** if you want to clear the changes that you have entered.
7. You can validate the rule results or skip the rule results validation:
  - To validate the rule results:
    - a. Click **Validate rule results**.
    - b. Click **Next**.
    - c. Specify a name for the notification, choose the destination path, and enter the information required to send with the notification.
    - d. Click **Finish**.
  - To skip the rule results:
    - a. Click **Skip results validation**.
    - b. Specify a name for the notification, choose the destination path, and enter the information required to send with the notification.
    - c. Click **Finish**.

To delete an existing event notification:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Notifications > Configure Event Notifications**.
2. Click the **Delete** button that is located to the left of the event notification you want to modify.
3. Click **Ok** in the delete notification confirmation dialog box to delete the notification.

## Configure Destination Paths

You can configure a destination path that describes what users or groups will receive notifications, how the notifications will be sent, and who to notify if escalation is needed. A destination path defines a reusable list of contacts that you include in an event configuration.

To create a new destination path:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Notifications > Configure Destination Paths**.
2. Click the **New Path** button.
3. Specify appropriate values for the following fields:
  - Name field—Specify a name for the destination path.
  - Initial Delay—From the list, select the number of seconds to wait before sending notifications to users or groups.
  - Initial targets—Select the users and groups to whom the event notification will be sent.
4. Click the **Add Escalation** button to specify users and groups to whom event notification will be sent.
5. Choose the commands to use (for example, callHomePhone, callMobilePhone, or callMobilePhone) for each user and group.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Click **Finish** when you have finished editing the destination path.

To modify an existing destination path:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Notifications > Configure Destination Paths**.
2. Under Existing Paths, select the existing destination path that you want to modify.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. You can make changes to any of the following fields:
  - Initial Delay—From the list, select the number of seconds to wait before sending notifications to users or groups.
  - Initial targets—Add users and groups to whom the event notification should be sent and remove users and groups to whom the event should not be sent.
5. Click the **Add Escalation** button to specify users and groups to whom event notification will be sent.
6. Choose the commands to use (for example, callHomePhone, callMobilePhone, or callMobilePhone) for each user and group.



7. Click **Next**.
8. Click **Finish** when you have finished modifying the destination path.

To delete a destination path:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Notifications > Configure Destination Paths**.
2. Under Existing Paths, select the existing destination path that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Click **Ok** to confirm that you want to delete the selected destination path.

## Configure Path Outages

You can configure a path outage that describes what users or groups will receive notifications, how the notifications will be sent, and who to notify if escalation is needed. A destination path defines a reusable list of contacts that you include in an event configuration.

To create a new path outage:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Configure Notifications > Configure Path Outage**.
2. Click the **New Path** button.
3. Specify appropriate values for the following fields:
  - Critical Path—Enter the critical path IP address.
  - Critical Path Service—From the list, select the ICMP protocol.
  - Initial targets—Select the users and groups to whom the event notification will be sent.
4. Build the rule that determines which nodes are subject to this critical path.
5. Select the **Show matching node list** check box to show the list of nodes that match.
6. Choose the commands to use (for example, callHomePhone, callMobilePhone, or callMobilePhone) for each user and group.
7. Click **Validate rule results** to validate the rule.
8. Click **Finish** when you have finished configuring the path outage.

### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)

## Configuring Scheduled Outages

You can configure scheduled outages to suspend notifications, polling, thresholding and data collection (or any combination of these) for any interface/node for any length of time.

To create a scheduled outage:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Scheduled Outages**.
2. Specify a name for the scheduled outage.
3. Click **Add new outage** to create the scheduled outage.
4. Build the rule that determines which nodes are subject to this critical path.
5. Specify appropriate values for the following fields:
  - Node Labels—From the list, select the node labels to add.
  - Interfaces—From the list, select the interfaces to add.
  - Outage type—From the list, select daily, weekly, monthly, or (time) specific.
  - Time—Specify one or more days and times for the outage.
6. Specify that the outage applies to one or more of the following categories:
  - Notifications
  - Status polling
  - Threshold checking
  - Data collection

---

## Compiling SNMP MIBs

- [Uploading MIBs on page 338](#)
- [Compiling MIBs on page 339](#)
- [Viewing MIBs on page 339](#)
- [Deleting MIBs on page 339](#)
- [Clearing MIB Console Logs on page 340](#)
- [Generating Event Configuration on page 340](#)
- [Generating a Data Collection Configuration on page 341](#)

## Uploading MIBs

To upload a MIB file:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **SNMP MIB Compiler** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. Click **Upload MIB**.
4. Browse and upload the MIB file from the appropriate location where the MIB file is stored.

The MIB file you have uploaded is displayed in the pending node of the MIB tree. You can now view and compile this MIB file.



**NOTE:** The filename must be the same as the MIB being processed.

## Compiling MIBs

Before you compile a MIB file, ensure that you have uploaded the MIB file. The MIB file should be displayed in the pending node of the MIB tree for you to be able to compile the MIB file.

To compile a MIB file:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.

The Admin page is displayed.

2. Select **SNMP MIB Compiler** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. From the pending node of MIB tree, right click the MIB file you want to compile and select **Compile MIB**.

You can view the results of the MIB compilation in the MIB Console section of Admin page. If the MIB file is compiled successfully, you will receive a log entry “MIB parsed successfully”. If the MIB file cannot be compiled, you will receive an error message.

If a MIB file is compiled successfully, the MIB file will be moved from the pending node to the compiled node in the MIB tree.

## Viewing MIBs

You can view MIB files in the compiled state or in the pending state.

To view a MIB file:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.

The Admin page is displayed.

2. Select **SNMP MIB Compiler** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. Right click the MIB file you want to view and select **View MIB**.

The View MIB pop-up window displays the MIB file. Use the scroll bar to view the contents of the MIB file.

## Deleting MIBs

You can delete MIB files in the compiled state or in the pending state.

To delete a MIB file:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.

The Admin page is displayed.

2. Select **SNMP MIB Compiler** in the Operations section of the Admin page.

3. Right-click the MIB file you want to delete and select **Delete MIB**.
4. Click **Yes**.

## Clearing MIB Console Logs

MIB console displays the logs related to MIB file upload and MIB file compilation.

To clear the MIB console logs:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **SNMP MIB Compiler** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. Click **Clear Log** in the MIB console section.

## Generating Event Configuration

You can generate event configuration from traps after you have compiled the MIB files.

To generate an event configuration:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **SNMP MIB Compiler** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. From the compiled node in the MIB tree, right-click a MIB file and select **Generate Events**.
4. In the Generate Events pop-up window, click **Continue**.

You can edit the UEI base if needed. The Events window now displays the events that are currently part of the MIB file. You can choose to save this events XML file as is, edit this events XML file, or add new events to this file.

5. To save the events file as is, click **Save Events File**.
6. To add new events:
  - a. Click **Add Event**.  
Enter the new event details.
  - b. In the Event UEI field, enter a unique event identifier.
  - c. In the Event Label field, enter a label for the new event.
  - d. In the Description field, enter a description for the new event.
  - e. In the Log Message field, enter a log message for the new event.
  - f. From the Destination drop-down menu, select an appropriate option.
  - g. From the Severity drop-down menu, select an appropriate option.
  - h. In the Reduction Key field, enter the appropriate text.

- i. In the Clear Key field, enter the appropriate text.
  - j. From the Alarm Type drop-down menu, select an appropriate option.
  - k. In the Operator Instructions field, enter instructions for the operator if required.
  - l. Click **Add** next to the Mask Elements table to add new element names and element values.
  - m. Click **Add** next to the Mask Varbinds table to add new varbind numbers and varbind values.
  - n. Click **Add** next to the Varbind Decodes table to add new parameter IDs and decode values.
  - o. Click **Save**.
  - p. Click **Yes**.
7. To edit the current events XML file:
    - a. Select the event you want to edit.
    - b. Scroll down to the bottom of the window and select **Edit**.

You can now edit all the parameters of this event.
  8. After you have added new events or modified the events, click **Save Events File**.



**NOTE:** Once an event file is saved, reference gets added to eventconf.xml and an event configuration reload operation is performed.

## Generating a Data Collection Configuration

You can generate a data collection configuration for performance metrics after you have compiled the MIB files.

To generate a data collection configuration:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **SNMP MIB Compiler** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. From the compiled node in the MIB tree, right-click a MIB file and select **Generate Data Collection**.

The Data Collection window is displayed. You can save the Data collection XML file as is or add new resource types, MIB groups, and system definitions to this data collection XML. You can also modify the existing resource types, MIB groups, and system definitions before saving the data collection XML.

4. In the Data Collection Group Name field, modify the group name if required.
5. To save the data collection XML as is, click **Save Data Collection File**.
6. To add a new resource type to the data collection XML:

- a. Select the Resource Types column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Click **Add Resource Type**.  
Enter the resource type details.
  - c. In the Resource Type Name field, enter a name for the resource.
  - d. In the Resource Type Label field, enter a label for the resource.
  - e. In the Resource Label field, enter the appropriate text.
  - f. From the Class Name drop-down menu, select the appropriate class name for storage strategy.
  - g. Click **Add** next to the Storage Strategy table to add new parameters.
  - h. From the Class Name drop-down menu, select the appropriate class name for persist selector strategy.
  - i. Click **Add** next to the Persist Selector Strategy table to add new parameters.
  - j. Click **Save**.
7. To edit an existing resource type in the data collection XML:
  - a. Select the Resource Types column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Select the resource type you want to edit.
  - c. Scroll down to the bottom of the window and select **Edit**.  
You can now edit all the parameters of this resource type.
8. To add a new MIB group to the data collection XML:
  - a. Select the MIB Groups column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Click **Add Group**.  
Enter the MIB group details.
  - c. In the Group Name field, enter a name for the MIB group.
  - d. From the ifType Filter drop-down menu, select the appropriate option.
  - e. Click **Add** next to the MIB Objects table to add the OID, instance, alias, and type for the MIB objects.
  - f. Click **Save**.
9. To edit an existing MIB group in the data collection XML:
  - a. Select the MIB Groups column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Select the MIB group you want to edit.
  - c. Scroll down to the bottom of the window and select **Edit**.  
You can now edit all the parameters of this MIB group.
10. To add a new system definition to the data collection XML:

- a. Select the System Definitions column in the Data Collection window.
- b. Click **System Definition**.  
Enter the system definition details.
- c. In the Group Name field, enter a name for the system definition.
- d. Select the appropriate buttons next to the System OID/Mask field.
- e. Select the MIB group you want to associate this system definition to, and click **Add Group**.

The MIB group is displayed in the MIB Groups table.

- f. Click **Save**.
11. To edit an existing system definition in the data collection XML:
  - a. Select the System Definitions column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Select the system definition you want to edit.
  - c. Scroll down to the bottom of the window and select **Edit**.

You can now edit all the parameters of this system definition.



**NOTE:** Update the `datacollection-config.xml` to include the group created into an SNMP collection when you have generated a data collection.

#### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)

## Managing Events Configuration Files

- [Adding New Events Configuration Files on page 343](#)
- [Deleting Events Configuration Files on page 344](#)
- [Modifying Events Configuration Files on page 344](#)

### Adding New Events Configuration Files

To add a new events configuration file:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **Manage Events Configuration** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. Click **Add New Events File**.  
The New Events Configuration pop-up window is displayed.
4. In the Events File Name field, enter a name for the events configuration file.
5. Click **Continue** to add the events configurations file.

## Deleting Events Configuration Files

To delete an events configuration file:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **Manage Events Configuration** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. From the Select Events Configuration File drop-down menu, select the events configuration file you want to remove.
4. Click **Remove Selected Events File**.
5. Click **Yes**.

## Modifying Events Configuration Files

You can edit the events in the events configuration XML file or add new events to this file.

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **Manage Events Configuration** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. From the Select Events Configuration File drop-down menu, select the events configuration file you want to modify.
4. To add new events to this events configuration file:
  - a. Click **Add Event**.  
Enter the new event details.
  - b. In the Event UEI field, enter a unique event identifier.
  - c. In the Event Label field, enter a label for the new event.
  - d. In the Description field, enter a description for the new event.
  - e. In the Log Message field, enter a log message for the new event.
  - f. From the Destination drop-down menu, select an appropriate option.
  - g. From the Severity drop-down menu, select an appropriate option.
  - h. In the Reduction Key field, enter appropriate text.
  - i. In the Clear Key field, enter appropriate text.
  - j. From the Alarm Type drop-down menu, select an appropriate option.
  - k. In the Operator Instructions field, enter instructions for the operator if required.
  - l. Click **Add** next to the Mask Elements table to add new element names and element values.



- m. Click **Add** next to the Mask Varbinds table to add new varbind numbers and varbind values.
- n. Click **Add** next to the Varbind Decodes table to add new parameter IDs and decode values.
- o. Click **Save**.
5. To edit the current events configuration file:
  - a. Select the event you want to edit.
  - b. Scroll down to the bottom of the window and select **Edit**.  

You can now edit all the parameters of this event.
6. After you have added new events or modified the existing events, click **Save Events File**.
7. Click **Yes**.

**Related Documentation**

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)

## Managing SNMP Collections

- [Add a New SNMP Collection on page 345](#)
- [Modify an SNMP Collection on page 346](#)

### Add a New SNMP Collection

To add a new SNMP collection:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  

The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **Manage SNMP Collections and Data Collection Groups** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. Select the **SNMP Collections** tab.
4. Click **Add SNMP Collection**.
5. In the SNMP Collection Name field, enter a name for the SNMP collection.
6. From the SNMP Storage Flag drop-down menu, select an appropriate value.
7. Click **Add** next to the RRA list table and add consolidation function, XFF, steps, and rows for RRD.
8. Click **Add** next to the Include Collections table and add the include types and values.
9. Click **Save**.

## Modify an SNMP Collection

To modify an SNMP collection:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **Manage SNMP Collections and Data Collection Groups** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. Select the **SNMP Collections** tab.
4. Click **Refresh SNMP Collection**.
5. Select the appropriate SNMP collection name.
6. Scroll down to the bottom of the window and click **Edit**.

You can now edit all the parameters of this SNMP collection.

7. Click **Save**.

### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)

---

## Managing Data Collection Groups

- [Adding New Data Collection Files on page 346](#)
- [Deleting Data Collection Files on page 347](#)
- [Modifying Data Collection Files on page 347](#)

## Adding New Data Collection Files

To add a new data collection file:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **Manage SNMP Collections and Data Collection Groups** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. Select the **Data Collection Groups** tab.
4. Click **Add New Data Collection File**.

The New Data Collection Group pop-up window is displayed.

5. In the Group Name field, enter a name for data collection group.
6. Click **Continue** to add and configure the data collection file.

## Deleting Data Collection Files

To delete a data collection file:

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
the Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **Manage SNMP Collections and Data Collection Groups** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. Select the **Data Collection Groups** tab.
4. From the Select Data Collection Group File drop-down menu, select the data collection file you want to remove.
5. Click **Remove Selected Data Collection File**.
6. Click **Yes**.

## Modifying Data Collection Files

You can edit the resource types, MIB groups, or system definitions in the data collection file or add new resource types, MIB groups, or system definitions to this file.

1. Select **Platform > Network Monitoring > Admin**.  
The Admin page is displayed.
2. Select **Manage SNMP Collections and Data Collection Groups** in the Operations section of the Admin page.
3. Select the **Data Collection Groups** tab.
4. From the Select Data Collection Group File drop-down menu, select the data collection file you want to modify.
5. To add a new resource type to the data collection file:
  - a. Select the Resource Types column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Click **Add Resource Type**.  
Enter the resource type details.
    - c. In the Resource Type Name field, enter a name for the resource.
    - d. In the Resource Type Label field, enter a label for the resource.
    - e. In the Resource Label field, enter the appropriate text.
    - f. From the Class Name drop-down menu, select the appropriate class name for the storage strategy.
    - g. Click **Add** next to the Storage Strategy table to add new parameters.
    - h. From the Class Name drop-down menu, select the appropriate class name for the persist selector strategy.

- i. Click **Add** next to the Persist Selector Strategy table to add new parameters.
  - j. Click **Save**.
6. To edit an existing resource type in the data collection file:
  - a. Select the **Resource Types** column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Select the resource type you want to edit.
  - c. Scroll down to the bottom of the window and select **Edit**.

You can now edit all the parameters of this resource type.
7. To add a new MIB group to the data collection file:
  - a. Select the MIB Groups column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Click **Add Group**.

Enter the MIB group details.
  - c. In the Group Name field, enter a name for the MIB group.
  - d. From the ifType Filter drop-down menu, select the appropriate option.
  - e. Click **Add** next to the MIB Objects table to add the OID, instance, alias, and type for the MIB objects.
  - f. Click **Save**.
8. To edit an existing MIB group in the data collection file:
  - a. Select the MIB Groups column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Select the MIB group you want to edit.
  - c. Scroll down to the bottom of the window and select **Edit**.

You can now edit all the parameters of this MIB group.
9. To add a new system definition to the data collection file:
  - a. Select the System Definitions column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Click **System Definition**.

Enter the system definition details.
  - c. In the Group Name field, enter a name for the system definition.
  - d. Select the appropriate radio buttons next to the System OID/Mask field.
  - e. Select the MIB group you want to associate this system definition to, and click **Add Group**.

The MIB group is now displayed in the MIB Groups table.
  - f. Click **Save**.
10. To edit an existing system definition in the data collection file:
  - a. Select the **System Definitions** column in the Data Collection window.
  - b. Select the system definition you want to edit.

- c. Scroll down to the bottom of the window and select **Edit**.

You can now edit all the parameters of this system definition.

11. When you have made the necessary changes, select **Save Data Collection File**.

#### Related Documentation

- [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)

## Managing Surveillance Categories

You can specify the devices for which SNMP data collection is controlled in different surveillance categories. Surveillance categories determine whether the data for the device is collected for performance management monitoring. You can modify, delete, and add surveillance categories.

- [Modifying Surveillance Categories on page 349](#)
- [Deleting Surveillance Categories on page 349](#)
- [Adding Surveillance Categories on page 349](#)

### Modifying Surveillance Categories

To modify a surveillance category:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Manage Surveillance Categories**.
2. Click the icon in the Edit column in the same row as the category.

The Edit Surveillance Category page appears.

3. To add devices to the surveillance category, select the device from the Available nodes list and click **Add**.
4. To remove devices from the surveillance category, select the device from the Nodes on category list and click **Remove**.

### Deleting Surveillance Categories

To remove a surveillance category, click the icon in the Delete column in the same row as the category.

### Adding Surveillance Categories

To add a surveillance category:

1. Select **Network Monitoring > Admin > Manage Surveillance Categories**.
2. Enter the name in the box and click **Add New Category**.

The name appears on the Surveillance Categories page.

3. Click the name in the Category column, and click **Edit category** on the Surveillance Category page.

4. To add devices to the surveillance category, select the device from the Available nodes list and click **Add**.
5. To remove devices from the surveillance category, select the device from the Nodes on category list and click **Remove**.

- Related Documentation**
- [Turning SNMP Data Collection Off and On on page 295](#)
  - [Network Monitoring Workspace Overview on page 290](#)

## PART 6

# Configuration Files

- [Manage Config Files on page 353](#)
- [Backup Config Files on page 363](#)





## CHAPTER 31

# Manage Config Files

- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)
- [Viewing Configuration File Statistics and Inventory on page 355](#)
- [Deleting Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Restoring Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Comparing Configuration Files on page 358](#)
- [Editing Configuration Files on page 359](#)
- [Exporting Configuration Files on page 361](#)
- [User Privileges in Configuration File Management on page 362](#)

## Managing Configuration Files Overview

---

Centralized configuration file management enables you to maintain copies of your device configuration files within Junos Space, storing multiple versions of any configuration file. It therefore provides for device configuration recovery. It also facilitates maintaining configuration consistency across multiple devices.



**NOTE:** Because each commit command on a device creates a new version on that device, backup copies may not be kept long. No more than 49 copies can be stored on a device. Junos Space provides backups with longer life-cycles.

Version management for configuration files in Junos Space is therefore independent from the configuration file versioning on devices.

The configuration file management work space handles three types of configuration file:

- Running configuration—The configuration file currently in effect on the device. The running configuration file is labeled Version 0.
- Candidate configuration—The new, not yet committed, configuration file that will become the running configuration.
- Backup configuration—The configuration file for recovery or rollback purposes. A backup configuration file is created by a commit command and the oldest backup (version 49) is deleted. The most recent backup configuration file is labeled Version 1.

A potential workflow for an individual file or device in this work space could be:

- Backup device and thus bring device's running configuration under Junos Space management
- Edit a copy of the backup configuration to create a candidate configuration
- Verify edits by comparing the initial backup version of the configuration file with the edited version
- Restore the candidate configuration to the device
- Export the initial backup to a zip file
- Delete the initial backup from Junos Space.

Stored configurations can be viewed by double-clicking the item on the Manage Configuration Files page.

A dialog box appears, displaying the file in a non-editable format. You can select the version you want to view from the **Version** list.

The status bar near the bottom of the dialog box shows the current page number, the total number of pages in the file, and provides paging controls and a Refresh button. Below that is the Comments area.

To perform an action on a configuration file, either select one and select an action from the Actions menu, or right-click a configuration file and select an action from the right mouse-click menu. You can perform the following actions:

- [Deleting Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Restoring Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Comparing Configuration Files on page 358](#)
- [Editing Configuration Files on page 359](#)
- [Exporting Configuration Files on page 361](#)

Backing up configuration files counts as a task; see “[Backing Up Configuration Files](#)” on [page 364](#).

---

## Viewing Configuration File Statistics and Inventory

---

The Configuration Files statistics page, which is directly under the Configuration Files workspace, displays two bar charts, showing:

- The Configuration file count by device family
- The most frequently revised configuration files.

In both cases, mouse over the graphic to display the contents in a tooltip.

All configuration files in Junos Space are displayed on the **Config Files Management** inventory landing page. You can view stored configurations by double-clicking an entry in the table view.

The following information appears for each configuration file:

- Host Name
- IP Address
- Platform
- Serial Number of Device
- Software Version

### Related Documentation

- [Backing Up Configuration Files on page 364](#)
- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)
- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)

## Deleting Configuration Files

---

This topic gives the procedure for deleting device configuration files from Junos Space.

To delete a configuration file, do the following:

1. Select **Configuration Files > Config Files Management**.

The Config Files Management page displays all the configuration files saved in Junos Space.

2. Select the check box of a configuration file and select **Delete Config File** from the Actions dropdown.

A message appears, asking you to confirm deletion.

3. Click **Delete**.

The Config Files Management page reappears, displaying any remaining configuration files.

### Related Documentation

- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)
- [Restoring Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Comparing Configuration Files on page 358](#)
- [Editing Configuration Files on page 359](#)
- [Exporting Configuration Files on page 361](#)

## Restoring Configuration Files

---

Restoring a configuration file means either merging the contents of a configuration file on Junos Space with the existing configuration on the device, or overriding the device's running configuration with a candidate configuration (a configuration file edited in the Config Files workspace) or a backup from Junos Space.

A restore action generates an audit log entry.

To restore a device configuration file from Junos Space to a device:

1. Select **Configuration Files > Config Files Management**.
2. Select the device whose configuration you want to restore. (To restore all of them, select the check box in the column header next to **Device Name**.)
3. Select **Restore Config File** from the Actions dropdown.

The **Restore Config File(s)** dialog box appears, displaying the name of the selected file, the name of the device, the version which is to be restored to the device, and the type of restore. By default, the latest version will be merged.

4. Select the appropriate version from the dropdown list that appears when you click next to the version number displayed in the **ConfigFile Versions** column.

5. Select the appropriate type of restore from the dropdown list that appears when you click next to the term displayed in the **Type** column.
6. You can either restore immediately or schedule the restoration for a later time.
  - To restore Immediately, click **Restore**.
  - To schedule the restore at a later time:
    - a. Select the check box next to the **Schedule at a Later Time** label or click the arrow next to the **Schedule at a Later Time** label to display the corresponding fields.
    - b. Select a date from the field on the left, and a time from the field on the right. The time zone displays to the right of the time field. The time zone is set on and for the Junos Space server.
    - c. Click **Restore**.

The **Restore Configuration Files** dialog box appears, announcing the successful scheduling of the restoration, and presenting a link to the job ID so that you can view details.

A successful restore action will be indicated by the word Success in the status column of the Job Manager. If a device cannot be reached, it will be skipped over, and the job status will indicate failure.

7. Click **OK** to dismiss the dialog box.
8. (Optional) Verify your work either by double-clicking the configuration file name on the Manage Configuration Files page, or by doing another backup, then comparing versions (see [“Comparing Configuration Files” on page 358](#)).

#### Related Documentation

- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)
- [Deleting Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Comparing Configuration Files on page 358](#)
- [Editing Configuration Files on page 359](#)
- [Exporting Configuration Files on page 361](#)
- [Backing Up Configuration Files on page 364](#)
- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)

## Comparing Configuration Files

---

View entire device configurations side by side to compare them, see the total number of diffs run, the date and time of the last commit, and the number of changes made.

Using this feature does not generate an audit log entry.

You can compare the following:

- The configuration file of one device to the configuration file of another device. By default, the latest versions are compared.
- Two versions of the same configuration file. By default, the latest version and the previous version are compared.
- An earlier version of the configuration file of one device with a later version of the configuration file of another device.

Any choices other than those listed above will result in a dimmed (unavailable) menu.

To compare device configuration files:

1. Select **Configuration Files > Config Files Management**.

The Config Files Management page appears, displaying all the configuration files managed by Junos Space.

2. Select the configuration file you want to compare.

3. Select **Compare Config File Versions** from the Actions dropdown.

The Compare Config Files page appears.

4. For the source, select a configuration file from the Source config file list and a version from the Version list.

5. For the target, select a configuration file from the Target config file list and a version from the Version list.

6. Click **Compare**.

The Compare Config Files dialog box displays the two configuration files side by side, with their file names and their versions in a dark gray bar underneath the legend at the top of the page. The legend references the following:

- Total diffs—Black text indicates content common to both files.
- Source—Content in the file on the left that is not contained in the file on the right.
- Target—Content in the file on the right that is not contained in the file on the left.
- Changed—Hot pink text indicates content unique to its respective file.

The status bar shows the current page number and the total number of pages. It also provides controls for moving from page to page and for refreshing the display.

The date and time of the last commit is shown in hot pink.



**NOTE:** When you compare files, each configuration parameter in one file or version is set side by side with the same parameter in the other. Therefore, you might see multiple pages of configuration for a single parameter in one file, whereas the same parameter in the other file might be only a couple of lines.

7. (Optional) To locate differences in configuration, click **Prev Diff** or **Next Diff**.
8. To finish viewing a comparison, click **Close** at the bottom of the page.

#### Related Documentation

- [Backing Up Configuration Files on page 364](#)
- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)
- [Deleting Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Restoring Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Editing Configuration Files on page 359](#)
- [Exporting Configuration Files on page 361](#)

## Editing Configuration Files

This action enables a very advanced user to edit the configuration file of the selected device in a text editor. It is therefore very different from the Device Configuration Editor available as an Action in the Devices work-space ( See [“Editing Device Configuration Overview” on page 45](#)).



#### NOTE:

The Edit Config Files action in the Config Files work-space has no validation and no sanity check. To get those features, use the Edit Device Configuration action in the Devices work-space.

Editing a configuration file generates an audit log entry (see [“Viewing Audit Logs” on page 436](#)); however, unlike configuration files edited in the Devices work-space, files edited in the Config Files work-space are not saved as change requests, instead, they are saved as versions.

To edit a configuration file using the Edit Config File action in the Config Files work-space:

1. Select **Configuration Files > Config Files Management** and select the device whose configuration you want to edit.

If no configuration files are displayed on the page, you must first back up the discovered devices (see [“Backing Up Configuration Files” on page 364](#)).

2. Select **Modify Config File** from the Actions dropdown.

The Edit Config File page appears. It displays the name of the file you selected, the time at which the file was created, the version, and the contents.

3. Select a version to use as a baseline from the **Version** list.

A version can be either a backup of a device configuration, or an edited copy of that initial backup. For an explanation of versioning in this context, see [“Backing Up Configuration Files” on page 364](#).

The selected version appears in the text editor. Note that there are usually both vertical and horizontal scroll bars, and that a configuration usually has multiple pages. The status bar at the bottom displays the page you are on and the total number of pages. It also holds paging controls and a Refresh icon.

For ease of orientation, the pagination of the configuration file remains the same, even if you add or remove large quantities of text. The parameters that were on page 5 when you began editing are still on page 5 when you finish.

4. (Optional) To find a specific parameter, go through the file page by page. The browser's Search function does not work in the text editor.
5. Enter your changes, using the Copy/Paste function if required.



**NOTE:** Do not click **Modify** until you have finished editing.

---

6. (Optional) List the changes you have made (or anything else) in the Comments field. You cannot create a comment unless you have made changes. It is advisable to enter something in this field to distinguish the current version from a backup taken from the device itself.
7. When finished making all changes, click **Modify**

The Manage Configuration Files page reappears, displaying the edited configuration file still selected.

8. (Optional) Verify your work by double-clicking the device from the Manage Configuration Files page.

A dialog box appears, displaying the file in a non-editable format. You can select the version from the dropdown list. By default, the edited version appears.

Here again, the pagination, Comments area, and controls are the same as they are in the text editor you used to make your changes.

Alternatively, you could compare versions of the file (see [“Comparing Configuration Files” on page 358](#)).

To deploy the edited configuration file, you must use the Restore action (see [“Restoring Configuration Files” on page 356](#)).

#### Related Documentation

- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)
- [Deleting Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Restoring Configuration Files on page 356](#)



- [Comparing Configuration Files on page 358](#)
- [Exporting Configuration Files on page 361](#)
- [Backing Up Configuration Files on page 364](#)
- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)

## Exporting Configuration Files

The Export action enables you to save one or more configuration files to a zip file on your local computer.



**NOTE:** Your browser security settings must be set to allow downloads. If the browser interrupts the download with a warning and then tries to restart the download by refreshing, the export will be aborted, and the zip file removed.

Exporting a configuration file generates an audit log entry.

To export a configuration file to a zip file,

1. Select **Configuration Files > Config Files Management** and select one or more configuration files.
2. Select **Compare Config File Versions** from the Actions dropdown.

The Export Config File(s) dialog box opens, displaying the name of the file, the device name, and the configuration file versions stored. By default, the latest version is selected.

3. Select the appropriate version from the dropdown list that appears when you click next to the version number displayed in the Versions column.
4. Click **Export**.

The Generating ZIP archive dialog box appears, displaying a progress bar showing when the zip file is ready for downloading, at which point, the Opening deviceConfigFiles.zip dialog box opens.

5. Save the zip file to your computer before closing the progress bar or the OpeningdeviceConfigFiles.zip dialog box, because the generated zip file is removed from the server immediately after the download is complete, or when either of these two dialog box is closed. Refreshing or exiting the browser will also remove the zip file from the server.

### Related Documentation

- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)
- [Deleting Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Restoring Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Comparing Configuration Files on page 358](#)

- [Editing Configuration Files on page 359](#)
- [Backing Up Configuration Files on page 364](#)
- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)

## User Privileges in Configuration File Management

---

In Junos Space Users, there is a predefined role for configuration file management: Configuration File Manager. That predefined role enables the users to which it has been assigned the permission to :

- Backup Config Files
- Delete Config Files
- Restore Config Files
- Compare Config Files
- Export Config Files

If you want to restrict the Configuration File Manager's permissions to anything less than the full set listed above, you can create a role in the Config Files application workspace and assign the permissions specifically for each list item.

### **Related Documentation**

- [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)
- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)

## CHAPTER 32

# Backup Config Files

- [Backing Up Configuration Files on page 364](#)

## Backing Up Configuration Files

---

Backing up a configuration file in the Config Files work-space means importing the configuration file from the device, and storing it in Junos Space.

Backing up your device configurations is therefore the prerequisite for configuration file management (see [“Managing Configuration Files Overview”](#) on page 354).

Only devices that have been previously discovered can have their configuration files backed up. The backup function skips over any devices that cannot be reached. In the Job Manager, under Job Status, a skipped-over configuration file backup shows up as Failed.

The backup function checks for differences before creating a new version of a configuration file. If no changes are detected, the device is skipped over. However, its status is shown as Success.



**NOTE:** The backup function checks for differences between the configuration on the device and the backup configuration stored in Junos Space. Therefore, even if no change to a device's configuration has been committed, if you edit its configuration file in Junos Space and then make a backup, a new version is created. The first backup is version 1, the edited configuration file is version 2, and the second backup is version 3.

---

A configuration file backup generates an audit log entry.

---



**NOTE:** In the case of an SRX series device with LSYS, backup configuration is supported only for the root device.

---

To back up your device configuration files to Junos Space:

1. Select **Configuration Files > Config Files Management** and select the Backup Config Files icon.

The **Backup Config Files** page appears, displaying all the devices managed by Junos Space, with the following information:

- Host Name
- IP Address
- Platform
- Serial Number
- Software Version

Because the table displays one device (record) per row, a single page might not be sufficient to list all your devices. However, if you have tagged your devices, you can achieve a more manageable display by selecting devices according to their tag.

The left side of the status bar at the bottom of the dialog box shows which page you are looking at and the total number of pages of records. It also provides controls for navigating from page to page and refreshing them. The right side of the status bar indicates the number of records currently displayed and the total number of records.

2. Select the devices whose configurations you want to back up by using either of two selection modes—manual or tag-based. These options are mutually exclusive. If you select one, the other is disabled.



**NOTE:** By default the **Select by Device** option is selected and the full list of devices is displayed.

3. To select devices manually:

- a. Click the **Select by Device** option and select the device(s) whose configurations you want to back up.

The Select Devices status bar shows the total number of devices that you selected, dynamically updating as you select.

- b. To back up all the devices, select the check box in the column header next to Host Name.

To select devices based on tags:

- a. Click the **Select by Tags** option.

The Select by tags list is activated.

- b. Click the arrow on the **Select by Tags** list.

A list of tags defined on devices in the Junos Space system appears.

- The list displays two subcategories of tags—Public and Private.
- A check box is next to each tag name.
- You can select one or more check boxes to select one or more tags.
- As soon as you start to enter text in the **Select by Tags** field left of the **OK** button, if a match is found, a suggestion is made, and you can select it.

- c. Select the check boxes next to the displayed tag names as desired, or search for specific tags by clicking the magnifying glass Search icon. When you have made your selection, click **OK** to save the selected tags.

- The total number of devices associated with the selected tags appears in the Select Devices status bar above the options.
- The selected tags appear in the status bar below the radio buttons, next to the **Tags Selected** label. An [X] icon appears after each tag name. You can use the [X] icon to clear any tag from the list. The device count in the Select Devices status bar decrements accordingly.
- Below this lower status bar appears the **Preview of Selections** list, displaying a table showing the devices selected and for each, the information described in step 1.

4. To back up the selected config files, choose one of the following options:

- Immediately
- Schedule for a Later Time—This results in one backup per device.
  - a. Select the check box next to **Schedule at a Later Time** or click the arrow next to it to display the corresponding fields.
  - b. Select a date from the field on the left, and select a time from the field on the right. The time zone is displayed to the right of the time field. The time zone is set on and for the Junos Space server.

- Repeat—Results in scheduled repetition, that is, multiple backups per device
  - a. Select the check box next to the Repeat label or click the arrow next to the Repeat label to display the corresponding fields.
  - b. Choose Minutes, Hours, Days, Weeks or Years from the list.
  - c. To set the frequency of the repetition, enter the appropriate whole number in the upper field.
  - d. (Optional) Set the End Time:
 

Select the check box next to the End Time label or click the arrow next to the End Time label to display the corresponding fields.
  - e. Select a date from the field on the left, and select a time from the field on the right. The time zone is displayed to the right of the time field. The time zone is set on and for the Junos Space server.

5. Click **Backup**.

The Backup Configuration Files dialog box appears, announcing that Junos Space has successfully scheduled backup of the selected configuration files, and giving you a job ID link to view details.

6. Click **OK**.

The Manage Configuration Files page reappears, displaying the backup files. The page shows the following headers:

- Config File Name—This is the device name with .conf file ending.
- Device Name
- Latest Revision—This is always 1.
- Creation Date
- Last Updated Date

Click any header to reveal the down arrow, which you can click to sort, add, or delete column headers. You can also filter. For instructions on filtering, see [“Filtering Inventory Pages” on page 22](#).

**Related Documentation**

- [Managing Configuration Files Overview on page 354](#)
- [Deleting Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Restoring Configuration Files on page 356](#)
- [Comparing Configuration Files on page 358](#)
- [Editing Configuration Files on page 359](#)
- [Exporting Configuration Files on page 361](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#).
- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)





## PART 7

# Jobs

- [Overview on page 371](#)
- [Manage Jobs on page 375](#)
- [Archive Jobs on page 383](#)



# Overview

- [Jobs Overview on page 371](#)

## Jobs Overview

---

The Jobs workspace lets you monitor the status of all jobs that have been run in all Junos Space applications. A job is a user-initiated action that is performed on a Junos Space object, such as a device, service, or customer. All scheduled jobs can be monitored.

Typical jobs in Junos Space include device discovery, deploying services, prestaging devices, and performing functional and configuration audits. Jobs can be scheduled to occur immediately or in the future. For all jobs scheduled in Junos Space, you can view job status from the **Jobs** workspace. Junos Space maintains a history of job status for all scheduled jobs. When a job is scheduled from a workspace, Junos Space assigns a job ID that serves to identify the job (along with the job type) in the Manage Jobs inventory page.

You can perform the following tasks from the **Jobs** workspace:

- View status of all scheduled, running, canceled, and completed jobs
- Retrieve details about the execution of a specific job
- View statistics about average execution times for jobs, types of jobs that are run, and success rate
- Cancel a scheduled job or in-progress job (when the job has stalled and is preventing other jobs from starting)
- Archive old jobs and purge them from the Junos Space database

Junos Space supports the following job types:



**NOTE:** The job types listed here may not represent the job types you are able to manage in your Junos Space software release. Job types are subject to change based on the licensed application in your Junos Space software release.

Table 59: Junos Space Job Types Per Application

Junos Space Application	Supported Job Types
Platform	Add Node
	Discover Network Elements
	Update Device
	Delete Device
	Resync Network Element
	Role Assignment
	Audit Log Archive and Purge
Network Activate	Deploy Service
	Prestage Device
	Role Assignment
	Service Deployment
	Service Decommission
	Functional Audit
	Configuration Audit
Service Now	Install AI-Scripts
	Uninstall AI-Scripts
Ethernet Design	Provision Device Profile
	Provision Port Profile
Security Design	Provisioning Security
	Policy Provisioning IPSec VPN
	Importing Address/Domain in Security Topology
QoS Design	Discover Domain
	Create QoS Profile

- Related Documentation**
- [Viewing Scheduled Jobs on page 376](#)
  - [Viewing Statistics for Scheduled Jobs on page 378](#)
  - [Canceling a Job on page 380](#)
  - [Viewing Job Recurrence on page 381](#)
  - [Archiving and Purging Jobs on page 383](#)



## CHAPTER 34

# Manage Jobs

- [Viewing Your Jobs on page 375](#)
- [Viewing Scheduled Jobs on page 376](#)
- [Viewing Statistics for Scheduled Jobs on page 378](#)
- [Canceling a Job on page 380](#)
- [Viewing Job Recurrence on page 381](#)
- [Retrying a Job on Failed Devices on page 381](#)

### Viewing Your Jobs

---

You can view all your completed, in-progress, and scheduled jobs in Junos Space. You can quickly access summary and detailed information about all your jobs, from any work space and from any task you are currently performing. You can also clear jobs from your list when jobs are no longer of interest to you.

To view the jobs that you have initiated:

1. In the banner of the Junos Space user interface, click the My Jobs icon.

The My Jobs report appears.



**NOTE:** The My Jobs report displays your 25 most recent jobs.

2. To view jobs details, select one or more jobs in the My Jobs report and click **Manage My Jobs**.

The Manage Jobs inventory page displays a listing of all jobs that you initiated.

3. To remove jobs from the My Jobs report:

- To remove a job, click the Clear job icon that appears to the right of the job.



**NOTE:** Clearing a job from the My Jobs report does not affect the job itself, but only updates the My Jobs view.

- Related Documentation**
- [Viewing Statistics for Scheduled Jobs on page 378](#)
  - [Canceling a Job on page 380](#)
  - [Job Management Overview on page 371](#)

## Viewing Scheduled Jobs

The Manage Jobs inventory page displays all jobs that have been scheduled to run or have run from each Junos Space application.

- [The View on page 376](#)
- [Viewing Job Types on page 376](#)
- [Viewing Job Status Indicators on page 376](#)
- [Viewing Job Details, Status, and Results on page 377](#)
- [Performing Manage Jobs Commands on page 378](#)

### The View

Scheduled and completed jobs appear as rows in the Manage Jobs inventory table. By default, jobs appear sorted by scheduled start time. You can sort on other criteria.

To display the Manage Jobs table:

- Select **Jobs > Job Management**.  
The Job Management table appears.

### Viewing Job Types

The job type appears as a column in the Job Management table. Job types tell you what tasks or operations have been performed throughout Junos Space applications. Each Junos Space application supports certain job types. You can search for a particular job type. You can also sort by job type in tabular view. For more information about how to manipulate inventory page data, see [“Junos Space User Interface Overview” on page 9](#).

### Viewing Job Status Indicators

Each job has a job status indicator. [Table 60 on page 376](#) defines these indicators.

**Table 60: Job Icon Status Indicators**






Job Status Indicator	Description
	The job was completed successfully.
	The job failed.



Table 60: Job Icon Status Indicators (*continued*)

	The job was canceled by a user.
	The job is scheduled.
	The job is in progress. You can only cancel jobs that are in progress from the Actions menu.

## Viewing Job Details, Status, and Results

The Job Management table shows most of what you need to know about each job. You can get more details about a particular job from the Job Details window. To see these details, double-click that job's row in the Job Management table.

[Table 61 on page 377](#) defines job information. The job information that appears in the Job Management table and in the Job Details window varies with the type of job. This table defines all the possible entries.

Table 61: Job Details and Columns in the Manage Jobs Table

Field	Description
ID	The numerical ID of the job.
Name	For most jobs, the name is the job type with the job ID appended. However, for some jobs the job name is supplied by the user as part of the workflow.
Percent	The percentage of the job that has been completed.
State	The state of job execution: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SUCCESS—Job completed successfully.</li> <li>• FAILURE—Job failed and was terminated.</li> <li>• IN PROGRESS—Job is in progress.</li> <li>• CANCELED—Job was canceled by a user.</li> </ul>
Job Type	The supported job types. Job types depend on the installed Junos Space applications.
Summary	The operations executed for the job.
Scheduled Start Time	The start time you have specified for this job.
User	The user's login name.
Recurrence	The scheduled recurrence.
Job Details (depending on job type):	
IP Address	The address of the device on which the operation is performed.

**Table 61: Job Details and Columns in the Manage Jobs Table (*continued*)**

Hostname	The name of the device on which the operation is performed.
Status	The job status: SUCCESS, FAILURE, IN PROGRESS, or CANCELED.
Description	Explanatory detail about a failure.
Actual Start Time	The time when Junos Space begins execution of the job. In most cases, actual start time should be the same as the scheduled start time.
End Time	The time when the job was completed or was terminated, if job execution failed.
Backup Date	The date on which you backed up the database.
Comment	An optional note that describes or otherwise identifies the backup operation.
Machine	The name of the Junos Space server from which database backup occurred.
File Path	The pathname to the database backup file.

## Performing Manage Jobs Commands

You can perform the following commands from the Manage Jobs Actions menu:

- Cancel Job—Stop a scheduled job. See [“Canceling a Job” on page 380](#).
- View Recurrence—Displays the View Job Recurrence dialog box, from which you can view the recurring database job start date and time, recurrence interval, end date and time, and job ID for each occurrence. See [“Viewing Job Recurrence” on page 381](#)
- Return to Application—Returns to the application page from which this job was initiated (if you have the correct permissions to do so).
- Tag It—Apply a tag to a job to segregate, filter, and categorize jobs. See [“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#).
- View Tags—View tags applied to a job. See [“Viewing Tags” on page 564](#).
- Untag It—Remove a tag from a job. See [“Untagging Objects” on page 565](#).

### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Statistics for Scheduled Jobs on page 378](#)
- [Job Management Overview on page 371](#)
- [Canceling a Job on page 380](#)

## Viewing Statistics for Scheduled Jobs

The Jobs workspace statistics page displays the following graphical data:

- Job Types pie chart
- State of Jobs Run pie chart

- Average Execution Time per Completed Job bar chart

This topic includes the following tasks:

- [Viewing the Types of Jobs That Are Run on page 379](#)
- [Viewing the State of Jobs That Have Run on page 379](#)
- [Viewing Average Execution Times for Jobs on page 379](#)

## Viewing the Types of Jobs That Are Run

The Job Types pie chart displays the percentage of all Junos Space jobs of a particular type that are run. Each slice in the pie chart represents a job type and the percentage of time that job type was run. The job type legend appears to the right, identifying the job type titles according to colors. Scroll down the list to see all the job types. The numbers of jobs in the job types legend represent jobs run in all Junos Space applications. Mousing over a slice in the pie chart displays the job type title and the number of jobs that have run.

- To display details of only a specific job type, click that job type in the Job Types pie chart.  
A filtered list of these jobs appears in tabular form on the Job Management page. For more information about the Job Management page, see [“Viewing Scheduled Jobs” on page 376](#).
- To return to the Job Management page, select **Job Management** in the breadcrumbs at the top of the Manage Jobs page.

## Viewing the State of Jobs That Have Run

The State of Jobs Run pie chart graphically displays the percentages of jobs that have succeeded or failed. Mouse over the pie chart to see the numbers of jobs in each slice.

- To display details of only those jobs that have succeeded or those that have failed, click the appropriate slice in the State of Jobs Run pie chart.  
The filtered jobs appear displayed in tabular form on the Job Management page. For more information about the Job Management page, see [“Viewing Scheduled Jobs” on page 376](#).
- To return to the Job Management page, select **Job Management** in the breadcrumbs at the top of the Manage Jobs page.

## Viewing Average Execution Times for Jobs

Each bar in the Average Execution Time per Completed Job bar chart represents a job type and the average execution time in seconds. If there is room on the display, the name of the job type appears at the bottom of each bar.

- To display details of only jobs of a given type, click a bar in the Average Execution Time per Completed Job bar chart.

The filtered jobs appear displayed in tabular form on the Job Management page. For more information about the Job Management page, see [“Viewing Scheduled Jobs” on page 376](#).

- To return to the Job Management page, select **Job Management** in the breadcrumbs at the top of the Manage Jobs page.

#### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Scheduled Jobs on page 376](#)
- [Job Management Overview on page 371](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)
- [Archiving and Purging Jobs on page 383](#)

---

## Canceling a Job

From the Platform Job Management inventory page you can cancel jobs that:

- Are scheduled, but that you don't want to run.
- Are in progress but are hanging or incapable of completing, and are preventing other jobs from starting.



.....  
**NOTE:** If Junos Space determines that the job operation is non-interruptible, the job runs to completion; otherwise the job is canceled.  
.....



.....  
**NOTE:** Junos Space performs no cleanup on canceled jobs.  
.....

To cancel a job:

1. Select **Jobs > Job Management** .  
The Job Management inventory page appears.
2. Select the job that you want to cancel.
3. Select **Cancel Job** from the Actions dropdown  
If a job is in a state that you cannot cancel, The Cancel Job command is disabled in the Action dropdown.

When the Cancel Job operation completes, the inventory page displays the Job State CANCELED.

#### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Statistics for Scheduled Jobs on page 378](#)
- [Job Management Overview on page 371](#)
- [Viewing Scheduled Jobs on page 376](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)

- [Viewing Your Jobs on page 375](#)

---

## Viewing Job Recurrence

You can view information about when a job recurs. For example, you can examine the recurrence of a database backup job.

To view job recurrence information:

1. Select **> Administration > Databases**.

The Databases inventory page appears.

2. Select a recurring job and select **View Recurrence** from the Actions dropdown.

The View Job Recurrence dialog box displays the selected job start date and time, recurrence interval, and end date and time.

3. Optional: Click the **Job ID** link to view all recurrences of the schedule.
4. Click **OK**.

### Related Documentation

- [Backing Up the Database on page 487](#)
- [Viewing Scheduled Jobs on page 376](#)
- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)

---

## Retrying a Job on Failed Devices

To rerun a job that was not successful,

1. In **Jobs > Job Management**, select the job you want to retry.

The Retry Job - Devices Selection window appears. The status bar at the bottom of the table has page controls so that you can page through to verify your selection.

2. To select the devices on which to run the job, either:

- Select devices from the Select Applicable Devices table, showing the following for each device:
  - Name
  - IP address
  - Job status—Failed/Failure, Success, or Cancelled
  - Description—Explains the nature of the failure

or

- If you want to run the job on all the devices listed over multiple pages, choose **Select All Devices Across Pages**.

The check boxes in the table showing the device listings are grayed out.

3. (Optional) To view the devices on which the job cannot be rerun, click **View Inapplicable Devices**.

The View Non-Retriable Objects window appears, displaying the View Non-Retriable Objects table, showing the same information for each device as the Select Applicable Devices table.

To close the window, click **Cancel**.

4. (Optional) To run this job at a different time, select the **Schedule at a later time** check box.

Select the date and time to run it from the date and time drop down lists that appear.

5. Click **Run**.

The Resynchronization Information window appears.

6. To view details, click the job ID. To close the window, click **OK**.

The Manage Jobs page reappears, showing your job rerun.

- Related Documentation**
- [Job Management Overview on page 371](#)
  - [Viewing Your Jobs on page 375](#)

## CHAPTER 35

# Archive Jobs

- [Archiving and Purging Jobs on page 383](#)

### Archiving and Purging Jobs

---

As Junos Space runs over time, the number of job entries in the database increases, which affects system query performance. In most cases, a job's results become obsolete and unused after a few hours. These jobs can be archived as a CSV file to either the local server or a remote server, and then they can be purged to improve performance. Junos Space will from time to time remind you to archive old jobs.

You can archive completed jobs (successful or not) that occurred before any date and time up to the present. You must be an administrator to use this function.

Archive files, audit logs, and related files are stored in the default location `/var/lib/mysql/archive`, or in a directory that you specify. The default filename for an archive is `JunosSpaceJobsArchive_date_time_id.zip`, where *date* specifies the year, month, and day, in the format `yyyy-mm-dd`; *time* specifies hours, minutes, and seconds, in the format `hh-mm-ss`; and *id* is a six-character number in the format `xx-xx-xx` that uniquely identifies each job archive file.

This topic includes the following tasks:

- [Archiving Jobs to a Local Server and Purging the Database on page 383](#)
- [Archiving Jobs to a Remote Server and Purging the Database on page 384](#)

### Archiving Jobs to a Local Server and Purging the Database

You can archive jobs to the local server. The local server is the server that functions as the active node in the Junos Space fabric.

To archive Junos Space jobs to the local server and then purge them from the database:

1. Select **Jobs > Job Management** and select the Archive/Purge Jobs icon. The Archive/Purge Jobs dialog box appears.
2. In the Archive Jobs Before field, select a date and time to specify the date up to which all jobs are to be archived and then purged from the Junos Space database. You can specify only a date and time in the past.



**NOTE:** If you do not specify a date and time in the Archive Jobs Before field, Junos Space archives and then purges from the database all jobs up to the time that you initiated the operation.

3. In the Archive Mode field, select **local** from the list.
4. To schedule the Archive/Purge operation:
  - Clear the **Schedule at a later time** check box (the default) to initiate the Archive/Purge operation when you complete this procedure.
  - Select the **Schedule at a later time** check box to specify a later start date and time for the Archive/Purge operation.



**NOTE:** The selected time in the scheduler maps to Junos Space server time but uses the local time zone of the client computer.

5. Click **Submit**.

The Jobs Archive and Purge confirmation dialog box displays the archive filename and the location where it will be saved.
6. Click **Continue** to archive and purge the jobs.
7. To view job details for the operation, select the Job Id in the Job Information dialog box; otherwise, click **OK** to close the dialog box.

## Archiving Jobs to a Remote Server and Purging the Database

You can archive jobs to remote network hosts or media. Junos Space uses scp (secure copy) to copy the files in this case.

To archive jobs to a remote host and then purge them from the Junos Space database:

1. Select **Jobs > Job Management** and select the Archive/Purge Jobs icon. The Archive/Purge Jobs dialog box appears.
2. In the Archive Jobs Before field, select a date and time to specify the date up to which all jobs are to be archived and then purged from the Junos Space database. You can specify only a date and time in the past.



**NOTE:** If you do not specify a date and time in the Archive Jobs Before field, Junos Space will archive and then purge from the database all jobs up to the time that you initiated the operation.

3. In the Archive Mode field, select **Remote** from the list.
4. Enter a valid username to access the remote host server.
5. Enter a valid password to access the remote host server.



6. Reenter the password you entered in the previous step.
7. Enter the IP address of the remote host server.
8. Enter a directory path on the remote host server for the archived log files.



**NOTE:** The directory path must already exist on the remote host server.

9. Schedule the archive and purge operation:
  - Clear the **Schedule at a later time** check box (the default) to initiate the Archive/Purge operation when you complete this procedure.
  - Select the **Schedule at a later time** check box to specify a later start date and time for the Archive/Purge operation.



**NOTE:** The selected time in the scheduler maps to Junos Space server time but uses the local time zone of the client computer.

10. Click **Submit**.

The Jobs Archive and Purge dialog box displays the file location and the name of the remote server.

11. Click **Continue** to archive and purge the audit logs.

Junos Space displays the Jobs Archive and Purge Job Information dialog box.

12. To view job details for the Archive/Purge operation, click the **Job Id** link.
13. Click **OK** to close the dialog box.

#### Related Documentation

- [Job Management Overview on page 371](#)
- [Viewing Your Jobs on page 375](#)
- [Viewing Scheduled Jobs on page 376](#)
- [Viewing Job Recurrence on page 381](#)



## PART 8

# Users

- [Manage Users on page 389](#)
- [Manage Roles on page 405](#)
- [Create Role on page 427](#)
- [Manage Remote Profiles on page 429](#)
- [User Sessions on page 431](#)



## CHAPTER 36

# Manage Users

- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Disabling and Enabling Users on page 393](#)
- [Viewing Users on page 394](#)
- [Modifying a User on page 398](#)
- [Deleting Users on page 399](#)
- [Changing User Passwords on page 400](#)
- [Clearing User Local Passwords on page 401](#)
- [Viewing User Statistics on page 402](#)

### Creating User Accounts

---

The Super Administrator and the User Administrator can create Junos Space user accounts that specify the credentials and predefined roles allowing users to log in and use Junos Space applications, workspaces, and tasks. Each user account must include:

- Login ID
- Password
- First name
- Last name

For each user, you can assign roles that define the tasks and objects (devices, users, services, and so forth) that the user can access and manage. You can assign multiple roles to a single user and assign the same role to multiple users.

You can also assign permissions to users to limit their access to only specified objects within the workspace that the assigned role controls (see [“Managing Permission Labels Overview” on page 567](#)).

The **Use Same Roles Assigned To** option allows you to quickly create multiple user accounts without having to reselect the same predefined roles. The predefined user roles that are available are displayed on the Create User pages. You can also distinguish whether a user has access to GUI, API, or both.

User accounts are subdivided into three areas—General, Role Assignment, and Permission Assignment. There are links to these areas in the upper right corner of the Create User page. You might need to scroll horizontally in order to see the links.



**NOTE:** If you do not use Permission Labels, a user can access all the objects that the assigned role controls within the workspace.

## Creating a New User Account

To create a new user account:

1. Select **Users > User Accounts**.

The User Accounts page appears.

2. Click the Add Object icon [+] in the upper menu bar to display the Create User page.

The Create User page appears, displaying the fields for the General area.

3. In the Login ID box, enter a login ID for the new Junos Space user account.

This can be an e-mail address. If it is, it is not mandatory that the login ID match the e-mail address entered in the Email field. The login ID cannot exceed 128 characters. Allowable characters include the dash (-), underscore (\_), letters, and numbers, as well as the @ and the period (.). You cannot have two users with the same login ID.

4. Display the rules for password creation by mousing over the information icon (small blue [i]) next to the Password field. For information on configuring the password rules, see [“Configuring Password Settings” on page 512](#).

Type and confirm the local password.



**NOTE:** All passwords in Junos Space are case-sensitive.

5. In the First Name box, enter the user's first name.

The name cannot exceed 32 characters.

6. In the Last Name box, enter the user's last name.

The name cannot exceed 32 characters.

7. (Optional) In the Email box, enter the user's e-mail address.

This need not be the same as the login ID, if the login ID was an e-mail address.

8. (Optional) In the Image File box, upload the user's photo ID:

- a. Use the Browse button to locate the user's photo ID file.

You can upload image file formats with the following extensions: .bmp, .gif, .jpg, and .png.

- b. Click **Upload**.

Junos Space uploads and saves the photo ID file for the user account.

If you do not want to assign the user roles or the permissions at this point, you can click **Finish** to create the user account without assigning any roles. . If you want to assign user roles now, proceed to the next step by clicking **Next**.

9. To assign roles to the new user, click **Role Assignment** on the upper right, and do one of the following:
  - Select the **Use Same Roles Assigned to** check box and select the name of an existing user whose roles you want to assign to the new user.



**TIP:** Enter one or more characters of the username in the Use Same Roles Assigned to search box to find the user and select the username. The assigned roles appear in the Selected roles list. You can modify the new user's role assignments by adding or removing roles from the Selected Roles column.

or

- Use the double list box to select predefined roles for the user. Select one or more roles from the Available list box. Selected roles appear in the Selected list box. Use the right arrow to move the selected roles to the Selected list box. Use the left arrow to move roles from the Selected list box back to the Available list box. You can also double-click a role to select or remove it. You see the details of selected roles appear in the right pane of the page.

You can also create user-defined roles for users. For more information, see [“Creating a User-Defined Role” on page 427](#).



**NOTE:** The minimum role required for configuring a user for IBM Systems Director and Junos Space Launch in Context (LIC) is Device Manager.

- Select the **GUI Access** and **API Access** check-boxes depending on the type of access you want to allow for the user.

By default, the user gets access to both GUI and API. By default, the user account gets access to both GUI and API. You should select at least one access type to successfully create a user account.

If you do not want to assign the user permissions at this point, you can click **Finish** to create the user account without assigning any permissions. If you want to assign user permissions now, proceed to the next step by clicking **Next**.

10. To assign permission labels to the new user, click **Permission Assignment** on the upper right, and do one of the following:

- Select the **Use Same Permission Labels Assigned to** check box and select the name of an existing user whose permission labels you want to assign to the new user.



**TIP:** Enter one or more characters of the username in the Use Same Permission Labels Assigned to search box find the user and select the username. The assigned permission labels appear in the Selected list box. You can modify the new user's permission label assignments by adding or removing permission labels from the Selected column.

or



- Use the double list box to select permission labels for the user. Select one or more permission labels from the Available list box. Selected permission labels appear in the Selected list box. Use the right arrow to move the selected labels to the Selected list box. Use the left arrow to remove labels from the Selected list box back to the Available list box. You can also double-click a label to select or remove it. You see the details of selected labels appear in the right pane of the page.



**TIP:** You can also create permission labels for users. Do not forget to attach a newly created permission label to an object as well as assigning it to a user. For more information, see [“Working With Permission Labels” on page 569](#).

11. Click **Finish** to create the user account with the assigned roles and permissions, if applicable.

The new user account is created in the Junos Space database. You see the new user account on the Manage Users inventory page.

## Disabling and Enabling Users

Disable a user to prevent she/he from logging in to the system.

By default, all users are enabled.

Super-users cannot be disabled.

The action of enabling or disabling a user generates an audit log entry.

On the Manage Users inventory landing page, user status appears in the Status column, which shows icons for enabled or disabled status. The User Detail Summary page also indicates a user's status.

When a user is disabled, she/he sees the message “This account is disabled” when she/he tries to log in to the system. If the user is active at the time she/he is disabled, the system logs the user off and displays to the user a message saying that his/her account is disabled. In both cases, a disabled user's attempt to log in generates an audit log entry.

You cannot disable your own user account

To disable/enable one or more users:

1. Select **Users > User Accounts**.

The User Accounts page appears.

2. Select one or more users to disable/enable.



**NOTE:** If both the Enable and the Disable actions are grayed out, you have selected a super-user.

3. Select **Disable Users** from the Actions dropdown.

The Disable/Enable Users confirmation dialog box appears, displaying the list of users to whom the selected action will be applied. Users you selected, but who do not appear in the list, will not have the action applied to them. Only those users who are not already in the state to which you want to convert them can be enabled or disabled. If you selected disabled users to disable again, a message appears, telling you how many users' status will not change.

4. Verify the list of users that you want to disable or enable, and click **Disable Users / Enable Users**.

All selected user accounts are disabled/enabled.

#### Related Documentation

- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Modifying a User on page 398](#)
- [Viewing Users on page 394](#)
- [Junos Space Audit Logs Overview on page 435](#)

---

## Viewing Users

The User Accounts inventory page displays all of the Junos Space users who have accounts. To add new users, you must have administrator privileges. To add a new user, see [“Creating User Accounts” on page 389](#). Users have Junos Space access based on predefined user roles (see [“Predefined Administrator Roles” on page 407](#)). For more information about how to manipulate inventory page data, see [“Junos Space User Interface Overview” on page 9](#).

This topic describes how to view the inventory of users and their details. To do this, select **Users > User Accounts**.

The User Accounts page appears.

Users are displayed in a table sorted by default by user name. Each user occupies a row in the Manage Users table. By default, the table's column headings are User Name, First Name, Last Name, Email, and Status.

The status bar at the bottom of the page shows the range of objects being displayed, for example, you might see *Displaying 1-30 of 113*. In addition, the Show Items drop-down list enables you to select the number of items to display per page: 10, 20, 40, 60, 80, 100.

The filter function, described here, enables you to get around the difficulty of not being able to view all users on a single page.

- [Sorting Columns on page 395](#)
- [Displaying or Hiding Columns on page 395](#)
- [Filtering on Columns on page 396](#)

- [Viewing User Details on page 396](#)
- [Performing Manage User Commands on page 397](#)

## Sorting Columns

The columns in the Manage Users table, that is, the Manage Users inventory landing page, can be sorted to display ascending or descending order.

To sort the contents of a column,

1. Click the arrow to the right of any column heading.

A list with the following menu options appears:

- Sort Ascending
- Sort Descending
- Columns
- Filters

2. Select Sort Ascending or Sort Descending.

The sequence of objects in the column changes to reflect your choices.

## Displaying or Hiding Columns

The columns in the Manage Users table, that is, the Manage Users inventory landing page, can be displayed or hidden as required.

To display or hide a column,

1. Click the arrow to the right of any column heading.

A list with the following menu options appears:

- Sort Ascending
- Sort Descending
- Columns
- Filters

2. Select Columns.

A list with menu options corresponding to all the available column headings appears, a check box next to each heading. The check boxes for the headings that are displayed are checked, those that are hidden are not checked.

3. Select or deselect the headings as desired.

The table view changes to reflect your choices.

## Filtering on Columns

The contents of the columns in the Manage Users table, that is, the Manage Users inventory landing page, can be filtered as required. For very comprehensive descriptions, see [“Filtering Inventory Pages” on page 22](#); here are more basic instructions:

To filter on one or more columns, for each:

1. Click the arrow to the right of any column heading.

A list with the following menu options appears:

- Sort Ascending
- Sort Descending
- Columns
- Filters

2. Select Filters.

The filter field appears, with a Go button to the right of it.

3. Enter the filter criteria and click **Go**.

On applying the filter(s), the table contents shrink to display the values that match the filter applied. The criteria by which the display is filtered and the column heading appear just above the table.



**NOTE:** Filters applied across multiple columns have an additive effect; that is, each succeeding filter further restricts the display.

4. To remove a filter, click the [x] to the right of the filter criteria shown just above the table.

## Viewing User Details

To view more detailed user information:

- Select a user and click the Quick View icon in the menu bar.

To the right of the table appear the selected user's:

- Login ID
- First Name
- Last Name
- Email

- Double-click a user row in the table.

The User Detail Summary page appears.

Table 62: User Detail Summary Page

Data	Description
Login ID	The login username. This could be an email address, but it does not need to match the email address that might be provided in the field of that name.
First Name	The user first name.
Last Name	The user last name.
Email	(Optional) The user email account. The email address provided here need not match the login ID, if that is also an email address.
Status	Enabled or disabled. Users are enabled by default. Disabling a user is not the same as deleting a user.
Assigned Roles	The predefined user roles assigned to user.
Assigned Permission Labels	The work spaces a user can use and tasks a user can perform based on the permission labels assigned to the user and to the objects..
Role Summary	Name of the application(s) to which the role(s) belong(s), and list of permissions attached to the role(s).

To close the User Detail Summary, click **OK** or the [x] in the upper right corner of the page.

## Performing Manage User Commands

You can perform the following actions from the Manage Users page:

- [Modify User](#)—See “[Modifying a User](#)” on page 398
- [Delete User](#)—See “[Deleting Users](#)” on page 399
- [Tag It](#)—“[Tagging an Object](#)” on page 563
- [View Tags](#)—“[Viewing Tags](#)” on page 564

### Related Documentation

- [Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space](#) on page 406
- [Creating User Accounts](#) on page 389
- [Deleting Users](#) on page 399
- [Modifying a User](#) on page 398
- [Viewing User Statistics](#) on page 402
- [Tagging an Object](#) on page 563
- [Viewing Tags](#) on page 564
- [Filtering Inventory Pages](#) on page 22

## Modifying a User

---

A Super Administrator or User Administrator can modify any user account in Junos Space. The only attribute that cannot be modified is the login ID.

The Modify User pages have three areas, General, Role Assignment and Permission Assignment, in which user information is grouped accordingly. Each user account can have multiple roles and a role can be associated with multiple users. .

To modify an existing user account:

1. Select **Users > User Accounts**.

The **User Accounts** inventory page appears.

2. From the inventory page, select the user account that you want to modify. For instructions on filtering and sorting, see [“Viewing Users” on page 394](#).

You can modify only one user account at a time.

3. From the menu bar above the table, select the Modify icon, the pencil.

The **Modify User** page appears, displaying the General area by default, with the existing account information for that user.

4. You can change any of the information in the General area except the login ID.
  - To view the rules governing password creation, mouse over the information icon, the small blue [i] to the right of the Password field. To configure the password rules, see [“Configuring Password Settings” on page 512](#).
  - To change the user name, enter a new name in the First Name and Last Name boxes.
  - To change the email account, enter a new email address in the Email field.

To upload an image file:

- a. Use the **Browse** button to locate the new user photo ID file.

You can upload BMP, GIF, JPG, and PNG image file formats.

- b. Click **Upload**.

Junos Space updates the photo ID file for the user account.

To add or remove role assignments:

- a. Click **Role Assignment** on the upper right of the page, or click **Next** on the bottom right of the page.
- b. To add role assignments, select one or more roles from the Available Roles column and click the right arrow to move the roles to the Selected Roles column.

- c. To remove role assignments, select one or more roles from the Selected Roles column and click the left arrow to move the roles to the Available Roles column.
- d. Click **Next** at the bottom of the page or **Permission Assignment** at the top of the page to modify the selected user's permission assignments, or click **Finish** at the bottom of the page to complete the modification.

To add, remove, or change permission assignments:

- a. Click **Permission Assignment** on the upper right of the page, or click **Next** on the bottom right of the page.
- b. The easiest way to change permission assignments is to select the **Use Same Permission Label Assigned to** check box.

The **Use Same Permission Label Assigned to** dropdown list is activated. Select the user on which the current user is to be modelled from the drop-down list.

- c. To add permission assignments, select one or more assignments from the Available column and click the right arrow to move the roles to the Selected column.
- d. To remove role assignments, select one or more roles from the Selected Roles column and click the left arrow to move the roles to the Available Roles column.
- e. Click **Finish** at the bottom of the page to complete the modification.

Junos Space updates the user account with the changes you specified.

#### Related Documentation

- [Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space on page 406](#)
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Deleting Users on page 399](#)
- [Viewing Users on page 394](#)
- [Working With Permission Labels on page 569](#)

---

## Deleting Users

When a Junos Space user leaves your organization or no longer needs access to the system, the administrator should delete the existing user account.

To delete one or more users:

1. Select **Users > User Accounts**.

The User Accounts inventory page appears, displaying all user accounts.

2. Select one or more users to delete.
3. From the menu bar above the table, select the red X icon.

The Delete Users confirmation dialog box appears.

4. Verify the list of users that you want to delete and click **Delete**.

All selected user accounts are removed from the Junos Space database and the User Accounts inventory page.

- Related Documentation**
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
  - [Modifying a User on page 398](#)
  - [Viewing Users on page 394](#)

---

## Changing User Passwords

Users who are logged in to Junos Space can change their account passwords by going to the User Preferences icon on the Junos Space banner. No particular Junos Space role is required for users to change their passwords.

Beginning with Junos Space Network Application Platform Release 12.1, Junos Space has implemented a default standard for passwords that is compliant with industry standards for security.



**NOTE:** Upgrading to Junos Space Platform 12.1 or later causes the default standard to take effect immediately. All local users will get password expiration messages the first time they log in after the update.



**NOTE:** If you do not have a local password set, you will not be able to set or change it.



**NOTE:** Using User Preferences to change your password only works for local passwords. The change does not affect any passwords that an administrator might have configured for you on a remote authentication server.

To change your user password:

1. Click the User Preferences icon on the upper right, in the Junos Space banner .  
The User Preferences – Change Password dialog box appears.
2. Type your old password.
3. Display the rules for password creation by mousing over the information icon (small blue [i]) next to the password field.

Note that [Figure 2 on page 5](#) shows only sample rules, not necessarily those set for your system.



Figure 49: User Preferences - Change Local Password

Type your new password.

4. Retype your password to confirm it.
5. Click **Change**.

You are logged out of the system. You have to log in again using your new password. Any open sessions are disabled until you log in again.

#### Related Documentation

- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Logging In to Junos Space on page 3](#)
- [Configuring Password Settings on page 512](#)

## Clearing User Local Passwords

The Clear Local Passwords command lets you remove the local password you assign to users with remote or remote-local authentication. This setting allows an emergency password (authentication server down) if in Remote mode, or allows the user to be handled locally (remote authentication fails) if in Remote-Local mode.

To remove one or more user local passwords, you must have User Administration privileges.

To remove a user local password:

1. Select **Users > User Accounts**.  
The User Accounts inventory page appears.
2. Select one or more users for which you want to remove a local password.
3. Select **Clear Local Passwords** from the Actions dropdown.  
The **Delete Users** dialog box appears.
4. Click **Clear Passwords**.

#### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Users on page 394](#)

- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Modifying a User on page 398](#)
- [Creating a Remote Authentication Server on page 540](#)

## Viewing User Statistics

You can view the percentage and the number of Junos Space users that have been assigned to a role.

- [Viewing the Number of Users Assigned by Role on page 402](#)

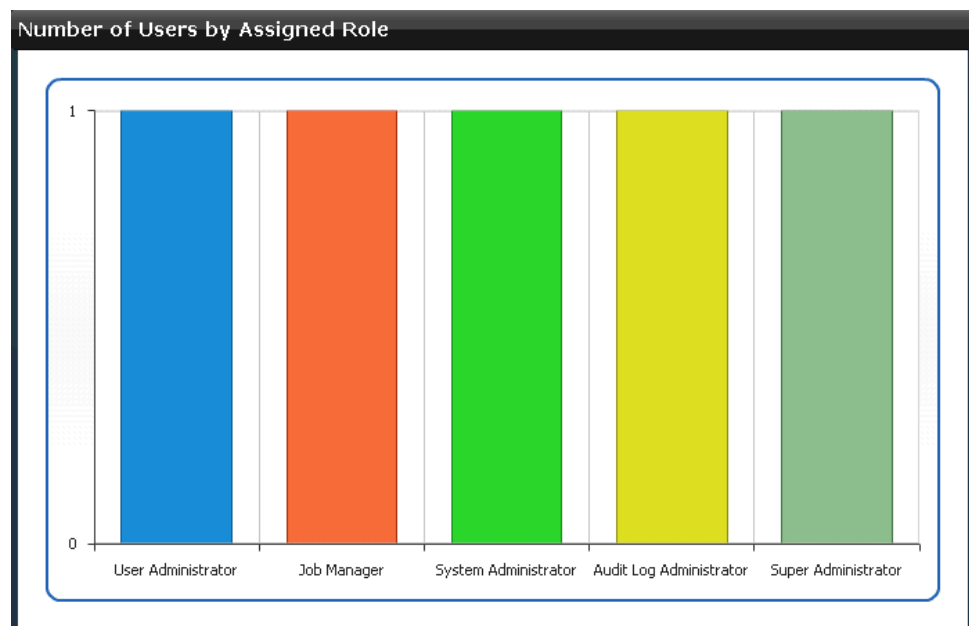
### Viewing the Number of Users Assigned by Role

To view the percentage of total users that have been assigned to a predefined role:

1. Select **Users > User Accounts**.

The User Accounts inventory page appears.

Junos Space displays a bar chart showing users by assigned role.



The bar chart displays the number of users assigned to each role that has one or more assigned users.

2. To view the number of users assigned to a specific role, mouse over the role in the chart.
3. To display an inventory page of users assigned to a specific role, click on the segment of the chart that represents the role.

- Related Documentation**
- [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)
  - [Viewing Users on page 394](#)
  - [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
  - [Deleting Users on page 399](#)



## CHAPTER 37

# Manage Roles

- [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)
- [Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space on page 406](#)
- [Predefined Administrator Roles on page 407](#)
- [Managing Roles Overview on page 423](#)
- [Managing Roles on page 424](#)
- [Modifying User-Defined Roles on page 425](#)
- [Deleting User-Defined Roles on page 426](#)

### Role-Based Access Control Overview

---

Junos Space supports authentication and authorization. A Junos Space super administrator or user administrator creates users and assigns roles (permissions) that allow users to access and manage the users, nodes, devices, services, and customers in Junos Space.

To access and manage Junos Space, a user must be assigned one or more roles, which are validated during authorization. The roles that an administrator assigns to a user control the workspace or workspaces the user can access and the tasks that can be performed on the objects that are managed within a workspace. A user with no role assignments cannot access any Junos Space workspace and is unable to perform tasks.

### Authentication

Through authentication, Junos Space validates users based on password and other security services. Junos Space supports both local and remote user authentication in different scenarios. For local authentication, each user password is saved in the Junos Space database and is used to validate a user during login. Remote authentication by a RADIUS or TACACS+ server is supported. See [“Configuring a RADIUS Server for Authentication and Authorization” on page 543](#).

### RBAC Enforcement

With role-based access control (RBAC) enforcement, a Junos Space super administrator or user administrator controls the workspaces a user can access, the system resources users can view and manage, and the tasks available to a user within a workspace. RBAC is enforced in the Junos Space user interface navigation hierarchy by workspace, task group, and task. A user can access only those portions of the navigation hierarchy that

are explicitly granted through access privileges. The following sections describe RBAC enforcement behavior at each level of the user interface navigation hierarchy.

### [Enforcement by Workspace](#)

---

The Junos Space user interface provides a task-oriented environment in which a collection of related user tasks is organized by workspace. For example, the Users workspace defines the group of tasks related to managing users and roles. Tasks include creating, modifying, and deleting users, and assigning roles. Enforcement by workspace ensures that a user can view only those workspaces that contain the tasks that the user has permissions to execute. For example, a user who is assigned the device manager role, which grants access privileges to all tasks in the Devices workspace, can access only the Devices workspace. No other workspaces are visible to this user unless other roles are assigned to this user.

### [RBAC Enforcement Not Supported for Getting Started Page](#)

---

RBAC enforcement is not enabled for the contents of the Getting Started page. Consequently, a user who does not have certain access privileges can still view the steps displayed in the Getting Started page. For example, a user without privileges to manage devices still sees the Discover Devices step. However, when the user clicks on the step, Junos Space displays an error to indicate that the user might not have permission to access the workspace or tasks to which the step is linked.

#### **Related Documentation**

- [Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space on page 406](#)
- [Managing Permission Labels Overview on page 567](#)
- [Predefined Administrator Roles on page 407](#)
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Viewing User Statistics on page 402](#)
- [Viewing Users on page 394](#)
- [Configuring a RADIUS Server for Authentication and Authorization on page 543](#)

## [Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space](#)

---

Junos Space is shipped with a super administrator privilege level that has full access to the Junos Space system. When you first log in to Junos Space as default super administrator, you can perform all tasks and access all Junos Space system resources. The super administrator can create new users and assign roles to those users to specify which workspaces and system resources users can access and manage, and which tasks users can perform within each workspace.

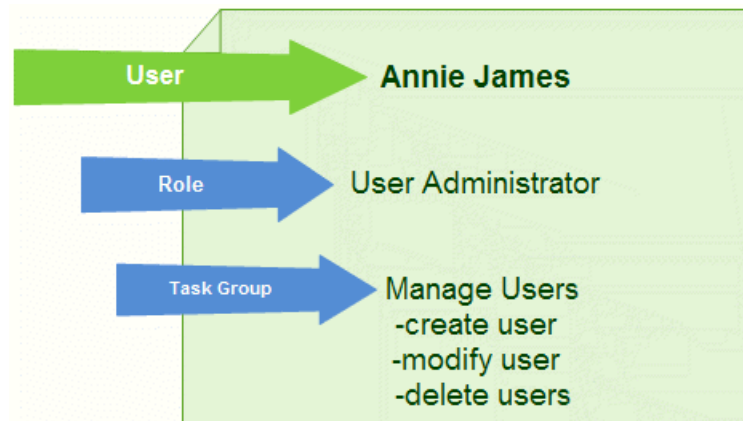
After you first set up Junos Space, you can disable the default super administrator user ID, if necessary. However, before doing so, you should first create another user with super administrator privileges.

To access and manage Junos Space system resources, a user must be assigned at least one role. A *role* defines the tasks (create, modify, delete) that can be performed on the

objects (devices, users, roles, services, customers) that Junos Space manages. For complete information on the predefined roles, see [“Predefined Administrator Roles” on page 407](#).

Users receive permission to perform tasks only through the roles that they are assigned. In most cases, a single role assignment enables a user to view and to perform tasks on the objects within a workspace. For example, a user assigned the Device Manager role can discover devices, resynchronize devices, view the physical inventory and interfaces for devices, and delete managed devices. A user that is assigned the User Administrator role can create, modify, and delete other users in Junos Space, and assign and remove roles.

Typically a role contains one or more task groups. A *task group* provides a mechanism for grouping a set of related tasks that can be performed on a specific object. The following illustration shows the task group and associated tasks that are available to a user that is assigned the User Administrator role.



**NOTE:** You can assign multiple roles to a single user, and multiple users can be assigned the same role.

#### Related Documentation

- [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)
- [Managing Permission Labels Overview on page 567](#)
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Viewing Users on page 394](#)
- [Viewing User Statistics on page 402](#)

## Predefined Administrator Roles

Junos Space provides predefined roles that you can assign to users to define administrative responsibilities and specify the management tasks that a user can perform within applications and workspaces.

To assign roles to other users in Junos Space, a user must be a super administrator or user administrator.

Each predefined role defines a set of tasks for a single workspace, except the super administrator role, which defines all tasks for all workspaces. By default, Junos Space provides Read privileges on all objects associated with the task groups defined in a predefined role.

Table 63 on page 408 shows the Junos Space predefined roles and corresponding tasks available for installed Junos Space applications.



**NOTE:** The predefined roles that appear in the Junos Space release that you are using depend on the Junos Space applications that you have installed. For the latest predefined roles, see **Platform > Users > User Accounts > Create User** or **Platform > Roles**.

**Table 63: Predefined Roles for the Network Application Platform**

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Application > Workspace
Audit Log Administrator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View Audit Logs</li> <li>Archive/Purge</li> </ul>	Platform > Audit Logs
Configuration File Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Config Files <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manage Config Files <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Backup Config Files</li> <li>Delete Config Files</li> <li>Restore Config Files</li> <li>Compare Config Files</li> <li>Export Config Files</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Config Files
Device Image Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Devices</li> <li>Manage Device Adapter <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add Adapter</li> <li>Install Adapter</li> <li>Delete Adapter</li> </ul> </li> <li>Device Images and Scripts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manage Images <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upload Image</li> <li>View Deploy Results</li> <li>Modify Device Image Details</li> <li>Delete Device Images</li> <li>Stage Image on Device</li> <li>MD5 Validation Result</li> <li>Verify Checksum</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Devices Platform > Device Images and Scripts
Device Images Read Only User	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Device Images and Scripts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manage Images <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View Deploy Results</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Device Images and Scripts



Table 63: Predefined Roles for the Network Application Platform (*continued*)

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Application > Workspace
Device Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Discover Devices               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Discover Targets</li> <li>Specify Probes</li> <li>Specify Credentials</li> </ul> </li> <li>Manage Devices               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete Devices</li> <li>Put in RMA State</li> <li>Reactivate from RMA</li> <li>Change Device Credentials</li> <li>View Physical Inventory</li> <li>Export Physical Inventory</li> <li>Edit Device Configuration</li> <li>View Change Requests</li> <li>View Physical Interfaces</li> <li>View Logical Interfaces</li> <li>View License Inventory</li> <li>View Software Inventory</li> <li>Launch Device WebUI</li> <li>Create LSYS</li> <li>View Alarms</li> <li>View Performance Graphs</li> <li>Resynchronize with Network</li> <li>SSH to Device</li> </ul> </li> <li>Secure Console</li> <li>Add Deployed Devices               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add Devices</li> <li>Download Management CLIs</li> <li>View Device Status</li> <li>Delete</li> </ul> </li> <li>Deploy Devices               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add Devices</li> <li>Download Configlets</li> <li>View Device Status</li> <li>Delete</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Devices

Table 63: Predefined Roles for the Network Application Platform (*continued*)

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Application > Workspace
Device Script Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Scripts               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compare Script</li> <li>• Import Script</li> <li>• Modify Script</li> <li>• Delete Scripts</li> <li>• Stage Scripts on Devices</li> <li>• Verify Scripts on Devices</li> <li>• Verification Results</li> <li>• Enable Scripts on Devices</li> <li>• Disable Scripts on Devices</li> <li>• Remove Scripts from Devices</li> <li>• Execute Script on Devices</li> <li>• Export Scripts</li> <li>• Modify Scripts Type</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Script Bundles               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Script Bundles</li> <li>• Modify</li> <li>• Stage on Devices</li> <li>• Delete</li> <li>• Execute on Devices</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Device Images and Scripts > Manage Scripts  Platform > Device Images and Scripts > Manage Script Bundles
Device Script Read Only User	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Device Images and Scripts               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Scripts                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compare Script</li> <li>• Export Scripts</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Script Bundles</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Device Images and Scripts > Manage Scripts
FMPM Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Network Monitoring               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Node List                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Resync Nodes</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Search</li> <li>• Outages</li> <li>• Dashboard</li> <li>• Events</li> <li>• Alarms</li> <li>• Notifications</li> <li>• Assets</li> <li>• Reports</li> <li>• Charts</li> <li>• Admin</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Network Monitoring
Job Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Job Management               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Jobs                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancel Job</li> </ul> </li> <li>• View Recurrence</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Job Management

Table 63: Predefined Roles for the Network Application Platform (*continued*)

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Application > Workspace
Operation Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Devices               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Device Adapter</li> <li>• Add Adapter</li> <li>• Upgrade Adapter</li> <li>• Delete Adapter</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Device Images and Scripts               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Images                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upload Image</li> <li>• View Deploy Results</li> <li>• Modify Device Image Details</li> <li>• Delete Device Images</li> <li>• Stage Image on Device</li> <li>• MD5 Validation Result</li> <li>• Verify Checksum</li> <li>• Deploy Device Image</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Scripts               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compare Script</li> <li>• Import Script</li> <li>• Modify Script</li> <li>• Delete Scripts</li> <li>• Stage Scripts on Devices</li> <li>• Verify Scripts on Devices</li> <li>• Verification Results</li> <li>• Enable Scripts on Devices</li> <li>• Disable Scripts on Devices</li> <li>• Remove Scripts from Devices</li> <li>• Execute Script on Devices</li> <li>• Export Scripts</li> <li>• Modify Scripts Type</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Script Bundles               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Script Bundle</li> <li>• Modify</li> <li>• Stage on Devices</li> <li>• Delete</li> <li>• Execute on Devices</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Operations               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Operation</li> <li>• Copy Operation</li> <li>• Modify Operation</li> <li>• Delete Operations</li> <li>• Run Operation</li> <li>• View Operation Results</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Devices  Platform > Device Images and Scripts

Table 63: Predefined Roles for the Network Application Platform (*continued*)

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Application > Workspace
Permission Label Administrator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Administration<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Manage Perm Labels<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Rename Permission Label</li><li>Delete Permission Labels</li><li>Create Perm Label</li></ul></li><li>Assign Permission Labels to Users</li><li>Remove Permission Labels from Users</li><li>Attach Permission Label to Objects</li><li>Detach Permission Label from Objects</li></ul></li></ul>	Platform > Administration
Super Administrator	Manage all Junos Space task groups and tasks (See Platform > Users > Create Users user interface for the current roles.)	Access all Junos Space workspaces

Table 63: Predefined Roles for the Network Application Platform (*continued*)

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Application > Workspace
System Administrator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Fabric               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add Fabric Node</li> <li>• Delete Fabric Node</li> <li>• Network Settings</li> <li>• SNMP Configuration</li> <li>• System Snapshot</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Databases               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Backup Database</li> <li>• Delete Database Backup</li> <li>• Restore Database</li> <li>• Restore from Remote File</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Troubleshoot Space</li> <li>• Manage Applications               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Modify Application Settings</li> <li>• Add Application</li> <li>• Uninstall Application</li> <li>• Upgrade Application</li> <li>• Upgrade Platform</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Licenses               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Upload License</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Tags               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Tag</li> <li>• Rename Tags</li> <li>• Delete Tags</li> <li>• Share Tag</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Perm Labels               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Perm Label</li> <li>• Rename Permission Label</li> <li>• Delete Permission Labels</li> <li>• Assign Permission Labels to Users</li> <li>• Remove Permission Labels from Users</li> <li>• Attach Permission Label to Objects</li> <li>• Detach Permission Label from Objects</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage DMI Schemas               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set Default Schema</li> <li>• Report Missing Schemas</li> <li>• Update Schema</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Auth Servers</li> <li>• Manage SMTP Servers</li> </ul>	Platform > Administration

Table 63: Predefined Roles for the Network Application Platform (*continued*)

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Application > Workspace
Tag Administrator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Tags               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename Tag</li> <li>• Delete Tag</li> <li>• Share Tag</li> <li>• Create Tags</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Administration > Manage Tags
Template Design Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Device Templates               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Definitions                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Definition</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage CSV Files</li> <li>• Modify Template Definition</li> <li>• Clone Template Definition</li> <li>• Publish Template Definition</li> <li>• Delete Template Definition</li> <li>• Export Template Definition</li> <li>• Import Template Definition</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Device Templates
Template Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Device Templates               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Template</li> <li>• Modify Template</li> <li>• Delete Template</li> <li>• Deploy Template</li> <li>• Audit Template Config</li> <li>• Undeploy Template</li> <li>• View Template Deployment</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Device Templates
User Administrator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Users               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Users                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create User</li> <li>• Modify User</li> <li>• Clear Local Passwords</li> <li>• Delete Users</li> <li>• Disable Users</li> <li>• Enable Users</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Roles                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Role</li> <li>• Modify Role</li> <li>• Delete Role</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Remote Profiles                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Remote Profile</li> <li>• Modify Remote Profile</li> <li>• Delete Remote Profiles</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Platform > Users

Table 64 on page 415 shows the Junos Space predefined roles for the Network Activate application.

Table 64: Predefined Roles for Network Activate Application

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Workspace
Service Designer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Service Definitions               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Point-to-Point (P2P) Service Definition</li> <li>• Custom Service Definition</li> <li>• Create VPLS Service Definition</li> <li>• Publish Service Definition</li> <li>• Unpublish Service Definition</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Service Design
Service Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Device Roles               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rules</li> <li>• Discovery Roles</li> <li>• Unassign NPE Role</li> <li>• Manage Device UNIs</li> <li>• Delete UNI</li> <li>• Add Device UNIs</li> <li>• Assign UNI</li> <li>• Assign Roles</li> <li>• Modify Loopback Address</li> <li>• Manage Device UNIs</li> <li>• Exclude from UNI Role</li> <li>• Exclude from NPE Role</li> <li>• Assign NPE Role</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Prestage Devices
Service Activator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage Customers               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Customer</li> <li>• Modify Customer</li> <li>• Delete Customers</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Service Orders               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Point-to-Point (P2P) Service Order</li> <li>• Deploy Service Order</li> <li>• Delete Service Order</li> <li>• Create VPLS Service Order</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Manage Services               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Modify Service</li> <li>• Decommission Service</li> <li>• View Configuration Audit Results</li> <li>• Perform Configuration Audit</li> <li>• View Functional Audit Results</li> <li>• Perform Functional Audit</li> <li>• View Service Configuration</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Service Provisioning

Table 65 on page 416 shows the Junos Space predefined roles for the Service Insight application.

Table 65: Predefined Roles for Service Insight Application

Service Insight Administrator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insight Central               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exposure Analyzer                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Show Matching PBNs</li> <li>Generate EOL Reports</li> </ul> </li> <li>EOL Reports                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regenerate EOL Reports</li> <li>Export EOL Reports</li> <li>Delete</li> </ul> </li> <li>Targeted PBNs                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scan for Impact</li> <li>Flag to Users</li> <li>Email PBN to Users</li> <li>Assign Ownership</li> <li>Delete</li> </ul> </li> <li>Notifications                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create Notifications</li> <li>Edit Filters and Actions</li> <li>Copy</li> <li>Delete</li> <li>Enable/Disable</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Service Insight
Service Insight Read Only User	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insight Central               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Exposure Analyzer                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Show Matching PBNs</li> </ul> </li> <li>EOL Reports                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Export EOL Reports</li> </ul> </li> <li>Targeted PBNs                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scan for Impact</li> </ul> </li> <li>Notifications</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Service Insight



Table 65: Predefined Roles for Service Insight Application (*continued*)

Service Insight Unrestricted User	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insight Central               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Exposure Analyzer                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Show Matching PBNs</li> <li>• Generate EOL Reports</li> </ul> </li> <li>• EOL Reports                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regenerate EOL Reports</li> <li>• Export EOL Reports</li> <li>• Delete</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Targeted PBNs                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scan for Impact</li> <li>• Flag to Users</li> <li>• Email PBN to Users</li> <li>• Assign Ownership</li> <li>• Delete</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Notifications                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Notifications</li> <li>• Edit Filters and Actions</li> <li>• Copy</li> <li>• Delete</li> <li>• Enable/Disable</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Service Insight
--------------------------------------	---	-----------------

[Table 66 on page 418](#) shows the Junos Space predefined roles for the Service Now application.

Table 66: Predefined Roles for Service Now Application

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Workspace
Service Now Administrator		All workspaces

Table 66: Predefined Roles for Service Now Application (*continued*)

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Workspace
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Administration           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Service Now Devices</li> <li>Export Devices</li> <li>View Exposure</li> <li>Install Event Profile</li> <li>Uninstall Event Profile</li> <li>Delete</li> <li>Associate Device Groups</li> <li>Export Inventory Information</li> <li>Create On-Demand Incident</li> <li>Add Devices</li> <li>Add to Auto Submit Policy</li> </ul> </li> <li>Organizations           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Modify Organization</li> <li>Delete Organizations</li> <li>Check Status</li> <li>View Messages</li> <li>Add Organization</li> <li>Add Member</li> </ul> </li> <li>Global Settings           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SNMP Configuration</li> <li>Proxy Server Configuration</li> </ul> </li> <li>Device Groups           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create Device Group</li> <li>Modify Device Group</li> <li>Delete Device Groups</li> </ul> </li> <li>Event Profiles           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Script Bundles               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete Script Bundles</li> <li>Set as Default Bundle</li> <li>Add Script Bundle</li> </ul> </li> <li>View Events</li> <li>Show Associated Devices</li> <li>Add Event Profile</li> <li>Clone</li> <li>Delete</li> <li>Set as Default Profile</li> <li>Push to Devices</li> </ul> </li> <li>Auto Submit Policy           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Export Incidents Report</li> <li>Modify Auto Submit Policy</li> <li>Delete</li> <li>Change Status</li> <li>Create Auto Submit Policy</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

Table 66: Predefined Roles for Service Now Application (*continued*)

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Workspace
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service Central               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Incidents                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Export JMB to HTML</li> <li>• View JMB</li> <li>• Export Incident Summary to Excel</li> <li>• View KB Article</li> <li>• View Case in Case Manager</li> <li>• View Tech Support Cases                       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• View Case in Case Manager</li> </ul> </li> <li>• View End Customer Cases                       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• View Case in Case Manager</li> <li>• Update Case</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Delete</li> <li>• Submit Case</li> <li>• Assign Ownership</li> <li>• Flag to Users</li> <li>• End Customer Cases</li> <li>• Auto Submit Policy</li> </ul> </li> <li>• JMB Errors                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Download JMB Errors</li> <li>• Delete</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Information                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Messages                       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scan for Impact</li> <li>• Assign Ownership</li> <li>• Flag to Users</li> <li>• Delete</li> <li>• Assign Message to Connected Members</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Device Snapshots                       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Export JMB to HTML</li> <li>• View JMB</li> <li>• Delete</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Notifications                       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Notifications</li> <li>• Edit Filters and Actions</li> <li>• Delete</li> <li>• Copy</li> <li>• Enable/Disable</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li></ul>	

Table 66: Predefined Roles for Service Now Application (continued)

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Workspace
Service Now Unrestricted User	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Administration               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Service Now Devices                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Export Devices</li> </ul> </li> <li>View Exposure</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Administration
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Service Central               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Incidents                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Export JMB to HTML</li> <li>View JMB</li> </ul> </li> <li>Export Incident Summary to Excel</li> <li>View KB Article</li> <li>View Case in Case Manager</li> <li>View Tech Support Cases                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View Case in Case Manager</li> </ul> </li> <li>View End Customer Cases                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View Case in Case Manager</li> <li>Update Case</li> </ul> </li> <li>Delete</li> <li>Submit Case</li> <li>Assign Ownership</li> <li>Flag to Users</li> <li>End Customer Cases</li> </ul> </li> <li>JMB Errors               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Download JMB Errors</li> <li>Delete</li> </ul> </li> <li>Information               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Messages                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scan for Impact</li> <li>Assign Ownership</li> <li>Flag to Users</li> <li>Delete</li> <li>Assign Messages to connected members</li> </ul> </li> <li>Device Snapshots                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Export JMB to HTML</li> <li>View JMB</li> <li>Delete</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>Notifications               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create Notifications</li> <li>Edit Filters and Actions</li> <li>Delete</li> <li>Copy</li> <li>Enable/Disable</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Service Central

Table 66: Predefined Roles for Service Now Application (*continued*)

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Workspace
Service Now Read Only User	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Administration               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Service Now Devices</li> <li>Export Devices</li> <li>View Exposure</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Administration
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Service Central               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Incidents                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Export JMB to HTML</li> <li>View JMB</li> </ul> </li> <li>Export Incident Summary to Excel</li> <li>View KB Article</li> <li>View Case in Case Manager</li> <li>View Tech Support Cases                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View Case in Case Manager</li> </ul> </li> <li>View End Customer Cases                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View Case in Case Manager</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>JMB Errors               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Download JMB Errors</li> </ul> </li> <li>Information               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Messages                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scan for Impact</li> </ul> </li> <li>Device Snapshots                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Export JMB to HTML</li> <li>View JMB</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>Notifications</li> </ul>	Service Central

[Table 67 on page 422](#) shows the Junos Space predefined roles for the Ethernet Design application.

Table 67: Predefined Roles for Ethernet Design Application

Predefined Role	Task Group and Tasks	Workspace
Network Engineer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Port Profiles               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create Port Profile</li> </ul> </li> <li>Provision Port Profile</li> <li>Manage VLANs               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create VLAN</li> </ul> </li> <li>Manage QFabric Node Groups               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create a Node Group</li> </ul> </li> <li>Manage QFabric Port Groups               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create a Port Group</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	EZ Design

**Related Documentation** • [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)

- [Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space on page 406](#)
- [Managing Roles on page 424](#)
- [Creating a User-Defined Role on page 427](#)
- [Modifying User-Defined Roles on page 425](#)
- [Deleting User-Defined Roles on page 426](#)
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Viewing Users on page 394](#)
- [Viewing User Statistics on page 402](#)

---

## Managing Roles Overview

Roles define the application workspace tasks a user is assigned by the Super Administrator and User Administrator to perform in Junos Space. Users represent an individual in a security domain who is authorized to log into Junos Space and perform application workspace tasks according to predefined and user-defined roles.

The administrator can create a user account and assign tasks based on read-only predefined roles and read-write user-defined task roles. See [“Creating User Accounts” on page 389](#) and [“Predefined Administrator Roles” on page 407](#). You can create user-defined tasks first, then create a user account, or create a user account, then modify the account afterward. You can also use an existing user account as a template to assign roles to users with similar job types.

The **Users > User Accounts** task allows the Super Administrator or User Administrator to manage all roles by performing the following user role tasks:

- View all predefined and user-defined roles on the **Users > User Accounts** inventory page. See [“Managing Roles” on page 424](#).
- Create user-defined roles from the **Users > Roles > Create Role** task. See [“Creating a User-Defined Role” on page 427](#).
- Modify user-defined roles using **Modify Role** in the **Users > User Accounts** inventory page Actions menu. See [“Modifying User-Defined Roles” on page 425](#).
- Delete user-defined roles using **Delete Roles** in the **Users > User Accounts** inventory page Actions menu. See [“Deleting User-Defined Roles” on page 426](#).
- Tag predefined and user-defined roles to group them for performing actions all at once. Use **Tag It** in the **Users > User Accounts** inventory page Actions menu. See [“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#).
- View all tags that exist on roles using **View Tags** in the **Users > User Accounts** inventory page Actions menu. See [“Viewing Tags” on page 564](#).

### Related Documentation

- [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)
- [Predefined Administrator Roles on page 407](#)

- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Managing Roles on page 424](#)
- [Creating a User-Defined Role on page 427](#)
- [Modifying User-Defined Roles on page 425](#)
- [Deleting User-Defined Roles on page 426](#)

## Managing Roles

---

A role is a description of tasks a user can perform in Junos Space to allow access to application workspaces. The **Users > Roles** inventory page allows the Super Administrator or the User Administrator to view all predefined and user-defined roles that exist for Junos Space applications. The administrator should understand all predefined roles and create any user-defined roles before creating users.

### Viewing User Role Details

The **Roles** inventory page displays all predefined and user-defined roles in a tabular view.

Each role is represented by a row in the table. Roles are listed in the table in ascending alphabetical order by role title, description, and tasks assigned. You can show or hide table columns and sort records in ascending or descending order.

You can search for roles by typing the first letters of the role title in the search box. Role title starting with the first letters you type are listed.

To view a user role detail summary:

1. Double-click a role.

The Role Details Summary page appears.

The page displays the workspace, and workspace tasks.

2. Click the expander button **[+]** to view subtasks.
3. Click **OK**.

### Performing Manage Roles Commands

The commands you can perform on predefined and user-defined roles are located in the Actions menu or by right-clicking that role. You can only perform the **Modify Role** and **Delete Roles** commands on read-writeable user-defined roles. You can not manipulate read-only predefined roles. To perform a command, you must first select the role.

The following commands are included in the **Modify Role** Actions menu:



- **Modify Role**—Modify the selected user-defined role title, description, and application workspace task. You can not modify predefined roles. For more information, see [“Modifying User-Defined Roles” on page 425](#).
- **Delete Roles**—Delete the selected user-defined role. You can not delete predefined roles. For more information, see [“Creating a User-Defined Role” on page 427](#).
- **Tag It**—Tag one or more selected inventory objects, see, see [“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#).
- **View Tags**—View a list of tags that exist on a selected inventory object. For more information, see [“Viewing Tags” on page 564](#).
- **Untag It**—Untag a tag that has been applied to an inventory object, see [“Untagging Objects” on page 565](#).
- **Clear All Selections**—Clear any user role selections you made on the Manage Roles inventory page. Use the Select: Page in the Manage Roles page title bar to select all roles at once.

**Related Documentation**

- [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)
- [Predefined Administrator Roles on page 407](#)
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Creating a User-Defined Role on page 427](#)
- [Modifying User-Defined Roles on page 425](#)
- [Deleting User-Defined Roles on page 426](#)

## Modifying User-Defined Roles

The Super Administrator and the User Administrator can modify user-defined roles that have been created. You can modify the role description, application workspace, and the selected tasks. You can not modify the role title or predefined roles.

To modify a user-defined role:

1. Select **Users > Roles**.

The Roles inventory page appears displaying all existing predefined and user-defined roles.

2. Select the user-defined role you want to modify.
3. Select **Modify Role** from the Actions dropdown.
4. Modify the part of the user-defined role that you want: description, application workspace, or tasks.

The role title can not exceed 32 characters. The title can only contain letters, numbers, and can include a hyphen (-), underscore (\_), or period (.).

The role description can not exceed 256 characters

5. Click **Modify**.

The modified user-defined role is updated in the Manage Roles inventory page.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Predefined Administrator Roles on page 407](#)
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Managing Roles on page 424](#)
- [Managing Roles Overview on page 423](#)
- [Creating a User-Defined Role on page 427](#)
- [Deleting User-Defined Roles on page 426](#)

---

## Deleting User-Defined Roles

---

The Super Administrator and the User Administrator can delete user-defined roles from the **Manage Roles** inventory page only if they are not being used by other users. You can not delete pre-defined roles.

To delete a user-defined role:

1. Select **Users > Roles**.

The Roles inventory page appears displaying all existing predefined and user-defined roles.

2. Select the user-defined role(s) you want to delete.
3. Select **Delete Roles** from the Actions dropdown.

The Delete Roles dialog box appears.

4. Confirm deletion of the selected user defined role(s). Select the role(s).
5. Click **Delete**.

The role is deleted from the Manage Roles inventory page. If the role is used by other Junos Space users, you cannot delete the role. A warning message appears.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Predefined Administrator Roles on page 407](#)
- [Managing Roles on page 424](#)
- [Creating a User-Defined Role on page 427](#)
- [Managing Roles Overview on page 423](#)
- [Modifying User-Defined Roles on page 425](#)
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)

# Create Role

- [Creating a User-Defined Role on page 427](#)

## Creating a User-Defined Role

---

Junos Space provides a number of read-only predefined roles you, the Super Administrator, System Administrator, or User Administrator can use to create user log in, access, and perform tasks in application workspaces. You can also create read-write user-defined roles that conform to user responsibilities and access privileges required on your network. You can modify and delete only user-defined roles that you create. You cannot modify or delete predefined roles.

To create a user-defined role:

1. Select **Users > Roles** and click the Create Role icon on the menu bar.

The Create Role page appears, allowing you to select workspaces and associated tasks from all deployed applications.

2. In the Title text box, type a user-defined role name.

The role title can not exceed 32 characters. The title can only contain letters, numbers, and can include a hyphen (-), underscore (\_), or period (.).

3. In the Description box, type a user-defined role description.

The role description can not exceed 256 characters

4. Select an application workspace from the application selection ribbon.

Mouse over an application workspace icon to view the application and workspace name. You can select one or more workspaces per user-defined role. An expandable/collapsible tree of associated tasks appear below the selection ribbon for you to modify specific tasks you want included in the Task Summary pane.

5. Select the specific task(s) you want for the user-defined role. All application workspace tasks are by default deselected in the task tree.

Only the currently edited application workspace node is expanded in the Task Summary pane; previously selected workspace nodes are collapsed. You can expand other workspace nodes manually.

Selecting the top node or workspace selects or deselects the whole task tree. Selecting any task node automatically selects its decedents. Selecting any task node automatically selects its parent and grand parent.

Only the currently active task tree appears in the Task Summary pane.

In the Task Summary pane, the top level application node in the tree is bold-italic; the second level workspace tree node is bold.

6. Click **Create**.

The user-defined role is created, saved, and appears in the Manage Roles inventory page.

Scroll down or search to view it.

You cannot create or save a user-defined role when the workspace tasks are not selected.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Predefined Administrator Roles on page 407](#)
- [Managing Roles on page 424](#)
- [Modifying User-Defined Roles on page 425](#)
- [Deleting User-Defined Roles on page 426](#)
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)

# Manage Remote Profiles

- [Creating a Remote Profile on page 429](#)

## Creating a Remote Profile

---

To create a remote profile:

1. Select **Users > Remote Profiles**.  
The Remote Profiles page is displayed.
2. Select the **Create Remote Profile** icon on the menu bar.  
The Create Remote Profile page is displayed.
3. In the Name field, enter a name for the remote profile.  
Ensure that you enter the name without spaces or special characters.
4. In the Description field, enter a description for the remote profile.
5. Select the **GUI Access** and **API Access** check-boxes depending on the type of access you want to allow for the remote profile.  
  
By default, the remote profile gets access to both GUI and API. You should select atleast one access type to successfully create a remote profile.
6. Use the double list box to select predefined roles for the remote profile. Select one or more roles from the Available list box. Selected roles appear in the Selected list box. Use the right arrow to move the selected roles to the Selected list box. Use the left arrow to move roles from the Selected list box back to the Available list box. You can also double-click a role to select or remove it. You see the details of selected roles appear in the right pane of the page.
7. Click **Create**.

Remote profiles can be modified, deleted, and tagged.



**NOTE:** A user will not be allowed to log in if the remote profile specified in the remote server does not exist in the local database. A message "No roles assigned for this user" is displayed on the login screen. This information is logged as an audit log.

- Related Documentation**
- [Predefined Administrator Roles on page 407](#)
  - [Managing Roles on page 424](#)
  - [Modifying User-Defined Roles on page 425](#)
  - [Deleting User-Defined Roles on page 426](#)
  - [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)

# User Sessions

- [Terminating User Sessions on page 431](#)

## Terminating User Sessions

---

As a Junos Space User administrator, you can view and terminate user sessions before starting a maintenance cycle to minimize the risk of system inconsistency. You can view the list of users who are logged in along with details of IP address of the client from which they are logged in and the duration of their sessions. You can select one or more users to terminate their sessions.

When you trigger a session termination, the users whose sessions you have chosen for termination will be notified. The notification includes the date and time when the sessions will be terminated. As a user whose session will be terminated, you will be automatically logged out and redirected to login page at the scheduled date and time.

To terminate user sessions:



**NOTE:** You will not be able terminate sessions of a user with a username *super*.

When you delete or disable a user in Junos Space, the user's sessions will terminate automatically. If a user closes the session before the scheduled time for terminating the session and logs back in, the new session is not considered for session termination.

1. Select **Users > User Sessions**.

The User Sessions page appears. This page displays the user name, IP address, session start time, and the session duration of the sessions that are currently logged in.

2. Select one or more users whose sessions you want to terminate.

3. Select **Terminate User Session** from the Actions dropdown.

The Terminate User Session window is displayed. This window displays the user sessions that you have selected to terminate and the IP address from which the users are logged in currently.

4. Select the **Schedule at a later time** check-box to terminate the user sessions at a future point in time.

5. Select the appropriate date and time for terminating sessions from the date and time menus, respectively.
6. Click **OK**.

A job is created to terminate the sessions selected for session termination. When the job is scheduled, the users whose sessions you have selected for terminating will receive a pop-up message displaying the date and time you have specified for terminating their sessions.

- Related Documentation**
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
  - [Predefined Administrator Roles on page 407](#)



## PART 9

# Audit Logs

- [View on page 435](#)
- [Archive / Purge on page 443](#)
- [Export on page 447](#)



## CHAPTER 41

# View

- [Junos Space Audit Logs Overview on page 435](#)
- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)
- [Viewing Audit Log Statistics on page 438](#)
- [Converting the Audit Log File UTC Timestamp to Local Time in Microsoft Excel on page 440](#)

### Junos Space Audit Logs Overview

---

Audit logs provide a record of Junos Space login history and user-initiated tasks that are performed from the user interface. From the Audit Logs workspace, you can monitor user login/logout activity over time, track device management tasks, view services that were provisioned on devices, and so forth. Junos Space audit logging does not record non-user initiated activities, such as device driven activities, and is not designed for debugging purposes. User-initiated changes made from the Junos Space CLI are logged but are not recorded in audit logs.

Administrators can sort and filter on audit logs to determine which users performed what actions on what objects at what time. For example, an Audit Log administrator can use audit log filtering to track the user accounts that were added on a specific date, track configuration changes across a particular type of device, view services that were provisioned on specific devices, or monitor user login/logout activity over time.

To use the audit log service to monitor user requests and track changes initiated by users, you must have the Audit Log Administrator role (see [“Managing Roles Overview” on page 423](#)).



**NOTE:** Audit Logging is not currently supported for Ethernet Design. However, from version 12.1 onward, audit logging is supported for Service Now.

Over time, the Audit Log administrator will archive a large volume of Junos Space log entries. Such log entries might or might not be reviewed, but they must be retained for a period of time. The Archive Purge feature helps you manage your Junos Space log volume, allowing you to archive log files and then purge those log files from the Junos Space database. For each Archive Purge operation, the archived log files are saved in a single file, in CSV format. The audit logs can be saved to a local server (the server that functions

as the active node in the Junos Space fabric) or a remote network host or media. When you archive data to a local server, the archived log files are saved to the default directory `/var/lib/mysql/archive`.

The Audit Logs Export feature enables you to download audit logs in CSV format so that you can view the audit logs in a separate application or save them on another machine for further use, without purging them from the system.

#### Related Documentation

- [Archiving and Purging Audit Logs on page 443](#)
- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)
- [Exporting Audit Logs on page 447](#)

## Viewing Audit Logs

Audit logs are generated for login activity and tasks that are initiated from the Network Application Platform and Network Activate, as well as Service Now. The View Audit Logs page displays all tasks.

To view audit logs, you must have Audit Log Administrator privileges.



**NOTE:** Audit Logging is not currently supported by the Ethernet Design application.

You view audit logs in Junos Space only in tabular view. For more information about how to manipulate inventory page data, see [“Junos Space User Interface Overview” on page 9](#).

### Viewing Audit Log Details

The Audit Log Details dialog box displays information about the task that was logged, including information about the objects affected by the task.

To view detailed audit log information:

- If an audit log entry does not include a job ID, double-click a table row for the audit log entry. The Audit Log Details dialog box displays information about the task that was logged, including information about the objects affected by the task. Click **OK** to close the Audit Log Detail dialog box.
- If an audit log entry includes a Job ID, click the Job ID link in the audit log row. The Job Manager Inventory view displays information about the job. If this job is recurring, then it will display information about all recurrences of this job. Click **Return to Audit Logs** to close the Job Manager inventory page and return to the audit logs table.

The fields displayed in the Audit Logs table are described in [Table 68 on page 436](#).

**Table 68: Detailed Audit Logs Information and View Audit Log Table Columns**

Field	Description
User Name	The login ID of the user that initiated the task.

**Table 68: Detailed Audit Logs Information and View Audit Log Table Columns (*continued*)**

User IP	The IP address of the client computer from which the user initiated the task.
Task	The name of the task that triggered the audit log.
Timestamp	Time is UTC time in database that is mapped to the local time zone of client computer.
Result	<p>The execution result of the task that triggered the audit log:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Success—Job completed successfully</li> <li>• Failure—Job failed and was terminated.</li> <li>• Job Scheduled—Job is scheduled but has not yet started.</li> </ul>
Job ID	For each job-based task, the audit log includes the job ID.
Description	A description of the audit log.

For both recurring and non-recurring jobs, such as a database backup, the Audit Logs table displays the following data described in [Table 69 on page 437](#).

**Table 69: Audit Log Table Details for Recurring and Non-recurring Jobs**

Field	Description
Job ID	The numerical ID of the job.
Percent	Percentage of job that has completed.
State	<p>State of job execution:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SUCCESS—Job completed successfully</li> <li>• FAILURE—Job failed and was terminated.</li> <li>• IN PROGRESS—Job is in progress.</li> <li>• CANCELED—Job was canceled by a user.</li> </ul>
Job Type	The supported job types. Job types depend on the installed Junos Space applications. In Junos Space 1.4, a recurring job type supported is Backup Database.
Summary	The operations executed for the job.
Scheduled Start Time	The scheduled start time for the job (specified by a Junos Space user).
Recurrence	The job recurrence interval, start time, and end time.

- Related Documentation**
- [Exporting Audit Logs on page 447](#)
  - [Viewing Audit Log Statistics on page 438](#)
  - [Junos Space Audit Logs Overview on page 435](#)
  - [Archiving and Purging Audit Logs on page 443](#)

- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)
- [Backing Up the Database on page 487](#)

## Viewing Audit Log Statistics

---

The Audit log workspace statistics page provides two graphs: Audit Log Statistical Graph pie chart and the Top 10 Active Users in 24 Hours for the audit log administrator to monitor Junos Space tasks.

The Audit Log Statistical Graph pie chart displays all tasks that have been performed and logged in all Junos Space applications over a specific period of time. You can view Audit Log statistics by task type, user, workspace, and application.



**NOTE:** Audit Logging is not currently supported by the Ethernet Design application. From Platform 12.1 onward, audit logging is supported by Service Now.

The Top 10 Active Users in 24 hours graph displays the top 10 Junos Space users who have performed the most tasks over 24 hours. The graph X axis represents the activities performed by a single user. Each active session for that user is represented by a bubble on the X axis. The graph Y axis represents hours. For example, if a single user performed six active sessions during the last 24 hours, the chart displays six bubbles on the X axis according to the hours on the Y axis.

## Viewing the Dynamic Audit Log Statistical Graph

The Audit Log Statistical Graph is an interactive graph that allows the audit log administrator to view audit logs by selecting both category and time frame. The category determines the statistical graph that displays—task, user, workarea, or application. Each slice in the pie represents a task and its usage percentage of the whole. The tasks types also appear in a list box at the right of the pie chart. Mousing over a slice of the pie displays the number of times the task is invoked. The time frame specifies the period of time within which to show audit log data.

To use the Audit Log Statistical Graph:

1. Select a graph category:

- Task—shows all tasks that have been performed. Click each task slice to go to the next level chart showing the users who performed the selected task.

The graph path displays the path to show where you are located in the UI. Click Overview to go back to the top level chart. The task name in the path indicates the currently selected path.

Tasks display in terms of user name or IP address.

- User names display all users by name. Click a user to go to the inventory page filtered by task, user, and selected time frame.
- IP address displays all IP address where users performed tasks. Click an IP address to go to the inventory page filtered by task, IP address, and selected time frame.
- Users displays all users using the system within the time frame. 10 users display per chart. Click Others to go to the next page. Click the previous page link to go back.
- Workspace displays all workspaces used in the time frame. Click a workspace slice to go to the inventory page filtered by workspaces.
- Application displays all applications used. Click a pie slice to go to the inventory page filtered by application and selected time frame.

2. Select a time frame in days, weeks, or months to display audit log data in the pie chart. The default is Days. A time selection description displays just below the time frame area.

- Days—Days mode displays the past seven days to the selected date. Select single or multiple days. Select multiple days by dragging the mouse
- Weeks—Weeks mode displays the past five weeks, from past to most current on the right.
- Months—Months mode displays the past 12 month, from past to most current on the right.

The current day, week, or month is highlighted.

3. Click a slice in the pie chart to view more detailed information. Tasks appear in tabular view by user name, user IP, task, timestamp, results, description, job ID, and level 2 description.

See [“Junos Space User Interface Overview” on page 9](#) for more information about manipulating the table data.

4. On the inventory page, click an audit log to view more detailed information. For a job-related log entry, there is a column for job-id, by clicking this link you will be led to a new table showing the corresponding Job info.

In the audit log detail view, if there are multiple affected objects for the log entry, the affected object detail always shows the first object detail. Clicking on any object in the list changes the object detail accordingly. If there is no affected object for this log entry, the affected object list is hidden and the object detail part is shown none.

5. Click Return to Audit Logs to go back to Audit Log View.

### Viewing the Top 10 Active Users In 24 Hours Statistics

To view the Top 10 Active Users in 24 Hours graph:

1. In the Top 10 Active Users in 24 Hours graph, double-click a user's bubble for a particular hour. The View Audit Log page appears with the jobs performed by that user.

Tasks appear by user name, user IP, task, timestamp, results, description, job ID, and level 2 description in tabular view. See [“Junos Space User Interface Overview” on page 9](#) for more information about manipulating the table data.

#### Related Documentation

- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)
- [Junos Space Audit Logs Overview on page 435](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)
- [Archiving and Purging Audit Logs on page 443](#)
- [Exporting Audit Logs on page 447](#)

---

## Converting the Audit Log File UTC Timestamp to Local Time in Microsoft Excel

You can unzip an audit log \*.gz file. You can open the extracted \*.csv file as a spreadsheet in Microsoft Excel. In Microsoft Excel, you can convert the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) timestamp column entries to local time.

To convert the UTC time to local time:

1. Retrieve the `JunosSpaceAuditLog_date_time_id.csv.gz` audit log file from where you archived it. If you archived the file locally, the file is located in `/var/lib/mysql/archive`.
  - Where *date* specifies the year, month, and day, in yyyy-mm-dd format
  - Where *time* specifies military, 24-hour time in hour, minutes, and seconds (hh-mm-ss) format
  - Where *id* is an auto-generated, 13-character random number that uniquely identifies each audit log archive file



For example, JunosSpaceAuditLog\_2010-03-04-00-00-00\_xx...x.csv.gz.

2. Unzip the audit log \*.csv file.
3. Open the audit log \*.csv file in Microsoft Excel.
4. To the left of the UTC Time column, insert a new column.
5. Label the column header **Local Time**.
6. Click the first cell of the new column.
7. Insert the following function:  $=XX/86400000 + 25569 - X/24$ 
  - Where XX is the cell letter and row number where you want to insert the local time conversion function.
  - Where X represents the hours difference between your local time and the UTC time; divided by 24 hours.
8. Click Enter. The calculated local time appears.
9. Format the local time. Right-click the cell and select **Format Cells**. The Format Cells dialog box appears.
10. In the Category list box, select **Date**.
11. In the Type list box, select a date format that you want.
12. Click OK. The local time and date appears.
13. Copy or apply the cell function and formatting to the rest of the rows in the Local Time column. The rest of the local times appear as shown.

**Figure 50: Formatting the Local Times Column in Microsoft Excel**

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	ID	Version	Timestamp	Local Time	UTC Time	User IP	Application	Task	Result	Correlation Tag
2	1900817	0	1.26971E+12	3/27/10 12:58	40264.70696	10.150.113.211	Network Application Platform	Archive/Purge	Job Scheduled	81E07BEDEF597C8CA5ECCEB14347FA29
3	1900821	0	1.26971E+12	3/27/10 13:14	40264.71815	10.150.113.211	Network Application Platform	Logout	Success	\N
4	1966342	0	1.26971E+12	3/27/10 13:24	40264.72546	10.150.113.211	Network Application Platform	Login	Success	\N
5										

14. If you want to keep the original audit log file, save it as a different filename.

#### Related Documentation

- [Archiving and Purging Audit Logs on page 443](#)



## Archive / Purge

- [Archiving and Purging Audit Logs on page 443](#)

### Archiving and Purging Audit Logs

---

The administrator can archive and then purge all audit logs files up to a specified data and time from the Junos Space database. The administrator can archive audit logs to the local server or a remote server location.

The Junos Space archive file uses the following naming conventions:

**JunosSpaceAuditLog\_date\_time\_id.csv.gz**, where *date* specifies the year, month, and day, in the format *yyyy-mm-dd*, *time* specifies hours, minutes, and seconds, in the format *hh-mm-ss*, and *id* is a 13 character random number that uniquely identifies each audit log archive file.

This topic includes the following tasks:

- [Archiving Audit Logs To a Local Server and Purging the Database on page 443](#)
- [Archiving Audit Logs To a Remote Server and Purging the Database on page 444](#)

### Archiving Audit Logs To a Local Server and Purging the Database

You can archive audit logs to the local server. The local server is the server that functions as the active node in the Junos Space fabric.

To archive Junos Space audit log files to the local server and then purge the audit logs from the database:

1. Select **Audit Logs > Audit Log** and select the Archive/Purge Logs icon. The Archive/Purge dialog box appears.
2. In the Archive Logs Before field, specify the date and time up which to archived and purged audit logs from the Junos Space database. You can only specify a date and time in the past.



**NOTE:** If you do not specify a date and time in the Archive Logs Before field, Junos Space archives then purges from the database all logs generated up to the time that you initiated the operation.

3. In the Archive Mode field, select **local** from the list.
4. Schedule the Junos Space Archive/Purge operation:
  - Clear the **Schedule at a later time** check box (the default) to initiate the Archive/Purge operation when you complete this procedure.
  - Select the **Schedule at a later time** check box to specify a later start date and time for the Archive/Purge operation.



**NOTE:** The selected time in the scheduler corresponds to Junos Space server time but using the local time zone of the client computer.

5. Click **Submit**.

The Audit Log Archive and Purge confirmation dialog box displays the audit log file name and the location where it will be saved.

6. Click **Continue** to archive and purge the audit logs.
7. To view job details for the Audit Log Archive/Purge operation, click on the Job Id in the Job Information dialog box; otherwise, click **OK** to close the dialog box.

## Archiving Audit Logs To a Remote Server and Purging the Database

You can archive audit logs to remote network hosts or media.

To back up the Junos Space database to a remote host and then purge those logs from the Junos Space database:

1. Select **Audit Logs > Audit Log** and select the Archive/Purge Logs icon. The Archive/Purge dialog box appears.
2. In the Archive Logs Before field, select a date and time to specify the date *up to which* all audit logs are to be archived and then purged from the Junos Space database. You can only specify date and time in the past.



**NOTE:** If you do not specify a date and time in the Archive Logs Before field, Junos Space will archive and then purge from the database all logs generated up to the time that you initiated the operation.

3. In the Archive Mode field, select **Remote** from the list.
4. Enter a valid user name to access the remote host server.
5. Enter a valid password to access the remote host server.
6. Reenter the password you entered in the previous step.
7. Enter the IP address of the remote host server.
8. Enter a directory path on the remote host server for the archived log files.



**NOTE:** The directory path must already exist on the remote host server.

9. Schedule the Junos Space archive and purge operation:

- Clear the **Schedule at a later time** check box (the default) to initiate the Archive/Purge operation when you complete this procedure.
- Select the **Schedule at a later time** check box to specify a later start date and time for the Archive/Purge operation.



**NOTE:** The selected time in the scheduler corresponds to Junos Space server time but using the local time zone of the client computer.

10. Click **Submit**.

The Audit Log Archive and Purge dialog box displays the audit log file location and name and the remote server to which the files copy.

11. Click **Continue** to archive and purge the audit logs.

Junos Space displays the Audit Log Archive and Purge Job Information dialog box.

12. To view job details for the Archive/Purge operation, click the Job Id link.

13. Click **OK** to close the dialog box.

#### Related Documentation

- [Junos Space Audit Logs Overview on page 435](#)
- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)
- [Exporting Audit Logs on page 447](#)



## CHAPTER 43

# Export

- [Exporting Audit Logs on page 447](#)

### Exporting Audit Logs

---

You can export audit logs without purging them from the system.

There are three options for this:

- Export all audit logs
- Export audit logs filtered by date range
- Export audit logs as displayed on View Audit Logs table. On the View Audit Logs page, you can filter audit logs according to multiple criteria. The criteria you choose determine which audit log data will be exported. The filter determines which records appear in the table, and all the records in the table will be exported.

The audit logs are exported as CSV files. They are not removed from the database when they are exported.

1. Select **Audit Logs > Audit Log**.

The Audit Log Statistical Graph page appears.

2. Select **Audit Logs > Audit Log** and select the Archive/Purge Logs icon. The Archive/Purge dialog box appears.
3. From the Audit Log Statistical Graph page, select a time period and category: Task, User, Workspace, or Application.
4. Click the graph to view the filtered audit logs
5. Click the **Export** link at the top of the table and below the title bar.

The **Export Audit Log** page appears.

6. Select one of the following options and click **Export**.

- **Export all audit logs.**

The Date and Time selectors are disabled when you choose this option.

- **Export audit logs filtered by date range .**

The Date and Time widget selectors are enabled when you choose this option.

- **Export audit logs as displayed on View Audit Logs table**

This is the default selection. For instructions on how to filter the logs, see [“Viewing Audit Logs” on page 436](#).

Your browser’s Download dialog appears.

7. You can choose to open the exported file or to save it.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Junos Space Audit Logs Overview on page 435](#)
- [Viewing Audit Log Statistics on page 438](#)
- [Archiving and Purging Audit Logs on page 443](#)



## PART 10

# Administration

- [Overview on page 451](#)
- [Fabric on page 455](#)
- [Manage Databases on page 485](#)
- [Manage Licenses on page 501](#)
- [Manage Applications on page 505](#)
- [Troubleshoot Space on page 529](#)
- [Manage Auth Servers on page 537](#)
- [Manage SMTP Servers on page 553](#)
- [Manage Tags on page 555](#)
- [Manage Perm Labels on page 567](#)
- [Manage DMI Schemas on page 573](#)
- [Generate Key on page 585](#)



## CHAPTER 44

# Overview

- [Junos Space Administrators Overview on page 451](#)
- [Maintenance Mode Overview on page 452](#)

### Junos Space Administrators Overview

Junos Space administrators can serve different functional roles. A CLI administrator installs and configures Junos Space appliances. A maintenance-mode administrator performs system-level tasks, such as troubleshooting and database restore operations. After appliances are installed and configured, users are created from the Junos Space user interface to access workspaces and manage applications, users, devices, services, customers, and so forth.

[Table 70 on page 451](#) shows the Junos Space administrators and the tasks that can be performed.

**Table 70: Junos Space Administrators**

Junos Space Administrator Function	Description	Tasks
CLI administrator	<p>An administrator responsible for setting up and managing system settings for Junos Space appliances from the serial console.</p> <p>The CLI administrator name is “admin”.</p> <p>The CLI administrator password can be changed from the console system settings menu.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Install and configure basic settings for Junos Space appliances.</li><li>• Change network and system settings for appliances, for example:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Change CLI administrator password.</li><li>• Set routing</li><li>• Set DNS servers</li><li>• Change time options</li><li>• Expand VM drive size (Junos Space Virtual Appliances only)</li><li>• Retrieve log files for troubleshooting</li></ul></li></ul>

Table 70: Junos Space Administrators (*continued*)

Maintenance mode administrator	<p>An administrator responsible for performing system-level maintenance on Junos Space.</p> <p>The maintenance mode administrator name is "maintenance".</p> <p>The maintenance mode password is configured from the serial console when you first configure a Junos Space appliance.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restore Junos Space to previous state by using a database backup file.</li> <li>• Shut down Junos Space nodes by entering maintenance mode.</li> <li>• Retrieve log files for troubleshooting.</li> <li>• Exit Maintenance mode and explicitly start up Junos Space system.</li> </ul>
Junos Space user interface users	<p>A Junos Space user that is assigned one or more predefined roles. Each role assigned to a user provides specific access and management privileges on the objects (applications, devices, users, jobs, services, customers) available from a workspace in the Junos Space user interface.</p>	<p>For complete information about the predefined roles that can be assigned to a Junos Space user, see "<a href="#">Predefined Administrator Roles</a>" on page 407.</p>

- Related Documentation**
- [Maintenance Mode Overview on page 452](#)
  - [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)
  - [Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space on page 406](#)

## Maintenance Mode Overview

In Junos Space, *Maintenance mode* is a special mode that the administrator uses to perform database restore or debugging tasks while all nodes in the fabric are shutdown and the Junos Space web proxy is running.

The Junos Space system goes into Maintenance mode in the following cases:

- Junos Space goes down.

The system will go into Maintenance mode when Junos Space is down on all nodes in the fabric. Users attempting to log in when the system is in Maintenance mode are redirected to the maintenance mode log in screen. Users who logged in to Junos Space before the shutdown and attempt to perform an action in the user interface are also redirected to the maintenance mode log in screen.

- An authorized Junos Space administrator initiates a Restore Database from Backup action.

When a user initiates a Restore database action, Junos Space prompts the user for user name and password to enter maintenance mode, as shown in the Authentication Required dialog box. After the user is authenticated, Junos Space initiates the restore database operation and the system remains in Maintenance mode until the database is restored and the user exits maintenance mode.

- An authorized Junos Space administrator upgrades the Platform software.

When a user initiates a software upgrade, Junos Space prompts the user for user name and password to enter maintenance mode, as shown in the Authentication Required dialog box. After the user is authenticated, Junos Space initiates the software upgrade and the system remains in Maintenance mode until the upgrade is finished and the user exits maintenance mode.

When a user is authenticated to access Junos Space in maintenance mode, the Maintenance Mode Actions menu displays the tasks a user can perform in Maintenance Mode.

**Figure 51: Maintenance Mode Actions Menu**

- [Restore Database from Backup](#)  
This action leads user to select a database backup file and overwrite the current database
- [Download Troubleshooting Data and Logs](#)  
This action allows user to download Space logs for troubleshooting
- [Log Out and Remain in Maintenance Mode](#)  
This action logs out the current user so that another administrator can login and manage in maintenance mode
- [Log Out and Exit from Maintenance Mode](#)  
This action returns Space to normal operational mode

When a user exits maintenance mode, Junos Space is restarted. After several minutes, the system returns to normal operational mode, and Junos Space users can log in to the user interface.

## Maintenance Mode Access and System Locking

An authorized Junos Space administrator puts the system into maintenance mode by initiating a Restore database action (see [“Restoring a Database in Maintenance Mode” on page 495](#)).

Only one Maintenance mode administrator can access Maintenance mode at a time. When an administrator logs in to Maintenance mode, Junos Space locks the page. When a second administrator attempts to log in to Maintenance mode while the first administrator is logged in, Junos Space displays a message indicating that another administrator is currently logged in to the system and that Maintenance Mode is locked. The Maintenance mode lock releases when the first administrator logs out or the lock times out. If the logged-in administrator is inactive, the maintenance mode lock is released after 5 minutes at which time another administrator can log in.

## Maintenance Mode User Administration

The user name for the maintenance mode administrator is “maintenance”.

The password for the maintenance mode administrator is set from the Junos Space system console during the initial installation/configuration of a Junos Space appliance or virtual appliance.

A Junos Space administrator connects to an appliance that is already in maintenance mode by using the URL `https://ip-address/maintenance`, where *ip-address* is the Web access IP address for the appliance.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Restoring a Database in the User Interface on page 492](#)
- [Restoring a Database in Maintenance Mode on page 495](#)
- [Backing Up the Database on page 487](#)
- [Database Backup and Restore Overview on page 485](#)

## CHAPTER 45

# Fabric

- [Fabric Management on page 455](#)

### Fabric Management

---

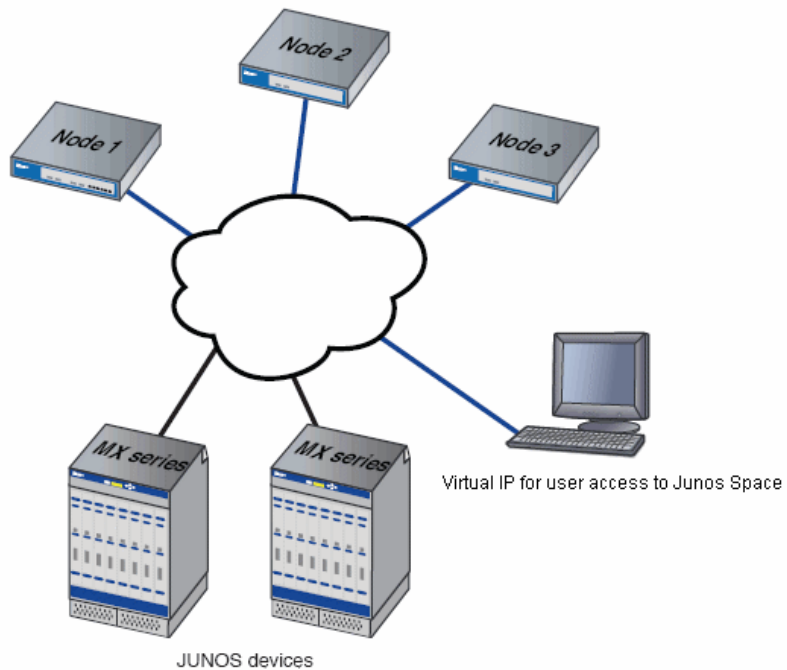
- [Fabric Management Overview on page 455](#)
- [Adding a Node to an Existing Fabric on page 459](#)
- [Viewing Nodes in the Fabric on page 461](#)
- [Configuring Node Network Settings on page 464](#)
- [Shutting Down or Rebooting a Node From Junos Space on page 469](#)
- [Deleting a Node on page 470](#)
- [Understanding Overall System Condition and Fabric Load on page 471](#)
- [Monitoring Nodes in the Fabric on page 473](#)
- [Creating a System Snapshot on page 480](#)
- [Deleting a System Snapshot on page 482](#)
- [Restoring the System to a Snapshot on page 482](#)

### Fabric Management Overview

You can deploy Junos Space appliances to create a fabric that provides the scalability and availability that your managed network requires as you add more devices, services, and users.

A Junos Space fabric comprises one or more IP-connected nodes. A *node* is a logical object that represents a single JA1500 Junos Space Appliance or Junos Space Virtual Appliance, its operating system, and the Junos Space software that runs on the operating system. Each Junos Space appliance or virtual appliance that you install and configure is represented as a single node in the fabric. You can add nodes without disrupting the services that are running on the fabric. When you add nodes to the fabric, you can manage and monitor the nodes from the Administration workspace. To add, manage, and monitor nodes in the fabric, a fabric administrator connects to a single virtual IP address, as shown in the illustration.

Figure 52: Fabric Nodes



**NOTE:** All appliances (nodes) in a fabric must be from same Junos Space release. For example, a fabric comprises Junos Space Release 1.1 appliances or Junos Space Release 1.2 appliances, but not both.

### Single Node Functionality

When the fabric comprises a single appliance, all devices in the managed network connect to the appliance. When you install and configure the first appliance, Junos Space automatically creates a fabric with one node. By default, a fabric that consists of a single node provides complete Junos Space management functionality, with the following *node functions* enabled for the node:

- Load Balancer— for processing HTTP requests from remote browsers and NBI clients
- Database— for processing database requests (create, read, update, and delete operations)
- Application Logic— for processing back-end business logic (Junos Space service requests) and DML workload (device connectivity, device events, and logging)



**NOTE:** A fabric that comprises a single node provides no workload balancing and no backup if the appliance goes down.



## Multinode Functionality

As your network expands with new devices, services, and users, you can add Junos Space appliances to handle the increased workload. When you install and configure the first appliance, Junos Space automatically creates a fabric with one node. For each additional appliance you install and configure, you must add a node to logically represent the appliance in the fabric. Each node that you add to the fabric increases the resource pool for the node functions to meet the scalability and availability requirements of your network. By default, Junos Space automatically enables node functionality across the nodes in the fabric to distribute workload. The nodes in the fabric work together to provide a virtualized resource pool for each of the node functions: load balancer, database, and application logic.

The Junos Space node functions distribute workload across operating nodes according to the following load-distribution rules:

- **Load Balancer**— When a node that functions as the active load balancer server is down, all HTTP requests are automatically routed to the standby load balancer server that is running on a separate node.
- **Database**— When a node that functions as the active database server is down, all database requests (create, read, update, and delete) are routed to the node that functions as the standby database server.
- **Application Logic (DML and business logic)**— Device connections and user requests are distributed among the nodes, and device-related operations are routed to the node to which the device is connected.

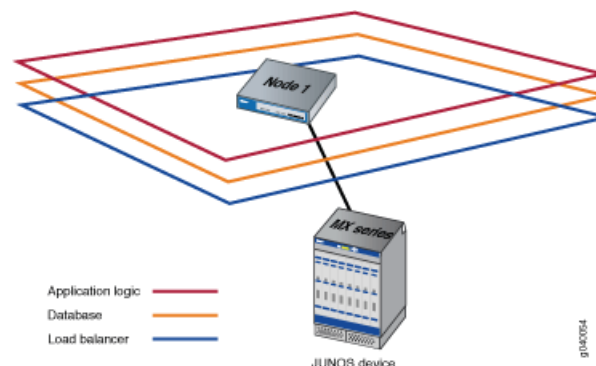
Junos Space uses the following algorithm to ensure that the number of devices connected to a node does not exceed the threshold limit for each node:

$$\text{Threshold Limit} = [ (\text{number of devices in database}) / (\text{number of nodes running}) ] + 2$$

The following workflow describes how the node functions are enabled across the fabric as nodes are added:

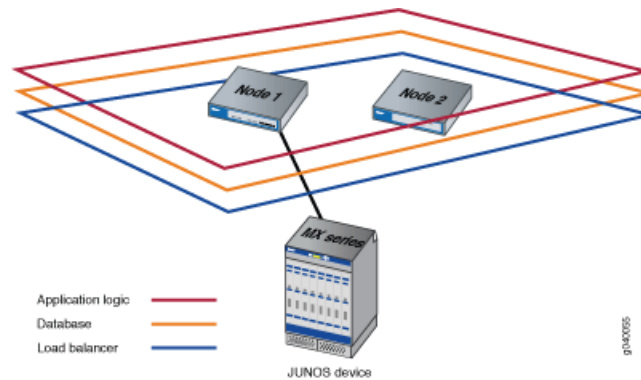
- **First node up:** The load balancer, database, and application logic functions are enabled on the node. Each node function provides both scalability and high availability. The following illustration shows all functions enabled on fabric comprising one node.

**Figure 53: Fabric with One Node**



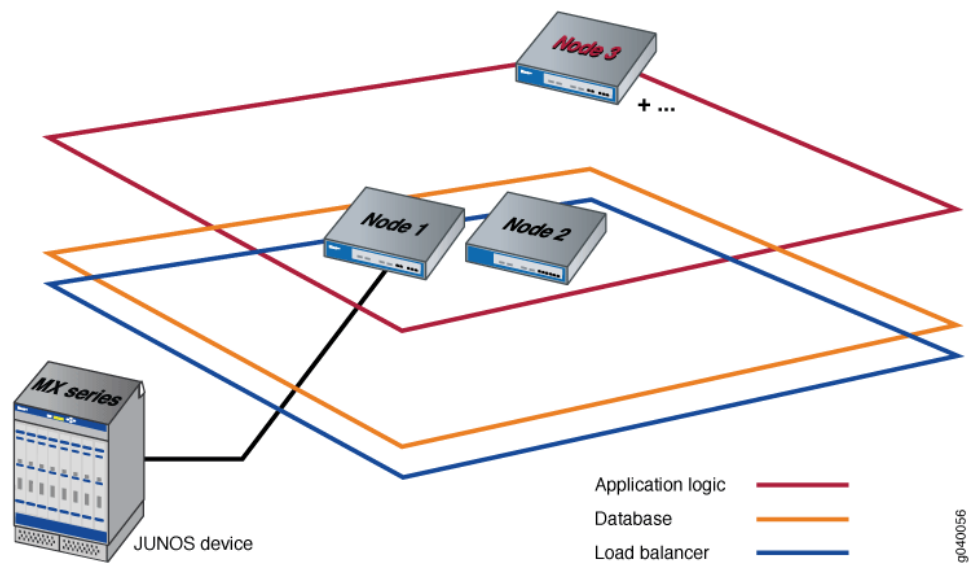
- Add second node: When a second node is added to the fabric, the first node functions as the active load balancer server and active database server, and the second node functions as the standby load balancer server and standby database server. The load balancer and application logic node functions provide scalability and high availability. The database node function on the second node provides high availability only. The following illustration shows the functions enabled on a fabric comprising two nodes.

Figure 54: Fabric with Two Nodes



- Add third node: Only the application logic functionality is enabled on the third node to provide equal distribution of device connections and user requests across all nodes, and route device-related operations to the node to which the device is connected. The application logic functionality provides both scalability and high availability. The following illustration shows the functions enabled on a fabric comprising three nodes.

Figure 55: Fabric with Three Nodes



**NOTE:** For the third node and each subsequent node added to the fabric, only the application logic functionality is enabled.

---

### Node Function Availability

---

In a fabric comprising two or more nodes, Junos Space provides failover when a node functioning as the active server (load balancer server or database server) goes down. By default, Junos Space marks a particular node down and routes failover requests to the node that Junos Space designates as standby server. Junos Space uses a heartbeat mechanism to check whether the nodes in the fabric are running. When a node functioning as the active server fails (the appliance physically crashes or stops sending heartbeats), the node functioning as the standby server takes over all resources that were managed by the node functioning as active server.

**Related Documentation**

- [Viewing Nodes in the Fabric on page 461](#)

### Adding a Node to an Existing Fabric

You can install one or more Junos Space appliances to create a scalable fabric. A Junos Space *appliance* can be either a JA1500 Junos Space Appliance or a Junos Space Virtual Appliance. Each Junos Space appliance that you install is represented as a single node in the fabric. As the number of devices on your network expands, you can add nodes to the fabric to manage the increased workload. By default, the Junos Space fabric contains a single node that provides complete Junos Space management functionality. When you install and configure the first appliance, Junos Space automatically adds the first node to the fabric and uses the logical node name that you assign to the appliance when you configure the appliance in the command line interface. For each additional appliance that you install and configure, you must add the node in Junos Space to represent the appliance in the fabric.

Before you begin, the following prerequisites must be in place:

- Multicast needs to be enabled on the switches to which Space nodes are connected;
- IGMP-Snooping needs to be disabled on the switches to which Space nodes are connected. By default IGMP-snooping is enabled on most of the switches.
- All Junos Space nodes must be interconnected using a high-speed (1Gbps or 100Mbps) network with a maximum latency not to exceed 300 milliseconds.

To add a node to the Junos Space fabric:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric** and then select the **Add Fabric Node** icon.

The Add Fabric Node dialog box appears.

**Figure 56: Add Fabric Node Dialog Box**



**NOTE:**

Before you add a node to the Junos Space fabric, verify the following:

- The installed image is identical to the images running on other nodes in the existing fabric.
- During the initial configuration, the installer chose the option “yes” when prompted “Will this Junos Space system be added to an existing cluster?”
- Ensure that no jobs are pending. No new jobs will be scheduled to run until the add node job has completed.

2. In the Name box, enter a name for the node.
3. In the IP address field, enter the IP address of the Junos Space appliance.



**NOTE:** This is the IP address for interface eth0 that you specified during the basic configuration of the appliance.

4. Schedule the Add Fabric Node operation:
  - Clear the **Schedule at a later time** check box (the default) to initiate the add node operation when you complete step 5 of this procedure.
  - Select the **Schedule at a later time** check box to specify a later start date and time for the add node operation.



**NOTE:** The selected time in the scheduler corresponds to Junos Space server time but is mapped to the local time zone of the client computer.

5. Select **Add** to add the node to the fabric.

The node is added to the fabric and appears in the Junos Space user interface and database. When you add a node, the node functions are automatically assigned by Junos Space. By default, the first and second nodes added to a fabric perform all the following functions:

- Database—For processing database requests (create, read, update, and delete operations)
- Load Balancer—For processing HTTP requests from remote browsers and NBI clients
- Application Logic—For processing back-end business logic (Junos Space service requests), and DML workload (device connectivity, device events, and logging)

By default, the third node, and all subsequent nodes, added to a fabric perform only the Application Logic function.

#### Related Documentation

- [Fabric Management Overview on page 455](#)
- [Viewing Nodes in the Fabric on page 461](#)
- [Understanding Overall System Condition and Fabric Load on page 471](#)

## Viewing Nodes in the Fabric

The Fabric Monitoring inventory page allows the administrator to monitor each node in the Junos Space fabric. You can also monitor the status of the database, load balancer, and application logic functions running on each node, and identify nodes that are overloaded or down. The Fabric Monitoring inventory page refreshes every 10 seconds, by default.

- [Changing Views on page 461](#)
- [Viewing Fabric Node Details on page 462](#)
- [Performing Fabric Node Actions on page 463](#)

### Changing Views

You can display fabric monitoring in a tabular view. The fabric nodes appear in a table sorted by node name. Each fabric is a row in the Fabric Monitoring table.

To change views:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric**. The **Fabric** page appears.
2. Click a view indicator at the right of the Fabric page title bar.

## Viewing Fabric Node Details

To view detailed runtime and status information for a node:

- Double-click a node in the table view. The **View Node Detail** page appears.

Table 71 on page 462 describes the node information displayed in each column in the table and from the detailed view.

**Table 71: Fields for the Fabric Monitoring Inventory Page**

Field	Description
Node Name	<p>The logical name assigned to the node.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> For the first node, Junos Space uses the node name that the user specifies during the initial configuration of the Junos Space appliance (physical or virtual). For each subsequent node, the user must specify a node name when adding the node to the fabric.</p>
Management IP	The IP address for the node.
Device Connection IP	The IP address for connecting to the device.
Status	<p>Connection status for the node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UP—Node is connected to the fabric.</li> <li>• DOWN—Node is disconnected from the fabric.</li> </ul>
% CPU	<p>The percentage of CPU resource utilized by the node; from 0 to 100%.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unknown—The percentage of CPU utilized is unknown, for example, because the node is not connected.</li> </ul>
% Memory	<p>The percentage of memory resource utilized by the node; from 0 to 100%.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unknown—The percentage of memory utilized is unknown, for example, because the node is not connected.</li> </ul>
% Disk	<p>The percentage of the <b>/var</b> directory utilized by the node; from 0 to 100%.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unknown—The percentage of the <b>/var</b> directory utilized by the node is unknown, for example, because the node is not connected.</li> </ul>
App Logic	<p>Application Logic function status for the node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UP— Application Logic function is running on node.</li> <li>• DOWN—Application Logic function enabled on the node but is not running.</li> <li>• Unknown—Status for the application logic function is unknown, for example, because the node is not connected.</li> <li>• N/A— Application Logic function is not configured to run on the node.</li> <li>• (Master)—The configured primary node in the fabric.</li> </ul>

Table 71: Fields for the Fabric Monitoring Inventory Page (*continued*)

Field	Description
Database	<p>Database function status for the node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>UP—Database function is running on node.</li> <li>DOWN—Database function that is enabled on the node but is not running.</li> <li>Unknown—Status for the Database function is unknown, for example, because the node is not connected.</li> <li>N/A—Database function is not configured to run on the node.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> By default, the Database function is enabled on no more than two nodes in the fabric.</p>
Hardware Model	<p>Model of Junos Space Appliance.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Hardware model appears when you double-click table row for a detailed view of the node.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Hardware model only applies for a Junos Space physical appliance.</p>
Load Balancer	<p>Load Balancer function for the node.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>UP – Load Balancer function is running on the node.</li> <li>DOWN – Load Balancer function that is enabled on the node is not running.</li> <li>Unknown – Status for the Load Balancer function is unknown, for example, because the node might not be connected.</li> <li>N/A – Load Balancer function is not running because it is not configured to run on the node.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> By default, the Load Balancer function is enabled on no more than two nodes in the fabric.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(VIP)—The configured virtual IP node in the fabric.</li> </ul>
Serial Number	<p>Serial Number for the Junos Space appliance.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Serial number appears when you double-click a table row for a detailed view of the node.</p>
Software Version	<p>Junos Space Release Version.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Software version appears when you double-click a table row for a detailed view of the node.</p>

For more information about manipulating data on the Fabric Monitoring inventory page, see [“Junos Space User Interface Overview” on page 9](#).

### Performing Fabric Node Actions

To perform an action:

- Select a node by clicking its check box in either view.
- Select an action from the Actions dropdown.

From the Fabric Monitoring inventory page, you can perform the following actions:

- **Shut Down Node**—Shuts down or reboots fabric nodes (appliances or virtual machine hosts) when you move them or reconfigure their network settings. See [“Shutting Down or Rebooting a Node From Junos Space” on page 469](#).
- **Delete Node**—Removes node from the Junos Space fabric directly if there is a physical or virtual appliance failure. See [“Deleting a Node” on page 470](#).
- **Tag It**—Apply a tag to a fabric node. See [“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#).
- **View Tags**—View tags applied to a fabric node. See [“Viewing Tags” on page 564](#).
- **Untag It**—Remove a tag from a fabric node. See [“Untagging Objects” on page 565](#).
- **Clear All Selections**—Clears the selection from all objects selected on the inventory page.

**Related Documentation**

- [Understanding Overall System Condition and Fabric Load on page 471](#)
- [Fabric Management Overview on page 455](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)

## Configuring Node Network Settings

The Junos Space fabric consists of one or multiple nodes. Network settings for these nodes enable IP connectivity to external systems as well as internal connectivity between nodes. During the initial set up of a node, the Junos Space super administrator configures node networking settings through the CLI interface. However, You can not use the CLI interface to change network settings.

To change network settings, navigate to Platform > Manage Fabric > Network Settings. Changing network settings allow you to move Junos Space fabric from one network location to another location without reinstallation.

Existing settings for both the management interface and device management interface (IP address, net mask and default gateway) for all nodes are displayed in a table. The settings for a node are displayed as a row in the table.

Nodes require restart to apply new network settings.

This topic includes the following topics:

- [Network Settings Configuration Guidelines on page 465](#)
- [Changing the VIP Interface in the Same Subnet on page 465](#)
- [Changing the Node Management IP in the Same Subnet on page 465](#)
- [Changing the Default Gateway on page 465](#)
- [Changing the Management IP to a Different Network on page 466](#)
- [Adding the Device Management IP Address on page 466](#)
- [Changing the Device Management IP Address in the Same Subnet on page 466](#)



- [Changing the Device Management IP Address to a Different Network on page 467](#)
- [Deleting a Device Management IP Address on page 467](#)
- [Changing the VIP Interface to a Different Network on page 467](#)
- [Changing the Node Management IP Address of All Nodes in the Fabric to the Same Subnet on page 468](#)
- [Changing the VIP interface of a Multi-Node Fabric to a Different Network on page 468](#)

---

### Network Settings Configuration Guidelines

---

- The VIP interface and Node IP address should be in the same subnet.
- The node management IP address of the first two nodes in the fabric must be in the same subnet.
- When you modify the device management IP address, all the devices connected to that node should be updated with the new device management IP address.

---

### Changing the VIP Interface in the Same Subnet

---

There is only one VIP for the entire fabric.

---

### Changing the Node Management IP in the Same Subnet

---

To change the node management IP in the same subnet:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric > Space Node Settings**. The Space Node Settings page appears.
2. Click the pencil icon for the node on which you want to change the management IP.  
The settings appear for you to modify
3. Change the management IP in the same subnet.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Modify**.

The Shutdown/reboot confirmation dialog box appears.

---

### Changing the Default Gateway

---

To change the default gateway:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric > Space Node Settings**. The Space Node Settings page appears.
2. Click the pencil icon for the node on which you want to change the default gateway.  
The settings appear for you to modify
3. Change the default gateway.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Modify**.

The Shutdown/reboot confirmation dialog box appears.

### Changing the Management IP to a Different Network

---

To change the management IP to a different network:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric > Space Node Settings**. The Space Node Settings page appears.
2. Click the pencil icon for the node on which you want to change the management IP.  
The settings appear for you to modify.
3. Change the management IP from a different network.
4. Change the VIP, subnet mask, and default gateway.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **Modify**.

The Shutdown/reboot confirmation dialog box appears.

### Adding the Device Management IP Address

---

To add the device management IP address:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric > Space Node Settings**. The Space Node Settings page appears.
2. Click the pencil icon for the node on which you want to add the device management IP address.  
The settings appear for you to modify.
3. Click **Add**.
4. Add the VIP, subnet mask, and default gateway for the device management interface.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **Modify**.

The Shutdown/reboot confirmation dialog box appears.

### Changing the Device Management IP Address in the Same Subnet

---

To change the device management IP address in the same subnet:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric > Space Node Settings**. The Space Node Settings page appears.
2. Click the pencil icon for the node on which you want to change the device management IP.  
The settings appear for you to modify.
3. Change the device management IP to a new one in the same subnet.

4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Modify**.

The Shutdown/reboot confirmation dialog box appears.

---

### Changing the Device Management IP Address to a Different Network

To change the device management IP address to a different network:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric > Space Node Settings**. The Space Node Settings page appears.
2. Click the pencil icon for the node on which you want to change the device management IP.

The settings appear for you to modify.

3. Change the device management IP to a new in a different subnet.
4. Change the subnet mask and default gateway.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **Modify**.

The Shutdown/reboot confirmation dialog box appears.

---

### Deleting a Device Management IP Address

To delete a device management IP address

1. Select **Administration > Fabric > Space Node Settings**. The Space Node Settings page appears.
2. Click the pencil icon for the node on which you want to delete the device management IP address.

The settings appear for you to modify.

3. Uncheck the **Enable device management interface** option.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Modify**.

The Shutdown/reboot confirmation dialog box appears.

---

### Changing the VIP Interface to a Different Network

The VIP interface and the node IP should be in the same subnet.

To change the VIP interface to a different network:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric > Space Node Settings**. The Space Node Settings page appears.
2. Change the VIP interface to a different network.

3. Change the node IP address.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **Modify**.

The Shutdown/reboot confirmation dialog box appears.

### Changing the Node Management IP Address of All Nodes in the Fabric to the Same Subnet

---

To change the node management IP address and all nodes in the fabric to the same subnet:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric > Space Node Settings**. The Space Node Settings page appears.
2. Click the pencil icon for the node on which you want to change the node management IP address.

The settings appear for you to modify.

3. Change the node management IP address to a new one in the same subnet.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 3 for each node in the fabric.
6. Click **Modify**.

The Shutdown/reboot confirmation dialog box appears.

### Changing the VIP interface of a Multi-Node Fabric to a Different Network

---

The node IP address and the VIP interface must be in the same subnet.

To change the VIP interface of a multi-node fabric to a different network:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric > Space Node Settings**. The Space Node Settings page appears.
2. Change the VIP interface to a new one in a different network.
3. Change the node IP address.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 3 for each node in the fabric.
6. Click **Modify**.

The Shutdown/reboot confirmation dialog box appears.

#### Related Documentation

- [Shutting Down or Rebooting a Node From Junos Space on page 469](#)

## Shutting Down or Rebooting a Node From Junos Space

From Junos Space, the super administrator can shut down or reboot fabric nodes (appliances or virtual machine hosts) when they are moved or their network settings reconfigured. You can shut down or reboot a fabric node using the **Platform > Administration > Manage Fabric > Shut Down Node** action. Optionally, you can enter a message to display to administrators logged in to an affected node.

To shut down or reboot a node in the fabric,

1. Select **Administration > Fabric**. The Fabric page appears.
2. Select **Shutdown Node** or **Reboot Node** from the Actions dropdown.  
The **Reboot Node/Shutdown Node** dialog box appears.
3. Select the appropriate action by clicking either the **Shutdown** or the **Reboot** button.
4. (Optional) You can enter a message to be displayed to console users (for any administrator logged into the node using the CLI. The message appears on UNIX shell).

If you do not enter anything, console users will see either **Junos Space shutdown** or **Junos Space reboot** on the shell.

5. Click **Confirm**.

The shut down or reboot action occurs.

### Related Documentation

## Deleting a Node

You can delete a node from the Junos Space fabric directly by selecting the node and selecting **Delete Node** from the Actions dropdown. You must remove the deleted node from the network and re-image it. Thereafter, you can add it to the fabric by selecting **Administration > Fabric** and the Add Fabric Node icon.

You can delete a node from the fabric under the following conditions:

- In a multiple node fabric if that node does not disrupt activities of other nodes.
- If a node is configured for high availability—with load balancing and as a database server capability—and there is another node that has the capacity to assume that role. You are prompted to enable that role on another candidate node before deleting that node. If you delete a high availability node, but there is not another node to transfer that role, high availability does not occur.

When you delete a fabric node, Junos Space does the following:

- Removes reference to that node host name and IP address from remaining nodes.
- Stops database replication on both the deleted node and the back up database node.
- The database backup copy in that node will not be available for the remaining cluster to restore from that copy
- Copies the database to the new database node.
- Shuts down all services that interact with other nodes.

You can delete only one node at a time. You must have Super Administrator or System Administrative role access privileges to delete a node.

To delete a node:

1. Select **Administration > Manage fabric**.

Select the node that you want to delete, and select **Delete Node** from the Actions dropdown.

The Fabric Monitoring inventory page tabular view displays at a glance whether a node is configured for high availability. Look for Up in the Database and Load Balancer columns.

2. In the Warning dialog box, confirm that you want to delete the node by clicking **Continue**.
  - If a node you want to delete is not configured for high availability or a node is configured for high availability but there is no other node available to assume that role, the **Delete Node** dialog box appears displaying the node name and management IP address of only the node you want to delete.
  - If a node is configured for high availability, the **Delete Node** dialog box notifies you of that fact and lists all candidate nodes that have the capacity to take over that role.

3. In the **Delete** dialog box, select the node you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.

Node deletion is scheduled as a job immediately after you click **Delete**. The Delete Node action is also audit logged. The **Delete Fabric Node Job Information** dialog box appears.

5. In the **Delete Fabric Node Job Information** dialog box, click the **Job ID** link.

Job Manager displays the **View Job Details** dialog box for you to verify and monitor delete node information, such as job type, job ID, percent complete, job state, scheduled start and end time, user name, and a brief job summary.

6. If a problem occurs in the delete node job, you can troubleshoot by viewing the job status in the **Platform > Audit Logs > View Audit Logs** inventory page.



**NOTE:** When you delete a node, a UDP communication exception occurs. This behavior is normal.



**NOTE:** When you delete a load balancer node, a VIP switch may occur and cause the Junos Space progress indicator to appear. This behavior is normal.

#### Related Documentation

- [Fabric Management Overview on page 455](#)
- [Viewing Nodes in the Fabric on page 461](#)
- [Adding a Node to an Existing Fabric on page 459](#)

## Understanding Overall System Condition and Fabric Load

You can view the overall Junos Space system condition and fabric load from the platform application dashboard or from the Administration workspace landing page.

### System Condition

To calculate the overall system condition, Junos Space uses an algorithm based on cluster health and node-function health:

- Cluster health indicates the percentage of nodes in the fabric that are currently running.  
For example, if only three nodes are reachable in a four-node fabric, cluster health is 75%.
- Load-balancer health indicates the percentage of nodes (enabled for load balancing) that are running the load balancing process.  
For example, if two nodes are enabled for load balancing and the load-balancing process is running on only one node, the load-balancing health is 50%.
- Database health indicates the percentage of nodes (enabled for database requests) that are running the database process.

For example, if two nodes are enabled as database server and the database process is running on only one node, then database health is 50%.

- Application-logic health indicates the percentage of nodes (enabled for application logic (DML and business logic)) that are running the application-logic process.

For example, if three nodes are enabled for application logic and the application-logic process is running on only two nodes, then application-logic health is 67%.

Junos Space retrieves data on the nodes and the node functions running, and then applies the following algorithm to determine the overall system condition:

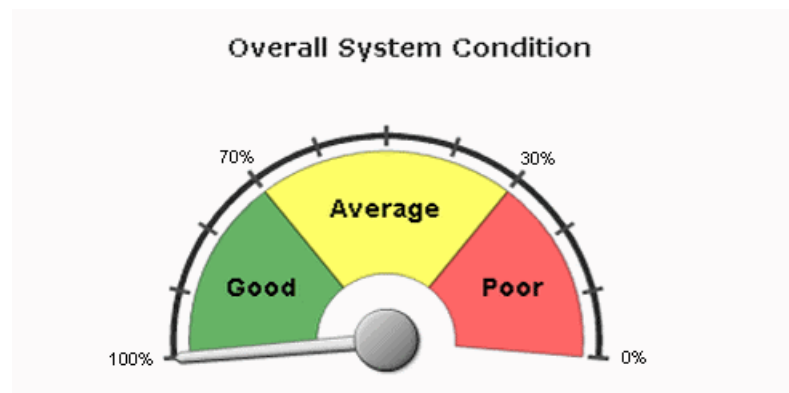
$$\text{overall system condition} = [ (\text{number of nodes running}) / (\text{number of nodes in fabric}) ] * [ (\text{number of nodes running load balancing process}) / (\text{number of nodes enabled for load balancing}) ] * [ (\text{number of nodes running database server process}) / (\text{number of nodes enabled as database server}) ] * [ (\text{number of nodes running application logic process}) / (\text{number of nodes enabled for application logic}) ]$$

Using the preceding examples for cluster health and node-function health, the overall system condition is expressed as a percentage:

$$\text{overall system condition} = 75\% * 50\% * 50\% * 67\% = 12.5\%$$

The Overall System Condition dialog box indicates Poor (0–30%), Average (30–70%), or Good (70–100%), based on the value the algorithm returns.

**Figure 57: Overall System Condition Gauge**



The overall system health indicates 0% (Poor) when any one of the following conditions is detected:

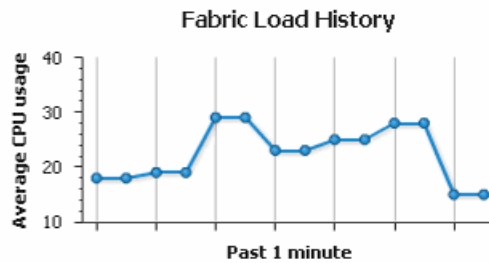
- No nodes in the fabric are running.
- No nodes enabled for load balancing are running the load balancing process.
- No nodes enabled for database requests are running the database process.
- No nodes enabled for application logic are running the application logic process.

### Fabric Load

The Fabric Load chart displays the average CPU usage across all nodes that are running in the fabric.



Figure 58: Fabric Load History Chart



Junos Space uses the following algorithm to determine the fabric load:

$$\text{fabric load} = [ \text{total CPU usage for all nodes running} ] / [ \text{number of nodes running} ]$$

For example, given a fabric with three nodes running and CPU usage of 80%, 30%, and 10%, respectively, the fabric load is 40%. The following example illustrates how the fabric load is calculated.

$$\text{fabric load} = [ 80\% + 30\% + 10\% ] / 3$$

$$\text{fabric load} = 120\% / 3$$

$$\text{fabric load} = 40\%$$

To view the average CPU use at a specific data point, drag the mouse over the data point of interest.

To obtain details about the status of the fabric, click any data point in the graph. The Fabric Monitoring dialog box appears and shows detailed status for each node in the fabric. Status information includes CPU, disk, and memory usage and indicates up or down status for each node function enabled on the node.

#### Related Documentation

- [Fabric Management Overview on page 455](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)

## Monitoring Nodes in the Fabric

As an administrator or operator, you can use Junos Space to track the status of logical components of deployed nodes in a fabric.

Network Application Platform supports SNMP monitoring by an SNMP manager for SNMP v1, v2c and v3.

The SNMP manager polls Junos Space to get information about the logical components of the nodes using an object identifier (OID) in SNMP v1 and v2, or in v3 as a user. The response is provided by Junos Space's SNMP agent. OpenNMS displays the polled data in the Network Monitoring workspace.

Every Junos Space node in the fabric has an SNMP configuration file on the server at the location shown (`/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf`).

[Table 72 on page 474](#) shows the monitoring settings, as well as relevant details.

Table 72: Logical Component Monitoring

Setting	Explanation	Recommended Settings	Default Value	Comments
Enable SNMP over TCP	Enables Junos Space to monitor itself over SNMP, which provides more detail than TCP	Selected	Unselected	This is not set by default because self-monitoring impacts performance
Monitor Web Service	Includes monitoring the performance of Junos Space's GUI	Selected	Selected	
Monitor All Disks	Includes all disks on the current Junos Space server	Unselected	Unselected	All disks, or specify partition
Disk Usage %	When the percentage of the disk in use exceeds the number set here, an alarm is triggered	5	5	
System Load (1 min)	When the system load exceeds the number set here, an alarm is triggered	4	4	
System Load (5 min)	When the system load exceeds the number set here, an alarm is triggered	4	4	
System Load (15 min)	When the system load exceeds the number set here, an alarm is triggered	4	4	
System Location	Place where the system is located, for example, New York City.	Actual geographical or other location	None	
System Contact	Email address to which the system sends notifications	E-mail address of actual person	root <root@localhost>	
Disk Mount Path:	Path of the disk to be mounted	Actual path, if available	/	
CPU Max Temp (mC)	When the temperature exceeds the number set here, an alarm is triggered	50000	50000	
CPU Min Fan (RPM)	When the temperature exceeds the number set here, an alarm is triggered	1000	1000	

Table 72: Logical Component Monitoring (*continued*)

Setting	Explanation	Recommended Settings	Default Value	Comments
CPU Min Voltage (mV)	When the temperature exceeds the number set here, an alarm is triggered	1000	1000	

- [Starting and Stopping SNMP Monitoring on a Node on page 475](#)
- [Viewing and Editing SNMP Configuration on page 476](#)
- [Adding or Deleting an External Manager IP Address and a Community String on page 477](#)
- [Adding or Deleting an SNMP v3 Configuration on page 478](#)

### [Starting and Stopping SNMP Monitoring on a Node](#)

To start or stop monitoring on a node,

1. Select **Administrator > Fabric**.  
The Fabric page appears.
2. Select the node whose monitoring status you want to change and select **SNMP Start** from the Actions dropdown.
3. Select the node whose monitoring status you want to change and select **SNMP Stop** from the Actions dropdown.
4. If you chose to start SNMP monitoring, to see what Junos Space finds when monitoring select **Network Monitoring > Node List**.  
The Network Monitoring > Node List page appears.
5. Select the Junos Space server whose SNMP monitoring you started.  
A page like the one shown [Figure 59 on page 476](#) appears.

Figure 59: 6412-monitoring-nodes-netmon-node-list

The screenshot shows the 'Node List' page in the Junos Space Network Application Platform. The page is divided into several sections:

- SNMP Attributes:**
  - Name: space-0256042012000017
  - Object ID: .1.3.6.1.4.1.8072.3.2.10
  - Location: unknown
  - Contact: root
  - Description: Linux space-0256042012000017 2.6.18-274.el5 #1 SMP Fri Jul 22 04:43:29 EDT 2011 x86\_64
- Availability:**
  - Availability (last 24 hours): 94.751%
  - 10.205.56.40:
    - Overall: 92.126%
    - ICMP: 100.000%
    - SNMP: 84.252%
  - 10.205.57.40:
    - Overall: 100.000%
    - ICMP: 100.000%
- Node Interfaces:**
  - IP Interfaces:
 

IP Address	IP Host Name	ifIndex	Managed
10.205.56.40	10.205.56.40		M
10.205.57.40	10.205.57.40	2	M
- General (Status: Active):**
  - View Node Link Detailed Info
- Surveillance Category Memberships (Edit):**
  - Fabric
  - Medium
  - Monitor SNMP
- Notification:**
  - You Outstanding: (Check)
  - You Acknowledged: (Check)
- Recent Events:**
  - 74576: 10/3/12 15:25:30 Normal SNMP data collection on interface 10.205.56.40 previously failed and has been restored.
  - 74321: 10/3/12 15:23:33 Normal The SNMP outage on interface 10.205.56.40 has been cleared. Service is restored.
  - 72212: 10/3/12 15:13:19 Minor SNMP outage identified on interface 10.205.56.40 with reason code: SNMP poll failed, addr=10.205.56.40 oid=.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.2.0.
  - 72209: 10/3/12 15:13:17 Minor SNMP data collection on interface 10.205.56.40 failed with Timeout retrieving SnmpCollectors for 10.205.56.40 for /10.205.56.40: SnmpCollectors for 10.205.56.40: snmpTimeoutError for /10.205.56.40
  - 72351: 10/3/12 14:52:11 Warning jnxNetworkMonitoringStart trap received
- Recent Outages:**

Interface	Service	Lost	Regained	Outage ID
-----------	---------	------	----------	-----------

Under the Notification and Recent Events headings on the right, you see the results of the monitoring.

## Viewing and Editing SNMP Configuration

To view and edit Junos Space's SNMP configuration for self-monitoring:

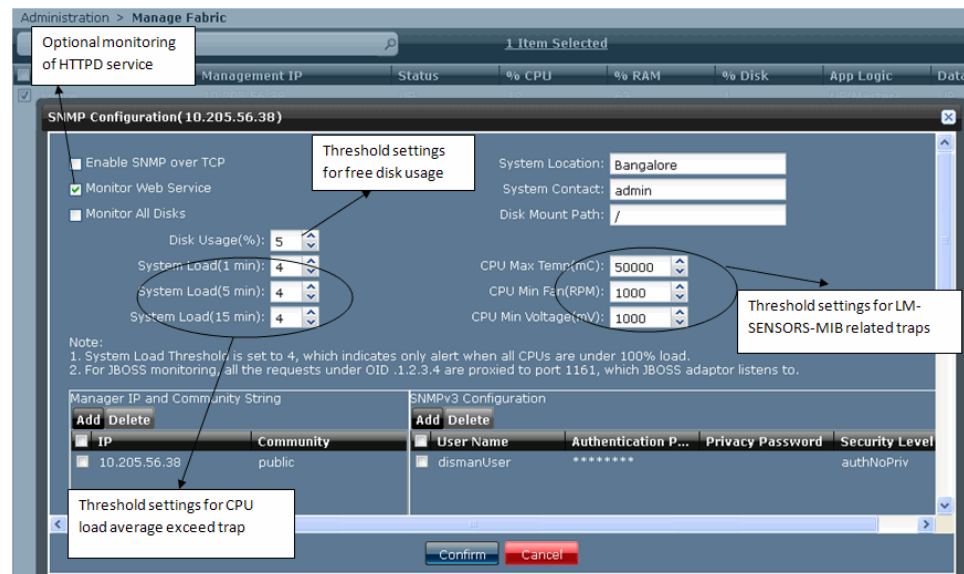
1. Select **Administrator > Fabric**.

The Fabric page appears.

2. Select the node whose configuration is to be viewed or edited and select **SNMP Configuration** from the Actions dropdown.

The SNMP Configuration window appears, its title bar displaying the IP address of the selected node, similar to the window shown in [Figure 60 on page 477](#).

Figure 60: 62412-snmp-config-editing.gif



3. Set the parameters as required, using [Table 72 on page 474](#) to guide you.

**NOTE:**

1. System Load Threshold is set to 4, which indicates only alert when all CPUs are under 100 percent load.
2. For JBOSS monitoring, all the requests under OID .1.2.3.4 are proxied to port 1161, which the JBOSS adaptor listens to.

### Adding or Deleting an External Manager IP Address and a Community String

To add or delete an external manager IP address and a community string:



**NOTE:** In the case of an SNMPv3 Manager IP, the community string field should be left empty.

1. Select **Administrator > Fabric**.

The Fabric page appears.

2. Select the node to which you want to add the address and string (or from which you want to delete the address and string) and select **SNMP Configuration** from the Actions dropdown.

The SNMP Configuration window appears, its title bar displaying both this title and the IP address of the selected node.

3. To add an external SNMP manager IP address and community string:

- a. Above the Manager IP and Community String table, click **Add**.

The Add SNMP Manager IP window appears.

- b. Enter the external SNMP manager IP address in the **Manager IP** field.

Admissible input is dotted decimal notation, anything from 1.0.0.1 through 223.255.255.254 except 127.x.x.x.

- c. Enter the community string in the **Community String** field.

Admissible input is an alphanumeric string a maximum of 2,147,483,647 characters in length.

For SNMPv3 Managers, enter only the IP address, leaving the Community String field empty.

- d. Click **OK**.

- e. The new entry appears in the Manager IP and Community String table.

To delete an external SNMP manager IP address and community string:

- a. In the Manager IP and Community String table, select the manager IP and the community string to be deleted.

- b. Click **Delete**.

The selected entry disappears from the Manager IP and Community String table.

4. Confirm or cancel your configuration by clicking **Confirm** or **Cancel** at the bottom of the SNMP Configuration window.

The Fabric Monitoring page reappears.

---

### Adding or Deleting an SNMP v3 Configuration

---

To add or delete an SNMP v3 configuration:

1. Select **Administrator > Fabric**.

The Fabric page appears.

2. Select the node to which you want to add the SNMP v3 configuration (or from which you want to delete the SNMP v3 configuration) and select **SNMP Configuration** from the Actions dropdown.

The SNMP Configuration window appears, its title bar displaying both this title and the IP address of the selected node.

3. To add an SNMP v3 configuration:

- a. Above the SNMP v3 Configuration table on the right (shown in [Figure 60 on page 477](#)), click **Add**.

The Add SNMP v3 Configuration window appears.

- b. Enter the user name in the **User Name** field.

Any alphanumeric string is acceptable, including spaces and symbols. Admissible length is from 1 through 2,147,483,647 characters.

- c. Enter the authentication password in the **Authentication Password** field.

Any alphanumeric string is acceptable, including spaces and symbols. Admissible length is from 1 through 2,147,483,647 characters.

- d. To confirm, enter the authentication password again in the **Confirm Authentication Password** field.

Any alphanumeric string is acceptable, including spaces and symbols. Admissible length is from 1 through 2,147,483,647 characters.

- e. Enter the privacy password in the **Privacy Password** field.

Any alphanumeric string is acceptable, including spaces and symbols. Admissible length is from 1 through 2,147,483,647 characters.

- f. To confirm, enter the privacy password again in the **Confirm Privacy Password** field.

Any alphanumeric string is acceptable, including spaces and symbols. Admissible length is from 1 through 2,147,483,647 characters.

- g. Select the security level from the **Security Level** list:

- **noAuthNoPriv**
- **authNoPriv**
- **authPriv**

- h. Click **OK**.

The new entry appears in the Manager IP and Community String table.

To delete an SNMP v3 configuration:

- a. In the SNMPv3 Configuration section, select the SNMP v3 configuration to be deleted.

- b. Click **Delete**.

The selected entry disappears from the SNMPv3 table.

4. Confirm or cancel your configuration by clicking **Confirm** or **Cancel** at the bottom of the SNMP Configuration window.

The Fabric Monitoring page reappears.

**Related Documentation**

- [Understanding Overall System Condition and Fabric Load on page 471](#)
- [Fabric Management Overview on page 455](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)
- [Viewing Nodes in the Fabric on page 461](#)

## Creating a System Snapshot

You can use the System Snapshot feature to create a snapshot of the system state and rollback the system to a predefined state. The snapshot includes all persistent data on the hard disk including data in the database, system and application configuration files, and application and Linux executables. The System Snapshot is a fabric-wide operation that maintains consistency across all nodes in the fabric.

Typically, you would use the System Snapshot feature for rolling back the system when it is in an unrecoverable error-state due to corruption of system files, interruption of critical processes, etc.. You can also roll back the system to an older release if the system exhibits undesirable behaviors after a software version upgrade.



**TIP:** We recommend using System Snapshot before performing significant actions (Add/Delete Node, Application Installation) and such actions that have the potential to precipitate the system into an undesirable state. You can delete the snapshot after you have ascertained that these actions were performed successfully.

System Snapshot is currently supported on a Junos Space fabric that consists of only Space VM or only Space Appliance. This feature is not supported on a hybrid fabric consisting of both Space VM and Space Appliance.

System Snapshot does not impact the performance of a Space VM. However, if you are using a Space Appliance, performance may be impacted by the number of write operations performed to the snapshot's logical volume.

The maximum size that a snapshot can occupy for a new 11.3 Space Platform is 300GB. The maximum size that a snapshot can occupy for a Space Platform migrated from releases prior to 11.3 is 43GB. On the Real Appliance, the snapshot will become invalid if it has been kept for a long time, because the snapshot volume disk space usage increases as write operations continue. Once the usage reaches the maximum size of snapshot volume, the snapshot will be disabled. Therefore, ensure that you clear enough hard disk space to accommodate the snapshot.

If you are upgrading Network Application Platform from releases prior to 11.3, perform the following steps before using the System Snapshot feature:

1. Connect the recovery USB/CD to Space Appliance, and reboot to set USB/CD as the first boot option.
2. Restart the box, and choose the **rescue-serial** mode while booting.



3. Follow the on-screen steps and choose **Skip** when asked whether you want to find an existing Space installation and mount to `mnt/sysimage`.
4. Once you are in the recovery shell, execute the following sequence of commands:
  - a. `lvm vgchange -ay jmpvgnocf`
  - b. `e2fsck -f /dev/jmpvgnocf/lvroot`
  - c. `resize2fs -f /dev/jmpvgnocf/lvroot 900G`
  - d. `lvm lvreduce -L1024G /dev/jmpvgnocf/lvroot`
  - e. `resize2fs -f /dev/jmpvgnocf/lvroot`

After executing these commands, start creating the snapshot. The steps used to create a system snapshot for a Space VM and a Space Appliance are almost identical, but there are two additional preliminary steps for the Space VM:

If you are working with a Space VM:

- a. Select **Administration > Fabric** and set the ESX configuration for every node in the fabric.
- b. Install the VI Toolkit for Perl provided by VMware.

To create a system snapshot:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric** and select the System Snapshot icon.

The System Snapshot dialog box appears. You can see a system snapshot if you have taken a snapshot earlier. If you are taking the snapshot for the first time, you will not see any snapshots in this dialog box.



**NOTE:** If you are creating a system snapshot when a snapshot already exists, the new snapshot will overwrite the older snapshot. Currently Junos Space can store only one System Snapshot.

2. Click **Take Snapshot**.

The System Snapshot Confirmation dialog box appears.

3. Enter the name of the snapshot in the Snapshot Name box.
4. Enter the comments in the Comment box.
5. Click **Confirm**.

A new job is created and the job ID appears in the System Snapshot Job Information dialog box.

6. Click the job ID to view more information about the job created. This action directs you to the Job Management work space.

The time taken to complete the snapshot job for a VM is dependent on the number of nodes in the fabric, the disk size of the VM, the memory size of the VM, and the performance of the ESX server. The time taken to complete the snapshot job for a Space Appliance is dependent on the disk space used on the appliance.



**NOTE:** You may not be able to create a snapshot of the system state if any of the following conditions are true:

- Insufficient disk space on ESX servers.
- Mis-configuration on one of the ESX servers.
- One of the nodes is down.
- Hybrid fabric consisting of both Space VM and Space Appliance.
- The name specified for the current snapshot is the same as that of the stored snapshot.

**Related Documentation**

- [Deleting a System Snapshot on page 482](#)
- [Restoring the System to a Snapshot on page 482](#)

## Deleting a System Snapshot

To delete a System Snapshot:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric >** and select the **System Snapshot** icon.
2. Click **Delete**.

The System Snapshot Deletion dialog box appears. A new job is created and the job ID appears in the System Snapshot Job Information dialog box.

3. Click the job ID to view more information about the job created. This action directs you to the Job Management work space.



**NOTE:** You may not be able to delete a snapshot of the system state if any of the following conditions are true:

- Mis-configuration on one of the ESX servers.
- Hybrid fabric consisting of both Space VM and Space Appliance.
- Snapshot does not exist.

**Related Documentation**

- [Creating a System Snapshot on page 480](#)
- [Restoring the System to a Snapshot on page 482](#)

## Restoring the System to a Snapshot

The process to restore a system to a snapshot differs depending on whether you are using a VM or an Appliance.

To restore a system snapshot when using a VM:

1. Select **Administration** > **Fabric** and select the System Snapshot icon.
2. Click **Restore**.
3. Click **OK**.
4. Login to the ESX servers and power on the VM after few minutes.



**NOTE:** If the Space GUI is not accessible on a VM, you can restore the fabric by shutting down every node in the fabric and logging into ESX servers where the VM is located.

To restore a System Snapshot when using an Appliance:

1. Select **Administration** > **Fabric** and select the System Snapshot icon.
2. Click **Restore**.

The System Restore Instruction for Appliance dialog box appears.

3. Follow the instructions on this dialog box.
4. Click **OK**.



**NOTE:** You may not be able to restore the system to a snapshot if one of the following conditions are true:

- One of the nodes is down.
- New nodes were added after a snapshot was created. A warning message that prompts you to delete the new nodes before restoring is shown.
- Some nodes were deleted after a snapshot was created. A warning message that prompts you to restore the nodes before restoring is shown.

- Related Documentation**
- [Creating a System Snapshot on page 480](#)
  - [Deleting a System Snapshot on page 482](#)



## CHAPTER 46

# Manage Databases

- [Database Backup and Restore Overview on page 485](#)
- [Backing Up the Database on page 487](#)
- [Restoring the Database from a Remote File on page 491](#)
- [Restoring a Database in the User Interface on page 492](#)
- [Restoring a Database in Maintenance Mode on page 495](#)
- [Viewing Database Backup Files on page 497](#)
- [Deleting Database Backup Files on page 498](#)
- [Viewing Job Recurrence on page 499](#)

### Database Backup and Restore Overview

---

The system administrator can perform Junos Space database backup, restore, and delete operations from Administration > Databases. The administrator can initiate a database backup operation from either the Databases > Backup Database task or from Junos Space Maintenance Mode. In both cases, the backup database operation occurs while Junos Space is in Maintenance Mode.

To perform database backup or restore operations, a Junos Space user must be assigned the system administrator role.



**NOTE:** For disaster recovery, different, additional database backup and restore provisions must be made. See [“Understanding Disaster Recovery” on page 592](#).

Restore the Junos Space database if any of the following conditions occur:

- Junos Space data is corrupted, and you need to replace it with uncorrupted data.
- The Junos Space software became corrupted, and you reinstalled the Junos Space software.
- You upgraded to a new version of Junos Space and need to populate the Junos Space database with existing data.

## Backing up a Database

By default, Junos Space automatically backs up the database once a week. However, the administrator can schedule a backup to run at anytime and perform either local or remote backups. All jobs that completed prior to the time the backup operation starts are captured in the database backup file.

During a backup, Junos Space archives data files and the logical logs that record database transactions, such as the users, nodes, devices, and added or deleted services in Junos Space.

The administrator can perform a local or remote database backup. When the administrator performs a local backup, Junos Space backs up all database data and log files to a local default directory `/var/cache/jboss/backup`. You cannot specify a different database backup file location for a local backup. No such restriction exists when backing up to a remote location.

For a remote backup, use only a Linux-based server. You must specify a remote host that is configured to run the Linux Secure Copy (SCP) command. You must also specify a valid user ID and password for the remote host. To ensure that you are using a valid directory, check the destination directory before you initiate a database backup to the remote system.

For instructions on how to back up the Junos Space database, see [“Backing Up the Database” on page 487](#).

## Restoring a Database

When the system administrator performs a restore database operation, data from a previous database backup is used to restore the Junos Space database to a previous state. The administrator can restore the database from the Junos Space user interface (Platform > Administration > Manage Databases workspace) (see [“Restoring a Database in the User Interface” on page 492](#)), or directly from the Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box (if Junos Space goes down and you cannot access the user interface) (see [“Restoring a Database in Maintenance Mode” on page 495](#)).

Whether database restoration is performed with the aid of the Junos Space user interface or from maintenance mode, the operation is done while Junos Space is in maintenance mode. The system is therefore down on all nodes in the fabric and only the web proxy is running. During this time, all Junos Space users, except the maintenance mode administrator, are locked out of the Junos Space system.



**NOTE:** After the Junos Space database is restored, a manual re-index of the Security Design database is required. For more information on this, see the Security Design documentation.

---

### Related Documentation

- [Restoring a Database in the User Interface on page 492](#)
- [Restoring a Database in Maintenance Mode on page 495](#)

- [Backing Up the Database on page 487](#)
- [Maintenance Mode Overview on page 452](#)

## Backing Up the Database

The system administrator can make a backup copy of the Junos Space database and, at a later time, use the backup file to restore the Junos Space database to a previous state. The database backup file contains configuration data for managed nodes, managed devices, deployed services, scheduled jobs, Junos Space users, and so forth.

The administrator can perform local and remote backup and restore operations. You perform a local backup to copy the backup file to the default directory `/var/cache/jboss/backup`. You perform a remote backup to copy the backup file to remote network hosts or media.

This topic includes the following tasks:

- [Backing Up the Database to a Local Directory on page 487](#)
- [Backing Up the Database to a Remote Host on page 489](#)

### Backing Up the Database to a Local Directory

To back up the Junos Space database to a local directory:

1. Select **Administration** > **Databases** and select the Backup Database icon.

The Backup Database dialog box appears. The default behavior is a backup occurring once weekly, which appears in the Schedule at a later time section, under Repeat.

2. In the Mode field, select **local** to back up the Junos Space database to the default directory `/var/cache/jboss/backup`.



**NOTE:** When you select the local mode option, the Username, Password, Confirm password, Machine IP, and Directory text boxes in the Backup Database dialog box are disabled.

3. Optional: In the Comment box, add a comment to describe or otherwise identify the backup operation.
4. Optional: Schedule the database backup to occur at a later time. Click **Schedule at a later time** to expand the schedule area of the Backup Database dialog box. Specify a back up database start date and time.



**NOTE:** The selected time in the scheduler corresponds to Junos Space server time but using the local time zone of the client computer.

5. Optional: Schedule database backup recurrence by clicking **Repeat** to reveal its controls.

- a. Specify the database backup recurrence by setting the interval and the increment.

**Table 73: Backup Schedule Units and Increments**

Unit of Time	Increment
Minutes	1-59
Hours	12:00 AM - 11:45 PM
Days	1-6
Weeks	1-4
Weekdays	Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
Weekends	Saturday, Sunday,
Monday/Wednesday/Friday	Monday, Wednesday, Friday
Tuesday/Thursday	Tuesday, Thursday
Fortnight (14 days)	1-26
Months	1-12, plus date of recurrence expressed as a date, and as one the first, second, third, fourth or last Monday-Sunday of the month.
Years	1-50, plus date of recurrence expressed as a date, and as one the first, second, third, fourth or last Monday-Sunday of the month.

Where applicable, specify a time interval. The default recurrence interval is 1 hour.

- b. Specify when the recurrence should end.

Indicate a date and time. You can use the date calendar and the time drop-down list box. If you do not specify a recurrence end, the database backup will reoccur endlessly until you cancel the job manually.

6. Click **Backup**.

The database is backed up. The **Order Information** dialog box appears.

7. Optional: Click the Job ID in the Order Information dialog box to view the database backup job details in the View Job Details dialog box.

8. Click **OK**.

The Junos Space database backup appears on the Manage Databases inventory page. See [“Viewing Scheduled Jobs” on page 376](#).



## Backing Up the Database to a Remote Host

The protocol used to transfer the database backup to a remote host is SCP, Secure Copy Protocol.

To back up the Junos Space database to a remote host:

1. Select **Administration > Databases** and select the Backup Database icon.

The Backup Database dialog box appears.

Figure 61: Backup Database Dialog Box

**Backup Database**

Mode: remote

Username:

Password:

Confirm password:

Machine IP:

Directory:

Comment:

☒

Date and time: 08/09/10  2:11 PM  PDT

☒

☒

Date and Time: 08/09/10  2:22 PM  PDT

2. In the Mode field, select **remote**.
3. Enter a username to access the remote host server.
4. Enter the corresponding password.
5. Reenter the password.
6. Enter the remote host server IP address.

7. Enter a directory path on the remote host server for the database backup file.



**NOTE:** The directory path must already exist on the remote host server.

8. Optional: Add a comment to describe or otherwise identify the backup operation.
9. Optional: Schedule the Junos Space database backup operation to occur at a later time. Click the down-arrow to expand the schedule area of the dialog box.
  - Clear the **Schedule at a later time** check box (the default) to initiate the database backup when you click Backup.
  - Select the **Schedule at a later time** check box to specify a later start date and time for the database backup.



**NOTE:** The selected time in the scheduler corresponds to Junos Space server time but using the local time zone of the client computer.

10. Optional: Schedule database backup recurrence by clicking the **Repeat** arrow.

The Repeat area expands.

- a. Specify the database backup recurrence by setting the interval and the increment:

Unit of Time	Increment
Minutes	1-59
Hours	12:00 AM - 11:45 PM
Days	1-6
Weeks	1-4
Weekdays	Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
Weekends	Saturday, Sunday,
Monday/Wednesday/Friday	Monday, Wednesday, Friday
Tuesday/Thursday	Tuesday, Thursday
Fortnight (14 days)	1-26
Months	1-12, plus date of recurrence expressed as a date, and as one the first, second, third, fourth or last Monday-Sunday of the month.
Years	1-50, plus date of recurrence expressed as a date, and as one the first, second, third, fourth or last Monday-Sunday of the month.

When applicable, specify a time interval. The default recurrence interval is 1 hour.

- b. Specify when the recurrence should end.

Indicate a date and time. You can use the date calendar and the time drop-down list box. If you do not specify a recurrence end, the database backup will reoccur endlessly until you cancel the job manually.

11. Click **Backup**. The database back up occurs.

The Order Information dialog box appears.

12. Optional: Click the Job ID in the Order Information dialog box to view job details for the database backup. The View Job Details dialog box appears.

13. Click **OK** to close the View Job Details dialog box.

When the backup operation finishes, the Junos Space database backup file appears in the Manage Databases inventory page.

#### Related Documentation

- [Restoring a Database in the User Interface on page 492](#)
- [Restoring a Database in Maintenance Mode on page 495](#)
- [Viewing Database Backup Files on page 497](#)
- [Deleting Database Backup Files on page 498](#)
- [Database Backup and Restore Overview on page 485](#)
- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)
- [Viewing Scheduled Jobs on page 376](#)

---

## Restoring the Database from a Remote File

You need to restore the Junos Space database from a remote file if the device to which you are restoring it has been reimaged.

To restore a database, you must have System Administrator privileges and be a Maintenance Mode administrator.

To restore the database from a remote file:

1. Select **Administration > Databases** and select the Restore from Remote File icon.  
The Restore From Remote File window appears.
2. Enter your username and password, and confirm the password, in the appropriate boxes.
3. In the Machine IP box, enter the IP address of the device on which the backup file is located.
4. Enter the path to the backup file on that device in the File Path box.
5. (Optional) Enter a comment in the comment box.
6. Select Restore to start the database restore process.

The Restore Database confirmation dialog box appears.



**WARNING:** You must log in to Junos Space Maintenance mode. Junos Space shuts down to restore the database. All data generated after the selected backup will be lost. Junos Space users will not be able to log in to Junos Space during the restore database operation.

7. Click **Continue** in the Restore Database dialog box.

Junos Space prompts you enter a user name and password to log in to Maintenance mode.

8. Enter the maintenance mode user name and password.
9. Click **OK**.

Junos Space is shut down and other users will be unable to access the system during the restore database operation.

The Restore Database Status dialog box displays the status for the restore database operation.

10. In the Restore Database Status dialog box, click **Return to Maintenance Menu**.

The Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box appears.

11. In the Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box, click **Log Out and Exit from Maintenance Mode**. This action exits maintenance mode, starts up Junos Space, and returns to normal operational mode.

The process of exiting maintenance mode and restarting Junos Space takes several minutes.

**Related Documentation**

- [Restoring a Database in the User Interface on page 492](#)

---

## Restoring a Database in the User Interface

You can restore any archived Junos Space database to restore your Junos Space system to a previous state. When you initiate a restore database operation, Junos Space is shutdown on all nodes in the fabric and the system goes into maintenance mode, during which time only one maintenance mode administrator can log in to the system at a time. Once the restore database operation is complete, Junos Space is restarted and users can access the Junos Space user interface.

To restore a database, you must have System Administrator privileges and be a Maintenance Mode administrator.



**NOTE:** Before you restore a database, wait until all jobs currently running have completed.

To view information about the available database backup files before you select a database to restore, see [“Viewing Database Backup Files” on page 497](#).

Junos Space supports both local and remote backup and restore operations.

- [Restoring a Local Database on page 493](#)
- [Restoring a Database from a Remote Host on page 494](#)

## Restoring a Local Database

To restore the Junos Space database to a previous state:

1. Select **> Administration > Manage Databases**.

The Databases inventory page appears displaying the previous database backups.

2. Select the database backup file you want to restore.
3. Select **Restore Database** from the Actions dropdown.

The Restore Database confirmation dialog box appears.



**WARNING:** You must log in to Junos Space Maintenance mode. Junos Space shuts down to restore the database. All data generated after the selected backup will be lost. Junos Space users will not be able to log in to Junos Space during the restore database operation.

4. Click **Continue** in the Restore Database dialog box.

Junos Space prompts you enter a user name and password to enter maintenance mode.

5. Enter the maintenance mode user name and password.
6. Click **OK**.

Junos Space is shut down and other users will be unable to access the system during the restore database operation.

The Restore Database Status dialog box displays the status for the restore database operation.

7. In the Restore Database Status dialog box, click **Return to Maintenance Menu**.

The Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box appears.

8. In the Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box, click **Log Out and Exit from Maintenance Mode**. This action exits maintenance mode, starts up Junos Space, and returns to normal operational mode.

The process of exiting maintenance mode and restarting Junos Space takes several minutes.

## Restoring a Database from a Remote Host

To restore the Junos Space database to a previous state:

1. Select **Administration > Databases**.

The Databases inventory page appears displaying the previous database backups.

2. Select the database backup file you want to restore.

The database backup detailed information appears in the table columns.

3. Select **Restore Database** from the Actions dropdown.

The Restore Database confirmation dialog box appears.



**WARNING:** You must log in to Junos Space Maintenance mode. Junos Space shuts down to restore the database. All data generated after the selected backup will be lost. Junos Space users will not be able to log in to Junos Space during the restore database operation.

4. Click **Continue** in the Restore Database dialog box.

Junos Space prompts you enter a user name and password to log in to Maintenance mode.

5. Enter the maintenance mode user name and password.

6. Click **OK**.

Junos Space is shut down and other users will be unable to access the system during the restore database operation.

The Restore Database Status dialog box displays the status for the restore database operation.

7. In the Restore Database Status dialog box, click **Return to Maintenance Menu**.

The Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box appears.

8. In the Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box, click **Log Out and Exit from Maintenance Mode**. This action exits maintenance mode, starts up Junos Space, and returns to normal operational mode.

The process of exiting maintenance mode and restarting Junos Space takes several minutes.

### Related Documentation

- [Backing Up the Database on page 487](#)
- [Viewing Database Backup Files on page 497](#)
- [Deleting Database Backup Files on page 498](#)
- [Maintenance Mode Overview on page 452](#)
- [Restoring a Database in Maintenance Mode on page 495](#)

## Restoring a Database in Maintenance Mode

In Junos Space, maintenance mode is a special mode that an administrator can use to restore the database when Junos Space is down on all nodes in the fabric and the Web proxy is running.

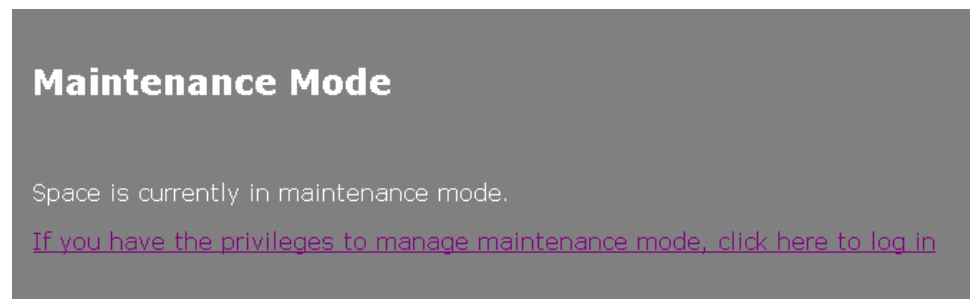
To restore a database in maintenance mode:

1. Connect to a Junos Space appliance in maintenance mode using the following URL, where *ip-address* is the Web access IP address for the appliance:

`https://ip-address/maintenance`

The Maintenance Mode dialog box appears.

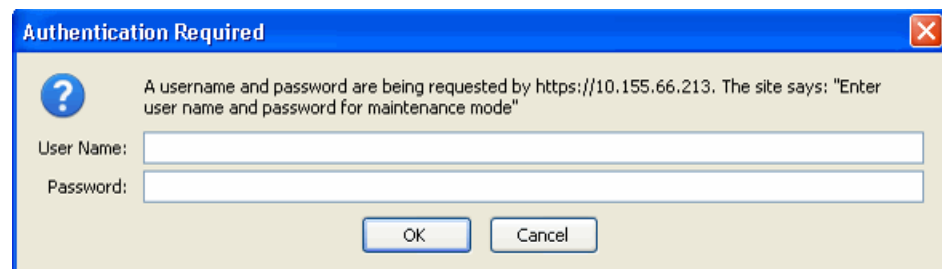
**Figure 62: Maintenance Mode Dialog Box**



2. Click the link to log in.

The Authentication Required dialog box appears.

**Figure 63: Authentication Required Dialog Box**



3. Enter the user name and password for maintenance mode access.

4. Click **OK**.

The Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box appears.

**Figure 64: Maintenance Actions**

- [Restore Database from Backup](#)  
This action leads user to select a database backup file and overwrite the current database
- [Download Troubleshooting Data and Logs](#)  
This action allows user to download Space logs for troubleshooting
- [Log Out and Remain in Maintenance Mode](#)  
This action logs out the current user so that another administrator can login and manage in maintenance mode
- [Log Out and Exit from Maintenance Mode](#)  
This action returns Space to normal operational mode

5. Click the link **Restore Database from Backup** in the Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box.

Junos Space displays the available database backup files, as shown in the following example.

**Figure 65: Selection Box**

Choose a backup database to restore

☒ db\_1255398948.gz (test1) created at Mon Oct 12 18:55:49 2009

[Return to Maintenance Menu](#)

6. From the available database backup files, select a database backup file to overwrite the current database.
7. Click **Submit**.

The database is restored from the backup copy you selected.

**Figure 66: Confirmation Message**

Space database is being restored from a backup copy : db\_1255650255.gz

Restore database success!

[Return to Maintenance Menu](#)

8. Click **Return to Maintenance Menu**.

The Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box appears.

9. Click **Log Out and Exit from Maintenance Mode**.

Junos Space returns to normal operational mode.

#### Related Documentation

- [Maintenance Mode Overview on page 452](#)
- [Database Backup and Restore Overview on page 485](#)



- [Backing Up the Database on page 487](#)
- [Restoring a Database in the User Interface on page 492](#)

## Viewing Database Backup Files

The Manage Databases inventory page displays information about Junos Space database backups, including the date and time of the backup, the backup file name and location, and the IP address of the Junos Space appliance that was backed up. From the Manage Databases inventory page, the administrator can restore a database or delete a database backup.

- [Changing Views on page 497](#)
- [Viewing Database Details on page 497](#)
- [Manage Database Commands on page 498](#)

## Changing Views

You can view database back information in tabular view. Each database backup is represented by a row in the table.

To change views:

1. Select **Administration > Databases**.  
The Databases inventory page appears.
2. Click a view indicator at the right of the Databases page title bar.

## Viewing Database Details

To view detailed database backup information:

1. Select **Administration > Manage Databases**.  
The Databases inventory page appears.
2. Double-click a database in the table view. The Database Backup Details page appears.

[Table 74 on page 497](#) defines the database backup detailed information.

**Table 74: Fields in the Manage Databases Table**

Field	Description
Name	The name of the database backup file. Junos Space automatically assigns a name to the backup file.
Backup Date	Date and time of the database backup.
Comment	Information a Junos Space user optionally provides in the Comments field of the Backup Database dialog box when scheduling database backup.
Machine	IP address of the appliance on which the database backup was performed.

Table 74: Fields in the Manage Databases Table (*continued*)

File Path	File path for the database backup.
-----------	------------------------------------

## Manage Database Commands

From the Manage Database inventory page, you can perform the following actions:

- Delete Database Backup—[“Deleting Database Backup Files” on page 498](#)
- Restore Database—[“Restoring a Database in the User Interface” on page 492](#)
- Tag It—[“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#)
- View Tags—[“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#)
- Clear All Selections—Clears all selections you made using the Select Page link. You can also clear all selections by clicking the Select None link.

## Deleting Database Backup Files

The system administrator can delete archived database backup files that are no longer useful for restore operations.



**NOTE:** When you delete a database backup file from the Manage Databases inventory page, the backup file is permanently deleted from Junos Space and cannot be retrieved or restored.

To delete a Junos Space database backup file:

1. Select **Administration > Databases**.

The Databases inventory page appears.

2. From the Databases inventory page table view, select one or more database backup files that you want to delete.
3. Optional: View the database backup file detailed information before deleting the file. Detailed database backup file information appears as columns in the table.
4. Select **Delete Database Backup** from the Actions dropdown.

Junos Space deletes the selected Junos Space database backup files. The deleted backup files are no longer displayed in the inventory page and are deleted from the `/var/lib/mysql/backup` directory.

### Related Documentation

- [Backing Up the Database on page 487](#)
- [Restoring a Database in the User Interface on page 492](#)
- [Restoring a Database in Maintenance Mode on page 495](#)
- [Viewing Database Backup Files on page 497](#)

## Viewing Job Recurrence

---

You can view information about when a job recurs. For example, you can examine the recurrence of a database backup job.

To view job recurrence information:

1. Select **> Administration > Databases**.

The Databases inventory page appears.

2. Select a recurring job and select **View Recurrence** from the Actions dropdown.

The View Job Recurrence dialog box displays the selected job start date and time, recurrence interval, and end date and time.

3. Optional: Click the **Job ID** link to view all recurrences of the schedule.
4. Click **OK**.

### Related Documentation

- [Backing Up the Database on page 487](#)
- [Viewing Scheduled Jobs on page 376](#)
- [Viewing Audit Logs on page 436](#)



## CHAPTER 47

# Manage Licenses

- [Generating and Uploading the Junos Space License Key File on page 501](#)
- [Viewing Licenses on page 503](#)

### Generating and Uploading the Junos Space License Key File

---

The Junos Space software provides a default, 60-day trial license. After 60 days, the use of the Junos Space software expires except for the Upload License command. The administrator must activate the software with the Juniper Networks license key to regain use of the Junos Space software. Within two weeks of the license expiration date, a license expiration warning appears when users log in to Junos Space and from the About Junos Space page.

Junos Space license management involves a two-step process:

1. Generating the license key file. Juniper Networks uses a license management system (LMS) to manage the deployment of the Junos Space product—appliances, connection points, connections, and applications. When you order Junos Space, Juniper Networks LMS sends an e-mail with an authorization code or serial number and instructions on how to obtain a license key.
2. Uploading the license key using the Junos Space Administration workspace user interface. The system administrator must upload a license key file in the Administration Manage Licenses user interface to license the Junos Space product and activate the configuration ordered.

This procedure includes the following topics:

1. [Generating the License Key File on page 501](#)
2. [Uploading the License Key File Contents on page 502](#)

### Generating the License Key File

If you order Junos Space, Juniper Networks sends an e-mail with an authorization code that includes a resource guide describing how to obtain a license key.

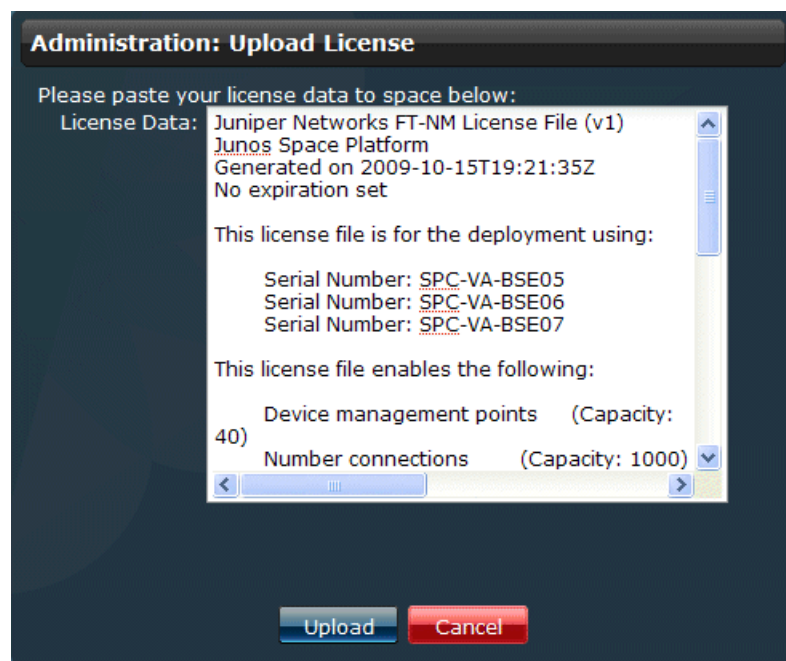
If you order a Junos Space virtual appliance, you also receive an e-mail with a serial number and instructions on how to go to the Juniper Networks license management system to apply that serial number.

## Uploading the License Key File Contents

To upload the license key file, follow these steps:

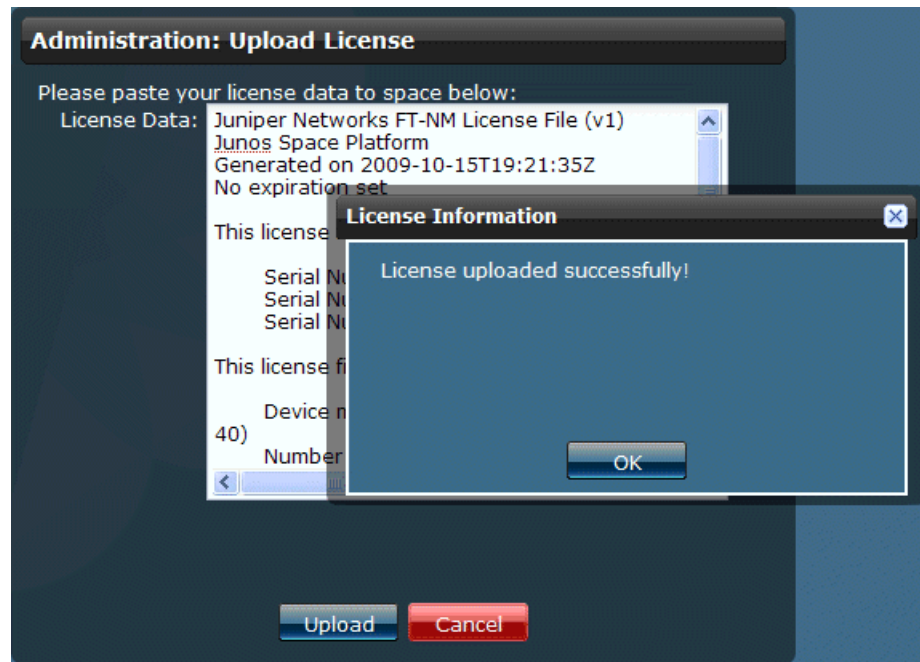
1. Open the Juniper Networks Authorization Codes e-mail you received and follow the directions.
2. Open the license key text file attached to the e-mail and copy all the contents.
3. In Junos Space Application Chooser, click the Network Application Platform application icon.
4. In the task tree, click the Administration workspace. The Administration dashboard appears.
5. In the task tree, click **Manage Licenses**. The Manage Licenses inventory page appears.
6. In the task tree, click the **Upload License**. The Upload License page appears.
7. Paste the contents of the license key text file in the License Data text field using the Web browser Edit > Paste command.

Figure 67: Administration: Upload Licence Dialog Box



8. Click **Upload**. The license key data is uploaded in Junos Space database. The license uploaded successfully message appears.

Figure 68: License Information Upload Success Message



9. Click OK. The license appears on the Manage Licenses inventory page.

Figure 69: Manage Licenses Inventory Page



**Related Documentation**

- [Viewing Licenses on page 503](#)

## Viewing Licenses

The Manage Licenses inventory page displays the Junos Space license that the administrator has uploaded. For more information about obtaining and uploading the Junos Space licence, see [“Generating and Uploading the Junos Space License Key File” on page 501](#). Junos Space displays a tabular view of licenses. Licenses might include Junos Space licenses as well as licenses for VAR applications that run on Junos Space.

The Manage Licenses page displays the Junos Space trial license until you upload the one specifically generated for your software installation.

- [Viewing Manage License Details on page 504](#)

## Viewing Manage License Details

In the table, you see the following license detailed information.

[Table 75 on page 504](#) defines the license details.

**Table 75: Manage Licenses Details**

Field	Description
License Type	The Junos Space license can either be a trial license installed with the Junos Space software image or a commercial one that you upload into Junos Space.
SKU Model #	The Junos Space license stock keeping unit model number. If the license is trial, the SKU is trial-license. If commercial, the license SKU, for example, is SPC-DEV-PTS_ADD-20.
Total License Days	For a trial license, the total number of license days is 60; unlimited for a commercial license.
Remaining Days	For a trial license, the remaining days is the count down of the number of days since when you installed Junos Space (for example 36); unlimited for a commercial license.

### Related Documentation

- [Generating and Uploading the Junos Space License Key File on page 501](#)
- [Junos Space User Interface Overview on page 9](#)
- [Viewing and Exporting License Inventory on page 75](#)



## CHAPTER 48

# Manage Applications

- [Application Management Overview on page 505](#)
- [Managing Junos Space Applications on page 506](#)
- [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)
- [Modifying Network Application Platform Settings on page 510](#)
- [Configuring Password Settings on page 512](#)
- [Managing Services on page 515](#)
- [Configuring Network Activate Application Settings on page 518](#)
- [Adding a Junos Space Application on page 518](#)
- [Junos Space Software Upgrade Overview on page 521](#)
- [Upgrading a Junos Space Application on page 521](#)
- [Upgrading Junos Space Software on page 523](#)
- [Upgrading the Network Application Platform on page 524](#)
- [Uninstalling a Junos Space Application on page 527](#)

## Application Management Overview

---

You can use the Applications pages to manage the Junos Space Network Application Platform (platform) and all other separately packaged applications.

In these pages, you can perform the following tasks:

- Install new Junos Space application using the **Administration > Applications > Add Application** task, see [“Adding a Junos Space Application” on page 518](#).
- Upgrade the Platform using the **Administration > Applications > Upgrade Platform** action, see [“Upgrading the Network Application Platform” on page 524](#). The Platform provides the running environment for all Junos Space applications, so upgrading it causes operation interruption.
- Upgrade a Junos Space application while Junos Space is still running using the **Administration > Applications > Upgrade Application** action, see [“Upgrading a Junos Space Application” on page 521](#).

- Uninstall a Junos Space application while Junos Space is still running using the **Administration > Applications > Uninstall Application** action, see [“Uninstalling a Junos Space Application” on page 527](#).
- Modify application settings using the **Platform > Administration > Applications > Modify Application Settings** action, see [“Modifying Application Settings” on page 508](#).
- Start, stop, or restart services using the **Administration > Applications > Manage Services** action, see [“Managing Services” on page 515](#).
- Tag applications to categorize them for filtering and performing Manage Applications actions using the **Administration > Applications > Tag It** action, see [“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#).
- View Tags that you have already created on a selected application using the **Platform > Administration > Applications > View Tags** action, see [“Viewing Tags” on page 564](#).



**NOTE:** The Junos Space Upgrade image includes the platform, Service Now, and Service Insight. Other Junos Space applications are separately packaged in image files. The administrator must download application files from the Juniper Networks Web site to the local client file system. The administrator must upload an application file in Junos Space. Once uploaded, Junos Space installs or upgrades the application. When the application is installed, you can launch it from Application Chooser. When you upgrade Network Application Platform, all applications except Service Now are disabled. Upgrade all disabled applications to the current release. Users in an upgraded application's workspace are directed to Application Chooser.

#### Related Documentation

- [Managing Junos Space Applications on page 506](#)
- [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)
- [Uninstalling a Junos Space Application on page 527](#)
- [Upgrading a Junos Space Application on page 521](#)
- [Upgrading the Network Application Platform on page 524](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)

---

## Managing Junos Space Applications

Manage Junos Space applications from the **Administration > Applications** task. All applications that you have uploaded and installed appear in the **Applications** inventory page. From the Manage Applications inventory page you, the super administrator or system administrator can manage Junos Space hot-pluggable applications, such as install, upgrade, and uninstall, while Junos Space is still running. You can also upgrade the Network Application Platform that provides the runtime environment for all Junos

Space applications. Upgrading the Platform causes an interruption of Junos Space operation. The Platform upgrade takes place in Maintenance mode.

The administrator can also modify Platform application settings and tag applications to categorize and filter them to perform bulk actions on multiple applications at once.

To install or upgrade an application:

1. Download a new Junos Space application from the Juniper Networks software download site to the local client machine
  2. To add an application, upload that application into Junos Space using **Administration > Applications** and the Add Application icon. To upgrade an application, select **Administration > Applications**. Select the application on the Applications inventory page, then select **Upgrade Application** from the Actions dropdown.
  3. Once uploaded, you can install or upgrade the application.
  4. Once you upgrade or install an application, it appears on the Manage Applications inventory page. The new or upgraded application appears in Application Chooser and the Application Switcher global action pop-up menu at the right in the Application Chooser title bar.
- [Viewing Detailed Application Information on page 507](#)
  - [Performing Manage Application Actions on page 507](#)

## Viewing Detailed Application Information

[Table 76 on page 507](#) defines the information displayed in table columns for each application in the Manage Applications inventory page.

**Table 76: Application Information**

Application Information	Description
Title	Name of the Junos Space application.
Version	The Junos Space application software version.
Release Type	The Junos Space application software version release level.
Build	The Junos Space application software build number.

## Performing Manage Application Actions

You can perform the following actions on applications from the Manage Applications Actions menu. You must first select an application before you can perform an action on it from the Actions menu. You can also right-click an application to perform these actions.

- [Modify Application Settings](#)—See “[Modifying Application Settings](#)” on page 508.



**NOTE:** This action is available for the Platform only.

- [Uninstall Application](#)—See “[Uninstalling a Junos Space Application](#)” on page 527.
- [Upgrade Application](#)—See “[Upgrading a Junos Space Application](#)” on page 521.
- [Upgrade Platform](#)—See “[Upgrading the Network Application Platform](#)” on page 524.



**NOTE:** This action is available for the Platform only.

- [Tag It](#)—See “[Tagging an Object](#)” on page 563.
- [View Tags](#)—See “[Viewing Tags](#)” on page 564.
- [Untag It](#)—“[Untagging Objects](#)” on page 565.

---

## Modifying Application Settings

You, the Super Administrator or System Administrator, can modify Junos Space application settings.

To modify application settings:

1. Select **Administration > Applications**.  
The **Applications** inventory page appears.
2. Select the application.  
Select Network Application Platform to modify the Platform application settings.
3. Select **Modify Application Settings** from the Actions dropdown.  
The appropriate Modify Application Settings page appears.
4. Configure the following application settings depending on the application you are managing:
  - [Modifying Network Application Platform Settings](#) on page 510
  - [Configuring Network Activate Application Settings](#) on page 518
5. Click **Modify**.



**NOTE:** You cannot modify the application settings if another user is currently modifying the application settings. You will receive a pop-up message indicating the user who is currently modifying the application settings.



**NOTE:** We recommend that you do not navigate to other pages or other Junos Space applications when modifying the application settings. Save the changes before you navigate to other pages or other Junos Space applications.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Application Management Overview on page 505](#)
- [Managing Junos Space Applications on page 506](#)
- [Uninstalling a Junos Space Application on page 527](#)
- [Upgrading a Junos Space Application on page 521](#)
- [Creating a Tag on page 566](#)
- [Managing Tags on page 556](#)

## Modifying Network Application Platform Settings

Table 77 on page 510 lists the application settings you can configure for Junos Space Network Application Platform. You must have super administrator or system administrator privileges.

**Table 77: Network Application Platform Application Settings**

Category	Parameter Label	Description
Devices	Allow users to auto log in to devices using SSH	This check box allows users to automatically log in when starting an SSH connection on a device. The default, deselected, indicates that you have to add your credentials to log in to a device using SSH.
	Auto resync device	This check box ensures that when the network is the system of record, configuration changes on a connected Juniper Networks device are synchronized, or imported, to the application database. By default this check box is selected.
	Configure commit synchronize during device discovery	This check box ensures that for either system of record, configuration changes in Junos Space for a device are pushed, committed, and synchronized during device discovery.
	Junos Space initiates connection to device	This check box is selected by default, so Junos Space initiates connection with managed devices. To have managed devices initiate connection with Junos Space, deselect this check box.
	Max auto resync waiting time secs	This field specifies the time within which device configuration changes are synchronized to the database. The default waiting time is 20 seconds. You can specify any number of seconds. There is no specific range. This setting applies only when the network is the system of record.
	Number of Devices to connect per minute for Space Initiated Connection	This parameter enables you to throttle the number of devices that connect to Space. Having thousands of devices trying to connect simultaneously impacts performance negatively. The default number of devices allowed to connect per minute in connections initiated by Junos Space is 500 devices.
	Polling time period secs	This setting is for specifying the interval at which to poll the configuration of devices that do not support system logging. Junos Space polls and compares the configuration it has with that of the device(s) at the interval set here. If there is a difference, it is reported. If the network is the system of record, Junos Space synchronizes its configuration. The default is 900 seconds.
	SSH port for device connection	This text field specifies the SSH port on the device. Junos Space uses this port to discover devices. The default value, 22, is the standard SSH server port.
	Support WW Junos devices	This check box enables you to manage devices running the worldwide version of Junos OS (ww Junos OS devices) through Junos Space.
	Space as system of record choices	This setting specifies whether the network is the system of record (NSOR, the default) or Junos Space is the system of record (SSOR).

**NOTE:** Resynchronization choices in this page apply only to NSOR.

See also “Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space” on page 591.

Table 77: Network Application Platform Application Settings (*continued*)

Category	Parameter Label	Description
Users	Automatic logout of idle user sessions (min)	<p>This text box specifies the time, in minutes, after which a user who is idle and has not performed any action, such as keystrokes or mouse clicks, is automatically logged out of Junos Space. This setting conserves server resources and protects the system from unauthorized access.</p> <p>The text box values are</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The default settings is 60 minutes. An error message appears if you enter a value less than <b>0</b>.</li><li>• The maximum setting is 120 minutes. An error message appears if you enter a value greater than <b>120</b>.</li><li>• Use zero (<b>0</b>) minutes to turn the setting off.</li></ul>
Password	See <a href="#">"Configuring Password Settings" on page 512</a> .	
AuditLog	Record HTTP GET method	This check box audit logs all API GET calls.

- Related Documentation**
- [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)
  - [Configuring Password Settings on page 512](#)
  - [Worldwide Junos OS Adapter Overview on page 141](#)
  - [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)

## Configuring Password Settings

Beginning with Junos Space Network Application Platform Release 12.1, Junos Space has implemented a default standard for passwords that is compliant with industry standards for security.



**NOTE:** If you are upgrading to Space Platform Release 12.1 or later, these default password settings take effect immediately. All local users will get password expiration messages the first time they log in after the upgrade.

Users go to User Preferences (see “[Changing User Passwords](#)” on page 4) to create new passwords, but the constraints that govern those passwords are set in the Administration workspace. This topic describes the parameters that limit password creation and how to set them.



**NOTE:** Passwords expire after 1 year. This is a non-configurable default setting.

Users creating their passwords can view the parameters set by the Junos Space administrator. To display the rules, users can click the Help icon next to the password field on both the Create User page and the User Preferences - Change Local Password page, as shown in [Figure 70 on page 512](#). Note that the screen capture shows only the default password settings.

**Figure 70: User Preferences - Change Local Password**

**User Preferences - Change Local Password**

Old password:

Password:  Password Strength

Confirm password:

**Warning:** Selecting the Change button will log you out of the current session. If you have other sessions running, other sessions are not being affected until their next login.

**Password must:**

- Be at least 6 characters in length
- Must not reuse previous 6 passwords
- Must contain at least one lowercase character
- Must contain at least one number
- Must not repeat the Login ID
- Must not reverse the Login ID
- Must not contain more than three repetitive characters
- Must not contain numbers or special character as the last character

To configure password settings:

1. Select **Administration > Applications**.

The Applications inventory page appears.

2. Select **Network Application Platform**, and select **Modify Application Settings** from the Actions dropdown.

The Modify Network Application Platform Settings page appears.



3. To configure the password settings, click **Password**.

The Modify Network Application Platform Settings > Password page appears, as shown in [Figure 71 on page 513](#).

**Figure 71: Modify Network Application Platform Settings**



[Figure 71 on page 513](#) shows the default settings. [Table 78 on page 513](#) describes all the parameters for password rules, as illustrated in [Figure 71 on page 513](#).

**Table 78: Password Constraint Parameters**

Parameter	Default (yes, no, or default value)	Explanation or Example
At least one lowercase character	yes	Enabling this check box means that <b>EXAMPLE</b> is permissible, and so is <b>example</b> , but <b>EXAMPLE</b> is not permissible.
At least one number not in the last position	yes	Enabling this check box means that <b>examp2e</b> is permissible, and so is <b>2example</b> , but <b>example2</b> is not permissible.
At least one special character not in the last position	no	Enabling this check box means that <b>examp\$e</b> is permissible, and so is <b>\$example</b> , but <b>example\$</b> is not permissible.
At least one uppercase character	no	Enabling this check box means that <b>Example</b> is permissible, and so is <b>EXAMPLE</b> , but <b>example</b> is not permissible.
Minimum number of characters	6	The value entered here determines the minimum number of numbers, letters, and special characters permitted.  The minimum value for this field is 6.
No more than three repetitive characters	yes	Enabling this check box means that users are not allowed to create passwords by simply adding a single character multiple times. It means that <b>example111</b> or <b>examplee</b> is permissible, and so is <b>1example1</b> or <b>eexample</b> , but <b>11example11</b> is not permissible, nor is <b>eexamplee</b> .
Not repeat of the user ID	yes	Enabling this check box prevents users from using their IDs as passwords. For example, someone with the username <i>johndoe</i> would not be allowed to have the password <b>johndoe</b> .
Not reverse of the user ID	yes	Enabling this check box prevents users from reversing their IDs to use as passwords. For example, someone with the username <i>johndoe</i> would not be allowed to have the password <b>doejohn</b> .
Number of previous passwords [that] cannot be reused	6	The value entered here determines how 'old' passwords must be before users are allowed to reuse them. Entering <b>10</b> means that users cannot reuse any of the last 10 Junos Space passwords they have had. Entering <b>1</b> means that users cannot reuse their last password, but can use their second-to-last password.  The minimum value for this field is 1.

Table 78: Password Constraint Parameters (*continued*)

Parameter	Default (yes, no, or default value)	Explanation or Example
Number of unsuccessful login attempts	4	<p>Junos Space locks out users who enter more than the permitted number of incorrect passwords defined here. The system identifies users by their IP addresses, so that even if users have exceeded the limit for incorrect passwords on one machine, they can try to log in again from a different machine.</p> <p>The minimum value for this field is 1.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This verification applies only to users who are in the Junos Space database. It does not work with Radius and TACACS authentication.</p>
Time interval for lockout in hours	12	<p>A user who has entered too many incorrect passwords is locked out for the amount of time defined here in hours.</p> <p>The minimum value for this field is 1.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> You can reenable a locked out user at any time (see “<a href="#">Disabling and Enabling Users</a>” on page 393)</p>
Time interval for password expiry notification in months	1	<p>The value entered here determines the number of months in advance users are warned that their passwords will expire. If you enter 2, two months before users’ current passwords expire, they receive a notification that they must change their passwords.</p> <p>The minimum value for this field is 1.</p>

4. Make your settings as desired, using [Table 78 on page 513](#) for guidance.

5. Click **Modify** to apply your choices.

#### Related Documentation

- [Disabling and Enabling Users on page 393](#)
- [Creating User Accounts on page 389](#)
- [Application Management Overview on page 505](#)
- [Upgrading a Junos Space Application on page 521](#)
- [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)

## Managing Services

This topic describes how to start, stop, and restart Network Monitoring (the OpenNMS services). Currently, Network Monitoring is the only service that can be managed this way.

OpenNMS uses two services - opennms and jmp-opennms. It is recommended to use jmp-opennms service for starting and stopping the Network Monitoring service. This is because the jmp-opennms service performs some additional operations such as running cron job to sync the data between the nodes, restoring the opennms sql data, starting the postgres and opennms, and starting the jmp-watchdog.

Service management operations—start, stop, restart—are applied on all the nodes that run the service.

The service management actions generate audit log entries.

The Super Administrator and System Administrator predefined roles have the permissions to manage services; the corresponding action is Manage Services. If a user does not have a role that includes this action, the Manage Services option is not available.

The following table describes the consequences of performing these three actions:

**Table 79: Starting, Stopping, and Restarting Network Monitoring**

Action	Consequences
Stop	Network Monitoring service is stopped on all nodes.
	Even if VIP failover is performed, service remains stopped on all nodes.
	The syncing of OpenNMS data is disabled.
	Even after adding a new node, the OpenNMS service remains stopped.
	Rebooting Junos Space does not restart a service.
Start, Restart	Network Monitoring service starts only on the VIP node.
	All the devices displayed on the Manage Devices page are discovered by OpenNMS. The SNMP trap targets are correct.
	All the users displayed on the Manage Users page are added to OpenNMS.
	Email and remote server settings are added to OpenNMS.
	All Junos Space nodes are monitored by OpenNMS.
	Service remains up and running even if Junos Space is rebooted.

Table 79: Starting, Stopping, and Restarting Network Monitoring (*continued*)

Action	Consequences
Start, Stop, Restart when no service is selected	Error message is displayed: No service selected.



**NOTE:** The following firewall ports should be closed on stopping jmp-opennms:

- UDP
  - 162
  - 514
  - 5813
- TCP
  - 5813
  - 18980



**NOTE:** Any devices added while the Network Monitoring service is stopped must be manually resynchronized in OpenNMS after the service is restarted.

To start, stop, or restart network monitoring services:

1. Select **Administration > Applications**.

The Applications inventory page appears.

2. Do either of the following:

- Select **Network Application Platform** and select **Manage Services** from the Actions dropdown

The Manage Services page appears, showing the names of the services that can be managed this way (currently Network Monitoring is the only item in this list), and the Start, Stop, and Restart buttons, as well as a table displaying the following information:

Column Heading	Content
Service Name	Name of service capable of being started, stopped or restarted
Running Version	Version of the service that is currently running
Status	Current status: Enabled or Disabled

3. Select **Network Monitoring** from the list, and select the relevant button for a currently enabled service: **Start**, **Restart** or **Stop**.

One of four messages appears:

- If you select a service that is currently running, then select **Stop**, you will receive this message:

Confirm Stop Service: Do you really want to stop the service?

- If you select a service that has been disabled, then select **Restart**, you will receive this message:

Warning: Sorry, cannot proceed with the request, as the Service is not in Enabled state.

- If you select a service that has been disabled, then select **Start**, you will receive this message:

Warning: Sorry, Network Monitoring cannot be started once it is stopped.

- If you select a service that has been disabled, then select **Stop**, you will receive this message:

Warning: Sorry, cannot proceed with the request, as the Service is already in Disabled state.

4. In all cases, you can only select **OK**.

First a message appears, announcing that the relevant action is being performed, and then a second status message, announcing that the operation you performed was successful—or not.

5. Select **OK** to confirm.

The Manage Services page reappears, displaying the selected service's changed status.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Application Management Overview on page 505](#)
- [Junos Space Audit Logs Overview on page 435](#)
- [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)

## Configuring Network Activate Application Settings

You can configure the Network Activate application settings from the Administration > Applications inventory page. See [“Modifying Application Settings” on page 508](#)

You must have Super Administrator privileges to configure Network Activate application settings.

[Table 80 on page 518](#) defines the application settings you can configure for the Network Activate application settings.

**Table 80: Network Activate Application Settings**

Category	Application Setting Name	Description
Deployment	Deploy configuration to the device	Disable this setting to deploy configuration to Junos Space user interface only.
	Save configuration in XML format	This setting is disabled by default, to deploy the service order and view the configuration using JUNOS curly braces syntax.
	Use vlanmaps for flexible tagged services	Enable this setting if MX Series devices are configured for VLAN mapping.
Audit	Perform functional audit on control plane only	Enable this option to check only the control plane to ensure connectivity among endpoints and verify that UNIs are functioning correctly. Disable this setting to check the control plane and also the data plane to verify packet transmission between each valid pair of endpoints in the service.
Logging	Log Directory	Modify the default audit log repository directory. The default log directory is <code>/var/tmp/jboss</code> .

**Related Documentation** • [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)

## Adding a Junos Space Application

The administrator can add a new Junos Space application while Junos Space is still running.



**NOTE:** Service Now and Service Insight are bundled with, installed, and upgraded with the Network Application Platform. You must add, or upgrade all other applications separately. Junos Space 11.2 supports only Junos Space release 11.2 hot-pluggable applications.

To upgrade Junos Space applications, see [“Upgrading a Junos Space Application” on page 521](#).

To add a Junos Space application:

1. Ensure that the Junos Space application you want to add is downloaded from the Juniper Software download site to the local client file system.

<https://www.juniper.net/support/products/space/#sw>

2. Select **Administration** > **Applications** and select the Add Application icon.

The Add Application dialog box appears. If you have not uploaded any applications, the page is blank.

3. Upload the new application by performing one of the following:

- a. Click **Upload via HTTP**.

The Software File dialog box appears.

- i. Type the name of the application file or click **Browse** to navigate to where the new Junos Space application file is located on the local file system.

- ii. Click **Upload**.

- b. Click **Upload via SCP**.

The Upload Software via SCP dialog box appears. Add the Secure Copy credentials to upload the Junos Space application image from a remote server to Junos Space.

- i. Add your username.
- ii. Add your password.
- iii. Conform by adding your password again.
- iv. Add the host IP address.
- v. Add the local path name of the Junos Software application file.
- vi. Click **Upload**.

The new application is uploaded from the local file system into Junos Space and displayed by application name, filename, version, release level, and required Junos Space Platform version.

4. a. Wait until the job is completed.

The Add Application Job Information dialog box appears.

- b. In the Add Application Job Information dialog box, if you click the Job ID link, you see the Add Application job on the **Jobs > Job Management** inventory page.
  - i. Ensure that the job is successful.
  - ii. Select **Administration > Application > Add Application** icon to continue with the add application process.

The Add Application dialog box appears.

- c. In the **Add Application Job Information** dialog box, if you click **OK**, the Add Application dialog box appears.

5. In the **Add Application** dialog box, select the new uploaded application.

You see the new application file on the Add Application page.

6. Click **Install**.

Wait until the application fully deploys.

7. Without logging out of Junos Space, navigate to the Application Chooser.

8. Click the Application Switcher global icon at the top-right in the application banner.

The Application Switcher pop-up menu appears.

9. Click **Select Application**.

Application Chooser appears with the new application icon.

10. Click the new application icon to view and begin using its workspaces and tasks.

#### Related Documentation

- [Application Management Overview on page 505](#)
- [Managing Junos Space Applications on page 506](#)
- [Upgrading a Junos Space Application on page 521](#)
- [Upgrading the Network Application Platform on page 524](#)
- [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)
- [Uninstalling a Junos Space Application on page 527](#)
- [Upgrading a Junos Space Application on page 521](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)



## Junos Space Software Upgrade Overview

To upgrade software for the Junos Space Virtual Appliance, you upload the Junos Space image file to your existing fabric and perform the software upgrade in the Junos Space user interface. When you perform an upgrade, all appliances (nodes) in the fabric are upgraded with the new software.

To ensure a successful upgrade of your Junos Space appliances, complete the following tasks.

- Back up all your Junos Space data files before you begin the upgrade process.
- Download the Junos Space software image from the Juniper Networks software download Web site.
- Complete the steps to upgrade your current Junos Space software to the latest software version.



**NOTE:** To perform a Junos Space upgrade, you must have super administrator or system administrator access privileges.

- Validate that the software is successfully installed by logging in to the user interface.

To view the version of the installed Junos Space software, select the Help icon in the user interface banner and click **About**.

- Upload the License Key that was sent to you when you purchased the Junos Space software upgrade.

### Related Documentation

- [Upgrading Junos Space Software on page 523](#)

## Upgrading a Junos Space Application

The Upgrade Application action allows you to upgrade an existing Junos Space application independently while the system is still running. Several hot-pluggable Junos Space applications are available for upgrade to the current release. Use **Platform > Administration > Once the application is upgraded successfully, you can launch it from Application Chooser**.

To install a new Junos Space application, use the **Administration > Applications > Add Application** action, see [“Adding a Junos Space Application” on page 518](#).

To upgrade an existing Junos Space application:

1. Ensure that the application to which you want to upgrade is downloaded from the Juniper Software download site to the local client file system.

<https://www.juniper.net/support/products/space/#sw>

2. Select **Administration > Applications**. The Applications inventory page appears.

3. Select the application that you want to upgrade and select **Upgrade Application** from the Actions dropdown.

The Upgrade Application dialog box appears displaying all previously uploaded versions of that application.

4. Do one of the following:

- If the software file for the application to which you want to upgrade is listed in the Upgrade Application dialog box, select it and click **Upgrade**.

The application upgrade process begins. Go to the next step.

- If the application to which you want to upgrade is not listed in the Upgrade Application dialog box, click **Upload**. The Software File dialog box appears.

- a. Click **Browse** and navigate to where the software file to which you want to upgrade is located on the local file system.

- b. Click **Upload**.

The software file is uploaded into Junos Space. You see the application in the Upgrade Applications dialog box.

- c. Wait until the job is completed.

The Upgrade Application Job Information dialog box appears.

- d. Click the **Job ID** link to see the Upgrade Application job in the Manage Jobs inventory page. Review the job to

- i. Ensure that the job is successful.

- ii. Select **Administration > Applications** to continue with the add application process.

The Upgrade Application dialog box appears.

- e. Select the software file to which you want to upgrade, and click **Upgrade**. The application upgrade process begins.

5. Navigate to the Application Chooser and launch the application you upgraded.

#### Related Documentation

- [Application Management Overview on page 505](#)
- [Managing Junos Space Applications on page 506](#)
- [Adding a Junos Space Application on page 518](#)
- [Upgrading the Network Application Platform on page 524](#)
- [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)
- [Uninstalling a Junos Space Application on page 527](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)

## Upgrading Junos Space Software

To upgrade software for the Junos Space Virtual Appliance, you download the Junos Space Upgrade image file from the Juniper Networks software download site onto the local client file system. You upload the Junos Space image file to your local file system using the Upgrade Platform action in the Manage Applications workspace. When you perform an upgrade, all appliances (nodes) in the fabric are upgraded with the new software.



**CAUTION:** Junos space supports upgrades from the last two versions. Junos Space 12.1 supports upgrading from 11.3 or 11.4. Previous version upgrades may require a two-step upgrade. Example: 11.2 to 11.3 to 12.1.

- [Junos Space 12.1 Release Highlights on page 523](#)
- [Before You Begin on page 523](#)
- [Upgrading Junos Space Release 11.3 or 11.4 to Release 12.1 on page 524](#)

### Junos Space 12.1 Release Highlights

The Junos Space Upgrade Release 12.1 includes:

#### Junos Space Release 12.1 Contents

- Network Application Platform Release 12.1 The platform provides the operating environment for Junos Space, therefore upgrade using the Platform > Administration > Manage Application Upgrade Platform action.
- Service Now Release 12.1
- Service Insight Release 12.1

#### Available Hot-Pluggable Applications

The following applications are hot-pluggable in Junos Space. Hot-pluggable applications mean that adding removing, and upgrading occurs while Junos Space is still running, and without service interruption. A hot-pluggable application is packaged separately and has an separate image file for installing and upgrading.

- Ethernet Design
- Network Activate
- QoS Design
- Virtual Control Release

### Before You Begin

Before you upgrade the Junos Space Software, ensure that you are aware of the following:

- Upgrading to Junos Space release 12.1 clears existing user preferences set using the User Preference global action icon at the right in the title bar of Application Chooser.
- We recommend that you:
  - Back up the Junos Space database before you begin the upgrade process. See also [“Application Management Overview” on page 505](#).
  - Clear the Web browser cache before logging in to the upgraded Junos Space software.
- You must log in as the default super administrator or system administrator to upgrade Junos Space.

## Upgrading Junos Space Release 11.3 or 11.4 to Release 12.1

The Platform provides the running environment for all Junos Space applications, so upgrading it causes operation interruption.



**NOTE:** When upgrading Junos Space from release 11.3 or 11.4 to 12.1, the Network Application Platform and Service Now and Service Insight applications are upgraded only. Other Junos Space release 11.3 or 11.4 applications are disabled. You must upgrade release 11.3 or 11.4 disabled applications to release 12.1 (see [“Upgrading a Junos Space Application” on page 521](#)) or uninstall them (see [“Uninstalling a Junos Space Application” on page 527](#)). Do not add disabled Junos Space applications using Administration > Applications > Add Application task.

To upgrade Junos Space from release 11.3 or 11.4 to release 12.1, see [“Upgrading the Network Application Platform” on page 524](#).

### Related Documentation

- [Application Management Overview on page 505](#)
- [Managing Junos Space Applications on page 506](#)

## Upgrading the Network Application Platform

---

The Network Application Platform (Platform) provides the running environment for all Junos Space applications, so upgrading causes operation interruption. The Upgrade Network Application Platform action allows the administrator to upgrade the Network Application Platform independently from one version to another without installing other Junos Space applications.



**NOTE:** Junos Space Network Application Platform supports upgrades from the last two versions. Platform 11.3 supports upgrading from 11.2 or 11.1. Previous version upgrades may require a two-step upgrade. Example: 1.4 to 11.1 to 11.3.



**NOTE:** During an upgrade of Junos Space release 2.0, or 11.1 to release 11.2 on a multi-node fabric, the install status is shown in the installation process.

To upgrade the Junos Space Platform:

1. Ensure that the Junos Space Upgrade image to which you want to upgrade is downloaded to the local client file system using <https://www.juniper.net/support/products/space/#sw>.

2. Select **Administration > Applications**.

The Applications inventory page appears.

3. Select the **Network Application Platform** application and select Upgrade Platform from the Actions dropdown.

You can also select the platform and select **Upgrade Platform** from the Actions menu. The **Upgrade Application** page appears displaying all previously uploaded versions of the Platform.

4. Do one of the following:

- If the platform to which you want to upgrade is listed in the Upgrade Application dialog box, select the file, and click **Upgrade**.

The application upgrade process begins. (Go to the next step.)

- If the application to which you want to upgrade is not listed in the Upgrade Application dialog box, click **Upload**.

The Software File page appears.

Upload the new application by performing one of the following:

- a. Click **Upload via HTTP**.

The Software File dialog box appears.

- i. Type the name of the application file or click **Browse** to navigate to where the new Junos Space application file is located on the local file system.

- ii. Click **Upload**

- b. Click **Upload via SCP**.

The Upload Software via SCP dialog box appears. You must add the following Secure Copy remote machine credentials.

- i. Add your username.
- ii. Add your password.
- iii. Conform by adding your password again.
- iv. Add the host IP address.

- v. Add the local path name of the Junos Software application file.
- vi. Click **Upload**.

The new application is uploaded from the local file system into Junos Space and displayed by application name, filename, version, release level, and required Junos Space Platform version

When the process is completed the Upgrade Platform Job Information dialog box appears.

- a. In the Upgrade Application Job Information dialog box, if you click the Job ID link, you see the Upgrade Application job on the **Jobs > Job Management** inventory page.
  - i. Ensure that the job is successful.
  - ii. Select **Administration > Applications** to continue with the add application process.

The Manage Applications inventory page appears.

- b. Select the **Network Application Platform** application and select **Upgrade Platform** from the Actions dropdown.
- c. Click **OK**.

The Upgrade Platform dialog box appears. You see the application file that was uploaded.

- d. Select the application file to which you want to upgrade, and click **Upgrade**. The application upgrade process begins.

- 5. You enter **Maintenance** mode. Junos Space prompts you to enter a user name and password to enter maintenance mode. The user name is **maintenance**; the password is one that the administrator created during the initial installation process.
- 6. Enter the maintenance mode user name and password in the text field.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Junos Space displays a status dialog box during the platform upgrade process.

- 8. When the platform upgrade completes, click the **Return to Maintenance Menu** link.

The Maintenance Mode Actions dialog box appears.

- 9. Click the **Log Out and Exit from Maintenance Mode** link.

The installation progress dialog box appears.



**NOTE:** The platform upgrade process takes approximately between 2 and 30 minutes to complete depending on the size of the Junos Space database.

---

When the installation is complete, the Junos Space login prompt appears.



NOTE: If a blank page appears instead of the login prompt, click Refresh. The login prompt is then displayed.



NOTE: We recommend that you clear the Web browser cache before logging in to the upgraded software.



NOTE: We recommend that you perform a functional audit on all deployed services after upgrading.

You can now log in to begin using the upgraded Junos Space software.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Application Management Overview on page 505](#)
- [Managing Junos Space Applications on page 506](#)
- [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)
- [Uninstalling a Junos Space Application on page 527](#)
- [Upgrading a Junos Space Application on page 521](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)

---

## Uninstalling a Junos Space Application

The Uninstall application action allows the administrator to remove a Junos Space application independently while the system is still running. Uninstalling an application cleans up all database data and any process the application used. Uninstall a Junos Space application from the Manage Applications inventory page.

To uninstall a Junos Space application:

1. Select **Administration > Applications**.

The Applications inventory page appears.

2. Select the application you want to uninstall and select **Uninstall Application** from the Actions dropdown.

The Uninstall Application dialog box appears.

3. Select the application to confirm that you want to uninstall.
4. Click **Uninstall**.

The application uninstall process begins and the Junos Space application is removed from Junos Space.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Application Management Overview on page 505](#)
- [Managing Junos Space Applications on page 506](#)
- [Modifying Application Settings on page 508](#)
- [Upgrading a Junos Space Application on page 521](#)
- [Upgrading the Network Application Platform on page 524](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)



# Troubleshoot Space

- [System Status Log File Overview on page 529](#)
- [Customizing Node System Status Log Checking on page 531](#)
- [Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File from the UI on page 532](#)
- [Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File In Maintenance Mode on page 533](#)
- [Downloading Troubleshooting System Log Files Using the CLI on page 534](#)

## System Status Log File Overview

---

The system writes a system log file for each fabric node to provide troubleshooting and monitoring information. See [“System Status Log File” on page 529](#).

The system administrator can customize the information that is collected in the system log file. See [“Customizing Node System Status Log Checking” on page 531](#).

The system administrator can download the latest log files for each fabric node when logged into an appliance. See [“Downloading System Log Files For an Appliance” on page 530](#).

In each operating mode, the system administrator can customize the default log files that are download from an appliance. See *Customizing Node Log Files To Download*.

## System Status Log File

Approximately once a minute, the system checks and writes a status log file **SystemStatusLog** for each fabric node by default. Each log file consists of system status, such as the disk, CPU, and memory usage information, as shown. Junos Space writes each system status log file to `/var/log/SystemStatusLog`.

```
2009-08-10 11:51:48,673 DEBUG [net.juniper.jmp.cmp.nma.NMAResponse] (Thread-110:)
Node IP: 1.1.1.1 Filesystem      1K-blocks   Used Available Use% Mounted on
/dev/mapper/VolGroup00-LogVol00
       79162184 15234764 59841252 21% /
Cpu(s): 8.7%us, 1.1%sy, 0.0%ni, 90.0%id, 0.1%wa, 0.0%hi, 0.0%si, 0.0%st
Mem: 3866536k total, 2624680k used, 1241856k free, 35368k buffers
Swap: 2031608k total, 941312k used, 1090296k free, 439704k cached
```

### Customizing Status Log File Content

The system administrator can customize the information that is written in a fabric node system status log file. For more information, see [“Customizing Node System Status Log Checking” on page 531](#).

### Downloading System Log Files For an Appliance

The system administrator can download the latest log files for each fabric node when logged into an appliance. The system status log file and all other third party log files are collected and compressed in a troubleshooting file.

[Table 81 on page 530](#) lists the files included in the **troubleshoot** file.

**Table 81: Log Files included in the troubleshoot File**

Description	Location
System status log file	<code>/var/logSystemStatusLog</code>
Jboss log files	<code>/var/log/jboss/*</code>
Service Provisioning data files	<code>/var/tmp/jboss/debug/*</code>
MYSQL error log	<code>/var/log/mysqld.log</code>
Log files for Apache, NMA, Webproxy	<code>/var/log/httpd/*</code>
Watchdog log file	<code>/var/log/watchdog/*</code>
Linux system messages	<code>/var/log/messages/*</code>

The system administrator can download log files in each operation mode as follow:

- Server Mode (See [“Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File from the UI” on page 532](#).)
- Maintenance Mode (See [“Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File In Maintenance Mode” on page 533](#).)
- CLI mode (See [“Downloading Troubleshooting System Log Files Using the CLI” on page 534](#).)

### Customizing Log Files To Download

The system administrator can also customize the log files to be downloaded for specific fabric nodes. For more information, see [Customizing Node Log Files To Download](#).

#### Related Documentation

- [Maintenance Mode Overview on page 452](#)
- [Customizing Node System Status Log Checking on page 531](#)
- [Customizing Node Log Files To Download](#)
- [Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File from the UI on page 532](#)

- [Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File In Maintenance Mode on page 533](#)
- [Downloading Troubleshooting System Log Files Using the CLI on page 534](#)

## Customizing Node System Status Log Checking

The system administrator can customize the system checking for a fabric node so that the necessary information is written to `/var/log/SystemStatusLog`. The administrator must modify the fabric node Perl script in `/usr/nma/bin/writeLogCronJob`.

To customize system status checking for an appliance, modify the `writeSystemStatusLogFile` sub-function in `writeLogCronJob` as shown:

```
sub writeSystemStatusLogFile{
    my $err = 0;
    my $logfile = $_[0];
    $err = system("date >> $logfile");
    $err = system("df /var >> $logfile");
    $err = system("top -n 1 -b | grep Cpu >> $logfile");
    $err = system("top -n 1 -b | grep Mem: >> $logfile");
    $err = system("top -n 1 -b | grep Swap: >> $logfile");

    ***<Add additional system command here that you want to print out in the
    SystemStatusLog file>***

    if ($err == 0 ) {          print "write log to $logfile successfully\n";
    } else {                   print "cannot write log to $logfile\n";
    }
    return $err;
}
```

### Related Documentation

- [Maintenance Mode Overview on page 452](#)
- [System Status Log File Overview on page 529](#)
- [Customizing Node Log Files To Download](#)
- [Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File from the UI on page 532](#)
- [Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File In Maintenance Mode on page 533](#)
- [Downloading Troubleshooting System Log Files Using the CLI on page 534](#)

## Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File from the UI

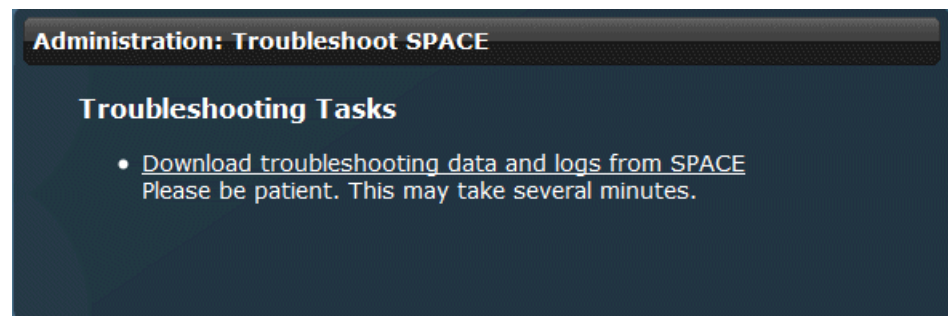
From the Administration workspace, the system administrator can download a troubleshooting file **troubleshoot\_yyyy-mm-dd\_hh-mm-ss.zip** that contains useful information for managing and monitoring the nodes in the system. The troubleshoot zip file includes the server Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) date and time. For example, **troubleshoot\_2010-04-01\_11-25-12.zip**.

To retrieve troubleshooting data and log files, follow these steps:

1. Select **Administration > Troubleshoot space**.

The Troubleshoot SPACE page appears.

Figure 72: Troubleshoot SPACE Page



2. Click the **Download troubleshooting data and logs from SPACE** link to access the **troubleshoot\_yyyy-mm-dd\_hh-mm-ss.zip** file in your browser.
  - If you are using Mozilla Firefox: In the Opening troubleshoot zip dialog box, select **Save file** and click **OK** to save the zip file to your computer using the Firefox Downloads dialog box.
  - If you are using Internet Explorer: From the File Download screen, select **Save** and select a directory on your computer where you want to save the **troubleshoot\_yyyy-mm-dd\_hh-mm-ss.zip** file.
3. When you contact the Juniper Technical Assistance Center, describe the problem you encountered and provide the JTAC representative with the **troubleshoot.zip** file.

Table 82 on page 532 lists the files included in the **troubleshoot\_yyyy-mm-dd\_hh-mm-ss.zip** file.

Table 82: Data and Log Files in troubleshoot.zip File

Description	Location
Jboss log files	<code>/var/log/jboss/*</code>
Service Provisioning data files	<code>/var/tmp/jboss/debug/*</code>
MYSQL error log	<code>/var/log/mysqld.log</code>
Log files for Apache, NMA, Webproxy	<code>/var/log/httpd/*</code>

Table 82: Data and Log Files in troubleshoot.zip File (*continued*)

Watchdog log file	/var/log/watchdog/*
Linux system messages	/var/log/messages/*
CPU/RAM/Disk statistics (during past 24 hours)	Not applicable

#### Related Documentation

- [Maintenance Mode Overview on page 452](#)
- [System Status Log File Overview on page 529](#)
- [Customizing Node System Status Log Checking on page 531](#)
- [Customizing Node Log Files To Download](#)
- [Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File In Maintenance Mode on page 533](#)
- [Downloading Troubleshooting System Log Files Using the CLI on page 534](#)

## Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File In Maintenance Mode

*Maintenance Mode* is a special mode that an administrator can use to perform system recovery or debugging tasks while all nodes in the fabric are shutdown and the web proxy is running.

The administrator can download the **troubleshoot\_yyyy-mm-dd\_hh-mm-ss.zip** file from Maintenance Mode. The troubleshoot zip file includes the server Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) date and time. For example, **troubleshoot\_2010-04-01\_11-25-12.zip**.

To download the troubleshooting log file in maintenance mode, follow these steps:

1. Connect to an appliance in maintenance mode by using the appliance URL.

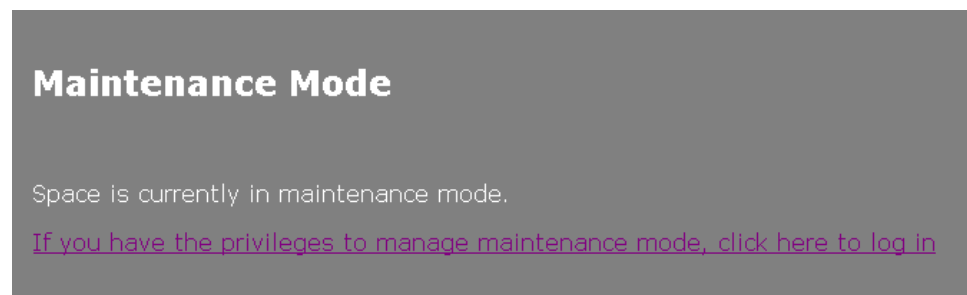
For example:

`https://<ipaddress>/maintenance`

Where *ipaddress* is the address of the Juniper Networks appliance.

The Maintenance Mode page appears.

Figure 73: Maintenance Mode Page



2. Click the **click here to log in** link. The login dialog box appears.

3. Log in to maintenance mode using the authorized login name and password.
4. Click OK. The Maintenance Mode Actions menu appears.
5. Click **Download Troubleshooting Data and Logs**. The file download dialog box appears.
6. Click Save to download the `troubleshoot_yyyy-mm-dd_hh-mm-ss.zip` file to the connected computer.
7. Click **Log Out and Exit from Maintenance Mode**.

**Related Documentation**

- [Maintenance Mode Overview on page 452](#)
- [System Status Log File Overview on page 529](#)
- [Customizing Node System Status Log Checking on page 531](#)
- [Customizing Node Log Files To Download](#)
- [Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File from the UI on page 532](#)
- [Downloading Troubleshooting System Log Files Using the CLI on page 534](#)

---

## Downloading Troubleshooting System Log Files Using the CLI

If Junos Space is operating, the administrator can log into an appliance console and download system status logs for each fabric node using the CLI Network Settings Utility > SecureCoPy (SCP) command. If the system is not operating, the Administrator can download system status logs using the CLI USB command.

The Network Settings Utility, for both commands, collects all system log files in the `/var/log` subdirectory and creates a `*TAR` file to download. For more information on the log files that are written, see “[System Status Log File Overview](#)” on page 529.

This procedure includes the following tasks:

- [Downloading a System Log File Using a USB Device on page 534](#)
- [Downloading System Log File Using SCP on page 535](#)

### Downloading a System Log File Using a USB Device

Using the Networks Settings Utility Retrieve Logs > USB command, the administrator can download system status logs to a connected USB device if the network is down.

1. Using a console utility, such as SSH or Telnet, connect to the appliance. The Junos Space Settings Menu appears.

**Junos Space Settings Menu**

- 1> Change Password  
2> Set Routing  
3> Set DNS Servers  
4> Change Time Options  
5> Retrieve Logs  
6> Security

7> (Debug) run shell

Q> Quit

R> Redraw Menu

Choice [1-7,QR]:

2. Type option 5> **Retrieve Logs**. The Retrieve Logs submenu appears.

Choice [1-7,QR]: 5

1> Save to USB

2> Send via SCP

M> Return to Main Menu

R> Redraw Menu

Choice [1-2,MR]:

3. Select 1> **Save to USB**. The USB device must be connected to an appliance.
4. Indicate whether you want to continue. Enter **y** for yes; **n** to abort.
5. The Save to USB process downloads the log files from all cluster members and combines them into a **.tar** file. Once the file is created, the process copies the file onto a USB device. You see the following:

Copying 20090827-1511-logs.tar to USB drive

## Downloading System Log File Using SCP

Using the Networks Settings Utility Retrieve Logs > SCP command, the administrator can download system status logs to a specific location.

To download system status logs using SCP, follow these steps:

1. Using a console utility, such as SSH or Telnet, connect to an appliance. The Junos Space Settings Menu appears.

Junos Space Settings Menu

1> Change Password

2> Set Routing

3> Set DNS Servers

4> Change Time Options

5> Retrieve Logs

6> Security

7> (Debug) run shell

Q> Quit

R> Redraw Menu

Choice [1-7,QR]:

2. Type option 5> **Retrieve Logs**. The Retrieve Logs submenu appears.

Choice [1-7,QR]: 5

1> Save to USB  
2> Send via SCP

M> Return to Main Menu  
R> Redraw Menu

Choice [1-2,MR]:

3. Select **2> Send via SCP**. The process retrieves the log files on all cluster members and combines them into a **.TAR** file.
4. Indicate whether you want to continue. Enter **y** for yes; **n** to abort.
5. Specify the SCP server IP address to which to transfer the file.
6. Enter the remote SCP user. For example, **root**
7. Enter the remote SCP file location. For example, **/root/tmplogs**. You see the following:

```
Remote scp IP: 123.123.123.123
Remote scp user: root
Remote scp path: /root/tmplogs
Is this correct? [y/n]
The authenticity of host '123.123.123.123 (123.123.123.123)' can't be established.
RSA key fingerprint is 01:70:4c:47:9e:1e:84:fc:69:3c:65:99:6d:e6:88:87.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
Warning: Permanently added '123.123.123.123' (RSA) to the list of known hosts.
Warning-Please dont use this system
/etc/selinux/strict/contexts/files/file_contexts: Multiple same specifications for
/usr/local/lost\+found/.*
/etc/selinux/strict/contexts/files/file_contexts: Multiple same specifications for
/usr/local/\.journal.
/etc/selinux/strict/contexts/files/file_contexts: Multiple same specifications for
/usr/local/lost\+found.
123.123.123.123 password:
20090827-1517-logs.tar
100% 18MB 17.6MB/s 00:01
```

8. Indicate whether the SCP server information is correct. Enter **y** for yes; **n** if incorrect.
9. Indicate whether you want to continue. Enter **y** for yes; **n** for no.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Maintenance Mode Overview on page 452](#)
- [System Status Log File Overview on page 529](#)
- [Customizing Node System Status Log Checking on page 531](#)
- [Customizing Node Log Files To Download](#)
- [Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File from the UI on page 532](#)
- [Downloading the Troubleshooting Log File In Maintenance Mode on page 533](#)



## CHAPTER 50

# Manage Auth Servers

- [Remote Authentication Overview on page 537](#)
- [Understanding Junos Space Authentication Modes on page 538](#)
- [Managing Remote Authentication Servers on page 539](#)
- [Creating a Remote Authentication Server on page 540](#)
- [Modifying Authentication Settings on page 542](#)
- [Configuring a RADIUS Server for Authentication and Authorization on page 543](#)
- [Configuring TACACS+ for Authentication and Authorization on page 547](#)
- [Junos Space Log In Behavior with Remote Authentication Enabled on page 549](#)

### Remote Authentication Overview

---

Junos Space, by default, authenticates users to log in locally when you configure their accounts using **Users > User Accounts > Create User** task.

Using the **Administration > Auth Servers** task, you can authenticate users to log in exclusively from a centralized location using one or more RADIUS remote authentication servers. You can also authenticate users to log in to Junos Space using both local and remote authentication.

You can configure the order in which Junos Space connects to remote authentication servers by preference. Junos Space authenticates using the first reachable remote authentication server on the list.

You must install or upgrade to Junos Space 11.2 or later to use remote authentication, and to Junos Space 12.1 or later to use remote authorization.

Junos Space supports RADIUS authentication methods PAP and CHAP.

You must have Super Administrator, System Administrator privileges to configure remote authentication server settings, authentication modes, and user passwords and settings.

Regular Junos Space users cannot configure their own passwords if you maintain them solely by a remote authentication server.

You may choose to allow some privileged users to set a local password so they can still log onto the system if the remote authentication server is unreachable.

**Related Documentation**

- [Understanding Junos Space Authentication Modes on page 538](#)
- [Managing Remote Authentication Servers on page 539](#)
- [Creating a Remote Authentication Server on page 540](#)
- [Modifying Authentication Settings on page 542](#)
- [Junos Space Log In Behavior with Remote Authentication Enabled on page 549](#)

---

## Understanding Junos Space Authentication Modes

Junos Space provides three authentication modes: local , remote, and remote-local. The default authentication mode is local. You configure local authentication from **Users > User Accounts > Create Users** task. You configure remote and remote-local authentication from **Administration > Remote Auth Servers** task.



**NOTE:** You configure local authorization from **Users > Roles > Create Roles** task. See [“Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space” on page 406](#), [“Creating User Accounts” on page 389](#), and [“Creating a User-Defined Role” on page 427](#).

The following sections describe the authentication modes:

- [Local Authentication on page 538](#)
- [Remote Authentication on page 538](#)
- [Remote-Local Authentication on page 538](#)

### Local Authentication

The user is authenticated and authorized using the local Junos Space database. To configure local Junos Space authentication, navigate to **> Users > User Accounts > Create Users** icon. To configure Junos Space authentication, see [“Creating User Accounts” on page 389](#).

### Remote Authentication

User authentication information is stored on one or more remote authorization servers. Authorization information also can be configured and stored on the remote authentication server(s). To configure Junos Space remote authentication, see [“Configuring a RADIUS Server for Authentication and Authorization” on page 543](#).

In this mode, if a corresponding local user exists, the local password is used only in the emergency case where the authentication servers are unreachable.

### Remote-Local Authentication

User authentication information is stored on one or more remote authentication servers. Authorization information also can be configured and stored on the remote authentication

server(s). For more information see [“Configuring a RADIUS Server for Authentication and Authorization” on page 543](#).

In this mode, when a user is not configured on the remote authentication server(s) or when the server(s) are unreachable or when the remote server(s) deny the user access, then the local password is used if such a local user exists in the Junos Space database.

.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Remote Authentication Overview on page 537](#)
- [Configuring a RADIUS Server for Authentication and Authorization on page 543](#)
- [Configuring TACACS+ for Authentication and Authorization on page 547](#)
- [Managing Remote Authentication Servers on page 539](#)
- [Creating a Remote Authentication Server on page 540](#)
- [Modifying Authentication Settings on page 542](#)

---

## Managing Remote Authentication Servers

---

The **Administration > Auth Server** page allows you to configure remote authentication settings to allow users to log in to Junos Space from a remote authentication server. The **Auth Server** page includes two areas: **Auth Mode Settings** and **Remote Authentication Servers** table.

From the **Auth Mode Settings** area, you can select and save the Junos Space authentication mode: local, remote, or remote-local.

From the **Remote Authentication Servers** table area, you can:

- Create, modify, and delete remote authentication server connection settings and test the connection.
- Specify the remote authentication server connection order.

To select the remote authentication mode and manage remote authentication servers:

1. Select **Administration > Auth Servers**.
2. In the **Auth Mode Settings** area, select the authentication method you want to use.  
  
By default, Junos Space is in local authentication mode and the controls for the **Remote Authentication Server** table are disabled. If you select the Use **Remote Authentication** check box, the **Remote Authentication Only** and **Remote-Local Authentication** options are enabled.
3. Click **Save** to store the remote authentication mode setting you select.
4. In the **Authentication Servers** table Add a new remote authentication server by clicking Add (+). See [“Creating a Remote Authentication Server” on page 540](#).
5. Modify an authentication server by doubling clicking that server row in the table. See [“Modifying Authentication Settings” on page 542](#).

6. Delete an authentication server by selecting that row and clicking **Delete (X)** to remove an authentication server.
7. Click a row and select the arrows to move the server up and down the list. Up arrow will be grayed out if at the top of the list; down arrow will be grayed out if at the bottom of the list.

Sorting for columns are disabled, since there is an explicit sort order as determined by the arrows.

8. On selection of the server, click **Test Connection** to display a transient result of last connection test.
9. Confirm that you want to test the server connection.

After testing, the Status dialog box appears displaying the test results: success or failure.

10. Click OK.

If the connection results fails, ensure the server settings are correct.

#### **Related Documentation**

- [Remote Authentication Overview on page 537](#)
- [Understanding Junos Space Authentication Modes on page 538](#)
- [Creating a Remote Authentication Server on page 540](#)
- [Modifying Authentication Settings on page 542](#)
- [Junos Space Log In Behavior with Remote Authentication Enabled on page 549](#)

---

## Creating a Remote Authentication Server

---

To run Junos Space remote authentication, you must create one or more remote authentication servers and configure the server settings

To create a remote authentication server:

1. Select **Administration > Auth Servers**.
2. In the Auth Mode Settings area, select the authentication method you want to use.  
  
In local authentication mode, the controls for the Remote Authentication Server table are enabled so you can add authentication servers first and only switch to non-local authentication mode when you are ready later. If you select the Use Remote Authentication check box, you can then select the Remote Authentication Only or the Remote-Local Authentication option.
3. Click **Save** to store the remote authentication mode setting you select.
4. In the Authentication Servers table, add a new remote authentication server by clicking **Add (+)**.

The Create Auth Server dialog box appears.

5. Enter the required settings to connect Junos Space to the remote authentication server. See [Table 83 on page 541](#).

**Table 83: Remote Authentication Server Settings**

Setting	Description
Protocol	<p>The supported authentication protocols:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PAP—Password Authentication Protocol. This default protocol provides a two-way handshake during the initiation of the connection with the remote authentication server and Junos Space. PAP requires on a username and password RADIUS attributes. It is protected by the RADIUS shared secret.</li> <li>• CHAP—Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol. The remote authentication server sends a challenge and the Junos Space responds with the password and the challenge.</li> </ul>
IP Address	The IP address of the remote authentication server. The format is 1.0.0.1 to 223.255.255.254, excluding 127.x.x.x.
Port Number	The remote authentication server assigned UDP port number. The default is 1812. RADIUS has been officially assigned UDP port 1812 for RADIUS Authentication.
Shared Secret	The text string that serves as a password between the RADIUS server, proxy, and client.
Number of Tries	The number of retries that a device can attempt to contact a RADIUS authentication server. The default tries is 3.
Max Retry Timeout MSecs	The interval in milliseconds Junos Space waits for a reply from a remote authentication server. The default value is 6000. The retry timeout improves server access on busy networks where overall response times may vary widely from network to network.

6. In the Create Auth Server dialog box, click **OK**.  
The remote authentication server appears as a row at the bottom of the table.
7. In the Manage Auth Servers page, click **Test Connection** to verify the Junos Space connection to the remote authentication server.
  - If the test connection result is a success, the remote authentication server is reachable.
  - If the test connection result is a failure, the remote authentication server is unreachable.
  - If the test connection result displays the message *Mismatched shared secret*, then the configured shared secret for that server is incorrect. Ensure that you have entered the correct remote authentication server shared secret details.

- Related Documentation**
- [Remote Authentication Overview on page 537](#)
  - [Understanding Junos Space Authentication Modes on page 538](#)
  - [Modifying Authentication Settings on page 542](#)
  - [Configuring a RADIUS Server for Authentication and Authorization on page 543](#)

---

## Modifying Authentication Settings

The Manage Authentication Servers page allows you to change Junos Space authentication mode and remote authentication server connection settings.

To modify remote authentication settings:

1. In the Mode Settings area, change to the authentication method you want to use.  
  
By default, Junos Space is in local authentication mode and the controls for the **Remote Authentication Server** table are disabled. If you select the Use **Remote Authentication** check box, the **Remote Authentication Only** and **Remote-Local Authentication** options are enabled. Mousing over the help icon, displays a description of the available authentication modes.
2. Click **Save** to store the remote authentication mode setting you select.
3. In the Authentication Servers table click the server edit icon that you want to modify. See [“Creating a Remote Authentication Server” on page 540](#).

The Modify Authentication Server dialog box appears.

4. Change the remote authentication server settings you want to change.  
  
For a description of the available remote authentication server, see [“Creating a Remote Authentication Server” on page 540](#).
5. In the Create Auth Server dialog box, click **OK**.

The modified remote authentication server settings are saved in the database.

6. On the Manage Auth Servers page, click **Test Connection** to verify the Junos Space connection to the remote authentication server.

If the connection is successful, you see **Remote Authentication Server # is reachable**. If the connection is unsuccessful, you see **Remote Authentication Server # is unreachable**. Check to ensure that you have entered the correct remote authentication server settings.

- Related Documentation**
- [Remote Authentication Overview on page 537](#)
  - [Understanding Junos Space Authentication Modes on page 538](#)
  - [Creating a Remote Authentication Server on page 540](#)
  - [Managing Remote Authentication Servers on page 539](#)
  - [Junos Space Log In Behavior with Remote Authentication Enabled on page 549](#)

## Configuring a RADIUS Server for Authentication and Authorization

Junos Space supports authorization of users from a RADIUS server. Using the Platform > Administration > Manage Auth Servers workspace, you can configure a RADIUS server to authenticate and authorize users to log in exclusively from a centralized location using one or more RADIUS remote authentication servers. You can also authenticate and authorize users to log in to Junos Space using both local and remote authentication and authorization.

Authorization data in the RADIUS server are stored as vendor-specific attributes (VSAs). Therefore, you need to update the Junos dictionary file (juniper.dct) in the RADIUS server with the Junos Space defined VSA (Juniper-Junospace-Profiles). Users in the RADIUS server database should be assigned VSAs, the values of which must correspond to the remote profiles created in the Junos Space server.



**NOTE:** You must create remote profiles in the Junos Space server before you configure users at the RADIUS server for authorization (see [“Creating a Remote Profile” on page 429](#)).

To configure VSAs (Steel-Belted RADIUS):

1. Add the Junos Space VSA to the Juniper dictionary file (juniper.dct).  
`ATTRIBUTE Juniper-Junospace-Profiles Juniper-VSA(11, string) r`
2. Assign a remote profile to the user using the Juniper-Junospace-Profiles attribute.

To configure VSAs (Free RADIUS):

1. Add the Junos Space VSA to the Juniper dictionary file (dictionary.juniper).  
`ATTRIBUTE Juniper-Junospace-Profiles 11 String`
2. Assign a remote profile to the user using the VSA. For example:

```
"guestuser" Auth-Type:=PAP, User-Password:="test@123"
Juniper-Junospace-Profiles = "guestprofile"
```



**NOTE:** The remote profiles created in Junos Space are not automatically synchronized to the RADIUS server for selection. The administrator must manually enter the correct remote profile name.

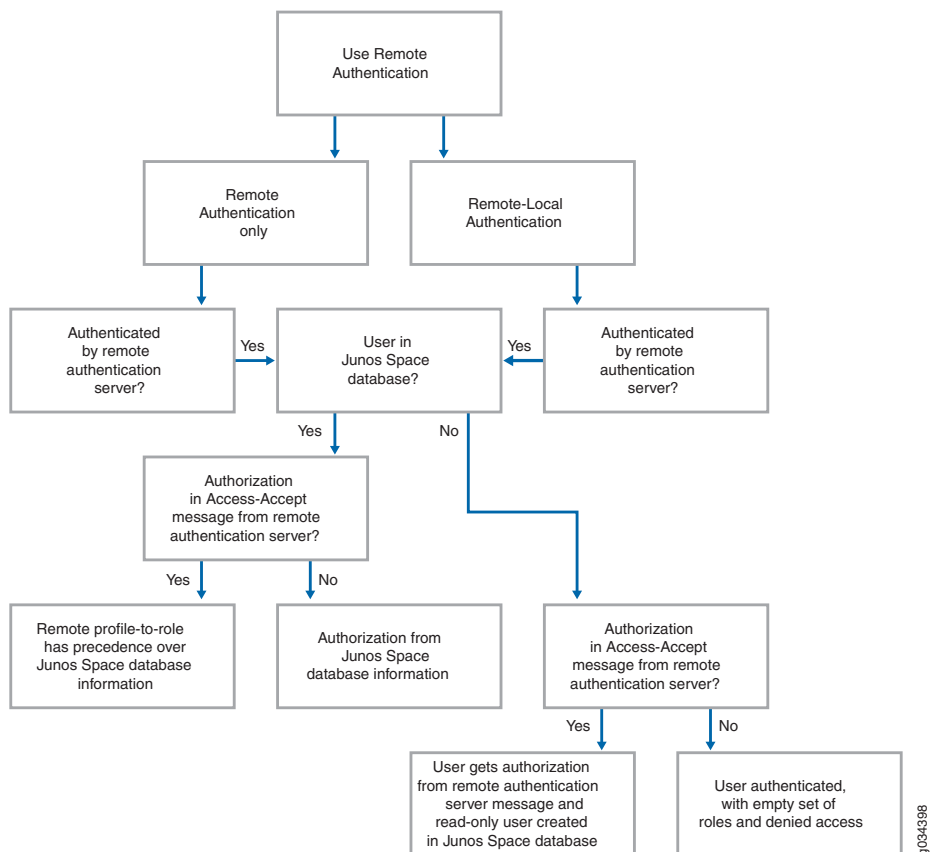
To authenticate and authorize users from the RADIUS server:

1. Navigate to **Administration > Auth Servers**.
2. Under Auth Mode Setting, select the Use Remote Authentication check box.
3. Select either Remote Authentication Only or Remote-Local Authentication.

System behavior differs under these two cases. Some differences occur when a remote RADIUS server rejects authentication of the user. There are also differences in the source of authorization depending on what answer the RADIUS server returns.

If neither Remote Authentication Only nor Remote-Local Authentication is selected, no RADIUS server is used, and the user is authenticated in the Junos Space database. Authorization is done from the roles present there.

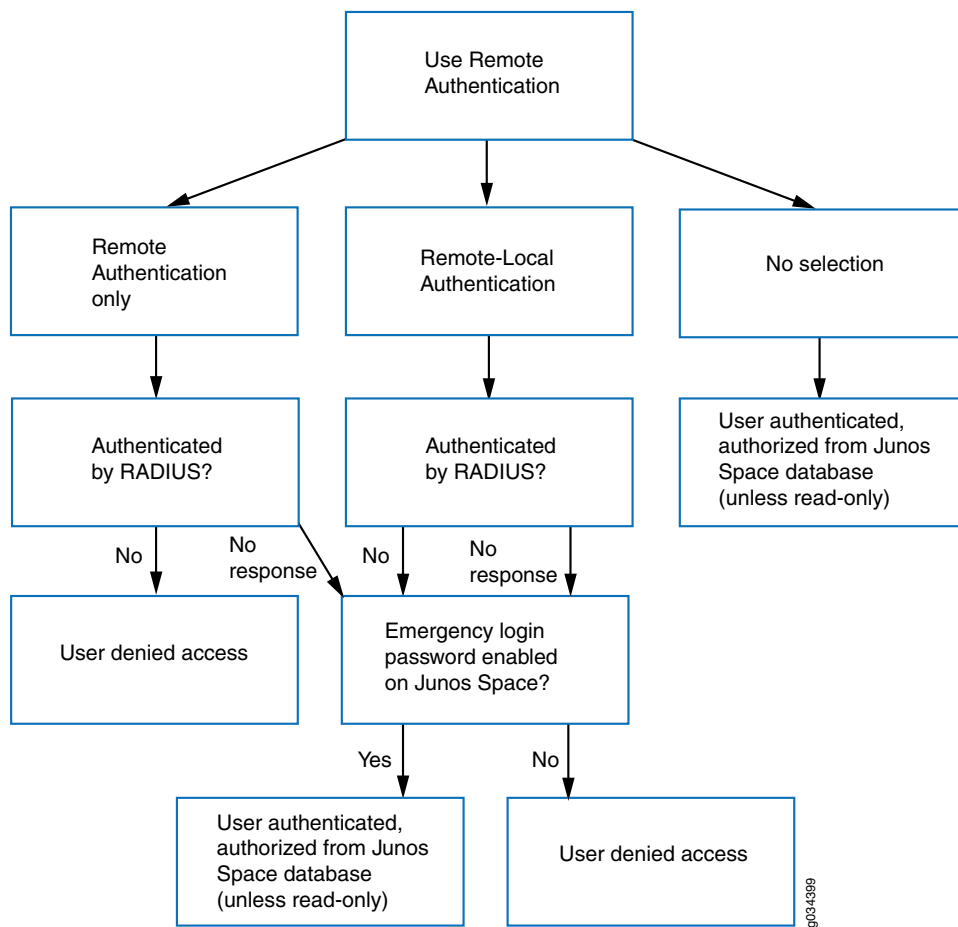
Figure 1 shows the decision tree underlying system behavior when either Remote Authentication Only or Remote-Local Authentication is chosen and a remote RADIUS server accepts the user.



9/03/4398



Figure 2 shows the results when a remote RADIUS server either rejects the user or does not respond at all.



Notes about the figures follow.

#### *User is authenticated by RADIUS server*

If the user is authenticated from one of the configured remote RADIUS servers, behavior is the same under both the remote-only and the remote-local options. One of two scenarios is true:

- The user does not exist in the Junos Space database.

In this case, a new user (read-only) entity is created automatically by the system and added in the Junos Space database. Two audit logs are generated, one showing the details of the remote profile assigned to the user, and another showing the details of the user login.

You cannot modify the read-only user to assign roles. This user is differentiated by a different icon on the Manage Users screen.

If any read-only user is removed from the RADIUS server, then you must manually remove that user from the Junos Space database.

If no authorization information is present in the Access-Accept response from the RADIUS server, then the read-only user is authenticated with an empty set of roles.

- The user exists in the Junos Space database.

If authorization information is present in the Access-Accept response from the RADIUS server, the user potentially has two sets of roles: the remote profile-to-role mapping from the remote RADIUS server, and the roles stored in the Junos Space database. For authorization of this user, the remote profile-to-role mapping is used, rather than the Junos Space database information.

If no authorization information is present in the Access-Accept response from the RADIUS server, the authorization information is picked up from the local Junos Space database.

*RADIUS server does not respond*

If the RADIUS server is not responding and if the user exists in the Junos Space database and any emergency login password is enabled for this user, the user is authenticated by Junos Space and is authorized with the roles present in the local Junos Space database. (This rule does not apply to read-only users.)

*RADIUS server rejects the user*

If the user is rejected by the remote RADIUS server:

- In the Remote Authentication Only case, the user is denied access.
- In the Remote-Local Authentication case, the result depends upon whether this user exists in the Junos Space database and an emergency login password has been enabled for this user locally. If these conditions are not met, the user is denied access. If it has, the user is authenticated by Junos Space and is authorized with the roles present in the local Junos Space database. (This rule does not apply to read-only users.)

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Remote Authentication Overview on page 537](#)
- [Understanding Junos Space Authentication Modes on page 538](#)
- [Managing Remote Authentication Servers on page 539](#)
- [Creating a Remote Authentication Server on page 540](#)
- [Modifying Authentication Settings on page 542](#)
- [Configuring TACACS+ for Authentication and Authorization on page 547](#)
- [Junos Space Log In Behavior with Remote Authentication Enabled on page 549](#)

## Configuring TACACS+ for Authentication and Authorization

Junos Space supports authentication and authorization of users from one or more TACACS+ servers. (A combination of TACACS+ and RADIUS servers is also supported.) If you configure multiple servers, they will be tried during authentication in the order listed in the user interface. If the first server accessed is not reachable or there is a shared-secret mismatch, the next one is tried. The results are the same as those described for RADIUS authentication and authorization.

To add a TACACS+ remote authentication server:

1. Select **Administration > Auth Servers**.
2. In the Auth Mode Settings area, select the authentication method you want to use.  
  
In local authentication mode, the controls for the Remote Authentication Server table are enabled so you can add authentication servers first and then switch to non-local authentication mode only when you are ready later. If you select the Use Remote Authentication check box, you can then select the Remote Authentication Only or the Remote-Local Authentication option.
3. Click **Save** to store the remote authentication mode setting you select.
4. In the Authentication Servers table, add a new remote authentication server by clicking Add (+).

The Create Auth Server dialog box appears.

5. Enter the required settings to connect Junos Space to the TACACS+ remote authentication server. See [Table 84 on page 547](#).

**Table 84: TACACS+ Remote Authentication Server Settings**

Setting	Description
Server Type	The type of server to be added. Select TACACS+ to add TACACS+ as the remote server.
Server Name	The name of the server.
Protocol	The supported authentication protocols: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PAP—Password Authentication Protocol</li> <li>• CHAP—Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol</li> </ul>
IP Address	The IP address of the remote authentication server.
Port Number	The remote authentication server assigned TCP port number. The default is 49.
Shared Secret	The text string that serves as a password between the TACACS+ server, proxy, and client.
Number of Tries	The number of retries that a device can attempt to contact a TACACS+ authentication server. The default is 3 tries.

Table 84: TACACS+ Remote Authentication Server Settings (*continued*)

Setting	Description
Max Retry Timeout MSecs	The interval in milliseconds that Junos Space waits for a reply from a remote authentication server. The default value is 6000.

6. In the Create Auth Server dialog box, click **OK**.
7. In the Manage Auth Servers page, click **Test Connection** to verify the Junos Space connection to the remote authentication server.
  - If the test connection result is a success, the Remote Authentication Server is reachable.
  - If the test connection result is a failure, the Remote Authentication Server is unreachable.
  - If the test connection result displays the message "Mismatched Shared Secret," then the configured shared secret for that server is incorrect. Ensure that you have entered the correct remote authentication server shared secret details.

### Configuring TACACS+ Authorization

Authorization data in the TACACS+ server are stored as attribute-value (A-V) pairs. The A-V pair contains the name of the remote profile. Therefore, you must configure users in the TACACS+ server with the A-V pair values corresponding to the remote profiles created in the Junos Space server to represent the user's roles.

When Junos Space queries the TACACS+ server for user authorization, the TACACS+ server's junospace-exec service returns the remote profile name for that user. Junos Space determines the user's role or roles from this response.

To assign roles to the user using the remote profile name, you can configure the network-management-profiles A-V pair for the junospace-exec service on the TACACS+ server. For example:

```

user = guestuser
{
  pap = cleartext "test@123"
  service = junospace-exec
  {
    network-management-profiles = guest_profile
  }
}

```

### Related Documentation

- [Remote Authentication Overview on page 537](#)
- [Understanding Junos Space Authentication Modes on page 538](#)
- [Managing Remote Authentication Servers on page 539](#)
- [Creating a Remote Authentication Server on page 540](#)
- [Modifying Authentication Settings on page 542](#)

- [Configuring a RADIUS Server for Authentication and Authorization on page 543](#)
- [Junos Space Log In Behavior with Remote Authentication Enabled on page 549](#)

## Junos Space Log In Behavior with Remote Authentication Enabled

This topic describes Junos Space log in behavior with remote authentication only or remote-local authentication enabled.

### Login Behavior with Remote Authentication Only Enabled



**WARNING:** To avoid a BEAST TLS 1.0 attack, whenever you log in to Junos Space in a browser tab or window, make sure that tab or window was not previously used to surf a non-https website. Best practice is to close your browser and relaunch it before logging in to Junos Space.

- The user logs in with the correct credentials:
  - As long as the user's password is on the remote server, login is successful.
  - If the first remote authentication server is present, log in success or failure solely depends on the password stored there, as no other servers are consulted. If the first authentication server is not reachable, the second server is connected in the order specified. If no authentication server is reachable, Junos Space tries the local password in the Junos Space database. If the password matches, the user logs in successfully.



**NOTE:** For Remote authentication, most users should not have a local password. The local password in this case is for emergency purposes, when the remote authentication servers are unreachable.

- The user logs in with incorrect credentials or the user does not exist on the remote authentication server:
  - Access to Junos Space is denied.



**NOTE:** Authentication servers, for security purposes, will not distinguish between these two cases. Therefore, Junos Space must always treat these type of logins as an authentication failure. Once Junos Space receives a response from an authentication server, the only options are immediate success or failure. No other servers are contacted.

- If no authentication servers are reachable, Junos Space tries the local password. If the local password does not exist, or if the credentials do not match, logging into Junos Space fails.

- The user attempts to log in but the remote server is down—See the previous two log in behaviors for details. Notify the Junos Space administrator when a remote authentication server is down.
- The user attempt to login when the remote authentication server has the correct credentials, but there is no equivalent user in Junos Space. The user can not log in to Junos Space because there is no role information.
- The user attempts to login when the remote authentication server is configured for Challenge/Response:
  - If the remote authentication server indicates a challenge is required, it provides the challenge question. Junos Space displays the challenge question to the user on the Juniper login page, and waits for the user's response.
  - If the challenge question is answered correctly, it is possible that the authentication server may request additional challenges.
  - If the challenge question is answered incorrectly, it is possible that the authentication server may re-challenge the user with the same challenge, use a different challenge, or fail the login attempt completely. It's up to the authentication server configuration.
  - If the final challenge is answered correctly, the user logs in successfully.

#### Log In Behavior with Remote-Local Authentication Enabled



**WARNING:** To avoid a BEAST TLS 1.0 attack,, whenever you log in to Junos Space in a browser tab or window, make sure that tab or window was not previously used to surf a non-https website. Best practice is to close your browser and relaunch it before logging in to Junos Space.

- The user logs in with the correct credentials— Junos Space checks the remote authentication servers first. If authentication fails or if a server is unreachable, Junos Space tries to authenticate locally. If there is a Junos Space local password and the credentials match, the user logs in successfully.
- The user logs in with incorrect credentials— Junos Space checks the remote authentication servers first. If authentication fails or if a server is unreachable, Junos Space tries to authenticate locally. If there is a Junos Space local password and the credentials match, the user logs in successfully.
- The user attempts to login but the remote server is down— Authentication occurs using only the local password. If the password exists and there is a match, the user logs in successfully. If the password does not exist and there is no match, the user does not log in successfully.
- The user attempts to login when the remote authentication server has the correct credentials, but there is no equivalent user in Junos Space. The user can not log in.
- The user attempts to login when the remote authentication server is configured for Challenge/Response:

- If the remote authentication server indicates a challenge is required, it provides the challenge question. Junos Space displays the challenge question to the user on the Junos Space login page, and waits for the user's response.
- If the user answers challenge question correctly, it is possible that the authentication server may request additional challenges.
- If the user answers challenge question correctly, it is possible that the authentication server may re-challenge the user with the same challenge, use a different challenge, or fail the login attempt completely. It's up to the authentication server configuration.
- If the user answers challenge question correctly, log in is successful.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Remote Authentication Overview on page 537](#)
- [Logging In to Junos Space on page 3](#)
- [Understanding Junos Space Authentication Modes on page 538](#)
- [Creating a Remote Authentication Server on page 540](#)
- [Modifying Authentication Settings on page 542](#)





# Manage SMTP Servers

- [Managing Platform SMTP Servers on page 553](#)
- [Adding a Platform SMTP Server on page 553](#)

## Managing Platform SMTP Servers

---

You can configure one or several SMTP servers for use by Junos Space applications that need to transmit e-mail. For example, an application might use e-mail automatically to inform a support organization of an issue and might include logs or reports.

To configure and manage SMTP servers:

1. Select **Administration > SMTP Servers**.

The resulting screen lists all the configured servers. Only one can be the active server at one time. The active server is highlighted.

To add or delete an SMTP server:

1. Click the plus sign at the upper left of the screen to add a server.
2. Configure and add the server. See [“Adding a Platform SMTP Server” on page 553](#).
3. To delete a server, click the X at the upper left of the screen.

To change the active SMTP server:

- Click the arrow at the upper left of the screen to select the server you want to make active.

To test the connection to the server:

- Click the **Test Connection** button at the upper-right corner of the screen.

### Related Documentation

- [Adding a Platform SMTP Server on page 553](#)

## Adding a Platform SMTP Server

---

You can add an SMTP server to the list of configured servers to which applications can direct e-mail. To add an SMTP server, you must have administration privileges.

To add an SMTP server:

1. Select **Administration > SMTP Servers**.

2. In the resulting dialog box, click the plus sign in the upper-left corner.

The Create SMTP Server dialog box appears.

3. In the Server Name box, enter a name for the SMTP server, using alphanumeric values.
4. In the Host Address box, enter the IP address of the mail server.
5. Enter the port number.

The default port number is 587. This port number implies the use of SMTP authentication.

6. In the From Email Address box, enter the e-mail address of this server.

This address will appear as the sender of e-mails from the applications that are using this server.

7. (Optional) If you want to use the SMTP Authentication security protocol to check the credentials of the sender, select **Use SMTP Authentication**.

When you select this option, the related username and password boxes are enabled.

8. (Optional) In the User Name box, enter the username that you want used for authentication.

9. (Optional) Enter the authentication password twice in the Password boxes to confirm it.

10. (Optional) If you want to use Transportation Layer Security (a cryptographic protocol) for further protection, select the **Use TLS** box.



**NOTE:** Use of SMTP Authentication without a security protocol is not supported.

---

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Managing Platform SMTP Servers on page 553](#)

## CHAPTER 52

# Manage Tags

- [Overview on page 555](#)
- [Managing Tags on page 556](#)
- [Creating Tags on page 566](#)

### Overview

---

- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)

### Managing Tags Overview

Use Manage Tags to view tag information, and create, share, rename, or delete them, as well as selecting devices..

There are three roles relevant to tags:

- To access Manage Tags and perform the above-mentioned tasks, you must have the System Administrator role. You can create public and private tags. You can also create hierarchies of tags.
- To share user-defined tags by publishing them so that others can use them, you must have the Tag Administrator role.
- Any Junos Space user can tag, view, apply, and untag objects.

Tag names should not start with space, can not contain a comma, double quote, parentheses, and can not exceed 255 characters.

To use Tags:

1. Create a private or shared tag using the **Platform > Administration > Manage Tags > Create Tag** user interface. See [“Creating a Tag” on page 566](#).
2. Tag an object on an inventory page. For example you can tag an object on the **Platform > Manage Devices** inventory page. Once you tag an object, you can view or untag existing tags. See [“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#) and [“Untagging Objects” on page 565](#).

3. (Optional) Create hierarchical tags and manage them in the Tag Hierarchy pane in the Tag view on an inventory landing page for taggable objects (such as devices). See [“Managing Hierarchical Tags” on page 557](#).
4. Manage tags using the **Platform > Administration > Manage tags** inventory page. You can share, rename, or delete tags. See [“Viewing Tags” on page 564](#), [“Renaming Tags” on page 562](#), [“Deleting Tags” on page 563](#)

**Related Documentation**

- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)
- [Untagging Objects on page 565](#)
- [Filtering Inventory Using Tags on page 565](#)
- [Managing Hierarchical Tags on page 557](#)

---

## Managing Tags

- [Managing Tags on page 556](#)
- [Managing Hierarchical Tags on page 557](#)
- [Sharing a Tag on page 561](#)
- [Renaming Tags on page 562](#)
- [Deleting Tags on page 563](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)
- [Untagging Objects on page 565](#)
- [Filtering Inventory Using Tags on page 565](#)

## Managing Tags

You can use tags to label and categorize objects in your network, such as subnets, devices, services, users, customers, and so forth so you can filter, monitor, or perform batch actions on them without having to select each object separately. You can also use tags to select devices. The inventory page allows you to manage and manipulate personal tags you created. You must be the System Administrator role to manage tags.

The View Tags page is blank unless there are some public tags or private tags you created. Tags are only visible to you unless you have the Tag Administrator share them and make them public to all users. Tags created by other users are private and only visible to them unless the Tag Administrator shares them; making them public.

Manage all tags applied to inventory objects from the **Administration > Tags** inventory page. You can share, rename or delete tags. The Tags page is blank until you create one or more tags using the **Create Tag** icon.

### Viewing Tags

To view tags on the inventory page:

- All tags appear on the inventory page in tabular view listed alphabetically by tag name.

You can filter inventory objects by a tag name (see [“Filtering Inventory Using Tags” on page 565](#)).

### Viewing Tag Information

Tag data includes the tag name, access type, and the number of objects tagged by a particular tag. See [Table 85 on page 557](#).

**Table 85: Tag Information**

Tag Data	Description
Name	Unique tag name. Tag names cannot start with a space or be longer than 256 characters.
Access Type	Tags can either be public (shared) or private (visible only to the creator).
Tagged Object Count	The number of objects in all workspace inventory pages by the tag.

You can sort and hide columns. For more information about manipulating tables in tabular view, see [“Junos Space User Interface Overview” on page 9](#).

### Performing Actions on Tags

To perform an action on one or more tags:

1. Select one or more tags in the table.

Click a tag to select it. If you select one tag, you can perform all tag management actions. If you select two or more tags, you can only delete the tags.

2. Select a command from the Actions menu or right-click pop-up menu.

You can share (see [“Sharing a Tag” on page 561](#)), rename (see [“Renaming Tags” on page 562](#)), delete (see [“Deleting Tags” on page 563](#)), or deselect all selected tags.

#### Related Documentation

- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)
- [Untagging Objects on page 565](#)
- [Creating a Tag on page 566](#)

## Managing Hierarchical Tags

Hierarchical tags consist of multiple levels of tags within a single tag. You can use hierarchical tags to classify objects managed by Junos Space into categories and

subcategories. Hierarchical tagging uses other tags to classify a tag. The hierarchy allows you to drill down to the specific objects in Junos Space very easily.

A hierarchical tag contains parent and child tags. For example, if you have an existing tag named West Coast and you create another tag within this tag named California, then the West Coast tag is the parent tag and the California tag is the child tag.

You can view, create, update, and delete hierarchical tags using the **Devices > Tags** inventory page.

The **Tags** inventory page displays all the objects on the network managed by Junos Space using Tag and Tabular views.

You can use the Tag View icon to access this view. You can create and delete hierarchical tags as well as view them. You can also filter and display objects that are tagged with specific tags.

The Tag view is divided into two panes—Tag Hierarchy and Tabular View.

- Tag Hierarchy Pane—This pane appears on the left of the Tabular View pane. It displays a tree view of all the tags organized hierarchically.
  - Tabular View Pane—This pane appears on the right of the Tag Hierarchy pane. It displays a list of managed objects in a tabular form. If you select a particular tag in the tag hierarchy tree on the left, the objects associated with that particular tag are displayed in this pane.
- [Using the Tag Hierarchy Pane on page 558](#)
  - [Using the Tabular View Pane on page 561](#)

---

### Using the Tag Hierarchy Pane

The Tag Hierarchy pane displays all tags organized hierarchically in a tree view. You can view, create, update, and delete tags in this pane.

To display the Tag Hierarchy pane, click the Tag View icon on the **Manage Devices** inventory page.

- [Using the Tag Action Bar on page 559](#)
- [Using the Right-Click Menu— on page 559](#)
- [Using Drag-and-Drop on page 560](#)
- [Using the Quick Info Tool Tip on page 560](#)
- [Browsing Tagged Objects on page 560](#)
- [Viewing All Tags on page 560](#)
- [Adding a Child Tag on page 561](#)
- [Deleting a Tag on page 561](#)
- [Using Notification on page 561](#)

### ***Using the Tag Action Bar***

You can use the Tag Action bar to add a child tag or delete an existing tag in the tag hierarchy tree. The Tag Action bar has two buttons—the plus [+] button and the minus [-] button. You can click the plus [+] button to add a child tag and the minus [-] button to delete a tag in the tag hierarchy tree.

To add a child tag:

1. Select the tag in the tag hierarchy tree for which you want to add a child tag.
2. Click the plus [+] button on the Tag Action bar.

The Add New or Existing Tag dialog box appears.

3. Type a new tag name in the text box, or use the magnifying glass search icon to search and select an existing public tag to add as a child tag.
4. Click the **Add Tag** button.

A new child tag is added to the tag hierarchy.

To delete a tag:

1. Select the tag you want to delete in the tag hierarchy tree.
2. Click the minus [-] button on the Tag Action bar.

If the selected tag appears in multiple locations, it is deleted from the current location.

If the selected tag appears in a single location only, then a confirmation dialog box prompts you to confirm the deletion.

### ***Using the Right-Click Menu—***

When you right-click a tag in the tag hierarchy tree, a right-click menu appears.

This menu displays the **Add Tag**, **Remove Tag**, and **Modify Tag** options. Use the **Add Tag** option to add a new child tag and the **Remove Tag** option to delete a tag.

To add a child tag using the right-click menu:

1. Right-click a tag in the tag hierarchy tree for which you want to add a child tag.

The right-click menu appears.

2. Click the **Add Tag** option on the right-click menu.

The Add New or Existing Tag dialog box appears.

3. Type a new tag name in the text box, or use the magnifying glass search icon to search and select an existing public tag to add as a child tag.
4. Click the **Add Tag** button.

A new child tag is added to the tag hierarchy.

To delete a tag using the right-click menu:

1. Select the tag you want to delete in the tag hierarchy tree.
2. Click the **Remove Tag** option on the right-click menu.

If the selected tag appears in multiple locations, it is deleted from the current location.

If the selected tag appears in a single location only, then a confirmation dialog box prompts you to confirm the deletion.

### ***Using Drag-and-Drop***

You can drag a tag from one location and drop it in another location to manipulate the tag hierarchy. When you drag and drop a tag from one location to another, the corresponding tagged objects are not affected. For example, If the tag is associated with five devices, then it remains associated with the same five devices after you drag and drop the tag from one location to another.

### ***Using the Quick Info Tool Tip***

The Quick Info tool tip provides quick and immediate statistics about a tag. You can drag the mouse over a tag name or a tag icon in the tag hierarchy tree to get a quick summary about its tagged objects.

To view the tool tip for a tag:

1. Navigate to a particular tag in the tag hierarchy tree.
2. Drag the mouse over the tag icon or the tag name.

Brief statistics about the tagged objects appear.

### ***Browsing Tagged Objects***

When you browse the tag hierarchy tree and select a tag, the corresponding tagged objects appear in the Tabular View pane. When you select the root node in the tag hierarchy tree, all tagged objects appear in the Tabular View pane without any filtering.

You can click the [X] icon in the Tabular View pane to clear tag filtering. When you clear tag filtering, the root node in the tag hierarchy tree is automatically selected and all tagged objects appear in the Tabular View pane.

### ***Viewing All Tags***

By default, the tag hierarchy tree displays tags relevant to the **Manage Devices** inventory page only. In this mode, only those tags appear that are either empty or that tag at least one object on the inventory page.

You can also view all public tags in the tag hierarchy tree.

To view all public tags:

1. Navigate to the Tags toolbar at the top of the Tag Hierarchy pane.
2. Select the **Show All Tags** option from the Tags list.



All public tags appear in the Tabular View pane on the right.

### ***Adding a Child Tag***

You can use either the Tag Action bar or the right-click menu to add a child tag to the tag hierarchy tree. To add a child tag using the Tag Action bar, see [“Using the Tag Action Bar” on page 559](#). To add a child tag using the right-click menu, see [“Using the Right-Click Menu—” on page 559](#).

### ***Deleting a Tag***

You can use either the Tag Action bar or the right-click menu to delete a tag from the tag hierarchy tree. To delete a tag using the Tag Action bar, see [“Using the Tag Action Bar” on page 559](#). To delete a tag using the right-click menu, see [“Using the Right-Click Menu—” on page 559](#).

### ***Using Notification***

When multiple Junos Space users view the same tag view on the **Manage Devices** inventory page, any change a user makes is immediately updated in the other tag views. Changes include creating, updating, and deleting tags in the Tag View pane, and tagging objects in the Tabular View pane.

### ***Using the Tabular View Pane***

---

The Tabular View pane displays all managed objects as rows in a table. When you select a particular tag in the tag hierarchy tree, its corresponding tagged objects are displayed in this pane.

In this view, you can tag objects and also search for objects tagged with a particular tag.

Tagging an object using a hierarchical tag in the Tabular View pane is similar to tagging an object using a nonhierarchical tag on any application workspace manage inventory page. For information on how to tag an object, see [“Tagging an Object” on page 563](#).

To search for specific tagged objects:

1. Navigate to the Devices page.
2. Select a public tag in the search box.

The tag hierarchy tree automatically navigates to the selected tag, and the Tabular View pane displays the objects tagged with that particular tag only.

### **Related Documentation**

- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)

## **Sharing a Tag**

User-defined tags are always created as private tags initially. When you feel that your tag has public value, sharing a tag makes it public for all users to use it to tag objects on a workspace inventory page. To share a tag, you must have Tag Administrator privileges.

To share a tag.

1. Select **Administration > Tags**.

The **Tags** inventory page is displayed.

2. Select one or more private tags on the inventory page.
3. Select **Share Tag** from the Actions menu or right-click to select **Share Tag** from the pop-up menu.

The **Share Tag** status box appears to indicate whether the tag sharing is successful.

You can also share a tag when you create one (see [“Creating a Tag” on page 566](#)).

4. Click **OK**.

The tag **Access Type** changes on the inventory table from **private** to **public**.

#### Related Documentation

- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)
- [Managing Tags on page 556](#)
- [Renaming Tags on page 562](#)
- [Deleting Tags on page 563](#)
- [Creating a Tag on page 566](#)

## Renaming Tags

The Rename Tag command provides you flexibility to reorganize or re-categorize managed objects according to your changing needs.

To rename a tag:

1. Select **Administration > Tags** inventory page.
2. Select the tag you want to rename.
3. Select **Rename Tag** from the Actions menu.

The **Rename Tag** dialog box appears.

4. Type a tag name in the **New Name** text field.

A tag name should not start with a space, cannot contain a comma, double quote, parentheses, or exceed 255 characters

5. Click **Rename**.

The old tag is renamed and saved in the database. You see the renamed tag in the inventory page.

When you navigate to the manage inventory page from which you created the tag, you will see the renamed tag name in the Actions > **View Tags** dialog box and in the search list.

- Related Documentation**
- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)
  - [Managing Tags on page 556](#)
  - [Sharing a Tag on page 561](#)
  - [Deleting Tags on page 563](#)
  - [Creating a Tag on page 566](#)
  - [Filtering Inventory Using Tags on page 565.](#)

## Deleting Tags

Use the Delete Tags action to remove managed object tags you no longer need.

To delete a tag:

1. Select **Administration > Tags** inventory page.  
The **View Tags** page appears.
2. In the **View Tags** table, select one or more tags you want to delete.
3. Select **Delete Tag** from the Actions menu. You can also right-click the selected inventory object(s) and select **Delete Tags** from the pop-up menu.

The **Delete Tags** dialog box appears to confirm that you want to delete the tag.

4. Click **Delete**.

The tag is removed from the database and no longer appears in the View Tags table.

- Related Documentation**
- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)
  - [Managing Tags on page 556](#)
  - [Sharing a Tag on page 561](#)
  - [Renaming Tags on page 562](#)
  - [Creating a Tag on page 566](#)

## Tagging an Object

You can create user-defined tags in an application workspace inventory page to easily categorize and organize managed objects. Subsequently, you can view and use these tags to easily search for multiple objects to view status or perform a bulk action on them without having to select each individually.

To tag an object:

1. Navigate to an application workspace manage inventory page. For example, select **Devices > Device Management**.
2. Select the inventory object(s) you want to tag.
3. Select **Tag It** from the Actions menu.

The **Apply Tag** dialog box appears.

4. Select or type the tag name in the text box.

If you have existing tags, start to type a tag name in the name field. Existing tags appear in the selection box.

5. Click **Apply Tag**. This action tags the object and stores the tag in the database.

#### Related Documentation

- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)
- [Managing Tags on page 556](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)
- [Untagging Objects on page 565](#)
- [Filtering Inventory Using Tags on page 565](#)
- [Creating a Tag on page 566](#)

## Viewing Tags

The View Tags action from application workspace inventory pages allows you to see all of the tags that you have assigned a managed object on your network. You must first tag a managed object to see its tags.

Use tags to label and categorize objects in your network, such as subnets, devices, services, users, customers, and so forth so you can filter, monitor, or perform batch actions on them without having to select each object separately.

Tags created by you are private and only visible to you unless you have the Tag Administrator share them to the public domain, making them public. Tags created by other users are only visible to them unless the Tag Administrator shares them, then you can view them.

To view tags on an inventory object:

1. Navigate to a workspace inventory page.
2. Select only one inventory object for which you want to view tags.
3. Select **View Tags** from the Actions menu. You can also right-click an object and select **View Tags** from the pop-up menu.

The **View Tags** dialog box appears with a tag list displaying all tags applied to the selected object.

4. Click **OK**.

#### Related Documentation

- [Managing Tags on page 556](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Untagging Objects on page 565](#)

## Untagging Objects

You can untag or remove a tag from an object on a workspace inventory page. You can only select one object at a time to untag.

To untag an object:

1. Navigate to a workspace inventory page. For example, select **Devices > Device Management**.
2. Select one object on the workspace inventory page at a time.
3. Select **Untag** in the Actions menu or right-click an object and select **Untag** from the pop-up menu.

The **Untag the Object** dialog box appears.

4. Select the tag that you want to remove and
5. Click **Untag**.

### Related Documentation

- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)
- [Managing Tags on page 556](#)
- [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
- [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)
- [Creating a Tag on page 566](#)

## Filtering Inventory Using Tags

You can use tags to filter objects on a workspace inventory page. Filtering allows you to view only the objects that you want categorized by the tag name.

To filter using a tag:

1. On the workspace inventory page, click the magnifying glass in the search field at the top-right of the page. You can also type the first letter of the tag name.

The list appears with the object names on the top and the tag names on the bottom. (If you clicked a letter in the search field, only the tag names starting with that letter would appear.)

2. Click a tag name in the list.

Only the inventory objects with that tag name appear. You see **Filtered By the tag** name at the top-left of the page.

3. Click the red X to remove the filtering from the inventory page.

In another aspect of filtering, on some pages, you can see a preview of the tagged objects you selected. For example, in the Configuration Files workspace, in **Configuration Files > Backup Config Files**, you can select devices by tags. This form of filtering enables you to verify that you are performing the current operation on the correct objects.

- Related Documentation**
- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)
  - [Managing Tags on page 556](#)
  - [Tagging an Object on page 563](#)
  - [Viewing Tags on page 564](#)
  - [Untagging Objects on page 565](#)
  - [Creating a Tag on page 566](#)

---

## Creating Tags

- [Creating a Tag on page 566](#)

### Creating a Tag

To create a tag:

1. Select **Administration > Tags > Create Tag** task.

The **Create Tags** dialog box appears.

2. If necessary select the **Share Tag** option.

When you share a tag, all users can use that tag. Only the Tag Administrator can publish tags to the public domain.

3. Type a tag name in the text box.

A tag name should not

- Exceed 255 characters
- Start with a space
- Contain special characters such as commas, double quotes, parentheses, question marks, etc.

4. Click **Create**.

The tag appears in the **View tags** inventory page. If the tag is shared it is public; if not it is private.

- Related Documentation**
- [Managing Tags Overview on page 555](#)
  - [Managing Tags on page 556](#)
  - [Sharing a Tag on page 561](#)
  - [Renaming Tags on page 562](#)
  - [Deleting Tags on page 563](#)

# Manage Perm Labels

- [Managing Permission Labels Overview on page 567](#)
- [Working With Permission Labels on page 569](#)

## Managing Permission Labels Overview

---

Permission Labels are the tool by which you can enforce object-level access control; for example, you can restrict a user with the role of Device Manager to a subset of devices that you choose. Working with permission labels is therefore an extension to user management.

Permission Labeling enables you to define users' access to objects in—or elements of—Junos Space. These objects can be users, roles, profiles, configlets, scripts or devices. Prior to the release of Junos Space 11.3, access was associated solely with roles. It was the role that defined the elements a user could access; for example, a Device Admin could access the Devices workspace, and work with all the devices there. Using Permission Labels enables you to restrict a user's access to subordinate parts of the elements associated with his or her role.

You can now confer the Device Admin role on a user, and then assign a permission label to that user to restrict him or her to managing only devices with the same label, as opposed to all the devices in Junos Space.

Similarly, you can attach a permission label to the users in a particular location (for example, San Francisco), and assign the same label to a user administrator. Provided all the users in other locations are also labeled—but differently—that user administrator's activities are confined to managing users in San Francisco.

The same principle applies to roles. You can attach a label to the roles for managing other applications, such as Service Now or Network Activate, and then assign the same label to appropriately qualified users.

You could also assign permission label to the configlets and then assign that label to the user so that the user could work on only those configlets assigned to them.

Similarly, the user could also be restricted from using all the scripts. This can be done by assigning permission label to certain scripts and then assigning that label to the user. When the user tries to access the script, they will be presented with only the script assigned to them through the permission label.

Working with permission labels is a three step process, involving the creation of a label, assigning that label to a user, and attaching that label to an object. You can choose not to use permission labels at all. However, once you decide to implement them, they have an effect on all users and objects, in that labeling an object immediately restricts it to viewing by users with the same label. Only users with the appropriate roles can manipulate objects in Junos Space, and without the appropriate distribution of permission labels *in addition*, even users with the appropriate roles cannot see labelled objects.

These are the possible combinations:

- If you do not assign a label to a user, that user can see all the unlabeled objects necessary to perform the tasks associated with his or her role.
- If you assign a label to a user, but do not attach the same label to any objects, the effect is the same as above.
- If you do not attach a label to an object, all users with the appropriate role can see that object.
- If you attach a label to an object, only users to whom the same label has been assigned, and who have the appropriate role can see and access that object.

Examples of labelling discrepancies:

- You attach a label to some of your devices, but you forget to assign that label to any users. Result: only users with the Permission Label Manager role can see those devices.
- You attach a “UK” label to all your devices, but you assign the device manager user who is supposed to manage them the “London” label. Result: the device manager cannot even see the devices.
- You attach the “Bengaluru” permission label to some of your devices. You assign the same label to the person who is supposed to manage *only* those devices, not the devices in Chennai. You forget to label the Chennai devices. Result: the device manager in Bengaluru can see all the devices, but *only* he or she can see the Bengaluru devices.

Both objects and users can have multiple permission labels that can be assigned and attached or removed at any time. (However, a user who is both a Permission Label Manager and a Device Administrator can execute operations only on devices.)



**NOTE:** If a system is upgraded from a previous release to 11.3, all elements are global by default (no permission labels applied), and users have no pre-assigned permission labels. The Super Administrator can execute all the new Permission Label tasks.

---

Because assigning permission labels amounts to controlling access, it requires a special role, Permission Label Administrator. Any user who can perform this task can see all the labels for all the objects appropriate to his or her other roles. In other words, to label configuration files, you also need to have the Configuration File Manager role. To the Permission Label Administrator role belong three tasks:

- Design permission label—Create and delete permission labels.



- Assign permission label—Assign permission labels to users
- Attach permission label—Attach permission labels to objects

Instructions for performing these three tasks are in [“Working With Permission Labels” on page 569](#). You might wish to separate these tasks because you might not want a user to create an object such as a device, label it, and then ensure only he or she has access to that object.

Operations with permission labels generate Audit Log entries, showing not only the usual level of detail with the task performed, etc., but also information about the person who performed the task:

- Login ID
- First name
- Last name
- Email address
- Assigned role

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Working With Permission Labels on page 569](#)
- [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)
- [Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space on page 406](#)
- [Predefined Administrator Roles on page 407](#)

---

## Working With Permission Labels

From an efficiency perspective, it works best to create all your permission labels at once. Therefore, before you begin, it is best to map out what you intend to do, so that you can correctly match up permission labels with objects and users. For a discussion of the consequences of mismatching them, see [“Managing Permission Labels Overview” on page 567](#).

Once you have created your permission labels, you assign them to users and attach them to objects. The sequence in which you assign and attach does not matter.

These instructions assume you have prepared your mapping, and that the users to whom you will assign permission labels already have the appropriate roles (see [“Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space” on page 406](#)).

Both objects and users can have multiple permission labels that can be assigned and attached or removed at any time.

1. [Creating Permission Labels on page 570](#)
2. [Assigning Permission Labels to Users on page 570](#)
3. [Attaching Permission Labels to Objects on page 571](#)

## Creating Permission Labels

Note that you can only create, delete, or rename permission labels if your role includes the Design Permission Label task (see [“Role-Based Access Control Overview” on page 405](#)).

To create a permission label:

1. Select **Administration > Perm Labels** and select the Create Permission Label icon.  
The Create Permission Label dialog box appears.
2. In the Label Name box, enter an alphanumeric name. Spaces are acceptable, if not desirable.

The tag appears, listed on the Manage Permission Labels page.

You can rename or delete a permission label by selecting the label on the Manage Permission Labels page and selecting those commands from the Actions menu.



**NOTE:** Every instance of a label is renamed. Users assigned the old label now automatically have the new, renamed label.

## Assigning Permission Labels to Users

Note that you can only assign permission labels to users or remove them from users if your role includes the Assign Permission Label task (see [“Role-Based Access Control Overview” on page 405](#)).

To assign a permission label to a user:

1. Select **Administration > Perm Labels** and select the Create Permission Label icon.  
The Perm Labels page appears.
2. Select the permission label you want to assign and select **Assign Permission Labels to Users** from the Actions menu.

The Assign Permission Labels to Users page appears.

3. Select the appropriate user(s). To page through the table, use the controls on the status bar at the bottom of the table. This also shows the total number of pages of records, the current page being displayed, and the number of items per page, which can be adjusted.

The following information appears for each user: login IDs, their last and first names, and the permission labels already assigned to them.

4. Click **Assign**.

The Manage Permission Labels page reappears, displaying the label name with the Assigned Users Count adjusted to reflect the number of users assigned to the label.

You can un-assign or remove a permission label from a user by selecting the label on the Manage Permission Labels page and selecting **Remove permission label from user** from

the Actions menu. Only one label at a time can be removed, although you can remove it from multiple users at the same time.

## Attaching Permission Labels to Objects

In the context of permission labels, objects can be devices, profile, role, configlets, scripts, Service Now devices and users.

Note that you can only assign permission labels to objects or remove them from objects if your role includes the Attach Permission Label task (see [“Role-Based Access Control Overview” on page 405](#)).

To attach a permission label to an object:

1. Select **Administration > Perm Labels** and select the Create Permission Label icon.

The Perm Labels page appears.

2. Select the permission label you want to assign, and select **Attach/Detach Permission Labels to Objects** from the Actions menu.

The **Manage Permission Label and Objects** page appears. On the left, it displays a list of object types to which permission labels have already been attached. On the right, it displays a list of the actual objects of the type highlighted on the left, to which labels have already been attached. If no labels have yet been attached, these lists are empty.

3. If necessary, to select the type of object to which the label is to be attached, click the plus icon to add a managed object type. This saves you having to search through all the objects managed by Junos Space.

There are seven types of objects to which you can attach a label:

- Users—User Object—Managed object type for admin user
- Roles—Role Object—Managed object type for RBAC (Role-based access control) Role, which actually means any role
- Devices—Device-Object—Managed object type for device objects.
- ServiceNow End Customer Device—Managed object type that displays ServiceNow end customer devices.

The ServiceNow End Customer Device object will display end customer devices received in partner mode. This object does not display devices received in Standalone or End customer mode.

- CLIConfiglet—CLIConfiglet Object—Object type to assign permission label for CLI configlet.
- Device scripts—Device Script Object—Managed object type for device script objects.
- Profile Object—Object type to assign permission label for remote profiles.

The **Add More Object Types** dialog box appears, displaying the names of the objects not yet in the table and their descriptions.

4. Select one or more object types and click **OK**.

The **Manage Permission Label and Objects** page reappears, now displaying the type(s) of object you selected in the last step.

5. To choose the particular object to which a label is to be attached, select it from any of the following object types: **Device Object**, **Role Object**, **User Object**, **ServiceNow devices**, **CLIconfiglet Objects**, **Device Scripts Object**, and **Profile Objects** if it is already displayed, otherwise click the plus icon.

The **Add More Objects** dialog box appears. At the top of the dialog box appears the name of the label with which you are currently working. Below is a table showing the names of the individual objects in the category you selected, their descriptions, and the labels already attached to them.

6. Select the appropriate object(s). To page through the table, use the controls on the status bar at the bottom of the table. This also shows the total number of pages of records, the current page being displayed, and the number of items per page, which can be adjusted.
7. Click **OK**.

The **Manage Permission Label and Objects** page reappears, now displaying the type of object plus the individual objects you selected in the last step.

You can unattach or remove a permission label from an object by selecting the label on the Manage Permission Labels page and selecting **Remove permission label from object** from the Actions menu. Only one label at a time can be removed, although you can remove it from multiple objects at the same time.

#### Related Documentation

- [Managing Permission Labels Overview on page 567](#)
- [Role-Based Access Control Overview on page 405](#)
- [Understanding How to Configure Users to Manage Objects in Junos Space on page 406](#)

## CHAPTER 54

# Manage DMI Schemas

- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)
- [Updating a DMI Schema on page 576](#)
- [Creating a tgz File for Updating a DMI Schema on page 579](#)
- [Setting a Default DMI Schema on page 581](#)
- [Troubleshooting DMI Schema Management on page 582](#)

## Managing DMI Schemas Overview

---

To manage multiple DMI schemas (device management interface schemas) for Junos-based device families and device types, use the DMI schema management workspace.

Each device type is described by a unique data model (DM) that contains all the configuration data for it. The DMI schema lists all the possible fields and attributes for a type of device. The newer schemas describe the new features coming out with recent device releases. It is important that you load into Junos Space all your device schemas, otherwise only a default schema will be applied when you try to edit a device configuration using the device configuration edit action in the Devices workspace (see [“Editing Device Configuration Overview” on page 45](#)). If Junos Space has exactly the right DMI schema for each of your devices, you can access all of the configuration options specific to each device.

The DMI Schema Management workspace enables you to add or update schemas for all Junos Space devices. It also lets you know when you do not have the schema for a device. On the Manage DMI Schemas page, in the tabular view, when it says under the column DMI Schema "Need Import" it means the JunOS schema for that device OS is not bundled with Space and you need to download it from the Juniper Schema Repository.

An important aspect of schema management is setting a default DMI schema for each device family. When you create a device template, the template needs a default schema for the device family. Conversely, in order to access all the configuration options for a particular device via the Edit Device Configuration action in the Devices workspace, you need to have the DMI schema specific to that device.

The schema management facility enables you to connect with Juniper's SVN Repository so that you can download new schemas as necessary.



**NOTE:** Ensure that you only download device schemas pertaining to the devices that are currently managed from Junos Space. As and when more devices are added, you can download the device schemas that are relevant to the newly added devices.

---

A schema is delivered in the form of a .tgz file, an archive containing multiple files reflecting the configuration hierarchy for the selected device family, platform and OS version. You can even create your own tgz file (see [“Creating a tgz File for Updating a DMI Schema” on page 579](#)).

A typical goal in the DMI Management workspace—**Manage DMI Schemas**—is to enable a device to be managed in JUNOS Space.

For each DMI schema currently installed, the **Manage DMI Schemas** inventory landing page displays:

- Name
- Device Family
- OS Version
- Device Series
- State—default or otherwise

You can view the schemas in tabular form, and you can sort the schemas by clicking on their column headings.

You can select one or more schemas and perform the following actions on them using the Actions menu or the right mouse-click menu:

- Set default schemas

Do this to return a custom configuration of a DMI schema to the default.

- Tag and untag schemas
- View schema tags, with
  - Tag Name
  - Access Type

To add or update a DMI schema, see [“Updating a DMI Schema” on page 576](#).

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Updating a DMI Schema on page 576](#)
- [Setting a Default DMI Schema on page 581](#)
- [Creating a tgz File for Updating a DMI Schema on page 579](#)
- [Troubleshooting DMI Schema Management on page 582](#)
- [Device Discovery Overview on page 107](#)
- [Add Deployed Devices Wizard Overview on page 117](#)

## Updating a DMI Schema

---

To add or update a DMI schema, you must have the .tgz archive containing it on the machine running the Junos Space GUI. There are several ways of acquiring such files. You can:

- Create your own file (see [“Creating a tgz File for Updating a DMI Schema” on page 579](#)).
- Download a file from Juniper’s SVN Repository. This topic contains the instructions for doing this.
- Get a file from Juniper support staff.

From the **Schema Update** page, Junos Space is able to identify which schemas you already have installed, and based on the discovered devices, also suggests new schemas. You can, however, pick other available schemas and download them as well, or instead.

On the **Schema Update** page, you can either:

- Install a DMI schema on Junos Space using a file you already have on the machine running the Junos Space GUI.

Or:

- Get a DMI schema from Juniper and update Junos Space, which involves the following sub-tasks:
  - Configure a connection to the SVN Repository.
  - Connect to the SVN Repository and install DMI schemas on Junos Space.

To install a DMI schema update on Junos Space:

Select **Administration > DMI Schemas** and select the Update Schema icon.

The **Update Schema** page appears.

**If you already have the tgz file on your system:**

1. Select the **Archive (tgz)** option button.
2. Click **Browse**.

The **File Upload** dialog appears.

3. Navigate to the .tgz file and select it. Click **Open**.

The **Schema Update** page reappears, displaying the .tgz filename in the **Browse** field.

4. Click **Upload**.

Do not move away from the **Schema Update** page while the tgz file is uploading to Junos Space. Note that the process can take some time, depending on how many schemas are in the file.

5. Select the desired schema and click **Install**.



The **Manage DMI Schemas** inventory landing page reappears, displaying the newly installed schema.

**If you need to download the file from the SVN Repository, and you have not yet configured the connection to the repository:**

1. Have the following to hand:
  - URL : <https://xml.juniper.net/dmi/repository/trunk>
  - Username: userName
  - Password: userPasswd

2. Select the **SVN Repository** option button.

3. Click **Configure**.

The **SVN Access Configuration** dialog box appears.

4. Enter the SVN URL, the username and the password in the appropriate text fields. Click **Test Connection**.

A message appears to tell you whether the connection was established successfully or not.

5. Whether or not connection was successful, click **OK**.

The **SVN Access Configuration** dialog box reappears.

6. Either:

- If the connection failed, click **Cancel** , find the correct credentials, and repeat the above steps.
- If the connection was successful, click **Save**.

The **Schema Update** page reappears, displaying the SVN Repository URL.

**If you need to install the file from the SVN Repository, and you have already configured the connection to the repository:**

1. Select the SVN Repository option button.
2. Ensure the repository's URL appears in the URL field. If the field is blank, you must configure the connection. See step 3 above.
3. Click **Connect**.

The content of the repository with DMI schema releases appears in table form under **Available Updates** on the **Schema Update** page. The already installed versions are preselected.

Junos Space detects and marks any missing schemas with a red arrow symbol. Missing schemas are the OS versions on devices that Junos Space discovers in your network, but which have not been installed on Junos Space.

You can sort by clicking on the column headings: Device Family, Release, Date. To change the display, click the arrow that appears when you click a column heading. To

determine whether sorting should be ascending or descending, click the arrow that appears when you click a column heading.

4. (Optional) To display the recommended schemas only, select the **Show recommended schemas** check box.

Select the desired schemas.



**NOTE:** You need at least one schema for each device family in your network. See [“Setting a Default DMI Schema” on page 581](#).

---

Click **Install**.

A message appears, asking you to wait. After installation, the **Manage DMI Schemas** page reappears, displaying the new schema(s).

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)
- [Setting a Default DMI Schema on page 581](#)
- [Troubleshooting DMI Schema Management on page 582](#)
- [Creating a tgz File for Updating a DMI Schema on page 579](#)

## Creating a tgz File for Updating a DMI Schema

This topic describes how to create a .tgz file containing a DMI schema for any Junos-supported device.

Use the .tgz file to update a DMI schema on Junos Space (see “Updating a DMI Schema” on page 576).

This topic contains instructions for creating a .tgz file on Linux or on Microsoft Windows.

This procedure requires the username and password for xml.juniper.net, which are your Juniper support credentials.

**To install subversion (svn) on Ubuntu:**

```
> sudo bash
```

```
> apt-get install subversion
```

To install subversion on other versions of Linux, consult:

[http://wiki.greenstone.org/wiki/index.php/Install\\_SVN\\_on\\_Linux](http://wiki.greenstone.org/wiki/index.php/Install_SVN_on_Linux)

The tgz must comply with the given format.

All the files must be extracted to a folder structured as follows:

**dmi/deviceFamily/releases/osVersion/....**

**subversion Examples** For the whole Junos family:

```
svn --username=userName --password=userPasswd co
http://xml.juniper.net/dmi/repository/trunk/junos/ dmi/junos/
```

For selected OS versions

```
svn --username=userName --password=userPasswd co
http://xml.juniper.net/dmi/repository/trunk/junos/releases/10.2R1.7/
dmi/junos/releases/10.2R1.7/
```

```
svn --username=userName --password=userPasswd co
http://xml.juniper.net/dmi/repository/trunk/junos/releases/10.4R2.3/
dmi/junos/releases/10.4R2.3/
```

```
svn --username=userName --password=userPasswd co
http://xml.juniper.net/dmi/repository/trunk/junos-es/releases/10.4R2.3/
dmi/junos-es/releases/10.4R2.3/
```

After syncing the DMI tree with svn, tar the dmi directory:

```
tar czvf juniper-schema-repo-test.tgz dmi
```

The following simple example script creates a tarball of the entire schema tree. The result can be used directly in the Junos Space schema update workflow. This is a reference example: it contains no error checking.

```
#!/bin/bash

username="someusername"
password="somepassword"
url="http://xml.juniper.net/dmi/repository/trunk/junos/"
destination="dmi/junos"

# Update DMI source tree
svn --username=$username --password=$password co $url $destination

# Get the revision number
revision=`svn info ${destination} | grep "^Revision" | awk '{ print $2 }'`

# Remove old schema tarball
rm -f junos-dmi-schemas-rev-*.tar.gz

# tar updated tree
tar -czvf junos-dmi-schemas-rev-$revision.tar.gz dmi
```

#### On Microsoft Windows:

Create a .tgz file containing a DMI schema on Microsoft Windows as follows:

1. Install the subversion (svn) client on Microsoft Windows using the following instructions:

<http://tortoisesvn.tigris.org/>

2. Install 7zip to generate a .tgz on Microsoft Windows using the following instructions:

<http://www.7-zip.org/>

3. Check out the files from svn using the subversion client:

Set the svn URL to <http://xml.juniper.net/dmi/repository/trunk>. Right-click and select **Checkout**.

4. Make the following settings:

URL of repository:

<http://xml.juniper.net/dmi/repository/trunk/junos/releases/10.4R2.6>

Checkout directory:

<C:\dnld\dm\junos/releases/10.4R2.6>

Checkout depth:

**Immediate children, including folders**

Leave the **Omit externals** check box empty.

Select **HEAD revision**. Click **OK**.

5. Create the tar file using 7-zip:

In 7-zip, right-click the DMI folder and select from the menu **Add To Archive**.

Select **Tar Format 2.5**.

6. Create gzip using 7-zip:

In 7-zip, right click the DMI .tar file and select from the menu **Add to Archive**.

Select **Zip Format**.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)
- [Setting a Default DMI Schema on page 581](#)
- [Updating a DMI Schema on page 576](#)
- [Troubleshooting DMI Schema Management on page 582](#)

---

## Setting a Default DMI Schema

---

Set a default DMI schema for each device family to enable Junos Space to apply an appropriate schema to a device family. In a clean install situation, Junos Space automatically matches DMI schemas to device families, but in all other situations, you should set a default DMI schema for each device family.

When creating a device template definition, the system will use a default DMI schema for the device family unless you select a schema..

The configuration edit action in the Devices workspace always checks for an exact match between device and DMI schema. If it does not find a match, it will use the default schema (see [“Editing Device Configuration Overview” on page 45](#)).

To set a default DMI schema,

1. Select **Administration > DMI Schemas**.

The **DMI Schemas** page appears, in the tabular view displaying the data in a table with the following columns:

- Device Family
- OS Version
- Device Series
- State—Whether default or not. An empty cell in this column means that the DMI schema in that row is not the default.

2. Select the row that contains the appropriate combination of device family, OS version, and device series, and mouse over the Actions menu to select **Set Default Schema**.

The **Set Default DMI Schema** dialog box opens, displaying the DMI schema name, device family, and OS version.

3. Click **Set Default**.

If any other schema was previously the default, in the tabular view, its cell in the **State** column empties, and the word “Default” appears in the State column for the selected schema.

4. (Optional) To remove the default status from a DMI schema, set another schema of the same family as the default.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)
- [Updating a DMI Schema on page 576](#)
- [Creating a tgz File for Updating a DMI Schema on page 579](#)
- [Troubleshooting DMI Schema Management on page 582](#)

---

## Troubleshooting DMI Schema Management

---

This topic describes common problems associated with DMI schema management and provides solutions where possible. The following are issues that might be encountered:

- No schemas in new installation of Junos Space
- Schema tree not displayed

### No schemas in new installation of Junos Space

When the Junos Space server first comes up, all the schemas for all the discovered devices should be pre-installed. Select **Administration > DMI Schemas**. There should be at least one schema per device family, and each device family should have one schema marked as default.

If the **DMI Schemas** page is empty, installation was unsuccessful.

There is no workaround for this problem.

### Schema tree not displayed

Typically, if a schema is defective, its schema tree will not be displayed.

Verify that a particular schema has been parsed successfully: navigate to **Device Templates > Definitions > Create Definition** task. Select the schema in question and click **Next**.

The schema tree or hierarchy of configuration options should be displayed on the left. All nodes should be navigable, that is, it should be possible to drill down into the hierarchy to reach all the options.

If the topmost node (**Configuration**) cannot be opened to reveal the hierarchy, the schema was corrupted during porting (grep for SchemaMgr ERROR in server.log).



**NOTE:** One defective schema will not affect the other DMI schemas, which will still be available for use.

---

The solution to this problem is to replace one or more existing DMI schemas on the Junos Space server.

There are two ways of doing this:

- Using a script supplied by Juniper support. This requires restarting jboss.
- Using your own tgz file. This does not require restarting jboss.

For instructions, see [“Creating a tgz File for Updating a DMI Schema” on page 579](#).

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Managing DMI Schemas Overview on page 574](#)
- [Updating a DMI Schema on page 576](#)
- [Creating a tgz File for Updating a DMI Schema on page 579](#)
- [Setting a Default DMI Schema on page 581](#)





## CHAPTER 55

# Generate Key

- [Key-based Authentication Overview on page 585](#)
- [Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices on page 586](#)

### Key-based Authentication Overview

---

Junos Space can discover and manage a device either by presenting credentials (username and password) or by key-based authentication.

Junos Space supports RSA keys for key-based authentication. RSA is an asymmetric-key or public-key algorithm using two keys that are mathematically related. Junos Space includes a default set of public-private key pairs. However, we recommend that you generate your own public/private key pair with a passphrase applied. Generate your keys by following the instructions in [“Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices” on page 100](#). The public key can be uploaded to devices being managed by Junos Space. The private key is encrypted and stored on the system running Junos Space. Junos Space uses username and password credentials to log in to a device for the first time in order to copy and upload the public key. Any further communication to the devices is done using key-based authentication, without passwords.

It is advisable to protect the private key on the Junos Space system by using a passphrase, which is merely a long password that can include spaces and tabs and is much more difficult to break by brute-force guessing than is one shorter string.

You do not have to use RSA-based authentication on every device in your network; you can use passwords on some systems if you prefer or they require it.

Setting up key-based authentication between two computers is a multi-step process that is well described on many IT-related Internet sites (as is the public-key cryptography to which it is related). Junos Space automates all of this key-creation and uploading process for you. It also tracks and reports the authentication status of each device in the Devices workspace.

#### Related Documentation

- [Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices on page 100](#)

## Generating and Uploading Authentication Keys to Devices

---

- [Generating Keys on page 586](#)
- [Uploading Keys to Devices for the First Time on page 586](#)
- [Upload Keys on Managed Devices that have Conflicting keys with Junos Space on page 587](#)
- [Verifying Device Key Status on page 587](#)

### Generating Keys

To generate a public/private key pair for authentication during login to network devices:

1. Select **Administration > Fabric** and select the Generate Key icon on the Actions dropdown.  
The Key Generator dialog appears.
2. (Optional) In the **Passphrase** box, enter a passphrase to be used to protect the private key, which will remain on the system running Junos Space and will be used during device logins.  
The passphrase must have a minimum of 5 and a maximum of 255 characters. It may include spaces and tabs. A long passphrase with space and tab characters is harder to break by brute-force guessing. Although a passphrase is not required, it is recommended because it will impede an attacker who gains control of your system and tries to log in to managed network devices.
3. Select **Generate**.

### Uploading Keys to Devices for the First Time

To upload authentication keys to multiple managed devices for the first time:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management inventory page appears.
2. Select the Upload Authentication Key to Devices icon from the Actions menu. You can upload the keys to a single device or multiple devices.
3. To upload keys to a single device:
  - a. Select **Add Manually**.  
The Authentication Details box appears within the Upload Authentication Key dialog.
  - b. In the **IP Address/Host Name** box, enter the IP address or the hostname of the target managed device.
  - c. In the **User Name** box, enter the appropriate username for that device.
  - d. In the **Password** box, enter the password for that device. Confirm it by reentering it in the **Re-enter Password** box.

- e. Click **Next**.
  - f. Click **Upload** to upload keys to the device.
4. To upload keys to multiple devices:
    - a. Select **Import From CSV**.
    - b. (Optional) To see a sample CSV file as a pattern for setting up your own, select **View Sample CSV**. A separate window appears, allowing you to open or download a sample CSV file.
    - c. Once you have a CSV file listing the managed devices and their data, select **Select a CSV To Upload**.
    - d. Upload the CSV file.
    - e. Click **Next**.
    - f. Click **Upload** to upload keys to the device.

RSA Keys are uploaded automatically to all the managed devices (that were discovered through RSA authentication) in Junos Space, if a new key is generated on Junos Space.

## Upload Keys on Managed Devices that have Conflicting keys with Junos Space

To upload authentication keys to one or several managed devices that have conflicting keys:

1. Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management inventory page appears.
2. Select the devices to which you want to upload keys.
3. Select **Device Access > Upload Authentication Key** from the Actions dropdown.  
The IP address of the devices are pre-populated.
4. In the **User Name** box, enter the appropriate username for that device.
5. In the **Password** box, enter the password for that device. Confirm it by reentering it in the **Re-enter Password** box.
6. Select **Next** to provide details for the next device.
7. Select **Upload** to upload the new keys to the managed devices.

## Verifying Device Key Status

To verify the authentication status of managed devices:

- Select **Devices > Device Management**.  
The Device Management inventory page appears.  
The Authentication Status column displays one of three values:
  - Key Based—Authentication key was successfully uploaded.
  - Credential—Key upload was not attempted; login to this device is by credentials.

- Key Conflict—Device was not available; key upload was unsuccessful.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Key-based Authentication Overview on page 99](#)
- [Device Discovery Overview on page 107](#)
- [Discovering Devices on page 108](#)

## PART 11

# Systems of Record and Disaster Recovery

- [Systems of Record and Disaster Recovery on page 591](#)



## CHAPTER 56

# Systems of Record and Disaster Recovery

- [Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space on page 591](#)
- [Understanding Disaster Recovery on page 592](#)
- [Creating the DR Master Cluster on page 594](#)
- [Creating the DR Slave Cluster on page 597](#)
- [Performing a Reverse Restore on page 602](#)

## Understanding Systems of Record in Junos Space

---

Although by default the Junos Space network you are administering is the system of record (SOR)--each device defines its own official state--you may prefer to have the Junos Space database contain the official state of the network, enabling you to restore that official state if unwanted out-of-band changes are made to a device. This feature enables you to designate Junos Space as the SOR if you prefer.

- [Systems of Record on page 591](#)
- [Implications on page 592](#)

## Systems of Record

A network managed by Junos Space has two repositories of information about the devices in it: the devices themselves (each device knows what is on it and can report that state), and the Junos Space database (containing information reported during device discovery). One of these repositories must have precedence over the other as the accepted desirable state. By default, the network itself is the system of record (NSOR).

In NSOR, when a local user commits a change in the configuration of a network device, the commit triggers a report via syslog to Junos Space. The values in the Junos Space database are automatically changed to match the new device values, and the timestamps are synchronized. Thus the devices control what is in the database.

As of version 12.2, you can designate the Junos Space database values as having precedence over any values configured locally at a device. In this scenario, Junos Space (database) is the system of record (SSOR). It contains the configurations that the Junos Space administrator considers best for the network devices. If an out-of-band commit is made on a network device, Junos Space receives a syslog message, but the values in the Junos Space database are not automatically changed or synchronized. Instead, the

administrator can choose whether or not to overwrite the device's local changes by pushing the accepted configuration to it from the Junos Space database.

The choice of pushing the Junos Space configuration is left to the administrator because the local device changes may, for example, be part of a temporary test that the administrator would not want to interrupt. Should the tester forget to reset the configuration at the end of the test, however, the administrator might then push the SSOR configuration to the device.

## Implications

The basic difference between NSOR and SSOR lies in whether or not the Junos Space database is automatically synchronized when changes are made in a network device, and which set of values has precedence.

Setting the Junos Space database as the system of record does not protect your network from local changes. It does notify Junos Space via syslog when they occur, and it does not resynchronize, so you still have the previous configuration and you can reset the remote device quickly if you need to do so. Under an NSOR scenario, Junos Space is also notified via syslog. You can still push a more desirable configuration to the device, but the process is less efficient.

In the NSOR scenario, you can disable automatic resynchronization. When auto-resync is turned off, the server continues to receive notifications and goes into the out-of-sync state; however, the auto-resync does not run on the device. You can manually resynchronize a device in such a case.

NSOR with automatic resynchronization disabled is not equivalent to SSOR: manually resynchronizing under NSOR updates the values in the Junos Space database to reflect those on the device. This never happens under SSOR, where the Junos Space database values have precedence over the device values, and synchronizing them involves pushing the database values to the device, effectively resetting its out-of-band changes.

**Related Documentation**

- [Understanding How Junos Space Automatically Resynchronizes Managed Devices on page 42](#)

---

## Understanding Disaster Recovery

- [Overview on page 593](#)
- [Prerequisites on page 593](#)



## Overview

Junos Space provides a means to recover from disaster, by enabling mirroring of the original Junos Space installation on a cluster of nodes at a geographically remote location. If the main Junos Space site failed due to a disaster such as an earthquake, the other site would take over.

The physical installation is a set of two geographically separate clusters, the DR Master cluster (the main site) and the backup or DR Slave cluster (the remote site). Backups contain:

- Junos Space Network Application Platform and other application databases
- Firewall rules
- SNMP configuration of Junos Space
- Device schema information
- OpenNMS database information
- Real-time performance monitoring information

The disaster recovery (DR) system is entirely driven by back-end scripts. Currently, these scripts must be configured manually.

You perform the following sequence of operations to set a disaster recovery system:

1. Back up the DR Master cluster to the DR Slave cluster. See [“Creating the DR Master Cluster” on page 594](#).
2. If disaster overtakes the original DR Master, stop the DR Slave from pulling the backups from the DR Master. See [“Creating the DR Slave Cluster” on page 597](#).
3. When your original DR Master comes back online, perform a reverse restore to make it a DR Slave. See [“Performing a Reverse Restore” on page 602](#)

## Prerequisites

The requirements for recovering your Junos Space installation from a disaster are as follows:

- The DR Master cluster at the primary site (which can be a single node or multiple nodes) and the DR Slave cluster at the remote site (a single node or multiple nodes) must be set up in exactly the same way, with all the same applications, device adapters, and so on.
- When a new node is added to the cluster, the backup and restore scripts must be rerun to update the configuration.
- Both clusters should be configured through the graphical user interface (GUI) with SMTP server information (see [“Managing Platform SMTP Servers” on page 553](#)). This configuration enables both the DR Master and the DR Slave clusters to notify you by e-mail if the replications fail.



**NOTE:** We recommend that the e-mail server information be the same on both the DR Master and the DR Slave clusters to avoid the following situation:

If the DR Master is configured with e-mail server 1 and the DR Slave is configured with e-mail server 2, when restoring the database, e-mail server 2 is removed, and only e-mail server 1 remains.

- Both ICMP and SCP must be enabled between the DR Master and DR Slave clusters.
  - Backup and restore cannot be done on the same server.
  - Backup configuration and Restore configuration should be done only on the VIP node of respective clusters. If a VIP switchover occurs, you need to rerun backup or restore (depending on the role) on the new VIP node.
  - ScreenOS devices, which are added to Junos Space using the Add Deployed Devices task, need to be rediscovered after disaster recovery. You have two options for reconnecting back to a ScreenOS device, either
    - Use Junos Space to delete the device and rediscover it.
- or
- Change the IP address of the device to point to the DR Slave cluster in the nsmgmt section.

After you perform one of the options, the device reconnects.

**Related  
Documentation**

- [Creating the DR Master Cluster on page 594](#)
- [Creating the DR Slave Cluster on page 597](#)
- [Performing a Reverse Restore on page 602](#)

---

## Creating the DR Master Cluster

---

To set up the main cluster, the DR Master cluster, run three scripts as described in the following sections:

Backup configuration and Restore configuration should be done only on the VIP node of the Master cluster. If a VIP switchover occurs, you must rerun the backup script on the new VIP node.

The role change from DR Slave to DR Master (backup to restore) and vice versa cannot be made directly. It can only be made after the initial role is stopped.

The scripts used are located here: `/opt/jmp-geo/backup/script/backup.sh – script`



**NOTE:** When a new node is added to the cluster, the backup and restore scripts must be rerun to update the configuration.

---



**NOTE:** After you run the restore script, the OpenNMS node list might contain previous Space Servers as well.

- [1. Configuring the DR Master Cluster on page 595](#)
- [2. Starting the Backup for the DR Master Cluster on page 596](#)
- [3. Stopping the Backup on page 597](#)

## 1. Configuring the DR Master Cluster

Configuring the DR Master cluster enables you to input the following information which is then stored in the **backup.properties** file:

- The e-mail address for notifications
- The DR Slave VIP IP address
- The DR Slave device management IP addresses
- The number of backup files to be kept
- The time at which the backup should be run
- The number of days per week the backup should run

Run the script as follows. The output shown reflects the sample input.

```
[root@space-005056b206b7 script]# ./
```

```
backup.sh config
```

```
Please enter contact email address in case of Disaster Recovery Slave failure:
```

```
username@gmail.com
```

```
Backup configurations...
```

```
Creating /etc/ssmtp/ssmtp.conf...
```

```
Creating /etc/ssmtp/revaliases...
```

```
Please enter DR Slave Cluster management ip(VIP) :
```

```
10.10.10.10
```

```
Please enter DR Slave Cluster device management ip(comma separated) :
```

```
10.10.10.63,10.10.10.65
```

```
checking ip: 10.10.10.63
```

```
checking ip: 10.10.10.65
```

```
Please enter max backup files to keep(default=3):
```

**Notice:** cron job takes format of digits joined by ','. For every instance enter '\*'

Please enter hours of the day to run backup:

0

Please enter days of the week to run backup, Sun= 0, Sat=6:

6

## 2. Starting the Backup for the DR Master Cluster

Starting the backup for the DR Master cluster causes a recurring job to be put in the cron. It can be viewed using `crontab -l`.

The backups are stored in the same server in `/opt/jmp-geo/backup/data` in TGZ. Verify the status of the backup process in `/opt/jmp-geo/backup/backup.log`. If the DR Slave is not available, you are notified by e-mail, as configured in the previous section.

If the device discovery mode is DIC, the script also adds the outbound-SSH of the DR Slave cluster's device management IP address to the Junos Space-managed devices.

Run the script as follows. The output shown reflects the sample input.

```
[root@space-005056b206b7 script]# ./
```

```
backup.sh start
```

```
Demoting this cluster from the DR Master Cluster Role ...
```

```
update cluster state successful
```

```
Stopping backup cron job...
```

```
Stopping crond: [ OK ]
```

```
Starting crond: [ OK ]
```

```
Promoting this cluster to the DR Master Cluster Role ...
```

```
update cluster state successful
```

```
Adding DR Slave Cluster device management ip to devices ...
```

```
save cluster ip successful
```

```
save cluster ip successful
```

```
queue http://10.0.0.1:8080/api/hornet-q/queues/jms.queue.jmpgeoq4327 creation  
successful
```

```
update-devices-with-ip 10.10.10.65 successful
```

```
delete http://10.0.0.1:8080/api/hornet-q/queues/jms.queue.jmpgeoq4327 successful
```

```
Starting backup cron job...
```

Stopping crond: [ OK ]

Starting crond:

The DR cron job is started on the DR master.

### 3. Stopping the Backup

Do not transition from DR Master to DR Slave directly. Stop the initial role first. Choose one of the following methods of transitioning:

- Promote a normal cluster to DR Master
- Demote a normal cluster to DR Slave
- Disable a DR Master so that it becomes a normal cluster
- Disable a DR Slave so that it becomes a normal cluster

Stopping the backup removes the cron job and stops the backup being performed.

Run the script as follows. The output shown reflects the sample input.

```
[root@space-005056b20afe script]# ./
```

```
backup.sh stop
```

```
Demoting this cluster from the DR Master Cluster Role ...
```

```
update cluster state successful
```

```
Stopping backup cron job...
```

```
Stopping crond: [ OK ]
```

```
Starting crond: [ OK ]
```

```
[root@space-005056b20afe script]#
```

#### Related Documentation

- [Understanding Disaster Recovery on page 592](#)
- [Creating the DR Slave Cluster on page 597](#)
- [Performing a Reverse Restore on page 602](#)

### Creating the DR Slave Cluster

The DR Slave cluster takes over when disaster has overtaken the DR Master cluster. The `/opt/jmp-geo/restore/script/restore.sh` script uses SCP to pull the backups from the DR Master cluster and when required, restore the DR Slave with the information from the DR Master.

The following four operations involved in setting up the DR Slave cluster:

Backup configuration and Restore configuration should be done only on the VIP node of the DR Master cluster or the DR Slave cluster. If a VIP switchover occurs, you must rerun the backup or restore script (depending on the role) on the new VIP node.



**NOTE:** When a new node is added to the cluster, the backup and restore scripts must be rerun to update the configuration.



**NOTE:** After you run the restore script, the OpenNMS node list might contain previous Junos Space Servers as well.

The role change from Slave to Master (backup to restore) and vice versa cannot be made directly. It can only be made after the initial role is stopped.

The scripts used for this purpose are located here: `/opt/jmp-geo/restore/script/restore.sh – script`.

- [1. Configuring the DR Slave Cluster on page 598](#)
- [2. Starting to Pull the Backups From the DR Master on page 599](#)
- [3. Stopping Pulling the Backups from the DR Master on page 600](#)
- [4. Restoring on page 601](#)

## 1. Configuring the DR Slave Cluster

Configuring the DR Slave cluster records the following information in the `restore.properties` file:

1. The e-mail address to receive notifications
2. The DR Master VIP address
3. The DR Master passwords, if there are multiple nodes
4. The SCP timeout
5. The time at which the backups are to be pulled from the DR Master
6. The number of days per week the backups are to be pulled from the DR Master

Run the script as follows. The output shown reflects the sample input.

```
[root@space-005056b206b7 script]# ./
```

```
restore.sh config
```

```
Please enter contact email address in case DR Master failure:
```

```
username@gmail.com
```

```
Backup configurations...
```

```
Creating /etc/ssmtp/ssmtp.conf...
```

Creating /etc/ssmtp/revaliases...

Please enter DR Master Cluster management ip(VIP) :

10.10.10.10

Please enter DR Master Cluster VIP node admin passwords(comma separated):

abc123

Please enter scp timeout in seconds:

120

Notice: cron job takes format of digits joined by ',', For every instance enter '\*' Please enter hours of the day to pull backup files:

0

Please enter days of the week to pull backup files, Sun= 0, Sat=6:

0

Testing SCP from DR Master to DR Slave...

## 2. Starting to Pull the Backups From the DR Master

The script shown in this section starts pulling the backups from the DR Master cluster.

It creates a cron job entry, which can be viewed by using **crontab -l**.

If the DR Master is not available, you receive the e-mail notification you configured in the previous section.

The copied files are located in the **/opt/jmp-geo/restore/data** folder. The restore polling status is located in the **/opt/jmp-geo/restore/restore.log**.

At this point, the script blocks all connections to devices, since this is a slave cluster (that is, no devices can be discovered).

Run the script as follows. The output shown reflects the sample input.

```
[root@space-005056b206b7 script]# ./
```

```
restore.sh startPoll
```

```
Enabling this cluster to the DR Slave Cluster Role ...
```

```
update cluster state successful
```

```
blocking port 7804 on space-005056b206b7....
```

```
reloading firewall...
```

```
Starting jmp-firewall: [ OK ]
```

```
finish reloading

<response>

<message>

</message>

<status>SUCCESS</status>

</response>

Starting restore cron job...

Stopping crond: [ OK ]

Starting crond: [ OK ]
```

### 3. Stopping Pulling the Backups from the DR Master

The script in this section stops pulling the backups from the DR Master, and thereby demotes the cluster from the DR Slave cluster role and removes the cron job entry.

Do not transition from DR Master to DR Slave directly. Stop the initial role first. Choose one of the following methods of transitioning:

- Promote a normal cluster to DR Master
- Demote a normal cluster to DR Slave
- Disable a DR Master so that it becomes a normal cluster
- Disable a DR Slave so that it becomes a normal cluster

Stopping the backup removes the cron job and stops the backup being performed.

Run the script as follows. The output shown reflects the sample input.

```
[root@space-005056b206b7 script]# ./
restore.sh stopPoll

Stopping restore cron job...

Stopping crond: [ OK ]

Starting crond: [ OK ]

Demoting this cluster from the DR Slave Cluster Role ...

update cluster state successful

opening port 7804 on space-005056b206b7....

jmp-firewall is stopped. Skip reloading

<response>
```



```
<message
</message>

<status>SUCCESS</status>

</response>
```

## 4. Restoring

Running the restore script enables the DR Slave to take over the management role when disaster overtakes the DR Master. The script carries out the following four operations:

1. Stops JBoss and OpenNMS, inflates the files from the latest backup that was pulled, and brings the whole system back up.
2. Enables all connections to the devices.



**NOTE:** You cannot run the restore script when the DR Master is present and online. This procedure is for disaster recovery scenarios only.

3. If the devices were originally discovered using DIC mode, reconfigures Junos Space-managed devices to point to the DR Slave cluster so that devices connect back to the DR Slave cluster.
4. Reconfigures all the devices to point the SNMP trap group to the DR Slave cluster, so that traps and alarms are received by the DR Slave cluster.

Run the script as follows. The output shown reflects the sample input.

```
[root@space-005056b206b7 script]# ./
```

```
restore.sh restore
```

```
The DR Master is down, restore procedure continues.
```

```
The latest backup files is : /opt/jmp-geo/restore/data/825763000.tgz
```

```
Do you want to continue (yes/no):
```

```
yes
```

```
Disaster Recover Procedure: The DR Master Cluster must be down,
```

```
turning this DR Slave Cluster to be in service ...
```

```
update cluster state successful
```

```
opening port 7804 on space-005056b206b7....
```

```
reloading firewall...
```

```
Starting jmp-firewall: [ OK ]
```

finish reloading

<response>

<message>

</message>

<status>SUCCESS</status>

</response>

Extracting backup files....

Set node into restore state

- Related Documentation**
- [Understanding Disaster Recovery on page 592](#)
  - [Creating the DR Master Cluster on page 594](#)
  - [Performing a Reverse Restore on page 602](#)

---

## Performing a Reverse Restore

---

You perform a reverse restore to reestablish a disaster recovery system by creating a new DR Slave at a site geographically separate from the site where your new DR Master is located. For example, if your original DR Master was in Chicago, and your DR Slave was in London, if the London site is overtaken by a further disaster, you would get your original site, Chicago, back online, and then create a DR Slave in Chicago because London would be the new DR Master.

This topic provides instructions for performing a reverse restore.

1. Configure your new DR Master (in the example above, the London site) for backup. See [“Creating the DR Master Cluster” on page 594](#).
2. At the new DR Slave site, reinstall the same version of Junos Space with the same IP addresses, applications and adapters used originally (in the example above, Chicago). See the Prerequisites section of [“Understanding Disaster Recovery” on page 592](#).
3. Configure the new DR Slave site for restore. See [“Creating the DR Slave Cluster” on page 597](#).



**NOTE:** After you run the restore script, the OpenNMS node list might contain previous Junos Space Servers as well.

---

- Related Documentation**
- [Understanding Disaster Recovery on page 592](#)
  - [Creating the DR Master Cluster on page 594](#)
  - [Creating the DR Slave Cluster on page 597](#)

## PART 12

# Index

- [Index on page 605](#)



# Index

## Symbols

#, comments in configuration statements.....	xxix
( ), in syntax descriptions.....	xxix
< >, in syntax descriptions.....	xxix
[ ], in configuration statements.....	xxix
{ }, in configuration statements.....	xxix
(pipe), in syntax descriptions.....	xxix

## A

AAA	
configuring.....	543
access control	
object level.....	567
Add deployed devices	
overview.....	117
add devices	
overview.....	119
adding deployed devices.....	115
adding devices.....	121
adding Junos Space application.....	518
Admin	
configuring OpenNMS.....	321
administration	
smtp server	
add .....	553
administrators	
CLI.....	451
maintenance mode.....	452
overview.....	451
user interface See user administration	
alarms	
viewing, acknowledging,	
unacknowledging.....	103, 309
application	
adding.....	518
Platform, adding.....	524
uninstalling.....	527
upgrading.....	521
application dashboard.....	12

applications	
managing.....	505
settings, modifying.....	508
auto resync device.....	508
automatic logout of idle user sessions	
(mins).....	508
maximum auto resync waiting time	
(secs).....	508
assets	
tracking and searching for.....	299
assigned shared objects	
unassigning.....	56
viewing.....	56
audit log	
UTC to local timestamp, converting.....	440
audit logs	
archive file, naming conventions.....	443
archiving and purging.....	443
archiving to local server.....	443
archiving to remote server.....	444
default directory.....	436
exporting.....	447
overview.....	435
table view.....	436
user privileges.....	436
viewing	
most active users in last 24 hours.....	440
statistics.....	438
audit logs table	
description.....	436
job ID.....	436
task results.....	436
timestamp.....	436
audit trails	
exporting.....	447
authentication and authorization	
configuring a RADIUS server for.....	543
configuring TACACS+ for.....	547
authentication modes	
local.....	538
remote.....	538
remote-local.....	538
authentication server	
creating.....	540
modifying.....	542
auto resync device application setting.....	508
automatic logout of idle user sessions (mins)	
application setting.....	508

automatic resynchronization		configuration file management	
disabling.....	43	overview.....	354
<b>B</b>		user privileges in.....	362
backup and restore See database		configuration files	
braces, in configuration statements.....	xxix	backing up.....	364
brackets		comparing.....	358
angle, in syntax descriptions.....	xxix	deleting.....	356
square, in configuration statements.....	xxix	exporting.....	361
<b>C</b>		restoring.....	356
change request		configuration options	
adding, editing or deleting a.....	52	, editing.....	48
change requests		finding.....	186
consolidated.....	58	configurations	
overview of.....	52	consolidated.....	58
unassigning pending.....	56	configuring application setting.....	518
viewing.....	52	configuring application settings.....	510
viewing pending.....	56	connection status, for managed devices.....	38
changing user passwords.....	4, 400	consolidated config	
charts		validating.....	63
viewing.....	320	consolidated configurations	
Checksum verification.....	238	generating.....	59
checksum verification		managing.....	58
deleting results .....	282	conventions	
procedure.....	254	text and syntax.....	xxviii
verification result page controls		CSV file	
description.....	282	uploading device network name and	
viewing results .....	282	credentials via.....	108
CLI administrator		CSV files, managing	
changing password.....	451	overview.....	191
name.....	451	curly braces, in configuration statements.....	xxix
tasks.....	451	customer support.....	xxx
commands		contacting JTAC.....	xxx
show,		<b>D</b>	
using in Junos Space.....	86	dashboard.....	12
comments, in configuration statements.....	xxix	data collection	
commit script.....	227, 253	SNMP	
conditions for deleting a fabric node.....	470	turning on and off.....	295
configuration change log		database	
viewing.....	67	backup and restore, overview.....	485
configuration changes		device configuration data.....	108
viewing.....	53	device inventory data.....	108
configuration file		Database	
editing.....	359	restoring from remote file.....	491
configuration file editing		database backup	
, selecting perspective.....	46	default directory.....	487
configuration file inventory		deleting files.....	498
viewing.....	355	local.....	487
		overview.....	486

- 
- recurrence info, viewing.....381, 499
  - recurring job.....487
  - remote host.....489
  - viewing files.....497
  - database restore
    - local.....492, 493
    - overview.....486
    - remote host.....494
  - default gateway, changing.....464
  - definition
    - exporting a.....174
    - importing a.....193
  - definition states
    - template.....167
  - definitions, importing
    - overview.....192
  - Deleting a Device Image .....245
  - deleting scripts
    - from devices.....259
    - from Junos Space.....252
  - deleting template definitions.....173
  - deleting user.....399
  - deployed devices
    - managing.....118
  - Deploying a Device Image .....239
  - device
    - troubleshooting.....44
  - device configuration
    - editing.....45
  - device configuration data.....108
  - device connection status.....38
  - device discovery
    - authentication.....107
    - Device Management Interface (DMI).....107
    - inventory and configuration data.....108
    - overview.....107
    - specifying a probe method.....111
    - specifying credentials.....112
    - specifying device targets.....109
    - viewing detailed reports.....113
    - viewing status.....112
  - Device image deployment
    - in-service software upgrade.....239
  - Device Images
    - Overview.....225
  - device images and scripts overview.....221
  - device instances
    - deploying.....125
  - device inventory
    - data.....108
    - exporting.....36, 79
    - overview.....36
  - device job failure
    - retrying.....381
  - device management
    - overview.....31
  - device management IP
    - adding.....464
    - deleting.....464
  - device network name and credentials
    - uploading via CSV file.....108
  - device template
    - creating.....210, 215
    - overview.....210, 214
  - device template definitions
    - inventory viewing.....172
  - device templates
    - deleting.....198
    - deploying.....199
    - inventory viewing.....213
    - modifying.....200
    - overview.....162, 195
    - removing.....201
    - statistics viewing.....165, 213
    - undeploying.....201
    - workflow.....165
  - devices
    - changing resync time delay.....43
    - connecting to managed devices.....94
    - connecting to unmanaged devices.....95
    - connection status icons.....39
    - deleting from Junos Space.....83
    - disabling auto-resync.....43
    - discovering.....108
    - discovery, overview.....107
    - exporting
      - license inventory.....75
      - software inventory.....78
    - logical interfaces, viewing.....73
    - logical inventory .....108
    - management, overview.....31
    - physical interfaces, viewing.....72
    - physical inventory .....108
    - removing provisioning services before deleting
      - from Junos Space.....84
    - resynchronizing managed devices.....84
    - SSH connection.....93

unmanaged, adding.....	129
using show commands in Junos Space.....	86
viewing	
connection status.....	37
hardware inventory.....	37
interfaces.....	37
IP address.....	37
license inventory.....	37, 75
operating system version.....	37
platform.....	37
software inventory.....	78
statistics, by connection status.....	33
statistics, by Junos OS release.....	34
statistics, by platform.....	33
disabling scripts.....	258
configuration example.....	258
disabling users.....	393
discovery See device discovery	
DMI Schema	
management overview.....	574
DMI schema	
troubleshooting.....	582
updating a.....	576
DMI schemas	
adding.....	579, 581
documentation	
comments on.....	xxix
downloading troubleshooting system log files	
using CLI.....	534

## E

enabling scripts.....	256
configuration example for a commit	
script.....	256
configuration example for an event script.....	256
configuration example for an op script.....	256
enabling users.....	393
error messages	
SSH session.....	95
event script.....	227, 253
events	
viewing, querying, acknowledging.....	306
executing scripts.....	261
exporting a	
definition.....	174
exporting scripts.....	283

## F

fabric	
adding a node.....	459
connection status.....	462
CPU resource.....	462
device connection IP address.....	462
disk space.....	462
load history.....	472
management IP address.....	462
memory resource.....	462
monitoring node status	
application logic.....	461
database.....	461
load balancer.....	461
node functions	
availability.....	459
multinode.....	457
single node.....	456
node name.....	462
node serial number.....	463
node threshold limit.....	457
overview.....	455, 459
self monitoring.....	473
system health.....	471
fabric node	
deleting.....	470
failed	
device, retrying a job on.....	381
font conventions.....	xxviii

## G

getting started assistants, using.....	5
See also help, accessing	
global action icons.....	10
Help.....	10
Log Out.....	10
My Jobs.....	10
User Preferences.....	10

## H

hardware inventory	
viewing.....	69
Help icon.....	10
help, accessing.....	6, 10
See also getting started assistants, using	
hierarchical tags	
managing.....	557



**I**

icons	
help.....	10
job status.....	376
log out.....	10
my jobs.....	10
user preferences.....	10
image	
deploying a device.....	239
importing a	
definition.....	193
importing definitions	
overview.....	192
importing scripts	
dialog box.....	266
overview.....	265
procedure.....	266
in-service software upgrade.....	239
inventory page	
EOL data.....	70
objects, tagging.....	563
inventory pages	
filtering.....	22
ISSU.....	239

**J**

job status icons.....	376
jobs.....	376
archiving.....	383
canceling.....	380
management overview.....	371
purging.....	383
types.....	371
viewing	
scheduled jobs.....	376
your jobs.....	375
viewing statistics	
by execution time.....	379
by state.....	379
by type.....	379
Junos OS release See devices categorized by	
Junos Space	
as system of record.....	591
device discovery.....	108
user account, creating.....	389
Junos Space license, managing.....	503
Junos Space software	
base application.....	523
hot-pluggable applications.....	523

network application platform, upgrading.....	524
upgrade highlights.....	523
upgrade scenarios.....	523
upgrading , before you begin.....	523

**L**

license	
60-day trial.....	501
generating.....	501
Junos Space, managing.....	503
key file	
generating.....	501
uploading.....	502
license information.....	108
license inventory	
device	
viewing.....	37
exporting.....	75
viewing.....	75
local authentication mode.....	538
local password	
for remote authentication, clearing.....	401
Log Out icon.....	10
logging in to Junos Space with remote	
authentication configured.....	549
logging in, to Junos Space.....	3
See also logging out, from Junos Space	
logging out from Junos Space.....	10
logging out, from Junos Space.....	7
See also logging in, from Junos Space	
logical interfaces	
viewing.....	73
login behavior	
remote authentication.....	549
remote-local authentication.....	550
login credentials for manage devices	
changing.....	98

**M**

maintenance mode	
actions menu.....	453
administrator name.....	452
administrator password.....	452
administrator tasks.....	452
connecting to Junos Space appliance.....	454
lock time out.....	453
log in screen.....	452
overview.....	452

system locking.....	453	network settings	
user administration.....	453	configuration guidelines.....	464
manage applications overview.....	505	configuring.....	464
Manage Applications workspace		node	
application, adding.....	518	adding to fabric.....	459
application, uninstalling.....	527	definition.....	455
application, upgrading.....	521	deleting.....	470
Platform, upgrading.....	524	threshold limit for devices.....	457
Manage Scripts page		node functions	
fields description .....	228	application logic.....	457
management		database.....	457
configuration file		load balancer.....	457
user privileges in.....	362	node lists for performance management	
performance.....	290	viewing .....	293
management IP		nodes	
changing in same subnet.....	464	resyncing .....	294, 591
changing to different subnet.....	464	searching for.....	296
multinode		notification	
changing in same subnet.....	464	status	
managing applications.....	506	configuring OpenNMS.....	327
managing Junos Space license.....	503	notifications.....	473
managing template definitions.....	169	configuring.....	334
manuals		destination paths, configuring.....	336
comments on.....	xxix	event notifications, configuring.....	334
maximum auto resync waiting time (secs)		path outages, configuring.....	337
application setting.....	508	viewing and searching for.....	313
MD5 Validation Results		NSOR See network as system of record	
Viewing			
Deleting.....	246	<b>O</b>	
Modifying Device Image Details.....	245	object level access control.....	567
modifying template definition.....	171	object tagging	
modifying users.....	398	untagging.....	565
monitoring.....	473	viewing.....	564
My Jobs feature.....	375	object, inventory	
My Jobs icon.....	10	applied tags, managing .....	556
		filtering using tags.....	565
		tag, creating .....	566
		tags, managing.....	555
		op script.....	227, 253
		OpenNMS	
		configuring.....	321, 327
		viewing charts.....	320
		OpenNMS services	
		restarting.....	515
		starting.....	515
		stopping.....	515
		operations copying.....	272
		operations creating.....	269
		operations deleting.....	273
<b>N</b>			
name and credentials			
device			
uploading via CSV file.....	108		
network as system of record.....	591		
network monitoring			
restarting.....	515		
starting.....	515		
stopping.....	515		
network name and credentials			
device			
uploading via CSV file.....	108		

operations modifying.....	271
operations overview.....	231
operations running.....	271
operations viewing.....	285
options	
configuration, finding.....	186
outages	
viewing and tracking.....	306
overview	
definitions, importing.....	192
importing definitions.....	192
<b>P</b>	
parentheses, in syntax descriptions.....	xxix
password, user, changing.....	10
pending change requests	
unassigning.....	56
viewing.....	56
performance See system performance	
performance management	
Admin, configuring OpenNMS.....	321
notification status.....	327
alarms, viewing and acknowledging.....	103, 309
assets, tracking and searching for.....	299
event viewing, querying, acknowledging.....	306
notifications, configuring.....	334
notifications, viewing and searching for.....	313
resyncing nodes.....	294
searching for nodes.....	296
surveillance categories, managing.....	349
thresholds, managing.....	329
viewing and tracking outages.....	306
viewing charts.....	320
viewing node lists.....	293
Permission Labels	
assigning to users.....	570
attaching to objects.....	571
creating.....	570
deleting.....	570
managing.....	567
removing from objects.....	571
removing from users.....	570
renaming.....	570
physical interfaces	
viewing.....	72
predefined role, managing.....	423
modifying.....	424
publishing template definition.....	170

**R**

RADIUS authentication methods supported.....	537
RADIUS server	
configuring a .....	543
rebooting nodes.....	469
recurring database backup.....	487
remote authentication	
configuring servers.....	539
Junos Space login behavior.....	549
local password, clearing.....	401
method, selecting.....	539
overview.....	537
password, setting.....	390
server settings, modifying.....	542
server, creating.....	540
remote authentication mode.....	538
remote host	
database backup.....	489, 497
database restore.....	494
remote-local authentication mode.....	538
replacement device	
activating.....	92
reports	
node, database, statistics, domain, SNMP, KSC	
overview.....	292
requests	
unassigning pending change.....	56
viewing pending change.....	56
restoring a database	
overview.....	486
restoring databases in maintenance mode.....	495
resynchronization	
system of record and .....	591
Resynchronize with Network command.....	36
resynchronizing See devices	
RMA state	
putting a device in.....	91
role	
predefined, managing.....	423, 424
user-defined, deleting.....	426
user-defined, managing.....	423, 424, 425, 427
role-based administration.....	405
authentication.....	405
enforcement by workspace.....	406
overview.....	405
RBAC enforcement.....	405
RBAC enforcement, limitations.....	406
See also user administration	

roles See user administration		
predefined.....	407	
Rules in device template definitions		
working with.....	190	
<b>S</b>		
scheduled job statistics		
viewing.....	378	
schema		
updating a DMI.....	576	
schema management		
troubleshooting DMI .....	582	
schemas		
adding DMI.....	579, 581	
script details		
Script Details Dialog Box Controls		
Description.....	281	
script modification.....	249	
script types		
modifying.....	250	
script versions		
comparing.....	250	
scripts		
overview.....	227, 253	
Secure Console		
connecting to devices.....	93	
overview.....	93	
terminal control characters.....	97	
user privileges.....	93	
Secure Copy (SCP) command		
database backup.....	486	
sequence of change requests		
changing the committing.....	56	
services, OpenNMS		
restarting.....	515	
starting.....	515	
stopping.....	515	
show commands		
using in Junos Space.....	86	
SNMP data collection		
turning on and off.....	295	
software inventory		
exporting.....	78	
viewing.....	78	
software upgrade		
in-service.....	239	
software, Junos Space, upgrading.....	521, 523	
SOR See system of record		
specifying device-specific data in template		
definitions.....	187	
SRX device clusters		
configuring.....	133	
SSH session		
connecting to managed devices.....	94	
connecting to unmanaged devices.....	95	
error messages.....	95	
overview.....	93	
SSoR		
Space as System of Record.....	510	
SSOR See Junos space as system of record		
Staging a Device Image .....	236	
states		
template definition.....	167	
statistics		
audit logs.....	438	
devices.....	32	
jobs.....	379	
users.....	402	
status		
notification		
configuring OpenNMS.....	327	
super administrator.....	406	
privileges.....	406	
See also user administration		
support, technical See technical support		
surveillance categories, managing.....	349	
syntax conventions.....	xxviii	
system		
connecting to appliance in maintenance		
mode.....	454	
database restore.....	452	
debugging.....	452	
performance		
improving.....	383	
shutdown.....	452	
system locking See maintenance mode		
system of record		
networks as.....	510	
setting.....	508	
Space as.....	510	
understanding.....	591	
system status log file.....	529	
checking, customize.....	531	
downloading.....	530	
downloading using SCP.....	535	
downloading using USB device.....	534	
system status log file overview.....	529	

**T**

TACACS+	
configuring.....	547
tagging managed objects.....	563
tags	
creating.....	563, 566
deleting.....	563
inventory objects, filtering.....	565
managing.....	555, 556
renaming.....	562
sharing.....	561
untagging.....	565
viewing.....	564
technical support	
contacting JTAC.....	xxx
template	
assigning to a device.....	206, 207
including in a consolidated	
configuration.....	208, 209
publishing to CC.....	208, 209
publishing to consolidated	
configuration.....	208, 209
template assignment.....	206, 207
template definition	
cloning.....	173
modifying.....	171
publishing.....	170
unpublishing.....	170
template definition states.....	167
template definitions	
deleting.....	173
inventory viewing.....	172
managing.....	169
specifying device-specific data in.....	187
workflow.....	175
terminal control characters	
for Secure Console.....	97
thresholds	
creating, modifying, and deleting.....	329
Topology discovery	
device targets, managing.....	149
discovering.....	148
overview.....	145
SNMP probes, managing.....	151
troubleshoot zip file	
contents .....	530, 532
download from Junos Space Platform UI.....	532
download in maintenance mode.....	533

troubleshooting	
device.....	44

**U**

uninstalling Junos Space application.....	527
unmanaged devices	
adding.....	129
unpublishing template definition.....	170
untagging inventory objects.....	565
upgrade	
in-service software .....	239
upgrading Junos Space application.....	521
upgrading Junos Space Platform.....	524
upgrading Junos Space software.....	521, 523
Uploading a Device Image .....	235
user account	
creating in Junos Space.....	389
user administration.....	405
default super administrator.....	406
role assignment, understanding.....	406
roles	
definition.....	406
predefined.....	406, 407
task group.....	407
viewing statistics.....	402
viewing user account information.....	394
<i>See also</i> role-based administration	
user interface	
banner.....	10
global action icons.....	10
User interface	
navigating.....	20
user interface, Junos Space, overview.....	9
user password, changing.....	10
User Preferences icon.....	10
user privileges.....	166
configuration file management.....	362
user-defined role, creating.....	425, 427
user-defined role, deleting.....	426
user-defined role, managing.....	423, 424
creating.....	424
deleting.....	424
overview.....	424
users	
disabling.....	393
enabling.....	393
<b>V</b>	
view script details.....	281

viewing device template definition	
statistics.....	165, 213
viewing device template inventory.....	213
VIP interface	
changing in same subnet.....	464
changing to a different subnet.....	464
multinode	
changing in same subnet.....	464

## W

workspace	
Administration.....	455
administrator access.....	405
Audit Logs.....	435
Devices.....	31
DMI Schema Management.....	574
enforcement.....	406
Jobs.....	371
Users.....	406
wwadapter	
installing.....	142
overview.....	141